

MICHAEL V. COOK

SECOND EDITION

# Flight Dynamics

## PRINCIPLES



A Linear Systems Approach to Aircraft Stability and Control



# Flight Dynamics Principles

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Flight Dynamics Principles

*M.V. Cook*

*BSc, MSc, CEng, FRAeS, CMath, FIMA*

*Senior Lecturer in the School of  
Engineering Cranfield University*



AMSTERDAM • BOSTON • HEIDELBERG • LONDON • NEW YORK • OXFORD  
PARIS • SAN DIEGO • SAN FRANCISCO • SINGAPORE • SYDNEY • TOKYO

Butterworth-Heinemann is an imprint of Elsevier



Butterworth-Heinemann is an imprint of Elsevier  
Linacre House, Jordan Hill, Oxford OX2 8DP  
30 Corporate Drive, Suite 400, Burlington, MA 01803, USA

First edition 1997  
Second edition 2007

Copyright © 2007, M.V. Cook. Published by Elsevier Ltd. All rights reserved

The right of Michael Cook to be identified as the author of this work has been asserted  
in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any  
form or by any means electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise without  
the prior written permission of the publisher

Permissions may be sought directly from Elsevier's Science & Technology Rights  
Department in Oxford, UK: phone (+44) (0) 1865 843830; fax (+44) (0) 1865 853333;  
email: [permissions@elsevier.com](mailto:permissions@elsevier.com). Alternatively you can submit your request online by  
visiting the Elsevier web site at <http://elsevier.com/locate/permissions>, and selecting  
*Obtaining permission to use Elsevier material*

#### Notice

No responsibility is assumed by the publisher for any injury and/or damage to persons  
or property as a matter of products liability, negligence or otherwise, or from any use or  
operation of any methods, products, instructions or ideas contained in the material herein.

#### British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

#### Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the Library of Congress

ISBN: 978-0-7506-6927-6

For information on all Butterworth-Heinemann publications visit  
our web site at <http://books.elsevier.com>

Typeset by Charontec Ltd (A Macmillan Company), Chennai, India  
[www.charontec.com](http://www.charontec.com)

Printed and bound in Great Britain

07 08 09 10 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Working together to grow  
libraries in developing countries

[www.elsevier.com](http://www.elsevier.com) | [www.bookaid.org](http://www.bookaid.org) | [www.sabre.org](http://www.sabre.org)

ELSEVIER

BOOK AID  
International

Sabre Foundation

---

# Contents

<i>Preface to the first edition</i>	ix
<i>Preface to the second edition</i>	xi
<i>Acknowledgements</i>	xiii
<i>Nomenclature</i>	xv
<b>1. Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Overview	1
1.2 Flying and handling qualities	3
1.3 General considerations	4
1.4 Aircraft equations of motion	7
1.5 Aerodynamics	7
1.6 Computers	8
1.7 Summary	10
References	11
<b>2. Systems of axes and notation</b>	<b>12</b>
2.1 Earth axes	12
2.2 Aircraft body fixed axes	13
2.3 Euler angles and aircraft attitude	18
2.4 Axes transformations	18
2.5 Aircraft reference geometry	24
2.6 Controls notation	27
2.7 Aerodynamic reference centres	28
References	30
Problems	30
<b>3. Static equilibrium and trim</b>	<b>32</b>
3.1 Trim equilibrium	32
3.2 The pitching moment equation	40
3.3 Longitudinal static stability	44
3.4 Lateral static stability	53
3.5 Directional static stability	54
3.6 Calculation of aircraft trim condition	57
References	64
Problems	64
<b>4. The equations of motion</b>	<b>66</b>
4.1 The equations of motion of a rigid symmetric aircraft	66
4.2 The linearised equations of motion	73

4.3 The decoupled equations of motion	79
4.4 Alternative forms of the equations of motion	82
References	95
Problems	96
<b>5. The solution of the equations of motion</b>	<b>98</b>
5.1 Methods of solution	98
5.2 Cramer's rule	99
5.3 Aircraft response transfer functions	101
5.4 Response to controls	108
5.5 Acceleration response transfer functions	112
5.6 The state space method	114
5.7 State space model augmentation	128
References	134
Problems	134
<b>6. Longitudinal dynamics</b>	<b>138</b>
6.1 Response to controls	138
6.2 The dynamic stability modes	144
6.3 Reduced order models	147
6.4 Frequency response	158
6.5 Flying and handling qualities	165
6.6 Mode excitation	167
References	170
Problems	171
<b>7. Lateral-directional dynamics</b>	<b>174</b>
7.1 Response to controls	174
7.2 The dynamic stability modes	183
7.3 Reduced order models	188
7.4 Frequency response	195
7.5 Flying and handling qualities	200
7.6 Mode excitation	202
References	206
Problems	206
<b>8. Manoeuvrability</b>	<b>210</b>
8.1 Introduction	210
8.2 The steady pull-up manoeuvre	212
8.3 The pitching moment equation	214
8.4 Longitudinal manoeuvre stability	216
8.5 Aircraft dynamics and manoeuvrability	222
References	223
<b>9. Stability</b>	<b>224</b>
9.1 Introduction	224
9.2 The characteristic equation	227
9.3 The Routh–Hurwitz stability criterion	227

9.4	The stability quartic	231
9.5	Graphical interpretation of stability	234
	References	238
	Problems	238
<b>10.</b>	<b>Flying and handling qualities</b>	<b>240</b>
10.1	Introduction	240
10.2	Short term dynamic models	241
10.3	Flying qualities requirements	249
10.4	Aircraft role	251
10.5	Pilot opinion rating	255
10.6	Longitudinal flying qualities requirements	256
10.7	Control anticipation parameter	260
10.8	Lateral-directional flying qualities requirements	263
10.9	Flying qualities requirements on the $s$ -plane	266
	References	271
	Problems	272
<b>11.</b>	<b>Stability augmentation</b>	<b>274</b>
11.1	Introduction	274
11.2	Augmentation system design	280
11.3	Closed loop system analysis	283
11.4	The root locus plot	287
11.5	Longitudinal stability augmentation	293
11.6	Lateral-directional stability augmentation	300
11.7	The pole placement method	311
	References	316
	Problems	316
<b>12.</b>	<b>Aerodynamic modelling</b>	<b>320</b>
12.1	Introduction	320
12.2	Quasi-static derivatives	321
12.3	Derivative estimation	323
12.4	The effects of compressibility	327
12.5	Limitations of aerodynamic modelling	335
	References	336
<b>13.</b>	<b>Aerodynamic stability and control derivatives</b>	<b>337</b>
13.1	Introduction	337
13.2	Longitudinal aerodynamic stability derivatives	337
13.3	Lateral-directional aerodynamic stability derivatives	350
13.4	Aerodynamic control derivatives	371
13.5	North American derivative coefficient notation	377
	References	385
	Problems	385



<b>14. Coursework Studies</b>	<b>390</b>
14.1 Introduction	390
14.2 Working the assignments	390
14.3 Reporting	390
<b>Assignment 1.</b> Stability augmentation of the North American X-15 hypersonic research aeroplane	391
<b>Assignment 2.</b> The stability and control characteristics of a civil transport aeroplane with relaxed longitudinal static stability	392
<b>Assignment 3.</b> Lateral-directional handling qualities design for the Lockheed F-104 Starfighter aircraft.	396
<b>Assignment 4.</b> Analysis of the effects of Mach number on the longitudinal stability and control characteristics of the LTV A7-A Corsair aircraft	401
<b>Appendices</b>	
<b>1 AeroTrim – A Symmetric Trim Calculator for Subsonic Flight Conditions</b>	<b>405</b>
<b>2 Definitions of Aerodynamic Stability and Control Derivatives</b>	<b>412</b>
<b>3 Aircraft Response Transfer Functions Referred to Aircraft Body Axes</b>	<b>419</b>
<b>4 Units, Conversions and Constants</b>	<b>425</b>
<b>5 A Very Short Table of Laplace Transforms</b>	<b>426</b>
<b>6 The Dynamics of a Linear Second Order System</b>	<b>427</b>
<b>7 North American Aerodynamic Derivative Notation</b>	<b>431</b>
<b>8 Approximate Expressions for the Dimensionless Aerodynamic Stability and Control Derivatives</b>	<b>434</b>
<b>9 The Transformation of Aerodynamic Stability Derivatives from a Body Axes Reference to a Wind Axes Reference</b>	<b>438</b>
<b>10 The Transformation of the Moments and Products of Inertia from a Body Axes Reference to a Wind Axes Reference</b>	<b>448</b>
<b>11 The Root Locus Plot</b>	<b>451</b>
<i>Index</i>	457

---

# Preface to the first edition

When I joined the staff of the College of Aeronautics some years ago I was presented with a well worn collection of lecture notes and invited to teach *Aircraft Stability and Control* to postgraduate students. Inspection of the notes revealed the unmistakable signs that their roots reached back to the work of W.J. Duncan, which is perhaps not surprising since Duncan was the first Professor of Aerodynamics at Cranfield some 50 years ago. It is undoubtedly a privilege and, at first, was very daunting to be given the opportunity to follow in the footsteps of such a distinguished academic. From that humble beginning my interpretation of the subject has continuously evolved to its present form which provided the basis for this book.

The classical linearised theory of the stability and control of aircraft is timeless, it is brilliant in its relative simplicity and it is very securely anchored in the domain of the aerodynamicist. So what is new? The short answer is; not a great deal. However, today the material is used and applied in ways that have changed considerably, due largely to the advent of the digital computer. The computer is used as the principal tool for analysis and design, and it is also the essential component of the modern flight control system on which all advanced technology aeroplanes depend. It is the latter development in particular which has had, and continues to have, a major influence on the way in which the material of the subject is now used. It is no longer possible to guarantee good flying and handling qualities simply by tailoring the stability and control characteristics of an advanced technology aeroplane by aerodynamic design alone. Flight control systems now play an equally important part in determining the flying and handling qualities of an aeroplane by augmenting the stability and control characteristics of the airframe in a beneficial way. Therefore the subject has had to evolve in order to facilitate integration with flight control and, today, the integrated subject is much broader in scope and is more frequently referred to as *Flight Dynamics*.

The treatment of the material in this book reflects my personal experience of using, applying and teaching it over a period of many years. My formative experience was gained as a Systems Engineer in the avionics industry where the emphasis was on the design of flight control systems. In more recent years, in addition to teaching a formal course in the subject, I have been privileged to have spent very many hours teaching the classical material in the College of Aeronautics airborne laboratory aircraft. This experience has enabled me to develop the material from the classical treatment introduced by Duncan in the earliest days of the College of Aeronautics to the present treatment, which is biased towards modern systems applications. However, the vitally important aerodynamic origins of the material remain clear and for which I can take no credit.

Modern flight dynamics tends to be concerned with the wider issues of flying and handling qualities rather than with the traditional, and more limited, issues of stability

and control. The former is, of course, largely shaped by the latter and for this reason the emphasis is on dynamics and their importance to flying and handling qualities. The material is developed using dimensional or normalised dimensional forms of the aircraft equations of motion only. These formulations are in common use, with minor differences, on both sides of the North Atlantic. The understanding of the dimensionless equations of motion has too often been a major stumbling block for many students and, in my experience, I have never found it necessary, or even preferable, to work with the classical dimensionless equations of motion.

The dimensionless equations of motion are a creation of the aerodynamicist and are referred to only in so far as is necessary to explain the origins and interpretation of the dimensionless aerodynamic stability and control derivatives. However, it remains most appropriate to use dimensionless derivatives to describe the aerodynamic properties of an airframe.

It is essential that the modern flight dynamicist has not only a thorough understanding of the classical theory of the stability and control of aircraft but also, some knowledge of the role and structure of flight control systems. Consequently, a basic understanding of the theory of control systems is necessary and then it becomes obvious that the aircraft may be treated as a *system* that may be manipulated and analysed using the tools of the control engineer. As a result, it is common to find control engineers looking to modern aircraft as an interesting challenge for the application of their skills. Unfortunately, it is also too common to find control engineers who have little or no understanding of the dynamics of their *plant* which, in my opinion, is unacceptable. It has been my intention to address this problem by developing the classical theory of the stability and control of aircraft in a systems context in order that it should become equally accessible to both the aeronautical engineer and to the control engineer. This book then, is an aeronautical text which borrows from the control engineer rather than a control text which borrows from the aeronautical engineer.

This book is primarily intended for undergraduate and post graduate students studying aeronautical subjects and those students studying avionics, systems engineering, control engineering, mathematics, etc. who wish to include some flight dynamics in their studies. Of necessity the scope of the book is limited to linearised small perturbation aircraft models since the material is intended for those coming to the subject for the first time. However, a good understanding of the material should give the reader the basic skills and confidence to analyse and evaluate aircraft flying qualities and to initiate preliminary augmentation system design. It should also provide a secure foundation from which to move on into non-linear flight dynamics, simulation and advanced flight control.

M.V. Cook,  
College of Aeronautics,  
Cranfield University.

January 1997

---

## Preface to the second edition

It is ten years since this book was first published and during that time there has been a modest but steady demand for the book. It is apparent that during this period there has been a growing recognition in academic circles that it is more appropriate to teach “Aircraft stability and control” in a systems context, rather than the traditional aerodynamic context and this is a view endorsed by industry. This is no doubt due to the considerable increase in application of automatic flight control to all types of aircraft and to the ready availability of excellent computer tools for handling the otherwise complex calculations. Thus the relevance of the book is justified and this has been endorsed by positive feedback from readers all over the world.

The publisher was clearly of the same opinion, and a second edition was proposed. It is evident that the book has become required reading for many undergraduate taught courses, but that its original emphasis is not ideal for undergraduate teaching. In particular, the lack of examples for students to work was regarded as an omission too far. Consequently, the primary aim of the second edition is to support more generally the requirement of the average undergraduate taught course. Thus it is hoped that the new edition will appeal more widely to students undertaking courses in aeronautical and aeronautical systems engineering at all levels.

The original concept for the book seems to have worked well, so the changes are few. Readers familiar with the book will be aware of rather too many minor errors in the first edition, arising mainly from editing problems in the production process. These have been purged from the second edition and it is hoped that not so many new errors have been introduced. Apart from editing here and there, the most obvious additions are a versatile computer programme for calculating aircraft trim, the introduction of material dealing with the inter-changeability of the North American notation, new material on lateral-directional control derivatives and examples for students at the end of most chapters. Once again, the planned chapter on atmospheric disturbance modelling has been omitted due to time constraints. However, an entirely new chapter on Coursework Studies for students has been added.

It is the opinion of the author that, at postgraduate level in particular, the assessment of students by means of written examinations tends to trivialise the subject by reducing problems to exercises which can be solved in a few minutes – the real world is not often like that. Consequently, traditional examining was abandoned by the author sometime ago in favour of more realistic, and hence protracted coursework studies. Each exercise is carefully structured to take the student step by step through the solution of a more expansive flight dynamics problem, usually based on real aircraft data. Thus, instead of the short sharp memory test, student assessment becomes an extension and consolidation of the learning process, and equips students with the

essential enabling skills appreciated by industry. Feedback from students is generally very positive and it appears they genuinely enjoy a realistic challenge.

For those who are examined by traditional methods, examples are included at the end of most chapters. These examples are taken from earlier Cranfield University exam papers set by the author, and from more recent exam papers set and kindly provided by Dr Peter Render of Loughborough University. The reader should not assume that chapters without such examples appended are not examinable. Ready made questions were simply not available in the very tight time scale applying.

In the last ten years there has been explosive growth in unmanned air vehicle (UAV) technology, and vehicles of every type, size and configuration have made headlines on a regular basis. At the simplest level of involvement in UAV technology, many university courses now introduce experimental flight dynamics based on low cost radio controlled model technology. The theoretical principles governing the flight dynamics of such vehicles remain unchanged and the material content of this book is equally applicable to all UAVs. The only irrelevant material is that concerning piloted aircraft handling qualities since UAVs are, by definition, pilotless. However, the flying qualities of UAVs are just as important as they are for piloted aircraft although envelope boundaries may not be quite the same, they will be equally demanding. Thus the theory, tools and techniques described in this book may be applied without modification to the analysis of the linear flight dynamics of UAVs.

The intended audience remains unchanged, that is undergraduate and post graduate students studying aeronautical subjects and students studying avionics, systems engineering, control engineering, mathematics, etc. with aeronautical application in mind. In view of the take up by the aerospace industry, it is perhaps appropriate to add, young engineers involved in flight dynamics, flight control and flight test, to the potential readership. It is also appropriate to reiterate that the book is introductory in its scope and is intended for those coming to the subject for the first time. Most importantly, in an increasingly automated world the principal objective of the book remains to provide a secure foundation from which to move on into non-linear flight dynamics, simulation and advanced flight control.

M.V. Cook,  
School of Engineering,  
Cranfield University.

---

# Acknowledgements

Over the years I have been fortunate to have worked with a number of very able people from whom I have learned a great deal. My own understanding and interpretation of the subject has benefited enormously from that contact and it is appropriate to acknowledge the contributions of those individuals.

My own formal education was founded on the text by W.J. Duncan and, later, on the first text by A.W. Babister and as a result the structure of the present book has many similarities to those earlier texts. This, I think, is inevitable since the treatment and presentation of the subject has not really been bettered in the intervening years.

During my formative years at GEC-Marconi Avionics Ltd I worked with David Sweeting, John Corney and Richard Smith on various flight control system design projects. This activity also brought me into contact with Brian Gee, John Gibson and Arthur Barnes at British Aerospace (Military Aircraft Division) all of whom are now retired. Of the many people with whom I worked these individuals in particular were, in some way, instrumental in helping me to develop a greater understanding of the subject in its widest modern context.

During my early years at Cranfield my colleagues Angus Boyd, Harry Ratcliffe, Dr Peter Christopher and Dr Martin Eshelby were especially helpful with advice and guidance at a time when I was establishing my teaching activities. I also consider myself extremely fortunate to have spent hundreds of hours flying with a small but distinguished group of test pilots, Angus McVitie, Ron Wingrove and Roger Bailey as we endeavoured to teach and demonstrate the rudiments of flight mechanics to generations of students. My involvement with the experimental flying programme was an invaluable experience which has enhanced my understanding of the subtleties of aircraft behaviour considerably. Later, the development of the postgraduate course in Flight Dynamics brought me into contact with colleagues, Peter Thomasson, Jim Lipscombe, John Lewis and Dr Sandra Fairs with all of whom it was a delight to work. Their co-operative interest, and indeed their forbearance during the long preparation of the first edition of this book, provided much appreciated encouragement. In particular, the knowledgeable advice and guidance so freely given by Jim Lipscombe and Peter Thomasson, both now retired, is gratefully acknowledged as it was certainly influential in my development of the material. On a practical note, I am indebted to Chris Daggett who obtained the experimental flight data for me which has been used to illustrate the examples based on the College of Aeronautics Jetstream aircraft.

Since the publication of the first edition, a steady stream of constructive comments has been received from a very wide audience and all of these have been noted in the preparation of the second edition. However, a number of individuals have been especially supportive and these include; Dr David Birdsall, of Bristol University who wrote a very complimentary review shortly after publication, Dr Peter Render of

Loughborough University, an enthusiastic user of the book and who very kindly provided a selection of his past examination papers for inclusion in the second edition, and my good friend Chris Fielding of BAE Systems who has been especially supportive by providing continuous industrial liaison and by helping to focus the second edition on the industrial applications. I am also grateful of Stephen Cardnuff who provided considerable help at the last minute by helping to prepare the solutions for the end of chapter problems.

I am also indebted to BAE Systems who kindly provided the front cover photograph, and especially to Communications Manager Andy Bunce who arranged permission for it to be reproduced as the front cover. The splendid photograph shows Eurofighter Typhoon IPA1 captured by Ray Troll, Photographic Services Manager, just after take off from Warton for its first flight in the production colour scheme.

The numerous bright young people who have been my students have unwittingly contributed to this material by providing the all important “customer feedback”. Since this is a large part of the audience to which the work is directed it is fitting that what has probably been the most important contribution to its continuing development is gratefully acknowledged.

I would like to acknowledge and thank Stephen Cardnuff who has generated the on-line Solutions Manual to complement this text.

Finally, I am indebted to Jonathan Simpson of Elsevier who persuaded me that the time was right for a second edition and who maintained the encouragement and gentle pressure to ensure that I delivered more-or-less on time. Given the day to day demands of a modern university, it has been a struggle to keep up with the publishing schedule, so the sympathetic handling of the production process by Pauline Wilkinson of Elsevier was especially appreciated.

To the above mentioned I am extremely grateful and to all of them I extend my most sincere thanks.

---

# Nomenclature

Of the very large number of symbols required by the subject, many have more than one meaning. Usually the meaning is clear from the context in which the symbol is used.

$a$	Wing or wing-body lift curve slope; Acceleration. Local speed of sound
$a'$	Inertial or absolute acceleration
$a_0$	Speed of sound at sea level. Tailplane zero incidence lift coefficient
$a_1$	Tailplane lift curve slope
$a_{1_f}$	Canard foreplane lift curve slope
$a_{1_F}$	Fin lift curve slope
$a_2$	Elevator lift curve slope
$a_{2_A}$	Aileron lift curve slope
$a_{2_R}$	Rudder lift curve slope
$a_3$	Elevator tab lift curve slope
$a_\infty$	Lift curve slope of an infinite span wing
$a_h$	Local lift curve slope at coordinate $h$
$a_y$	Local lift curve slope at spanwise coordinate $y$
$ac$	Aerodynamic centre
$A$	Aspect ratio
$\mathbf{A}$	State matrix
$b$	Wing span
$b_1$	Elevator hinge moment derivative with respect to $\alpha_T$
$b_2$	Elevator hinge moment derivative with respect to $\eta$
$b_3$	Elevator hinge moment derivative with respect to $\beta_\eta$
$\mathbf{B}$	Input matrix
$c$	Chord; Viscous damping coefficient. Command input
$\bar{c}$	Standard mean chord ( $smc$ )
$\bar{\bar{c}}$	Mean aerodynamic chord ( $mac$ )
$\bar{\bar{c}}_\eta$	Mean elevator chord aft of hinge line
$c_h$	Local chord at coordinate $h$
$c_y$	Local chord at spanwise coordinate $y$
$cg$	Centre of gravity
$cp$	Centre of pressure
$C$	Command path transfer function
$\mathbf{C}$	Output matrix
$C_D$	Drag coefficient
$C_{D_0}$	Zero lift drag coefficient
$C_l$	Rolling moment coefficient
$C_L$	Lift coefficient



$C_{L_w}$	Wing or wing-body lift coefficient
$C_{L_T}$	Tailplane lift coefficient
$C_H$	Elevator hinge moment coefficient
$C_m$	Pitching moment coefficient
$C_{m_0}$	Pitching moment coefficient about aerodynamic centre of wing
$C_{m_\alpha}$	Slope of $C_m$ - $\alpha$ plot
$C_n$	Yawing moment coefficient
$C_x$	Axial force coefficient
$C_y$	Lateral force coefficient
$C_z$	Normal force coefficient
$C_\tau$	Thrust coefficient
$D$	Drag
$D'$	Drag in a lateral-directional perturbation
<b>D</b>	Direction cosine matrix: Direct matrix
$D_c$	Drag due to camber
$D_\alpha$	Drag due to incidence
$e$	The exponential function
$e$	Oswald efficiency factor
$F$	Aerodynamic force: Feed forward path transfer function
$F_c$	Aerodynamic force due to camber
$F_\alpha$	Aerodynamic force due to incidence
$F_\eta$	Elevator control force
$g$	Acceleration due to gravity
$g_\eta$	Elevator stick to surface mechanical gearing constant
$G$	Controlled system transfer function
$h$	Height: Centre of gravity position on reference chord: Spanwise coordinate along wing sweep line
$h_0$	Aerodynamic centre position on reference chord
$h_F$	Fin height coordinate above roll axis
$h_m$	Controls fixed manoeuvre point position on reference chord
$h'_m$	Controls free manoeuvre point position on reference chord
$h_n$	Controls fixed neutral point position on reference chord
$h'_n$	Controls free neutral point position on reference chord
$H$	Elevator hinge moment: Feedback path transfer function
$H_F$	Fin span measured perpendicular to the roll axis
$H_m$	Controls fixed manoeuvre margin
$H'_m$	Controls free manoeuvre margin
$i_x$	Dimensionless moment of inertia in roll
$i_y$	Dimensionless moment of inertia in pitch
$i_z$	Dimensionless moment of inertia in yaw
$i_{xz}$	Dimensionless product of inertia about $ox$ and $oz$ axes
$I'$	Normalised inertia
$I_x$	Moment of inertia in roll
$I_y$	Moment of inertia in pitch
$I_z$	Moment of inertia in yaw
<b>I</b>	Identity matrix
$I_{xy}$	Product of inertia about $ox$ and $oy$ axes
$I_{xz}$	Product of inertia about $ox$ and $oz$ axes

---

$I_{yz}$	Product of inertia about $oy$ and $oz$ axes
$j$	The complex variable ( $\sqrt{-1}$ )
$k$	General constant: Spring stiffness coefficient
$k_q$	Pitch rate transfer function gain constant
$k_u$	Axial velocity transfer function gain constant
$k_w$	Normal velocity transfer function gain constant
$k_\theta$	Pitch attitude transfer function gain constant
$k_\tau$	Turbo-jet engine gain constant
$K$	Feedback gain: Constant in drag polar
$\mathbf{K}$	Feedback gain matrix
$K_n$	Controls fixed static stability margin
$K'_n$	Controls free static stability margin
$l_f$	Fin arm measured between wing and fin quarter chord points
$l_t$	Tail arm measured between wing and tailplane quarter chord points
$l_F$	Fin arm measured between $cg$ and fin quarter chord point
$l_T$	Tail arm measured between $cg$ and tailplane quarter chord points
$L$	Lift: Rolling moment
$L'$	Lift in a lateral-directional perturbation
$L_c$	Lift due to camber
$L_w$	Wing or wing-body lift
$L_F$	Fin lift
$L_T$	Tailplane lift
$L_\alpha$	Lift due to incidence
$m$	Mass
$m'$	Normalised mass
$M$	Local Mach number
$M_0$	Free stream Mach number
$M_{crit}$	Critical Mach number
$M$	Pitching moment
$\mathbf{M}$	“Mass” matrix
$M_0$	Wing-body pitching moment about wing aerodynamic centre
$M_T$	Tailplane pitching moment about tailplane aerodynamic centre
$n$	Total normal load factor
$n_\alpha$	Normal load factor per unit angle of attack
$n'$	Inertial normal load factor
$N$	Yawing moment
$o$	Origin of axes
$p$	Roll rate perturbation: Trim reference point: System pole
$q$	Pitch rate perturbation
$Q$	Dynamic pressure
$r$	Yaw rate perturbation: General response variable
$R$	Radius of turn
$s$	Wing semi-span: Laplace operator
$S$	Wing reference area
$S_B$	Projected body side reference area
$S_F$	Fin reference area
$S_T$	Tailplane reference area
$S_\eta$	Elevator area aft of hinge line
$t$	Time: Maximum aerofoil section thickness

$T$	Time constant
$T_r$	Roll mode time constant
$T_s$	Spiral mode time constant
$T_u$	Numerator zero in axial velocity transfer function
$T_w$	Numerator zero in normal velocity transfer function
$T_\theta$	Numerator zero in pitch rate and attitude transfer functions
$T_\tau$	Turbo-jet engine time constant
$T_2$	Time to double amplitude
$u$	Axial velocity perturbation
<b>u</b>	Input vector
$U$	Total axial velocity
$U_e$	Axial component of steady equilibrium velocity
$U_E$	Axial velocity component referred to datum-path earth axes
$v$	Lateral velocity perturbation
<b>v</b>	Eigenvector
$V$	Perturbed total velocity: Total lateral velocity
$V_e$	Lateral component of steady equilibrium velocity
$V_E$	Lateral velocity component referred to datum-path earth axes
$V_0$	Steady equilibrium velocity
$\overline{V}_f$	Canard foreplane volume ratio
$\overline{V}_F$	Fin volume ratio
$\overline{V}_T$	Tailplane volume ratio
<b>V</b>	Eigenvector matrix
$w$	Normal velocity perturbation
$W$	Total normal velocity
$W_e$	Normal component of steady equilibrium velocity
$W_E$	Normal velocity component referred to datum-path earth axes
$x$	Longitudinal coordinate in axis system
$x_\tau$	Axial coordinate of engine thrust line
<b>x</b>	State vector
$X$	Axial force component
$y$	Lateral coordinate in axis system
$y_B$	Lateral body “drag” coefficient
$y_\tau$	Lateral coordinate of engine thrust line
<b>y</b>	Output vector
$Y$	Lateral force component
$z$	Normal coordinate in axis system: System zero
$z_\tau$	Normal coordinate of engine thrust line
<b>z</b>	Transformed state vector
$Z$	Normal force component

## Greek letter

$\alpha$	Angle of attack or incidence perturbation
$\alpha'$	Incidence perturbation
$\alpha_e$	Equilibrium incidence

---

$\alpha_T$	Local tailplane incidence
$\alpha_{w0}$	Zero lift incidence of wing
$\alpha_{wr}$	Wing rigging angle
$\beta$	Sideslip angle perturbation
$\beta_e$	Equilibrium sideslip angle
$\beta_\eta$	Elevator trim tab angle
$\gamma$	Flight path angle perturbation: Imaginary part of a complex number
$\gamma_e$	Equilibrium flight path angle
$\Gamma$	Wing dihedral angle
$\delta$	Control angle: Increment: Unit impulse function
$\delta_\xi$	Roll control stick angle
$\delta_\eta$	Pitch control stick angle
$\delta_\zeta$	Rudder pedal control angle
$\delta m$	Mass increment
$\Delta$	Characteristic polynomial: Transfer function denominator
$\varepsilon$	Throttle lever angle: Downwash angle at tailplane: Closed loop system error
$\varepsilon_0$	Zero lift downwash angle at tail
$\zeta$	Rudder angle perturbation: Damping ratio
$\zeta_d$	Dutch roll damping ratio
$\zeta_p$	Phugoid damping ratio
$\zeta_s$	Short period pitching oscillation damping ratio
$\eta$	Elevator angle perturbation
$\eta_e$	Elevator trim angle
$\eta_T$	Tailplane setting angle
$\theta$	Pitch angle perturbation: A general angle
$\theta_e$	Equilibrium pitch angle
$\kappa$	Thrust line inclination to aircraft <i>ox</i> axis
$\lambda$	Eigenvalue
$\Lambda$	Wing sweep angle
$\mathbf{\Lambda}$	Eigenvalue matrix
$\mu_1$	Longitudinal relative density factor
$\mu_2$	Lateral relative density factor
$\xi$	Aileron angle perturbation
$\rho$	Air density
$\sigma$	Aerodynamic time parameter: Real part of a complex number
$\tau$	Engine thrust perturbation: Time parameter
$\tau_e$	Trim thrust
$\hat{\tau}$	Dimensionless thrust
$\phi$	Roll angle perturbation: Phase angle: A general angle
$\Phi$	State transition matrix
$\psi$	Yaw angle perturbation
$\omega$	Undamped natural frequency
$\omega_b$	Bandwidth frequency
$\omega_d$	Dutch roll undamped natural frequency
$\omega_n$	Damped natural frequency
$\omega_p$	Phugoid undamped natural frequency
$\omega_s$	Short period pitching oscillation undamped natural frequency

**Subscripts**

0	Datum axes: Normal earth fixed axes: Wing or wing-body aerodynamic centre: Free stream flow conditions
1/4	Quarter chord
2	Double or twice
$\infty$	Infinite span
<i>a</i>	Aerodynamic
<i>A</i>	Aileron
<i>b</i>	Aeroplane body axes: Bandwidth
<i>B</i>	Body or fuselage
<i>c</i>	Control: Chord: Compressible flow: Camber line
<i>d</i>	Atmospheric disturbance: Dutch roll
<i>D</i>	Drag
<i>e</i>	Equilibrium, steady or initial condition
<i>E</i>	Datum-path earth axes
<i>f</i>	Canard foreplane
<i>F</i>	Fin
<i>g</i>	Gravitational
<i>H</i>	Elevator hinge moment
<i>i</i>	Incompressible flow
<i>l</i>	Rolling moment
<i>le</i>	Leading edge
<i>L</i>	Lift
<i>m</i>	Pitching moment: Manoeuvre
<i>n</i>	Neutral point: Yawing moment
<i>p</i>	Power: Roll rate: Phugoid
<i>q</i>	Pitch rate
<i>r</i>	Yaw rate: Roll mode
<i>R</i>	Rudder
<i>s</i>	Short period pitching oscillation: Spiral mode
<i>T</i>	Tailplane
<i>u</i>	Axial velocity
<i>v</i>	Lateral velocity
<i>w</i>	Aeroplane wind or stability axes: Wing or wing-body: Normal velocity
<i>x</i>	<i>ox</i> axis
<i>y</i>	<i>oy</i> axis
<i>z</i>	<i>oz</i> axis
$\alpha$	Angle of attack or incidence
$\varepsilon$	Throttle lever
$\zeta$	Rudder
$\eta$	Elevator
$\theta$	Pitch
$\xi$	Ailerons
$\tau$	Thrust

## Examples of other symbols and notation

$x_u$	A shorthand notation to denote the concise derivative, a dimensional derivative divided by the appropriate mass or inertia parameters
$X_u$	A shorthand notation to denote the American normalised dimensional derivative $\overset{\circ}{X}_u/m$
$L'_v$	A shorthand notation to denote a modified North American lateral-directional derivative
$C_{x_u}$	A shorthand coefficient notation to denote a North American dimensionless derivative
$X_u$	A shorthand notation to denote the dimensionless derivative $\partial\hat{X}/\partial\hat{u}$
$\overset{\circ}{X}_u$	A shorthand notation to denote the dimensional derivative $\partial X/\partial u$
$N_u^y(t)$	A shorthand notation to denote a transfer function numerator polynomial relating the output response $y$ to the input $u$
$\hat{u}$	A shorthand notation to denote that the variable $u$ is dimensionless
$(^*)$	A superscript to denote a complex conjugate: A superscript to denote that a derivative includes both aerodynamic and thrust effects in North American notation
$(^\circ)$	A dressing to denote a dimensional derivative in British notation
$(^{\wedge})$	A dressing to denote a dimensionless parameter
$(^T)$	A superscript to denote a transposed matrix

## **Accompanying Resources**

The following accompanying web-based resources are available for teachers and lecturers who adopt or recommend this text for class use. For further details and access to these resources please go to <http://textbooks.elsevier.com>

## **Instructor's Manual**

A full Solutions Manual with worked answers to the exercises in the main text is available for downloading.

## **Image Bank**

An image bank of downloadable PDF versions of the figures from the book is available for use in lecture slides and class presentations.

A companion website to the book contains the following resources for download. For further details and access please go to <http://books.elsevier.com>

## **Downloadable Software code**

Accompanying MathCAD software source code for performance model generation and optimization is available for downloading. It is suitable for use as is, or for further development, to solve student problems.

---

# Chapter 1

## Introduction

### 1.1 OVERVIEW

This book is primarily concerned with the provision of good flying and handling qualities in conventional piloted aircraft, although the material is equally applicable to the *uninhabited air vehicle* (UAV). Consequently it is also very much concerned with the stability, control and dynamic characteristics which are fundamental to the determination of those qualities. Since flying and handling qualities are of critical importance to safety and to the piloting task it is essential that their origins are properly understood. Here then, the intention is to set out the basic principles of the subject at an introductory level and to illustrate the application of those principles by means of worked examples.

Following the first flights made by the Wright brothers in December 1903 the pace of aeronautical development quickened and the progress made in the following decade or so was dramatic. However, the stability and control problems that faced the early aviators were sometimes considerable since the flying qualities of their aircraft were often less than satisfactory. Many investigators were studying the problems of stability and control at the time although it is the published works of Bryan (1911) and Lanchester (1908) which are usually accredited with laying the first really secure foundations for the subject. By conducting many experiments with flying models Lanchester was able to observe and successfully describe mathematically some dynamic characteristics of aircraft. The beauty of Lanchester's work was its practicality and theoretical simplicity, thereby lending itself to easy application and interpretation. Bryan, on the other hand, was a mathematician who chose to apply his energies, with the assistance of Mr. Harper, to the problems of the stability and control of aircraft. Bryan developed the general equations of motion of a rigid body with six degrees of freedom to successfully describe the motion of aircraft. His treatment, with very few changes, is still in everyday use. What has changed is the way in which the material is now used, due largely to the advent of the digital computer as an analysis tool. The stability and control of aircraft is a subject which has its origins in aerodynamics and the classical theory of the subject is traditionally expressed in the language of the aerodynamicist. However, most advanced technology aircraft may be described as an *integrated system* comprising airframe, propulsion, flight controls and so on. It is therefore convenient and efficient to utilise powerful computational systems engineering tools to analyse and describe its flight dynamics. Thus, the objective of the present work is to revisit the development of the classical theory and to express it in the language of the systems engineer where it is more appropriate to do so.

Flight dynamics is about the relatively short term motion of aircraft in response to controls or to external disturbances such as atmospheric turbulence. The motion of



interest can vary from small excursions about trim to very large amplitude manoeuvring when normal aerodynamic behaviour may well become very non-linear. Since the treatment of the subject in this book is introductory a discussion of large amplitude dynamics is beyond the scope of the present work. The dynamic behaviour of an aircraft is shaped significantly by its stability and control properties which in turn have their roots in the aerodynamics of the airframe. Previously the achievement of aircraft with good stability characteristics usually ensured good flying qualities, all of which depended only on good aerodynamic design. Expanding flight envelopes and the increasing dependence on *automatic flight control systems* (AFCS) for stability augmentation means that good flying qualities are no longer a guaranteed product of good aerodynamic design and good stability characteristics. The reasons for this apparent inconsistency are now reasonably well understood and, put very simply, result from the addition of flight control system dynamics to those of the airframe. Flight control system dynamics are of course a necessary, but not always desirable, by-product of command and stability augmentation.

Modern flight dynamics is concerned not only with the dynamics, stability and control of the basic airframe, but also with the sometimes complex interaction between airframe and flight control system. Since the flight control system comprises motion sensors, a control computer, control actuators and other essential items of control hardware, a study of the subject becomes a multi-disciplinary activity. Therefore, it is essential that the modern flight dynamicist has not only a thorough understanding of the classical stability and control theory of aircraft, but also a working knowledge of control theory and of the use of computers in *flight critical* applications. Thus modern aircraft comprise the airframe together with the flight control equipment and may be treated as a whole *system* using the traditional tools of the aerodynamicist together with the analytical tools of the control engineer.

Thus in a modern approach to the analysis of stability and control it is convenient to treat the airframe as a system component. This leads to the derivation of mathematical models which describe aircraft in terms of aerodynamic *transfer functions*. Described in this way, the stability, control and dynamic characteristics of aircraft are readily interpreted with the aid of very powerful computational systems engineering tools. It follows that the mathematical model of the aircraft is immediately compatible with, and provides the foundation for integration with flight control system studies. This is an ideal state of affairs since, today, it is common place to undertake stability and control investigations as a precursor to flight control system development.

Today, the modern flight dynamicist tends to be concerned with the wider issues of flying and handling qualities rather than with the traditional, and more limited issues of stability and control. The former are, of course, largely determined by the latter. The present treatment of the material is shaped by answering the following questions which a newcomer to the subject might be tempted to ask:

- (i) *How are the stability and control characteristics of aircraft determined and how do they influence flying qualities?*

The answer to this question involves the establishment of a suitable mathematical framework for the problem, the development of the equations of motion, the solution of the equations of motion, investigation of response to controls and the general interpretation of dynamic behaviour.

- (ii) *What are acceptable flying qualities, how are the requirements defined, interpreted and applied, and how do they limit flight characteristics?*

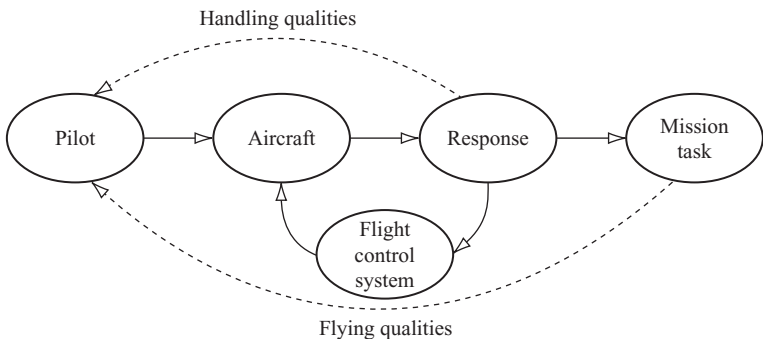
The answer to this question involves a review of contemporary flying qualities requirements and their evaluation and interpretation in the context of stability and control characteristics.

- (iii) *When an aircraft has unacceptable flying qualities how may its dynamic characteristics be improved?*

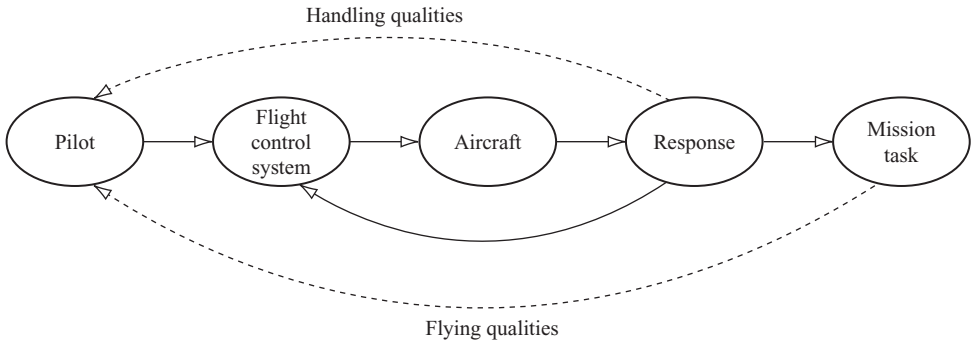
The answer to this question involves an introduction to the rudiments of feedback control as the means for augmenting the stability of the basic airframe.

## 1.2 FLYING AND HANDLING QUALITIES

The flying and handling qualities of an aircraft are those properties which describe the ease and effectiveness with which it responds to pilot commands in the execution of a flight task, or *mission task element* (MTE). In the first instance, therefore, flying and handling qualities are described qualitatively and are formulated in terms of *pilot opinion*, consequently they tend to be rather subjective. The process involved in the pilot perception of flying and handling qualities may be interpreted in the form of a signal flow diagram as shown in Fig. 1.1. The solid lines represent physical, mechanical or electrical signal flow paths, whereas the dashed lines represent sensory feedback information to the pilot. The author's interpretation distinguishes between *flying qualities* and *handling qualities* as indicated. The pilot's perception of flying qualities is considered to comprise a qualitative description of how well the aeroplane carries out the commanded task. On the other hand, the pilot's perception of handling qualities is considered a qualitative description of the adequacy of the short term dynamic response to controls in the execution of the flight task. The two *qualities* are therefore very much interdependent and in practice are probably inseparable. Thus to summarise, the flying qualities may be regarded as being task related, whereas the handling qualities may be regarded as being response related. When the airframe characteristics are augmented by a flight control system the way in which the flight control system may influence the flying and handling qualities is clearly shown in Fig. 1.1.



**Figure 1.1** *Flying and handling qualities of conventional aircraft.*



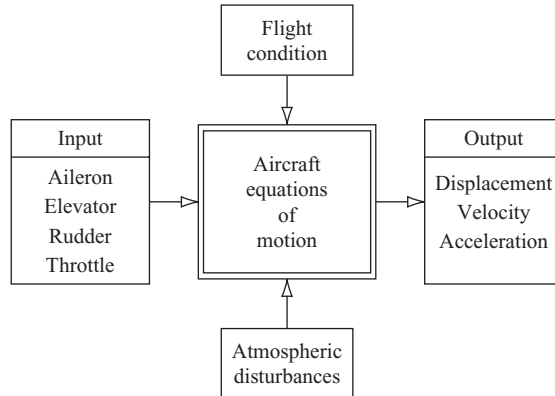
**Figure 1.2** *Flying and handling qualities of FBW aircraft.*

An increasing number of advanced modern aeroplanes employ *fly-by-wire* (FBW) primary flight controls and these are usually integrated with the stability augmentation system. In this case, the interpretation of the flying and handling qualities process is modified to that shown in Fig. 1.2. Here then, the flight control system becomes an integral part of the primary signal flow path and the influence of its dynamic characteristics on flying and handling qualities is of critical importance. The need for very careful consideration of the influence of the flight control system in this context cannot be over emphasised.

Now the pilot's perception of the flying and handling qualities of an aircraft will be influenced by many factors. For example, the stability, control and dynamic characteristics of the airframe, flight control system dynamics, response to atmospheric disturbances and the less tangible effects of cockpit design. This last factor includes considerations such as control inceptor design, instrument displays and field of view from the cockpit. Not surprisingly the quantification of flying qualities remains difficult. However, there is an overwhelming necessity for some sort of numerical description of flying and handling qualities for use in engineering design and evaluation. It is very well established that the flying and handling qualities of an aircraft are intimately dependent on the stability and control characteristics of the airframe including the flight control system when one is installed. Since stability and control parameters are readily quantified these are usually used as indicators and measures of the likely flying qualities of the aeroplane. Therefore, the prerequisite for almost any study of flying and handling qualities is a descriptive mathematical model of the aeroplane which is capable of providing an adequate quantitative indication of its stability, control and dynamic properties.

### 1.3 GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

In a systematic study of the principles governing the flight dynamics of aircraft it is convenient to break the problem down into manageable descriptive elements. Thus before attempting to answer the questions posed in Section 1.1, it is useful to consider and define a suitable framework in which the essential mathematical development may take place.



**Figure 1.3** Basic control–response relationships.

### 1.3.1 Basic control–response relationships

It is essential to define and establish a description of the basic input–output relationships on which the flying and handling qualities of unaugmented aircraft depend. These relationships are described by the aerodynamic transfer functions which provide the simplest and most fundamental description of airframe dynamics. They describe the control–response relationship as a function of flight condition and may include the influence of atmospheric disturbances when appropriate. These basic relationships are illustrated in Fig. 1.3.

Central to this framework is a mathematical model of the aircraft which is usually referred to as *the equations of motion*. The equations of motion provide a complete description of response to controls, subject only to modelling limitations defined at the outset, and is measured in terms of displacement, velocity and acceleration variables. The flight condition describes the conditions under which the observations are made and includes parameters, such as Mach number, altitude, aircraft geometry, mass and trim state. When the airframe is augmented with a flight control system the equations of motion are modified to model this configuration. The response transfer functions, derived from the mathematical solution of the equations of motion, are then no longer the basic aerodynamic transfer functions but are obviously the transfer functions of the augmented aeroplane.

### 1.3.2 Mathematical models

From the foregoing it is apparent that it is necessary to derive mathematical models to describe the aircraft, its control systems, atmospheric disturbances and so on. The success of any flight dynamics analysis hinges on the suitability of the models for the problem in hand. Often the temptation is to attempt to derive the most accurate model possible. High fidelity models are capable of reproducing aircraft dynamics accurately but are seldom simple. Their main drawback is the lack of *functional visibility*. In very complex aircraft and system models, it may be difficult, or even impossible,

to relate response to the simple physical aerodynamic properties of the airframe, or to the properties of the control system components. For the purposes of the investigation of flying and handling qualities it is frequently adequate to use simple approximate models which have the advantage of maximising functional visibility thereby drawing attention to the dominant characteristics. Such models have the potential to enhance the visibility of the physical principles involved thereby facilitating the interpretation of flying and handling qualities enormously. Often, the deterioration in the fidelity of the response resulting from the use of approximate models may be relatively insignificant. For a given problem, it is necessary to develop a model which balances the desire for response fidelity against the requirement to maintain functional visibility. As is so often the case in many fields of engineering, simplicity is a most desirable virtue.

### 1.3.3 Stability and control

Flying and handling qualities are substantially dependent on, and are usually described in terms of, the stability and control characteristics of an aircraft. It is therefore essential to be able to describe and to quantify stability and control parameters completely. Analysis may then be performed using the stability parameters. Static stability analysis enables the *control displacement* and the *control force* characteristics to be determined for both steady and manoeuvring flight conditions. Dynamic stability analysis enables the temporal *response to controls* and to atmospheric disturbances to be determined for various flight conditions.

### 1.3.4 Stability and control augmentation

When an aircraft has flying and handling qualities deficiencies it becomes necessary to correct, or *augment*, the aerodynamic characteristics which give rise to those deficiencies. To a limited extent, this could be achieved by modification of the aerodynamic design of the aircraft. In this event it is absolutely essential to understand the relationship between the aerodynamics of the airframe and controls and the stability and control characteristics of that airframe. However, today, many aircraft are designed with their aerodynamics optimised for performance over a very large flight envelope, and a consequence of this is that their flying qualities are often deficient. The intent at the outset being to rectify those deficiencies with a stability augmentation system. Therefore, the alternative to aerodynamic design modification is the introduction of a flight control system. In this case it becomes essential to understand how feedback control techniques may be used to artificially modify the apparent aerodynamic characteristics of the airframe. So once again, but for different reasons, it is absolutely essential to understand the relationship between the aerodynamics of the airframe and its stability and control characteristics. Further, it becomes very important to appreciate the effectiveness of servo systems for autostabilisation whilst acknowledging the attendant advantages, disadvantages and limitations introduced by the system hardware. At this stage of consideration it is beginning to become obvious why flight dynamics is now a complex multi-disciplinary subject. However, since this work is introductory, the subject of stability augmentation is treated at the most elementary level only.

## 1.4 AIRCRAFT EQUATIONS OF MOTION

The equations of motion of an aeroplane are the foundation on which the entire framework of flight dynamics is built and provide the essential key to a proper understanding of flying and handling qualities. At their simplest, the equations of motion can describe small perturbation motion about trim only. At their most complex they can be completely descriptive embodying static stability, dynamic stability, aeroelastic effects, atmospheric disturbances and control system dynamics simultaneously for a given aeroplane configuration. The equations of motion enable the rather intangible description of flying and handling qualities to be related to quantifiable stability and control parameters, which in turn may be related to identifiable aerodynamic characteristics of the airframe. For initial studies the theory of small perturbations is applied to the equations to ease their analytical solution and to enhance their functional visibility. However, for more advanced applications, which are beyond the scope of the present work, the fully descriptive non-linear form of the equations might be retained. In this case the equations are difficult to solve analytically and recourse would be made to computer simulation techniques to effect a numerical solution.

## 1.5 AERODYNAMICS

### 1.5.1 Scope

The aerodynamics of an airframe and its controls make a fundamental contribution to the stability and control characteristics of the aircraft. It is usual to incorporate aerodynamic descriptions in the equations of motion in the form of *aerodynamic stability and control derivatives*. Since it is necessary to constrain the motion to well defined limits in order to obtain the derivatives so, the scope of the resulting aircraft model is similarly constrained in its application. It is, however, quite common to find aircraft models constrained in this way being used to predict flying and handling qualities at conditions well beyond the imposed limits. This is not recommended practice! An important aspect of flight dynamics is concerned with the proper definition of aerodynamic derivatives as functions of common aerodynamic parameters. It is also most important that the values of the derivatives are compatible with the scope of the problem to which the aircraft model is to be applied. The processes involved in the estimation or measurement of aerodynamic derivatives provide an essential contribution to a complete understanding of aircraft behaviour.

### 1.5.2 Small perturbations

The aerodynamic properties of an aircraft vary considerably over the flight envelope and mathematical descriptions of those properties are approximations at best. The limit of the approximation is determined by the ability of mathematics to describe the physical phenomena involved or by the acceptable complexity of the description. The aim being to obtain the simplest approximation consistent with adequate physical representation. In the first instance this aim is best met when the motion of interest is constrained to *small perturbations* about a steady flight condition, which is usually,

but not necessarily, trimmed equilibrium. This means that the aerodynamic characteristics can be approximated by *linearising* about the chosen flight condition. Simple approximate mathematical descriptions of aerodynamic stability and control derivatives then follow relatively easily. This is the approach pioneered by Bryan (1911) and it usually works extremely well provided the limitations of the model are recognised from the outset.

### 1.6 COMPUTERS

No discussion of flight dynamics would be complete without mention of the very important role played by the computer in all aspects of the subject. It is probably true to say that the development of today's very advanced aircraft would not have been possible without parallel developments in computer technology. In fact there is ample evidence to suggest that the demands of aeronautics have forced the pace of computer development. Computers are used for two main purposes, as a general purpose tool for design and analysis and to provide the "intelligence" in flight control systems.

#### 1.6.1 Analytical computers

In the past all electronic computation whether for analysis, simulation or airborne flight control would have been analogue. Analogue computer technology developed rapidly during and immediately after World War II and by the late 1960s had reached its highest level of development following the introduction of the electronic integrated operational amplifier. Its principal role was that of simulation and its main advantages were: its ability to run in real time, continuous electrical signals and its high level of functional visibility. Its main disadvantage was the fact that the electronic hardware required was directly proportional to the functional complexity of the problem to be simulated. This meant that complex aircraft models with complex flight control systems required physically large, and very costly, electronic computer hardware. During the 1960s and 1970s electronic digital computing technology advanced very rapidly and soon displaced the analogue computer as the primary tool for design and analysis. However, it took somewhat longer before the digital computer had acquired the capacity and speed necessary to meet the demands of simulation. Today, most of the computational requirements for design, analysis and simulation can be provided by a modest personal computer.

#### 1.6.2 Flight control computers

In the present context flight control is taken to mean *flight critical stability augmentation*, where a computer malfunction or failure might hazard the continued safe operation of the aircraft. In the case of a FBW computer, a total failure would mean total loss of control of the aircraft, for example. Therefore, hardware integrity is a very serious issue in flight control computer design. The modern aircraft may also

have an autopilot computer, air data computer, navigation computer, energy management computer, weapon systems computer and more. Many of these additional computers may be capable of exercising some degree of control over the aircraft, but none will be quite as critical as the stability augmentation computer in the event of a malfunction.

For the last 60 years or more, computers have been used in aircraft for flight control. For much of that time the dedicated analogue electronic computer was unchallenged because of its relative simplicity, its easy interface engineering with the mechanical flying controls and its excellent safety record. Toward the end of the 1970s the digital computer had reached the stage of development where its use in flight critical applications became a viable proposition with the promise of vastly expanded control capability. The pursuit of increasingly sophisticated performance goals led to an increase in the complexity of the aerodynamic design of aircraft. This in turn placed greater demands on the flight control system for the maintenance of good flying and handling qualities. The attraction of the digital computer for flight control is its capability for handling very complex control functions easily. The disadvantage is its lack of functional visibility and the consequent difficulty of ensuring safe trouble free operation. However, the digital flight critical computer is here to stay and is now used in most advanced technology aircraft. Research continues to improve the hardware, software and application. Confidence in digital flight control systems is now such that applications include full FBW civil transport aeroplanes.

These functionally very complex flight control systems have given the modern aeroplane hitherto unobtainable performance benefits. But nothing is free! The consequence of using such systems is the unavoidable introduction of unwanted control system dynamics. These usually manifest themselves as control phase lag and can intrude on the piloting task in an unacceptable way resulting in an aircraft with poor flying and handling qualities. This problem is still a subject of research and is very much beyond the scope of this book. However, the essential foundation material on which such studies are built is set out in the following chapters.

### 1.6.3 Computer software tools

Many computer software tools are now available which are suitable for flight dynamics analysis. Most packages are intended for control systems applications, but they are ideal for handling aeronautical system problems and may be installed on a modest personal computer. Software tools used regularly by the author are listed below, but it must be appreciated that the list is by no means exhaustive, nor is it implied that the programs listed are the best or necessarily the most appropriate.

*MATLAB* is a very powerful control system design and analysis tool which is intended for application to systems configured in state space format. As a result all computation is handled in matrix format. Its screen graphics are good. All of the examples and problems in this book can be solved with the aid of *MATLAB*.

*Simulink* is a continuous simulation supplementary addition to *MATLAB*, on which it depends for its mathematical modelling. It is also a powerful tool and is easy to apply using a block diagram format for model building. It is not strictly necessary for application to the material in this book although it can be used with advantage



for some examples. Its main disadvantage is its limited functional visibility since models are built using interconnecting blocks, the functions of which are not always immediately obvious to the user. Nevertheless *Simulink* enjoys very widespread use throughout industry and academia.

*MATLAB and Simulink, student version release 14* is a combined package available to registered students at low cost.

*Program CC version 5* is also a very powerful control system design and analysis tool. It is capable of handling classical control problems in transfer function format as well as modern state space control problems in matrix format. The current version is very similar in use to *MATLAB* to the extent that many procedures are the same. This is not entirely surprising since the source of the underlying mathematical routines is the same for both the languages. An advantage of *Program CC* is that it was written by flight dynamicists for flight dynamicists and as a result its use becomes intuitive once the commands have been learned. Its screen graphics are good and have some flexibility of presentation. A downloadable low cost student version is available which is suitable for solving all examples and problems in this book.

*Mathcad version 13* is a very powerful general purpose mathematical problem solving tool. It is useful for repetitive calculations but it comes into its own for solving difficult non-linear equations. It is also capable of undertaking complex algebraic computations. Its screen graphics are generally very good and are very flexible. In particular, it is a valuable tool for aircraft trim and performance computations where the requirement is to solve simultaneous non-linear algebraic equations. Its use in this role is illustrated in Chapter 3. A low cost student version of this software is also available.

*20-sim* is a modern version of the traditional simulation language and it has been written to capitalise on the functionality of the modern personal computer. Models can be built up from the equations of motion, or from the equivalent matrix equations, or both. Common modules can be assigned icons of the users design and the simulation can then be constructed in a similar way to the block diagram format of *Simulink*. Its versatility is enhanced by its direct compatibility with *MATLAB*. Significant advantages are the excellent functional visibility of the problem, model building flexibility and the infinitely variable control of the model structure. Its screen graphics are excellent and it has the additional facility for direct visualisation of the modelled system running in real time. At the time of writing, the main disadvantage is the lack of a library of aerospace simulation components, however this will no doubt be addressed as the language matures.

### 1.7 SUMMARY

An attempt has been made in Chapter 1 to give a broad appreciation of what flight dynamics is all about. Clearly, to produce a comprehensive text on the subject would require many volumes, assuming that it were even possible. To reiterate, the present intention is to set out the fundamental principles of the subject only. However, where appropriate, pointers are included in the text to indicate the direction in which the material in question might be developed for more advanced studies.

## REFERENCES

- Bryan, G.H. 1911: *Stability in Aviation*. Macmillan and Co, London.
- Lanchester, F.W. 1908: *Aerodnetics*. Constable and Co. Ltd, London.
- MATLAB and Simulink*. The Mathworks Ltd., Matrix House, Cowley Park, Cambridge, CB4 0HH. [www.mathworks.co.uk/store](http://www.mathworks.co.uk/store).
- Mathcad*. Adept Scientific, Amor Way, Letchworth, Herts, SG6 1ZA. [www.adept-science.co.uk](http://www.adept-science.co.uk).
- Program CC*. Systems Technology Inc., 13766 South Hawthorne Boulevard, Hawthorne, CA 90250-7083, USA. [www.programcc.com](http://www.programcc.com).
- 20-sim*. Controllab Products B.V., Drienerlolaan 5 HO-8266, 7522 NB Enschede, The Netherlands. [www.20sim.com](http://www.20sim.com).

---

## Chapter 2

# Systems of Axes and Notation

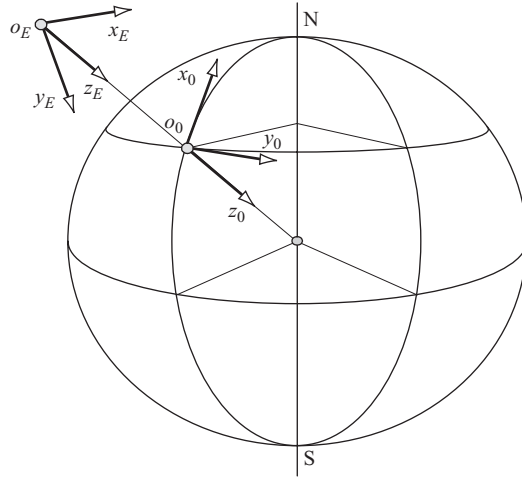
Before commencing the main task of developing mathematical models of the aircraft it is first necessary to put in place an appropriate and secure foundation on which to build the models. The foundation comprises a mathematical framework in which the equations of motion can be developed in an orderly and consistent way. Since aircraft have six degrees of freedom the description of their motion can be relatively complex. Therefore, motion is usually described by a number of variables which are related to a suitably chosen system of axes. In the UK the scheme of notation and nomenclature in common use is based on that developed by Hopkin (1970) and a simplified summary may be found in the appropriate ESDU (1987) data item. As far as is reasonably possible, the notation and nomenclature used throughout this book correspond with that of Hopkin (1970). By making the appropriate choice of axis systems order and consistency may be introduced to the process of model building. The importance of order and consistency in the definition of the mathematical framework cannot be over-emphasised since, without either misunderstanding and chaos will surely follow. Only the most basic commonly used axes systems appropriate to aircraft are discussed in the following sections. In addition to the above named references a more expansive treatment may be found in Etkin (1972) or in McRuer *et al.* (1973) for example.

### 2.1 EARTH AXES

Since normal atmospheric flight only is considered it is usual to measure aircraft motion with reference to an earth fixed framework. The accepted convention for defining earth axes determines that a reference point  $o_0$  on the surface of the earth is the origin of a right handed orthogonal system of axes ( $o_0x_0y_0z_0$ ) where,  $o_0x_0$  points to the north,  $o_0y_0$  points to the east and  $o_0z_0$  points vertically “down” along the gravity vector. Conventional earth axes are illustrated in Fig. 2.1.

Clearly, the plane ( $o_0x_0y_0$ ) defines the local horizontal plane which is tangential to the surface of the earth. Thus the flight path of an aircraft flying in the atmosphere in the vicinity of the reference point  $o_0$  may be completely described by its coordinates in the axis system. This therefore assumes a *flat earth* where the vertical is “tied” to the gravity vector. This model is quite adequate for localised flight although it is best suited to navigation and performance applications where flight path trajectories are of primary interest.

For investigations involving trans-global navigation the axis system described is inappropriate, a spherical coordinate system being preferred. Similarly, for trans-atmospheric flight involving the launch and re-entry of space vehicles a spherical coordinate system would be more appropriate. However, since in such an application



**Figure 2.1** *Conventional earth axes.*

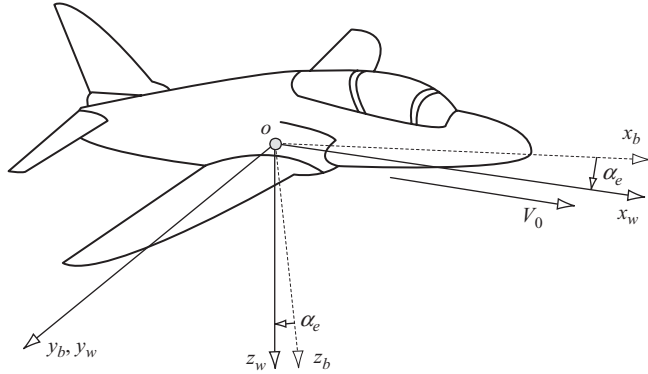
the angular velocity of the earth becomes important it is necessary to define a fixed spatial axis system to which the spherical earth axis system may be referenced.

For flight dynamics applications a simpler definition of earth axes is preferred. Since short term motion only is of interest it is perfectly adequate to assume flight above a flat earth. The most common consideration is that of motion about *straight and level* flight. Straight and level flight assumes flight in a horizontal plane at a constant altitude and, whatever the subsequent motion of the aircraft might be, the *attitude* is determined with respect to the horizontal. Referring again to Fig. 2.1 the horizontal plane is defined by  $(O_E x_E y_E)$  and is parallel to the plane  $(O_0 x_0 y_0)$  at the surface of the earth. The only difference is that the  $O_E x_E$  axis points in the arbitrary direction of flight of the aircraft rather than to the north. The  $O_E z_E$  axis points vertically down as before. Therefore, it is only necessary to place the origin  $O_E$  in the atmosphere at the most convenient point, which is frequently coincident with the origin of the aircraft body fixed axes. Earth axes  $(O_E x_E y_E z_E)$  defined in this way are called *datum-path earth axes*, are “tied” to the earth by means of the gravity vector and provide the inertial reference frame for short term aircraft motion.

## 2.2 AIRCRAFT BODY FIXED AXES

### 2.2.1 Generalised body axes

It is usual practice to define a right handed orthogonal axis system fixed in the aircraft and constrained to move with it. Thus when the aircraft is disturbed from its initial flight condition the axes move with the airframe and the motion is quantified in terms of perturbation variables referred to the moving axes. The way in which the axes may be fixed in the airframe is arbitrary although it is preferable to use an accepted standard orientation. The most general axis system is known as a *body axis* system  $(O x_b y_b z_b)$  which is fixed in the aircraft as shown in Fig. 2.2. The  $(O x_b z_b)$



**Figure 2.2** Moving axes systems.

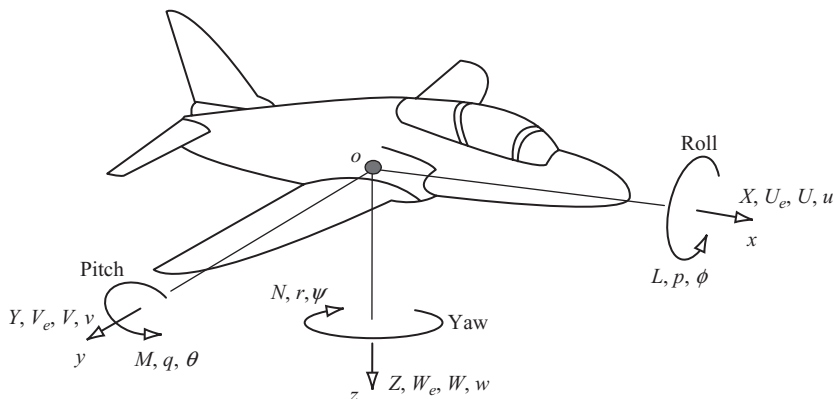
plane defines the plane of symmetry of the aircraft and it is convenient to arrange the  $ox_b$  axis such that it is parallel to the geometrical *horizontal fuselage datum*. Thus in normal flight attitudes the  $oy_b$  axis is directed to starboard and the  $oz_b$  axis is directed “downwards”. The origin  $o$  of the axes is fixed at a convenient reference point in the airframe which is usually, but not necessarily, coincident with the centre of gravity (cg).

### 2.2.2 Aerodynamic, wind or stability axes

It is often convenient to define a set of aircraft fixed axes such that the  $ox$  axis is parallel to the total velocity vector  $V_0$  as shown in Fig. 2.2. Such axes are called *aerodynamic*, *wind* or *stability* axes. In steady symmetric flight wind axes ( $ox_w, y_w, z_w$ ) are just a particular version of body axes which are rotated about the  $oy_b$  axis through the steady body incidence angle  $\alpha_e$  until the  $ox_w$  axis aligns with the velocity vector. Thus the plane ( $ox_w, z_w$ ) remains the plane of symmetry of the aircraft and the  $oy_w$  and the  $oy_b$  axes are coincident. Now there is a unique value of body incidence  $\alpha_e$  for every flight condition, therefore the wind axes orientation in the airframe is different for every flight condition. However, for any given flight condition the wind axes orientation is defined and fixed in the aircraft at the outset and is constrained to move with it in subsequent disturbed flight. Typically the body incidence might vary in the range  $-10^\circ \leq \alpha_e \leq 20^\circ$  over a normal flight envelope.

### 2.2.3 Perturbation variables

The motion of the aircraft is described in terms of force, moment, linear and angular velocities and attitude resolved into components with respect to the chosen aircraft fixed axis system. For convenience it is preferable to assume a generalised *body axis* system in the first instance. Thus initially, the aircraft is assumed to be in steady rectilinear, but not necessarily level, flight when the body incidence is  $\alpha_e$  and the steady velocity  $V_0$  resolves into components  $U_e$ ,  $V_e$  and  $W_e$  as indicated in Fig. 2.3. In steady non-accelerating flight the aircraft is in equilibrium and the forces and



**Figure 2.3** Motion variables notation.

**Table 2.1** Summary of motion variables

	Trimmed equilibrium			Perturbed		
Aircraft axis	$ox$	$oy$	$oz$	$ox$	$oy$	$oz$
Force	0	0	0	$X$	$Y$	$Z$
Moment	0	0	0	$L$	$M$	$N$
Linear velocity	$U_e$	$V_e$	$W_e$	$U$	$V$	$W$
Angular velocity	0	0	0	$p$	$q$	$r$
Attitude	0	$\theta_e$	0	$\phi$	$\theta$	$\psi$

moments acting on the airframe are in balance and sum to zero. This initial condition is usually referred to as *trimmed equilibrium*.

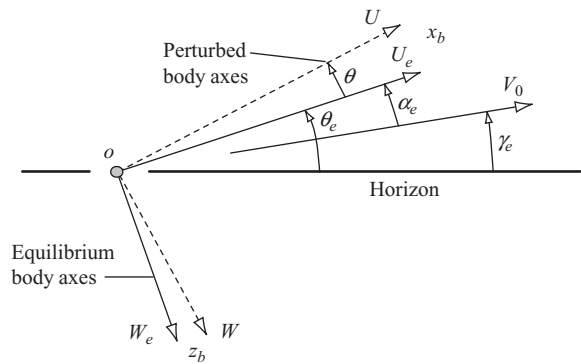
Whenever the aircraft is disturbed from equilibrium the force and moment balance is upset and the resulting transient motion is quantified in terms of the perturbation variables. The perturbation variables are shown in Fig. 2.3 and summarised in Table 2.1.

The positive sense of the variables is determined by the choice of a right handed axis system. Components of linear quantities, force, velocity, etc., are positive when their direction of action is the same as the direction of the axis to which they relate. The positive sense of the components of rotary quantities, moment, velocity, attitude, etc. is a right handed rotation and may be determined as follows. Positive *roll* about the  $ox$  axis is such that the  $oy$  axis moves towards the  $oz$  axis, positive *pitch* about the  $oy$  axis is such that the  $oz$  axis moves towards the  $ox$  axis and positive *yaw* about the  $oz$  axis is such that the  $ox$  axis moves towards the  $oy$  axis. Therefore, positive roll is right wing down, positive pitch is nose up and positive yaw is nose to the right as seen by the pilot.

A simple description of the perturbation variables is given in Table 2.2. The intention is to provide some insight into the physical meaning of the many variables used in the model. Note that the components of the total linear velocity perturbations

**Table 2.2** *The perturbation variables*

$X$	Axial “drag” force	Sum of the components of
$Y$	Side force	aerodynamic, thrust and
$Z$	Normal “lift” force	weight forces
$L$	Rolling moment	Sum of the components of
$M$	Pitching moment	aerodynamic, thrust and
$N$	Yawing moment	weight moments
$p$	Roll rate	Components of angular
$q$	Pitch rate	velocity
$r$	Yaw rate	
$U$	Axial velocity	Total linear velocity
$V$	Lateral velocity	components of the $cg$
$W$	Normal velocity	



**Figure 2.4** *Generalised body axes in symmetric flight.*

( $U$ ,  $V$ ,  $W$ ) are given by the sum of the steady equilibrium components and the transient perturbation components ( $u$ ,  $v$ ,  $w$ ) thus,

$$\begin{aligned} U &= U_e + u \\ V &= V_e + v \\ W &= W_e + w \end{aligned} \tag{2.1}$$

**2.2.4 Angular relationships in symmetric flight**

Since it is assumed that the aircraft is in steady rectilinear, but not necessarily level flight, and that the axes fixed in the aircraft are body axes then it is useful to relate the steady and perturbed angles as shown in Fig. 2.4.

With reference to Fig. 2.4, the steady velocity vector  $V_0$  defines the flight path and  $\gamma_e$  is the steady flight path angle. As before,  $\alpha_e$  is the steady body incidence and  $\theta_e$  is the steady pitch attitude of the aircraft. The relative angular change in a perturbation is also shown in Fig. 2.4 where it is implied that the axes have moved with the airframe

and the motion is viewed at some instant during the disturbance. Thus the steady flight path angle is given by

$$\gamma_e = \theta_e - \alpha_e \quad (2.2)$$

In the case when the aircraft fixed axes are wind axes rather than body axes then,

$$a_e = 0 \quad (2.3)$$

and in the special case when the axes are wind axes and when the initial condition is level flight,

$$\alpha_e = \theta_e = 0 \quad (2.4)$$

It is also useful to note that the perturbation in pitch attitude  $\theta$  and the perturbation in body incidence  $\alpha$  are the same thus, it is convenient to write,

$$\tan(\alpha_e + \theta) \equiv \tan(\alpha_e + \alpha) = \frac{W}{U} \equiv \frac{W_e + w}{U_e + u} \quad (2.5)$$

### 2.2.5 Choice of axes

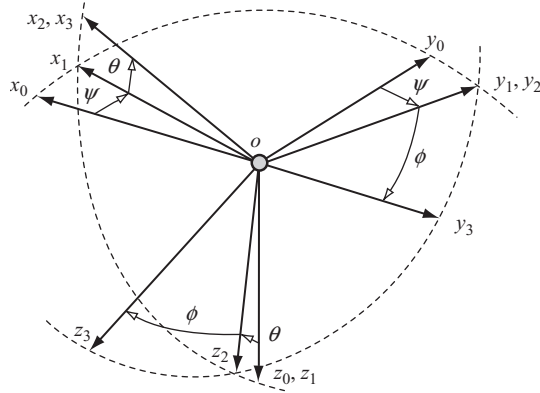
Having reviewed the definition of aircraft fixed axis systems an obvious question must be: *when is it appropriate to use wind axes and when is it appropriate to use body axes?* The answer to this question depends on the use to which the equations of motion are to be put. The best choice of axes simply facilitates the analysis of the equations of motion. When starting from first principles it is preferable to use generalised body axes since the resulting equations can cater for most applications. It is then reasonably straightforward to simplify the equations to a wind axis form if the application warrants it. On the other hand, to extend wind axis based equations to cater for the more general case is not as easy.

When dealing with numerical data for an existing aircraft it is not always obvious which axis system has been used in the derivation of the model. However, by reference to equation (2.3) or (2.4) and the quoted values of  $\alpha_e$  and  $\theta_e$  it should become obvious which axis system has been used.

When it is necessary to make experimental measurements in an actual aircraft, or in a model, which are to be used subsequently in the equations of motion it is preferable to use a generalised body axis system. Since the measuring equipment is installed in the aircraft its location is precisely known in terms of body axis coordinates which, therefore, determines the best choice of axis system. In a similar way, most aerodynamic measurements and computations are referenced to the free stream velocity vector. For example, in wind tunnel work the obvious reference is the tunnel axis which is coincident with the velocity vector. Thus, for aerodynamic investigations involving the equations of motion a wind axis reference is to be preferred. Traditionally all aerodynamic data for use in the equations of motion are referenced to wind axes.

Thus, to summarise, it is not particularly important which axis system is chosen provided it models the flight condition to be investigated, the end result does not depend on the choice of axis system. However, when compiling data for use in the equations of motion of an aircraft it is quite common for some data to be referred





**Figure 2.5** *The Euler angles.*

to wind axes and for some data to be referred to body axes. It therefore becomes necessary to have available the mathematical tools for transforming data between different reference axes.

### 2.3 EULER ANGLES AND AIRCRAFT ATTITUDE

The angles defined by the right handed rotation about the three axes of a right handed system of axes are called *Euler angles*. The sense of the rotations and the order in which the rotations are considered about the three axes in turn are very important since angles do not obey the commutative law. The attitude of an aircraft is defined as the angular orientation of the airframe fixed axes with respect to earth axes. Attitude angles, therefore, are a particular application of Euler angles. With reference to Fig. 2.5 ( $ox_0y_0z_0$ ) are datum or reference axes and ( $ox_3y_3z_3$ ) are aircraft fixed axes, either generalised body axes or wind axes. The attitude of the aircraft, with respect to the datum axes, may be established by considering the rotation about each axis in turn required to bring ( $ox_3y_3z_3$ ) into coincidence with ( $ox_0y_0z_0$ ). Thus, first rotate about  $ox_3$  through the *roll* angle  $\phi$  to ( $ox_2y_2z_2$ ). Second, rotate about  $oy_2$  through the *pitch* angle  $\theta$  to ( $ox_1y_1z_1$ ) and third, rotate about  $oz_1$  through the *yaw* angle  $\psi$  to ( $ox_0y_0z_0$ ). Clearly, when the attitude of the aircraft is considered with respect to earth axes then ( $ox_0y_0z_0$ ) and ( $ox_Ey_Ez_E$ ) are coincident.

### 2.4 AXES TRANSFORMATIONS

It is frequently necessary to transform motion variables and other parameters from one system of axes to another. Clearly, the angular relationships used to describe attitude may be generalised to describe the angular orientation of one set of axes with respect to another. A typical example might be to transform components of linear velocity from aircraft wind axes to body axes. Thus, with reference to Fig. 2.5, ( $ox_0y_0z_0$ ) may be used to describe the velocity components in wind axes, ( $ox_3y_3z_3$ ) may be used to describe the components of velocity in body axes and the angles ( $\phi$ ,  $\theta$ ,  $\psi$ ) then describe the generalised angular orientation of one set of axes with respect to the

other. It is usual to retain the angular description of *roll*, *pitch* and *yaw* although the angles do not necessarily describe attitude strictly in accordance with the definition given in Section 2.3.

### 2.4.1 Linear quantities transformation

Let, for example,  $(ox_3, oy_3, oz_3)$  represent components of a linear quantity in the axis system  $(ox_3y_3z_3)$  and let  $(ox_0, oy_0, oz_0)$  represent components of the same linear quantity transformed into the axis system  $(ox_0y_0z_0)$ . The linear quantities of interest would be, for example, acceleration, velocity, displacement, etc. Resolving through each rotation in turn and in the correct order then, with reference to Fig. 2.5, it may be shown that:

- (i) after *rolling* about  $ox_3$  through the angle  $\phi$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} ox_3 &= ox_2 \\ oy_3 &= oy_2 \cos \phi + oz_2 \sin \phi \\ oz_3 &= -oy_2 \sin \phi + oz_2 \cos \phi \end{aligned} \quad (2.6)$$

Alternatively, writing equation (2.6) in the more convenient matrix form,

$$\begin{bmatrix} ox_3 \\ oy_3 \\ oz_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \cos \phi & \sin \phi \\ 0 & -\sin \phi & \cos \phi \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} ox_2 \\ oy_2 \\ oz_2 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.7)$$

- (ii) similarly, after *pitching* about  $oy_2$  through the angle  $\theta$ ,

$$\begin{bmatrix} ox_2 \\ oy_2 \\ oz_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \theta & 0 & -\sin \theta \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \sin \theta & 0 & \cos \theta \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} ox_1 \\ oy_1 \\ oz_1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.8)$$

- (iii) and after *yawing* about  $oz_1$  through the angle  $\psi$ ,

$$\begin{bmatrix} ox_1 \\ oy_1 \\ oz_1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \psi & \sin \psi & 0 \\ -\sin \psi & \cos \psi & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} ox_0 \\ oy_0 \\ oz_0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.9)$$

By repeated substitution equations (2.7), (2.8) and (2.9) may be combined to give the required transformation relationship

$$\begin{bmatrix} ox_3 \\ oy_3 \\ oz_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \cos \phi & \sin \phi \\ 0 & -\sin \phi & \cos \phi \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \cos \theta & 0 & -\sin \theta \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \sin \theta & 0 & \cos \theta \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \cos \psi & \sin \psi & 0 \\ -\sin \psi & \cos \psi & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} ox_0 \\ oy_0 \\ oz_0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.10)$$

or

$$\begin{bmatrix} ox_3 \\ oy_3 \\ oz_3 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{D} \begin{bmatrix} ox_0 \\ oy_0 \\ oz_0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.11)$$

where the *direction cosine matrix*  $\mathbf{D}$  is given by,

$$\mathbf{D} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \theta \cos \psi & \cos \theta \sin \psi & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \phi \sin \theta \cos \psi & \sin \phi \sin \theta \sin \psi & \sin \phi \cos \theta \\ -\cos \phi \sin \psi & +\cos \phi \cos \psi & \\ \cos \phi \sin \theta \cos \psi & \cos \phi \sin \theta \sin \psi & \cos \phi \cos \theta \\ +\sin \phi \sin \psi & -\sin \phi \cos \psi & \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.12)$$

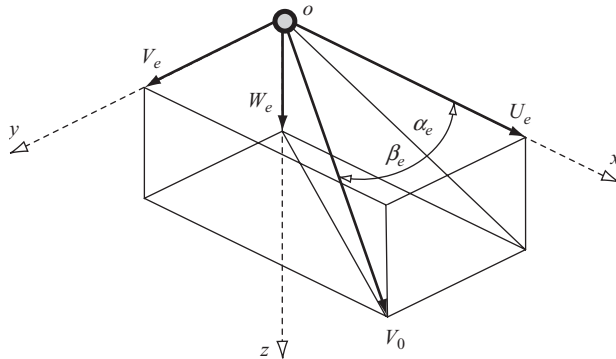
As shown, equation (2.11) transforms linear quantities from  $(ox_0y_0z_0)$  to  $(ox_3y_3z_3)$ . By inverting the direction cosine matrix  $\mathbf{D}$  the transformation from  $(ox_3y_3z_3)$  to  $(ox_0y_0z_0)$  is obtained as given by equation (2.13):

$$\begin{bmatrix} ox_0 \\ oy_0 \\ oz_0 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{D}^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} ox_3 \\ oy_3 \\ oz_3 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.13)$$

### Example 2.1

To illustrate the use of equation (2.11) consider the very simple example in which it is required to resolve the velocity of the aircraft through both the incidence angle and the sideslip angle into aircraft axes. The situation prevailing is assumed to be steady and is shown in Fig. 2.6.

The axes  $(oxyz)$  are generalised aircraft body axes with velocity components  $U_e$ ,  $V_e$  and  $W_e$  respectively. The free stream velocity vector is  $V_0$  and the angles of incidence and sideslip are  $\alpha_e$  and  $\beta_e$  respectively. With reference to equation (2.11),



**Figure 2.6** Resolution of velocity through incidence and sideslip angles.

axes ( $oxyz$ ) correspond with axes ( $ox_3y_3z_3$ ) and  $V_0$  corresponds with  $ox_0$  of axes ( $ox_0y_0z_0$ ), therefore the following vector substitutions may be made:

$$(ox_0, oy_0, oz_0) = (V_0, 0, 0) \quad \text{and} \quad (ox_3, oy_3, oz_3) = (U_e, V_e, W_e)$$

and the angular correspondence means that the following substitution may be made:

$$(\phi, \theta, \psi) = (0, \alpha_e, -\beta_e)$$

Note that a positive sideslip angle is equivalent to a negative yaw angle. Thus making the substitutions in equation (2.9),

$$\begin{bmatrix} U_e \\ V_e \\ W_e \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha_e \cos \beta_e & -\cos \alpha_e \sin \beta_e & -\sin \alpha_e \\ \sin \beta_e & \cos \beta_e & 0 \\ \sin \alpha_e \cos \beta_e & -\sin \alpha_e \sin \beta_e & \cos \alpha_e \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} V_0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.14)$$

Or, equivalently,

$$\begin{aligned} U_e &= V_0 \cos \alpha_e \cos \beta_e \\ V_e &= V_0 \sin \beta_e \\ W_e &= V_0 \sin \alpha_e \cos \beta_e \end{aligned} \quad (2.15)$$

## Example 2.2

Another very useful application of the direction cosine matrix is to calculate height perturbations in terms of aircraft motion. Equation (2.13) may be used to relate the velocity components in aircraft axes to the corresponding components in earth axes as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{bmatrix} U_E \\ V_E \\ W_E \end{bmatrix} &= \mathbf{D}^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} U \\ V \\ W \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} \cos \psi \cos \theta & \cos \psi \sin \theta \sin \phi & \cos \psi \sin \theta \cos \phi \\ \sin \psi \cos \theta & \sin \psi \sin \theta \sin \phi & \sin \psi \sin \theta \cos \phi \\ -\sin \theta & \cos \theta \sin \phi & \cos \theta \cos \phi \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} U \\ V \\ W \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (2.16)$$

where  $U_E$ ,  $V_E$  and  $W_E$  are the perturbed total velocity components referred to earth axes. Now, since height is measured positive in the “upwards” direction, the rate of change of height due to the perturbation in aircraft motion is given by

$$\dot{h} = -W_E$$

Whence, from equation (2.16),

$$\dot{h} = U \sin \theta - V \cos \theta \sin \phi - W \cos \theta \cos \phi \quad (2.17)$$

### 2.4.2 Angular velocities transformation

Probably the most useful angular quantities transformation relates the angular velocities  $p, q, r$  of the aircraft fixed axes to the resolved components of angular velocity, the attitude rates  $\dot{\phi}, \dot{\theta}, \dot{\psi}$  with respect to datum axes. The easiest way to deal with the algebra of this transformation whilst retaining a good grasp of the physical implications is to superimpose the angular rate vectors on to the axes shown in Fig. 2.5, and the result of this is shown in Fig. 2.7.

The angular *body rates*  $p, q, r$  are shown in the aircraft axes ( $ox_3y_3z_3$ ) then, considering each rotation in turn necessary to bring the aircraft axes into coincidence with the datum axes ( $ox_0y_0z_0$ ). First, *roll* about  $ox_3$  through the angle  $\phi$  with angular velocity  $\dot{\phi}$ . Second, *pitch* about  $oy_2$  through the angle  $\theta$  with angular velocity  $\dot{\theta}$ . And third, *yaw* about  $oz_1$  through the angle  $\psi$  with angular velocity  $\dot{\psi}$ . Again, it is most useful to refer the attitude rates to earth axes in which case the datum axes ( $ox_0y_0z_0$ ) are coincident with earth axes ( $oEx_Ey_Ez_E$ ). The *attitude rate* vectors are clearly shown in Fig. 2.7. The relationship between the aircraft body rates and the attitude rates, referred to datum axes, is readily established as follows:

- (i) Roll rate  $p$  is equal to the sum of the components of  $\dot{\phi}, \dot{\theta}, \dot{\psi}$  resolved along  $ox_3$ ,

$$p = \dot{\phi} - \dot{\psi} \sin \theta \quad (2.18)$$

- (ii) Pitch rate  $q$  is equal to the sum of the components of  $\dot{\phi}, \dot{\theta}, \dot{\psi}$  resolved along  $oy_3$ ,

$$q = \dot{\theta} \cos \phi + \dot{\psi} \sin \phi \cos \theta \quad (2.19)$$

- (iii) Yaw rate  $r$  is equal to the sum of the components of  $\dot{\phi}, \dot{\theta}, \dot{\psi}$  resolved along  $oz_3$ ,

$$r = \dot{\psi} \cos \phi \cos \theta - \dot{\theta} \sin \phi \quad (2.20)$$

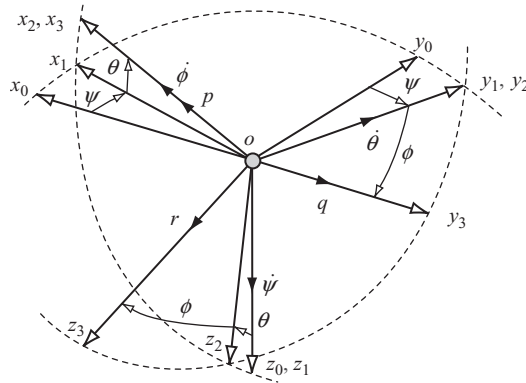


Figure 2.7 Angular rates transformation.

Equations (2.18), (2.19) and (2.20) may be combined into the convenient matrix notation

$$\begin{bmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -\sin \theta \\ 0 & \cos \phi & \sin \phi \cos \theta \\ 0 & -\sin \phi & \cos \phi \cos \theta \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{\phi} \\ \dot{\theta} \\ \dot{\psi} \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.21)$$

and the inverse of equation (2.21) is

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{\phi} \\ \dot{\theta} \\ \dot{\psi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \sin \phi \tan \theta & \cos \phi \tan \theta \\ 0 & \cos \phi & -\sin \phi \\ 0 & \sin \phi \sec \theta & \cos \phi \sec \theta \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.22)$$

When the aircraft perturbations are small, such that  $(\phi, \theta, \psi)$  may be treated as small angles, equations (2.21) and (2.22) may be approximated by

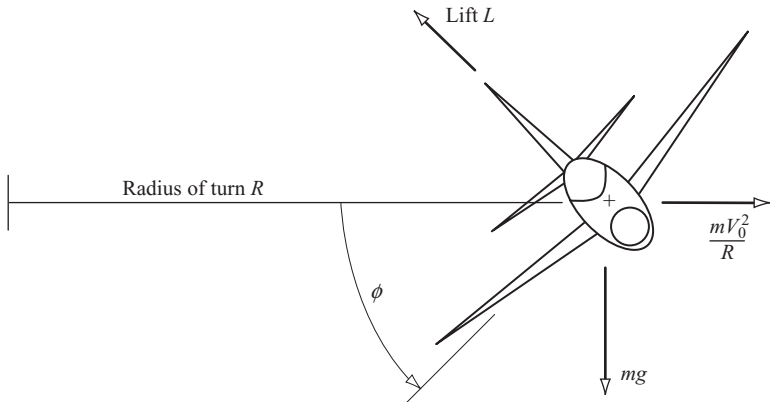
$$\begin{aligned} p &= \dot{\phi} \\ q &= \dot{\theta} \\ r &= \dot{\psi} \end{aligned} \quad (2.23)$$

### Example 2.3

To illustrate the use of the angular velocities transformation, consider the situation when an aircraft is flying in a steady level coordinated turn at a speed of 250 m/s at a bank angle of  $60^\circ$ . It is required to calculate the turn rate  $\dot{\psi}$ , the yaw rate  $r$  and the pitch rate  $q$ . The forces acting on the aircraft are shown in Fig. 2.8.

By resolving the forces acting on the aircraft vertically and horizontally and eliminating the lift  $L$  between the two resulting equations it is easily shown that the radius of turn is given by

$$R = \frac{V_0^2}{g \tan \phi} \quad (2.24)$$



**Figure 2.8** Aircraft in a steady banked turn.

The time to complete one turn is given by

$$t = \frac{2\pi R}{V_0} = \frac{2\pi V_0}{g \tan \phi} \quad (2.25)$$

therefore the rate of turn is given by

$$\dot{\psi} = \frac{2\pi}{t} = \frac{g \tan \phi}{V_0} \quad (2.26)$$

Thus,  $\dot{\psi} = 0.068 \text{ rad/s}$ . For the conditions applying to the turn,  $\dot{\phi} = \dot{\theta} = \theta = 0$  and thus equation (2.21) may now be used to find the values of  $r$  and  $q$ :

$$\begin{bmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \cos 60^\circ & \sin 60^\circ \\ 0 & -\sin 60^\circ & \cos 60^\circ \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \dot{\psi} \end{bmatrix}$$

Therefore,  $p = 0$ ,  $q = 0.059 \text{ rad/s}$  and  $r = 0.034 \text{ rad/s}$ . Note that  $p$ ,  $q$  and  $r$  are the angular velocities that would be measured by rate gyros fixed in the aircraft with their sensitive axes aligned with the  $ox$ ,  $oy$  and  $oz$  aircraft axes respectively.

## 2.5 AIRCRAFT REFERENCE GEOMETRY

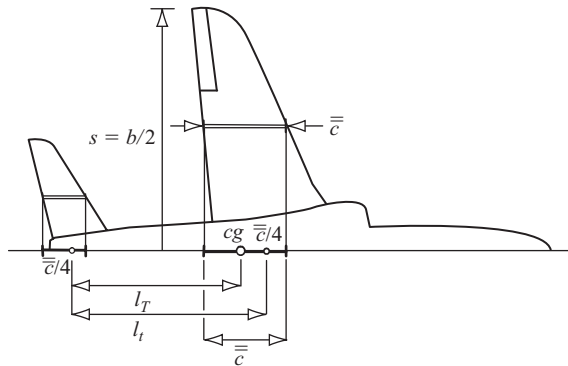
The description of the geometric layout of an aircraft is an essential part of the mathematical modelling process. For the purposes of flight dynamics analysis it is convenient that the geometry of the aircraft can be adequately described by a small number of dimensional reference parameters which are defined and illustrated in Fig. 2.9.

### 2.5.1 Wing area

The reference area is usually the gross plan area of the wing, including that part within the fuselage, and is denoted  $S$ :

$$S = b\bar{c} \quad (2.27)$$

where  $b$  is the wing span and  $\bar{c}$  is the standard mean chord of the wing.



**Figure 2.9** Longitudinal reference geometry.

### 2.5.2 Mean aerodynamic chord

The *mean aerodynamic chord* of the wing (*mac*) is denoted  $\bar{\bar{c}}$  and is defined:

$$\bar{\bar{c}} = \frac{\int_{-s}^s c_y^2 dy}{\int_{-s}^s c_y dy} \quad (2.28)$$

The reference *mac* is located on the centre line of the aircraft by projecting  $\bar{\bar{c}}$  from its spanwise location as shown in Fig. 2.9. Thus for a swept wing the leading edge of the *mac* lies aft of the leading edge of the root chord of the wing. The *mac* represents the location of the root chord of a rectangular wing which has the same aerodynamic influence on the aircraft as the actual wing. Traditionally *mac* is used in stability and control studies since a number of important aerodynamic reference centres are located on it.

### 2.5.3 Standard mean chord

The *standard mean chord* of the wing (*smc*) is effectively the same as the geometric mean chord and is denoted  $\bar{c}$ . For a wing of symmetric planform it is defined:

$$\bar{c} = \frac{\int_{-s}^s c_y dy}{\int_{-s}^s dy} \quad (2.29)$$

where  $s = b/2$  is the semi-span and  $c_y$  is the local chord at spanwise coordinate  $y$ . For a straight tapered wing equation (2.29) simplifies to

$$\bar{c} = \frac{S}{b} \quad (2.30)$$

The reference *smc* is located on the centre line of the aircraft by projecting  $\bar{c}$  from its spanwise location in the same way that the *mac* is located. Thus for a swept wing the leading edge of the *smc* also lies aft of the leading edge of the root chord of the wing. The *smc* is the mean chord preferred by aircraft designers since it relates very simply to the geometry of the aircraft. For most aircraft the *smc* and *mac* are sufficiently similar in length and location that they are practically interchangeable. It is quite common to find references that quote a mean chord without specifying which. This is not good practice although the error incurred by assuming the wrong chord is rarely serious. However, the reference chord used in any application should always be clearly defined at the outset.

### 2.5.4 Aspect ratio

The aspect ratio of the aircraft wing is a measure of its spanwise slenderness and is denoted  $A$  and is defined as follows:

$$A = \frac{b^2}{S} = \frac{b}{\bar{c}} \quad (2.31)$$



### 2.5.5 Centre of gravity location

The centre of gravity,  $cg$ , of an aircraft is usually located on the reference chord as indicated in Fig. 2.9. Its position is quoted as a fraction of  $\bar{c}$  (or  $\bar{c}$ ), denoted  $h$ , and is measured from the leading edge of the reference chord as shown. The  $cg$  position varies as a function of aircraft loading, the typical variation being in the range 10–40% of  $\bar{c}$ . Or, equivalently,  $0.1 \leq h \leq 0.4$ .

### 2.5.6 Tail moment arm and tail volume ratio

The  $mac$  of the horizontal tailplane, or foreplane, is defined and located in the airframe in the same way as the  $mac$  of the wing as indicated in Fig. 2.9. The wing and tailplane aerodynamic forces and moments are assumed to act at their respective aerodynamic centres which, to a good approximation, lie at the quarter chord points of the  $mac$  of the wing and tailplane respectively. The tail moment arm  $l_T$  is defined as the longitudinal distance between the centre of gravity and the aerodynamic centre of the tailplane as shown in Fig. 2.9. The *tail volume ratio*  $\bar{V}_T$  is an important geometric parameter and is defined:

$$\bar{V}_T = \frac{S_T l_T}{S \bar{c}} \quad (2.32)$$

where  $S_T$  is the gross area of the tailplane and  $mac \bar{c}$  is the longitudinal reference length. Typically, the tail volume ratio has a value in the range  $0.5 \leq \bar{V}_T \leq 1.3$  and is a measure of the aerodynamic effectiveness of the tailplane as a stabilising device.

Sometimes, especially in stability and control studies, it is convenient to measure the longitudinal tail moment about the aerodynamic centre of the  $mac$  of the wing. In this case the tail moment arm is denoted  $l_t$ , as shown in Fig. 2.9, and a slightly modified tail volume ratio is defined.

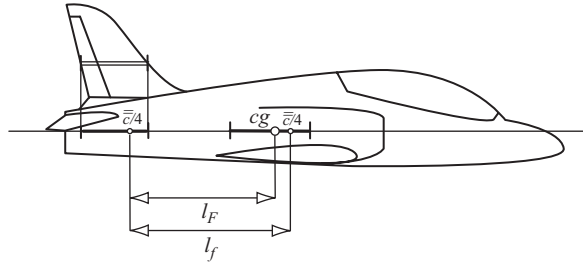
### 2.5.7 Fin moment arm and fin volume ratio

The  $mac$  of the fin is defined and located in the airframe in the same way as the  $mac$  of the wing as indicated in Fig. 2.10. As for the tailplane, the fin moment arm  $l_F$  is defined as the longitudinal distance between the centre of gravity and the aerodynamic centre of the fin as shown in Fig. 2.10. The *fin volume ratio*  $\bar{V}_F$  is also an important geometric parameter and is defined:

$$\bar{V}_F = \frac{S_F l_F}{S b} \quad (2.33)$$

where  $S_F$  is the gross area of the fin and the wing span  $b$  is the lateral-directional reference length. Again, the fin volume ratio is a measure of the aerodynamic effectiveness of the fin as a directional stabilising device.

As stated above it is sometimes convenient to measure the longitudinal moment of the aerodynamic forces acting at the fin about the aerodynamic centre of the  $mac$  of the wing. In this case the fin moment arm is denoted  $l_f$  as shown in Fig. 2.10.



**Figure 2.10** *Fin moment arm.*

## 2.6 CONTROLS NOTATION

### 2.6.1 Aerodynamic controls

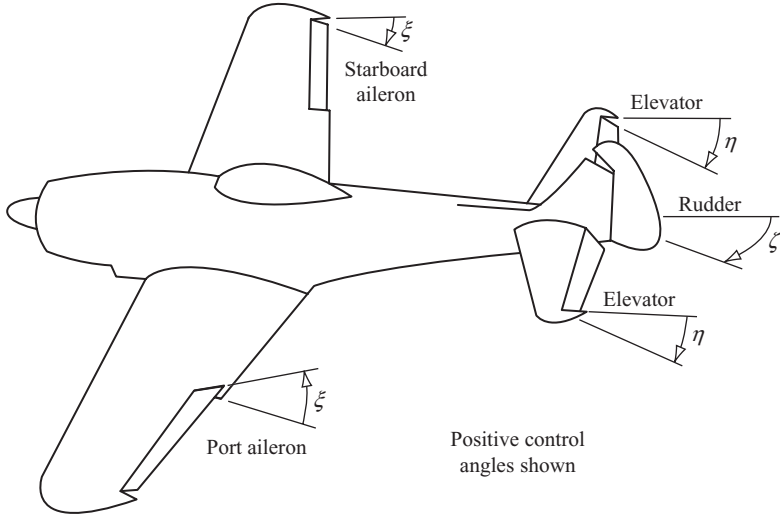
Sometimes it appears that some confusion exists with respect to the correct notation applying to aerodynamic controls, especially when unconventional control surfaces are used. Hopkin (1970) defines a notation which is intended to be generally applicable but, since a very large number of combinations of control motivators is possible the notation relating to control inceptors may become ill defined and hence application dependent. However, for the conventional aircraft there is a universally accepted notation, which accords with Hopkin (1970), and it is simple to apply. Generally, a positive *control action* by the pilot gives rise to a positive aircraft response, whereas a positive *control surface displacement* gives rise to a negative aircraft response. Thus:

- (i) **In roll:** positive right push force on the stick  $\Rightarrow$  positive stick displacement  $\Rightarrow$  right aileron up and left aileron down (negative mean)  $\Rightarrow$  right wing down roll response (positive).
- (ii) **In pitch:** positive pull force on the stick  $\Rightarrow$  positive aft stick displacement  $\Rightarrow$  elevator trailing edge up (negative)  $\Rightarrow$  nose up pitch response (positive).
- (iii) **In yaw:** positive push force on the right rudder pedal  $\Rightarrow$  positive rudder bar displacement  $\Rightarrow$  rudder trailing edge displaced to the right (negative)  $\Rightarrow$  nose to the right yaw response (positive).

Roll and pitch control stick displacements are denoted  $\delta_\xi$  and  $\delta_\eta$  respectively and rudder pedal displacement is denoted  $\delta_\zeta$ . Aileron, elevator and rudder surface displacements are denoted  $\xi$ ,  $\eta$  and  $\zeta$  respectively as indicated in Fig. 2.11. It should be noted that since ailerons act differentially the displacement  $\xi$  is usually taken as the mean value of the separate displacements of each aileron.

### 2.6.2 Engine control

Engine thrust  $\tau$  is controlled by throttle lever displacement  $\varepsilon$ . Positive throttle lever displacement is usually in the forward push sense and results in a positive increase in



**Figure 2.11** Aerodynamic controls notation.

thrust. For a turbojet engine the relationship between thrust and throttle lever angle is approximated by a simple first order lag transfer function:

$$\frac{\tau(s)}{\varepsilon(s)} = \frac{k_\tau}{(1 + sT_\tau)} \quad (2.34)$$

where  $k_\tau$  is a suitable gain constant and  $T_\tau$  is the lag time constant which is typically of the order of 2–3 s.

## 2.7 AERODYNAMIC REFERENCE CENTRES

With reference to Fig. 2.12, the *centre of pressure*,  $cp$ , of an aerofoil, wing or complete aircraft is the point at which the resultant aerodynamic force  $F$  acts. It is usual to resolve the force into the *lift* component perpendicular to the velocity vector and the *drag* component parallel to the velocity vector, denoted  $L$  and  $D$  respectively in the usual way. The  $cp$  is located on the *mac* and thereby determines an important aerodynamic reference centre.

Now simple theory establishes that the resultant aerodynamic force  $F$  generated by an aerofoil comprises two components, that due to camber  $F_c$  and that due to angle of attack  $F_\alpha$ , both of which resolve into lift and drag forces as indicated. The aerodynamic force due to camber is constant and acts at the midpoint of the aerofoil chord and for a symmetric aerofoil section this force is zero. The aerodynamic force due to angle of attack acts at the quarter chord point and varies directly with angle of attack at angles below the stall. This also explains why the zero lift angle of attack of a cambered aerofoil is usually a small negative value since, at this condition, the lift due



its location on the *mac* of a wing and is also used extensively for locating the *ac* on the *mac* of a wing–body combination without too much loss of validity. It should be appreciated that the complex aerodynamics of a wing and body combination might result in an *ac* location which is not at the quarter chord point although, typically, it would not be too far removed from that point.

## REFERENCES

- ESDU 1987: *Introduction to Aerodynamic Derivatives, Equations of Motion and Stability*. Engineering Sciences Data Unit, Data Item No. 86021. Aerodynamics Series, Vol. 9a, Stability of Aircraft. Engineering Sciences Data, ESDU International Ltd., 27 Corsham Street, London. [www.esdu.com](http://www.esdu.com).
- Etkin, B. 1972: *Dynamics of Atmospheric Flight*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, Inc.
- Hopkin, H.R. 1970: *A Scheme of Notation and Nomenclature for Aircraft Dynamics and Associated Aerodynamics*. Aeronautical Research Council, Reports and Memoranda No. 3562. Her Majesty's Stationery Office, London.
- McRuer, D. Ashkenas, I. and Graham, D. 1973: *Aircraft Dynamics and Automatic Control*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.

## PROBLEMS

1. A tailless aircraft of 9072 kg mass has a delta wing with aspect ratio 1 and area  $37 \text{ m}^2$ . Show that the aerodynamic mean chord

$$\bar{c} = \frac{\int_0^{\frac{b}{2}} c^2 dy}{\int_0^{\frac{b}{2}} c dy}$$

of a delta wing is two-thirds of its root chord and that for this wing it is 8.11 m. (CU 1983)

2. With the aid of a diagram describe the axes systems used in aircraft stability and control analysis. State the conditions when the use of each axis system might be preferred. (CU 1982)
3. Show that in a longitudinal symmetric small perturbation the components of aircraft weight resolved into the *ox* and *oz* axes are given by

$$X_g = -mg\theta \cos \theta_e - mg \sin \theta_e$$

$$Z_g = mg \cos \theta_e - mg\theta \sin \theta_e$$

where  $\theta$  is the perturbation in pitch attitude and  $\theta_e$  is the equilibrium pitch attitude. (CU 1982)

4. With the aid of a diagram showing a generalised set of aircraft body axes, define the parameter notation used in the mathematical modelling of aircraft motion. (CU 1982)
5. In the context of aircraft motion, what are the Euler angles? If the standard right handed aircraft axis set is rotated through pitch  $\theta$  and yaw  $\psi$  angles only, show

that the initial vector quantity  $(x_0, y_0, z_0)$  is related to the transformed vector quantity  $(x, y, z)$  as follows:

$$\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \theta \cos \psi & \cos \theta \sin \psi & -\sin \theta \\ -\sin \psi & \cos \psi & 0 \\ \sin \theta \cos \psi & \sin \theta \sin \psi & \cos \theta \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_0 \\ y_0 \\ z_0 \end{bmatrix}$$

(CU 1982)

6. Define the span, gross area, aspect ratio and mean aerodynamic chord of an aircraft wing. (CU 2001)
7. Distinguish between the centre of pressure and the aerodynamic centre of an aerofoil. Explain why the pitching moment about the quarter chord point of an aerofoil is nominally constant in subsonic flight. (CU 2001)

---

## Chapter 3

# Static Equilibrium and Trim

### 3.1 TRIM EQUILIBRIUM

#### 3.1.1 Preliminary considerations

In normal flight it is usual for the pilot to adjust the controls of an aircraft such that on releasing the controls it continues to fly at the chosen flight condition. By this means the pilot is relieved of the tedium of constantly maintaining the control inputs and the associated control forces which may be tiring. The aircraft is then said to be *trimmed*, and the trim state defines the initial condition about which the dynamics of interest may be studied. Thus all aircraft are equipped with the means for pre-setting or adjusting the *datum* or *trim* setting of the primary control surfaces. The ailerons, elevator and rudder are all fitted with *trim tabs* which, in all except the smallest aircraft, may be adjusted from the cockpit in flight. However, all aircraft are fitted with a continuously adjustable elevator trim tab. It is an essential requirement that an aircraft must be stable if it is to remain in equilibrium following trimming. In particular, the static stability characteristics about all three axes largely determine the *trimmability* of an aircraft. Thus static stability is concerned with the control actions required to establish equilibrium and with the characteristics required to ensure that the aircraft remains in equilibrium. Dynamic stability is also important of course, and largely determines the characteristics of the transient motion, following a disturbance, about a trimmed flight condition.

The object of trimming is to bring the forces and moments acting on the aircraft into a state of equilibrium. That is the condition when the axial, normal and side forces, and the roll, pitch and yaw moments are all zero. The force balance is often expressed approximately as the requirement for the lift to equal the weight and the thrust to equal the drag. Provided that the aircraft is stable it will then stay in equilibrium until it is disturbed by pilot control inputs or by external influences such as turbulence. The transient motion following such a disturbance is characterised by the dynamic stability characteristics and the stable aircraft will eventually settle into its equilibrium state once more. The maintenance of trimmed equilibrium requires the correct simultaneous adjustment of the main flight variables in all six degrees of freedom and is dependent on airspeed or Mach number, flight path angle, airframe configuration, weight and centre of gravity (*cg*) position. As these parameters change during the course of a typical flight so trim adjustments are made as necessary. Fortunately, the task of trimming an aircraft is not as challenging as it might at first seem. The symmetry of a typical airframe confers symmetric aerodynamic properties on the airframe that usually reduces the task to that of longitudinal trim only. Lateral-directional trim adjustments are only likely to be required when the aerodynamic symmetry is lost, due to loss of an engine in a multi-engined aircraft, for example.

Lateral-directional stability is designed-in to most aircraft and ensures that in roll the aircraft remains at *wings level* and that in yaw it tends to *weathercock* into the wind when the ailerons and rudder are at their zero or datum positions. Thus, under normal circumstances the aircraft will naturally seek lateral-directional equilibrium without interference by the pilot. This applies even when significant changes are made to airspeed, configuration, weight and *cg* position, for example, since the symmetry of the airframe is retained throughout. However, such variations in flight condition can lead to dramatic changes in longitudinal trim.

Longitudinal trim involves the simultaneous adjustment of elevator angle and thrust to give the required airspeed and flight path angle for a given airframe configuration. Equilibrium is achievable only if the aircraft is longitudinally stable and the control actions to trim depend on the *degree* of longitudinal static stability. Since the longitudinal flight condition is continuously variable it is very important that trimmed equilibrium is possible at all conditions. For this reason considerable emphasis is given to ensuring adequate longitudinal static stability and trim control. Because of their importance *static stability* and *trim* are often interpreted to mean *longitudinal static stability* and *trim*.

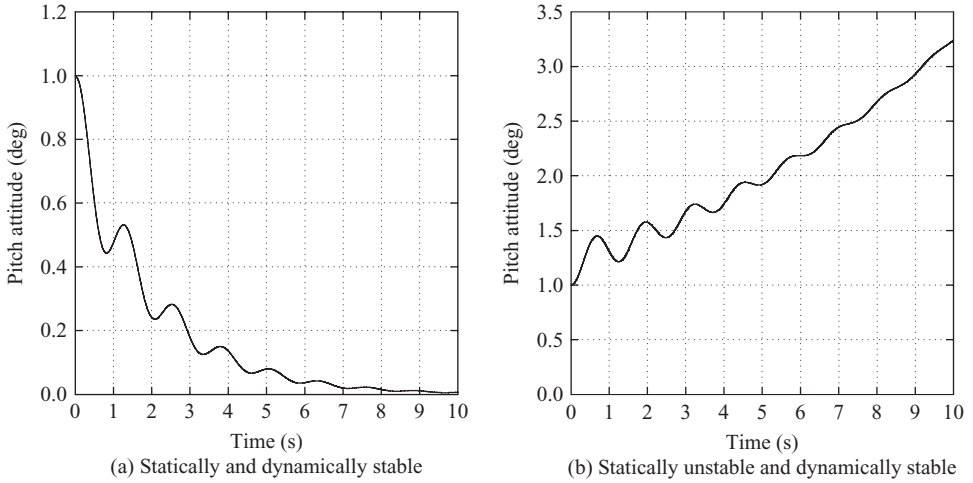
The commonly used theory of longitudinal static stability was developed by Gates and Lyon (1944), and derives from a full, static and dynamic, stability analysis of the equations of motion of an aircraft. An excellent and accessible summary of the findings of Gates and Lyon is given in Duncan (1959) and also in Babister (1961). In the interests of understanding and physical interpretation the theory is often reduced to a linearised form retaining only the principal aerodynamic and configuration parameters. It is in this simplest form that the theory is reviewed here since it is only required as the basis on which to build the small perturbation dynamics model. It is important to appreciate that although the longitudinal static stability model is described only in terms of the aerodynamic properties of the airframe, the control and trim properties as seen by the pilot must conform to the same physical interpretation even when they are augmented by a flight control system. It is also important to note that static and dynamic stability are, in reality, inseparable. However, the separate treatment of static stability is a useful means for introducing the concept of stability insofar as it determines the control and trim characteristics of the aircraft.

### 3.1.2 Conditions for stability

The static stability of an aircraft is commonly interpreted to describe its tendency to converge on the initial equilibrium condition following a small disturbance from trim. Dynamic stability, on the other hand, describes the transient motion involved in the process of recovering equilibrium following the disturbance. Fig. 3.1 includes two illustrations showing the effects of static stability and static instability in an otherwise dynamically stable aircraft. Following an initial disturbance displacement, for example in pitch, at time  $t = 0$  the subsequent response time history is shown and is clearly dependent on the stability of the aircraft. It should be noted that the damping of the dynamic oscillatory component of the responses shown was deliberately chosen to be low in order to best illustrate the static and dynamic stability characteristics.

In establishing trim equilibrium the pilot adjusts the elevator angle and thrust to obtain a lift force sufficient to support the weight and thrust sufficient to balance





**Figure 3.1** *Stability.*

the drag at the desired speed and flight path angle. Since the airframe is symmetric the equilibrium side force is of course zero. Provided that the speed is above the minimum drag speed then the force balance will remain stable with speed. Therefore, the static stability of the aircraft reduces to a consideration of the effects of angular disturbances about the three axes. Following such a disturbance the aerodynamic forces and moments will no longer be in equilibrium, and in a statically stable aircraft the resultant moments will cause the aircraft to converge on its initial condition. The condition for an aircraft to be statically stable is therefore easily deduced.

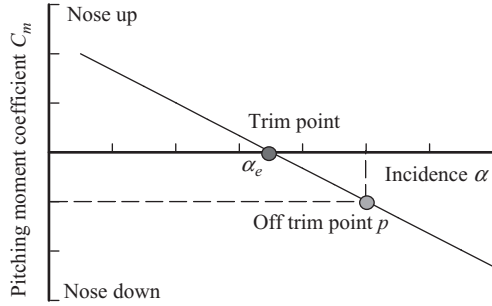
Consider a positive pitch, or incidence, disturbance from equilibrium. This is in the nose up sense and results in an increase in incidence  $\alpha$  and hence in lift coefficient  $C_L$ . In a stable aircraft the resulting pitching moment must be restoring, that is, in the negative or nose down sense. And of course the converse must be true following a nose down disturbance. Thus the condition for longitudinal static stability may be determined by plotting pitching moment  $M$ , or pitching moment coefficient  $C_m$ , for variation in incidence  $\alpha$  about the trim value  $\alpha_e$  as shown in Fig. 3.2. The nose up disturbance increases  $\alpha$  and takes the aircraft to the out-of-trim point  $p$  where the pitching moment coefficient becomes negative and is therefore restoring. Clearly, a nose down disturbance leads to the same conclusion. As indicated, the aircraft is stable when the slope of this plot is negative. Thus, the condition for stable trim at incidence  $\alpha_e$  may be expressed:

$$C_m = 0 \quad (3.1)$$

and

$$\frac{dC_m}{d\alpha} < 0 \quad (3.2)$$

The above observation is only strictly valid when it is assumed that the aerodynamic force and moment coefficients are functions of incidence only. This is usually



**Figure 3.2** *Pitching moment variation with incidence for a stable aircraft.*

an acceptable approximation for subsonic aircraft and, indeed, the plot of pitching moment coefficient against incidence may well be very nearly linear as shown in Fig. 3.2. However, this argument becomes increasingly inappropriate with increasing Mach number. As compressibility effects become significant so the aerodynamic force and moment coefficients become functions of both incidence and Mach number. When this occurs equation (3.2) may not always guarantee that stable trim can be obtained. The rather more complex analysis by Gates and Lyon (1944) takes speed effects into account and defines a general requirement for longitudinal static stability as

$$\frac{dC_m}{dC_L} < 0 \quad (3.3)$$

For subsonic aircraft equations (3.2) and (3.3) are completely interchangeable since  $\alpha$  and  $C_L$  are linearly, or very nearly linearly, related by the lift curve slope  $a$ .

In a similar way the conditions for lateral-directional static stability may be deduced as

$$\frac{dC_l}{d\phi} < 0 \quad (3.4)$$

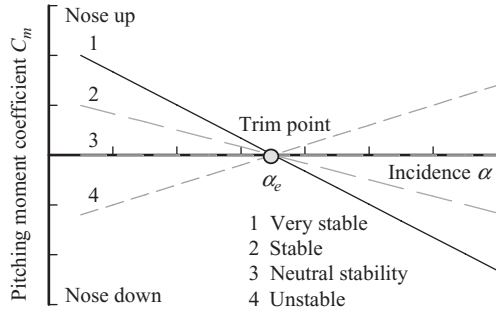
and

$$\frac{dC_n}{d\beta} > 0 \quad (3.5)$$

where  $C_l$  and  $C_n$  are rolling moment and yawing moment coefficients respectively and  $\phi$  and  $\beta$  are roll angle and sideslip angle respectively.

### 3.1.3 Degree of stability

It was shown above that the condition for an aircraft to possess static stability about all three axes at a given trim condition is that the gradients of the  $C_m$ - $\alpha$  and  $C_l$ - $\phi$  plots must be negative, whilst the gradient of the  $C_n$ - $\beta$  plot must be positive. Now, obviously, a very large range of values of the gradients is possible and the magnitude



**Figure 3.3** *The degree of longitudinal static stability.*

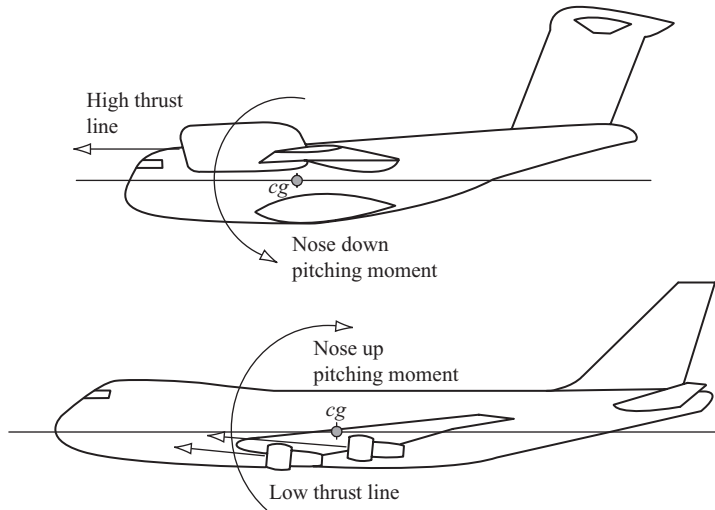
of the gradient determines the *degree of stability* possessed by the aircraft. Variation in the degree of longitudinal static stability is illustrated in Fig. 3.3. The degree of stability is described in terms of *stability margin* which quantifies how much stability the aircraft has over and above zero or neutral stability. Thus, for example, the longitudinal static stability margin is directly related to the gradient of the  $C_m$ - $\alpha$  plot.

With reference to Fig. 3.3 and for a given disturbance in  $\alpha$  it is clear that the corresponding restoring pitching moment  $C_m$  is greatest for a very stable aircraft. The magnitude of the restoring moment decreases as the degree of stability, or stability margin, is reduced and becomes zero at neutral stability. Clearly, when the aircraft is unstable the moment is of the opposite sign and is therefore divergent. Thus the higher the degree of stability the greater is the restoring moment following a disturbance. This means that a very stable aircraft will be very resistant to upset. This in turn means that greater control actions will be needed to encourage the aircraft to change its trim state or to manoeuvre. It follows then, that the stability margins determine the magnitude of the control actions required to trim the aircraft. It is easy to appreciate that a consequence of this is that too much stability can be as hazardous as too little stability since the available control power is limited.

As mentioned before, the lateral-directional static stability of the aircraft is usually fixed by design and usually remains more or less constant throughout the flight envelope. The lateral-directional stability margins therefore remain substantially constant for all flight conditions. This situation may well break down when large amplitude manoeuvring is considered. Under such circumstances normally linear aerodynamic behaviour may well become very non-linear and cause dramatic changes to observed lateral-directional stability and control characteristics. Although of considerable interest to the flight dynamicist, non-linear behaviour is beyond the scope of this book and constant lateral-directional static stability is assumed throughout.

### 3.1.4 Variation in stability

Changes in the aerodynamic operating conditions of an aircraft which result in pitching moment changes inevitably lead to variation in longitudinal static stability. Such variation in stability is normally manifest as a non-linear version of the  $C_m$ - $C_L$  characteristic shown in Fig. 3.2. For the subsonic classical aircraft such changes are usually



**Figure 3.4** Typical thrust line effects on pitching moment.

small and may result in some non-linearity of the pitching moment characteristic with change in trim. In general the variation in the degree of stability is acceptably small. For the modern supersonic high performance aircraft the situation is not so well defined. Large flight envelopes and significant variation in flight condition can lead to dramatic changes in static stability. For example, it is possible for such an aircraft to be stable at some conditions and unstable at others. It is easy to see how such variations might arise in a physical sense, but it is much more difficult to describe the variations in mathematical terms. A brief review of some of the more obvious sources of variation in stability follows.

#### 3.1.4.1 Power effects

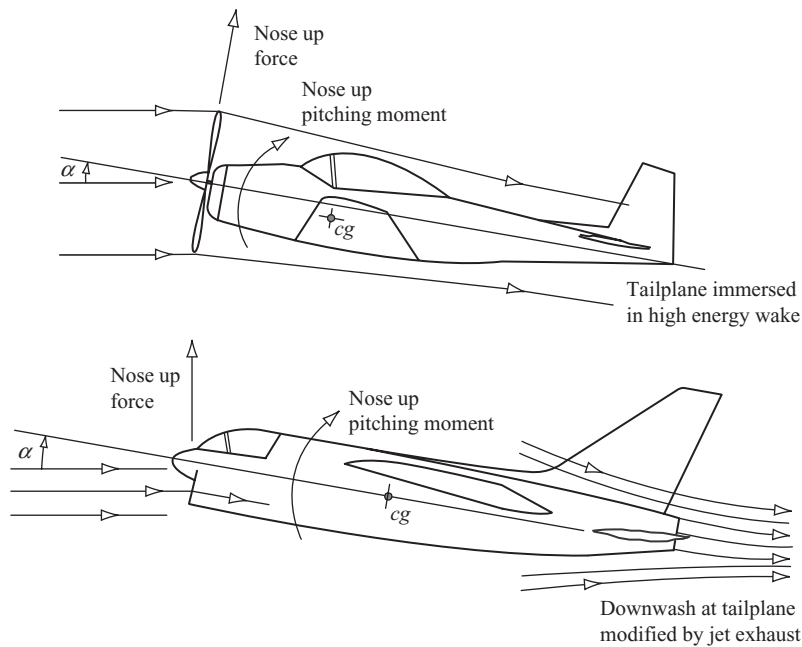
Probably the most significant variation in longitudinal static stability arises from the effects of power. Direct effects result from the point of application and line of action of the thrust forces with respect to the *cg*. Clearly, as illustrated in Fig. 3.4, a high thrust line results in a nose down pitching moment and *vice versa*. In normal trimmed flight the thrust moment is additive to the aerodynamic moment and the total pitching moment would be trimmed to zero by adjustment of the elevator. However, any aerodynamic perturbation about trim which results in a thrust perturbation is potentially capable of giving rise to a non-linear stability characteristic. The precise nature of the variation in stability is dependent on the operating characteristics of the installed power unit which may not be easy to identify.

Indirect power effects are caused by the induced flow associated with a propeller and its wake or the intake and exhaust of a gas turbine engine. Some of the more obvious induced flow effects are illustrated in Fig. 3.5. The process of turning the incident flow through the body incidence angle into the propeller disc or into the engine intake creates a normal force at the propeller or engine intake as shown. In general this effect gives rise to a nose up pitching moment. The magnitude of the normal force

is dependent on the body incidence angle and on the increase in flow energy at the propeller disc or engine intake. The force will therefore vary considerably with trim condition. The force is also sensitive to aerodynamic perturbations about trim; it is therefore easy to appreciate its contribution to pitching moment non-linearity.

The wake behind a propeller is a region of high energy flow which modifies the aerodynamic operating conditions over parts of the wing and tailplane. The greatest effect on pitching moment arises from the tailplane. The effectiveness of the tailplane is enhanced simply because of the increased flow velocity and the reduction in downwash angle. These two effects together increase the nose down pitching moment available and hence increase the degree of stability of the aircraft. The induced flow effects associated with the propeller-driven aircraft can have a significant influence on its longitudinal static stability. These effects also change with aerodynamic conditions especially at high angles of attack. It is therefore quite common to see some non-linearity in the pitching moment trim plot for such an aircraft at high values of lift coefficient. It should also be noted that the propeller wake rotates about the longitudinal axis. Although less significant, the rotating flow has some influence on the lateral-directional static stability of the aircraft.

The exhaust from a jet engine, being a region of very high velocity and reduced pressure, creates an inflow field as indicated in Fig. 3.5. Clearly the influence on pitching moment will depend on the relative location of the aerodynamic surfaces of the aircraft and the engine exhausts. When the tailplane is immersed in this induced flow field then there is a change in the downwash angle. Thus the effect is to increase the static stability when the downwash angle is reduced and *vice versa*. In general this



**Figure 3.5** Typical induced flow effects on pitching moment.

effect is not very significant, except perhaps for the aircraft with engines mounted in pods on the rear fuselage and in which the tailplane is very close to the exhaust wake.

#### 3.1.4.2 Other effects

Although power effects generally make the most significant contribution to variation in longitudinal static stability other potentially important contributory sources also exist. For example, wing sweep back and aircraft geometry which result in significant variation in downwash at the tailplane generally tend to reduce the available stability, an effect which is clearly dependent on the aerodynamic trim condition. The fuselage alone is usually unstable and the condition worsens with increasing Mach number. On the other hand, at high subsonic and supersonic Mach numbers the aerodynamic centres of the wing and tailplane move aft. This has the effect of increasing the available nose down pitching moment which is a stabilising characteristic. And finally, since all airframes have some degree of flexibility the structure distorts under the influence of aerodynamic loads. Today aeroelastic distortion of the structure is carefully controlled by design and is not usually significant in influencing static stability. However, in the very large civil transport aircraft the relative geometric disposition of the wing and tailplane changes with loading conditions; some contribution to the variation in pitching moment is therefore inevitable but the contribution is usually small.

Taking all of these effects together, the prospect of ever being able to quantitatively define the longitudinal static stability of an aircraft may seem daunting. Fortunately these effects are well understood and can be minimised by design. The result for most aircraft is a pitching moment trim characteristic with some non-linear tendency at higher values of trim lift coefficient. In extreme cases the stability of the aircraft can actually reverse at high values of lift coefficient to result in an unstable pitch up characteristic. A typical pitching moment trim plot for an aircraft with a pitch up characteristic is shown in Fig. 3.6.

#### Example 3.1

To illustrate the variation in the pitching moment characteristic for a typical subsonic aircraft, the relevant data obtained from wind tunnel experiments on a 1/6th scale model of the Handley Page HP-137 are shown plotted in Fig. 3.7. The data were extracted from a report by Storey (1966). They were obtained at a tunnel speed of

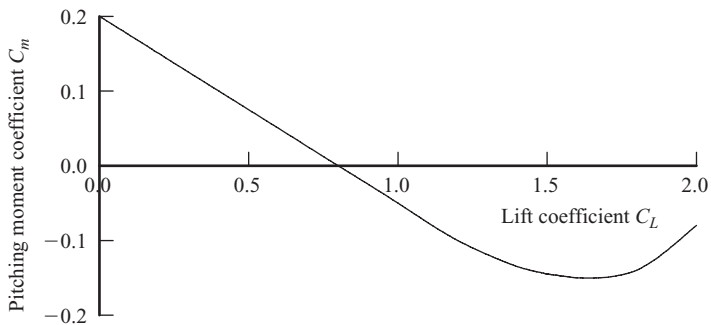
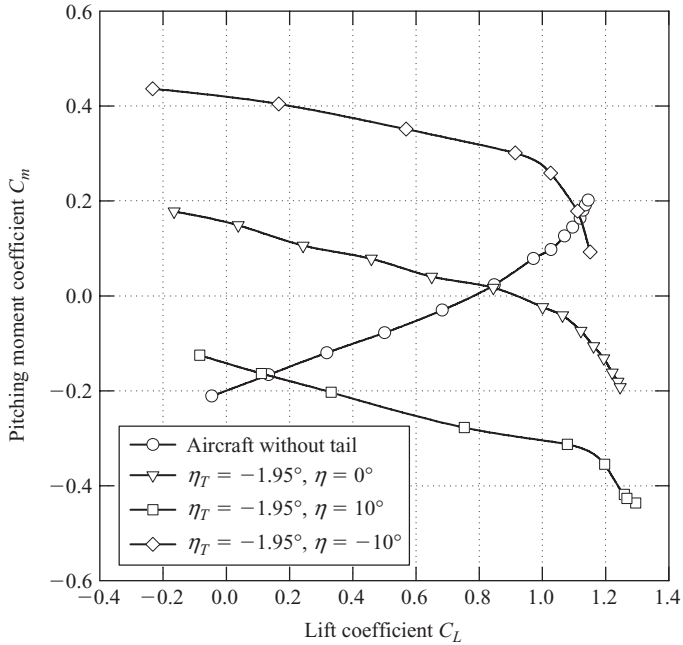


Figure 3.6 Stability reversal at high lift coefficient.



**Figure 3.7**  $C_m$ - $\alpha$  plots for a 1/6th scale model of the Handley Page Jetstream.

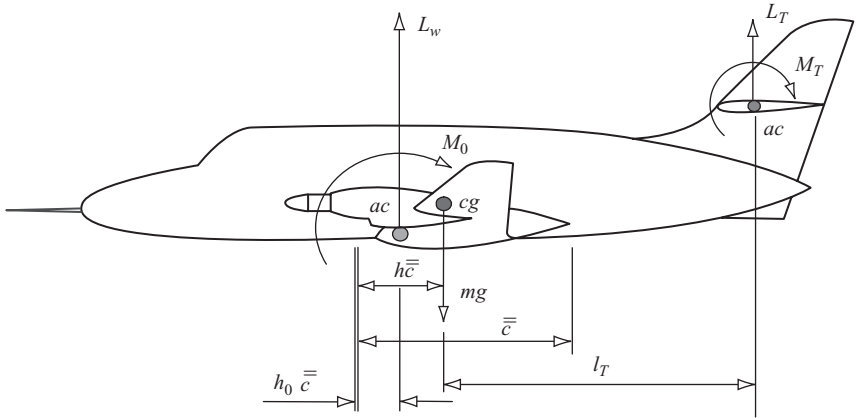
200 ft/s and the Reynolds number was  $Re = 1.2 \times 10^6$  based on mean aerodynamic chord  $\bar{c}$ . The HP-137 is in fact the well known Jetstream aircraft; however, it is not known if the data shown are representative of the actual aircraft flying today.

The plots show the characteristic for the aircraft without tail and for the aircraft with tail at various combinations of setting angle  $\eta_T$  and elevator angle  $\eta$ . Clearly, all of the plots are reasonably linear at all values of lift coefficient up to the stall. Without a tailplane the aircraft is unstable since the slope of the plot is positive. With tailplane the slope, and hence the degree of stability, is more or less constant. Assuming that the trim ( $C_m = 0$ ) range of lift coefficient is approximately  $-0.2 \leq C_L \leq 1.0$  then, by interpolation, it can be seen that this can be obtained with an elevator angle range of approximately  $-0.6^\circ \leq \eta \leq 0^\circ$ . Clearly this is well within the control capability of the tailplane and elevator configuration shown in this example.

This kind of experimental analysis would be used to confirm the geometric design of the tailplane and elevator. In particular, it is essential to establish that the aircraft has an adequate stability margin across the trim envelope, that the elevator angle required to trim the aircraft is within its aerodynamic capability and that a sufficient margin of elevator control range remains for manoeuvring.

### 3.2 THE PITCHING MOMENT EQUATION

Having established the importance of pitching moment in the determination of longitudinal static stability, further analysis of stability requires the development of the



**Figure 3.8** Simple pitching moment model.

pitching moment equation. A fully representative general pitching moment equation is difficult to develop since it is very dependent on the geometry of the aircraft. However, it is possible to develop a simple approximation to the pitching moment equation, which is sufficiently representative for most preliminary studies and which provides considerable insight into the basic requirements for static stability and trim.

### 3.2.1 Simple development of the pitching moment equation

For the development of the simplest possible pitching moment equation it is usual to define a model showing only the normal forces and pitching moments acting on the aircraft. It is assumed that at steady level flight the thrust and drag are in equilibrium and act at the *cg* and further, for small disturbances in incidence, changes in this equilibrium are insignificant. This assumption therefore implies that small disturbances in incidence cause significant changes in lift forces and pitching moments only. The model defined in these terms is shown in Fig. 3.8.

For the purposes of modelling pitching behaviour the model comprises two parts, the wing and fuselage combination and the tailplane. It is then assumed that the wing and fuselage behave aerodynamically like a wing alone. Clearly, this is not true since the fuselage may make significant aerodynamic contributions and, in any event, its presence will interfere with the aerodynamic properties of the wing to a greater or lesser extent. However, for conventional subsonic aircraft with a reasonably high aspect ratio wing this is a very satisfactory approximation. The tailplane is treated as a separate component since it provides the principal aerodynamic mechanism for controlling longitudinal static stability and trim. The following analysis establishes the fundamental importance of the tailplane parameters in the provision of longitudinal static stability.

Referring to Fig. 3.8 it is seen that the wing–fuselage lift  $L_w$  and residual pitching moment  $M_0$  act at the aerodynamic centre *ac* of the combination which is assumed to be coincident with the aerodynamic centre of the wing alone. In a similar way the lift  $L_T$  and pitching moment  $M_T$  of the tailplane are assumed to act at its aerodynamic



centre. The longitudinal geometry of the model is entirely related to the mean aerodynamic chord  $mac$  as shown in Fig. 3.8. An expression for the total pitching moment  $M$  about the  $cg$  may therefore be written:

$$M = M_0 + L_w(h - h_0)\bar{c} - L_T l_T + M_T \quad (3.6)$$

If, as is usual, it is assumed that the tailplane aerofoil section is symmetric then  $M_T$  becomes zero. Thus, in the more convenient coefficient form equation (3.6) may be written:

$$C_m = C_{m_0} + C_{L_w}(h - h_0) - C_{L_T}\bar{V}_T \quad (3.7)$$

To facilitate further analysis of pitching moment it is necessary to express the tailplane lift coefficient  $C_{L_T}$  in terms of more accessible tailplane parameters. Tailplane lift coefficient may be expressed:

$$C_{L_T} = a_0 + a_1\alpha_T + a_2\eta + a_3\beta_\eta \quad (3.8)$$

where  $a_0$ ,  $a_1$ ,  $a_2$  and  $a_3$  are constant aerodynamic coefficients,  $\alpha_T$  is the local incidence,  $\eta$  is the elevator angle and  $\beta_\eta$  is the elevator trim tab angle. Note that since a symmetric tailplane aerofoil section is assumed  $a_0$  is also zero. The local tailplane incidence is influenced by the *tailplane setting angle*  $\eta_T$  and the local flow distortion due to the effect of the downwash field behind the wing. The flow geometry is shown in Fig. 3.9.

Clearly the angle of attack of the tailplane is given by

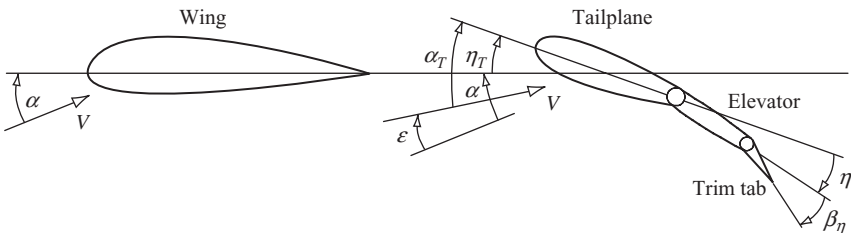
$$\alpha_T = \alpha - \varepsilon + \eta_T \quad (3.9)$$

where  $\varepsilon$  is the downwash angle at the tailplane. Since, to a good approximation, for small disturbances the downwash angle is a function of wing-body incidence  $\alpha$  only:

$$\alpha - \varepsilon = \alpha \left(1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha}\right) = \frac{C_{L_w}}{a} \left(1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha}\right) \quad (3.10)$$

whence

$$\alpha_T = \frac{C_{L_w}}{a} \left(1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha}\right) + \eta_T \quad (3.11)$$



**Figure 3.9** Wing-tailplane flow geometry.

Now substituting the expression for  $\alpha_T$  given by equation (3.11) into equation (3.8), substituting the resulting expression for  $C_{L_T}$  into equation (3.7) and noting that  $a_0$  is zero then, the pitching moment equation in its simplest and most general form is obtained:

$$C_m = C_{m_0} + C_{L_w}(h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( C_{L_w} \frac{a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) + a_2 \eta + a_3 \beta_\eta + a_1 \eta_T \right) \quad (3.12)$$

A simple computational algorithm for estimating the rate of change of downwash with angle of attack  $d\varepsilon/d\alpha$  is given in Stribling (1984) and its use is illustrated in the *Mathcad* trim program listed in Appendix 1.

### 3.2.2 Elevator angle to trim

It has already been shown, in equation (3.1), that the condition for trim is that the total pitching moment can be adjusted to zero, that is,  $C_m = 0$ . Applying this condition to equation (3.12) the elevator angle required to trim the aircraft is given by

$$\eta = \frac{1}{\bar{V}_T a_2} (C_{m_0} + C_{L_w}(h - h_0)) - \frac{C_{L_w}}{a} \left( \frac{a_1}{a_2} \right) \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) - \frac{a_3}{a_2} \beta_\eta - \frac{a_1}{a_2} \eta_T \quad (3.13)$$

When the elevator tab is set at its neutral position,  $\beta_\eta = 0$  and for a given *cg* position  $h$  the elevator angle to trim varies only with lift coefficient. For any other tab setting a different elevator angle is required to trim. Therefore, to an extent, elevator and elevator tab provide interchangeable means for achieving longitudinal trim.

### 3.2.3 Test for longitudinal static stability

The basic requirement for an aircraft to be statically stable at a given trim condition is stated in equation (3.2). By differentiating equation (3.12) with respect to  $C_L$ , or equivalently  $C_{L_w}$ , and noting that  $\eta_T$  and, by definition,  $C_{m_0}$  are constants then the condition for the aircraft to be stable is given by

$$\frac{dC_m}{dC_{L_w}} < 0$$

where

$$\frac{dC_m}{dC_{L_w}} = (h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( \frac{a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) + a_2 \frac{d\eta}{dC_{L_w}} + a_3 \frac{d\beta_\eta}{dC_{L_w}} \right) \quad (3.14)$$

Thus at a given *cg* position  $h$ , the longitudinal static stability of the aircraft and the aerodynamic control characteristics, that is, *elevator angle to trim*,  $d\eta/dC_{L_w}$ , and *elevator tab angle to trim*,  $d\beta_\eta/dC_{L_w}$ , are interdependent. Further analysis is usually carried out by separating the effects of elevator angle and tab angle in equation (3.14). *Controls fixed stability* is concerned with the interdependence of elevator angle to trim and stability whereas, *controls free stability* is concerned with the interdependence of elevator tab angle to trim and stability.

### 3.3 LONGITUDINAL STATIC STABILITY

#### 3.3.1 Controls fixed stability

The condition described as *controls fixed* is taken to mean the condition when the elevator and elevator tab are held at constant settings corresponding to the prevailing trim condition. In practice this means that the pilot is flying the aircraft with his hands on the controls and is holding the controls at the *fixed* setting required to trim. This, of course, assumes that the aircraft is stable and remains in trim.

Since the controls are fixed:

$$\frac{d\eta}{dC_{L_w}} = \frac{d\beta_\eta}{dC_{L_w}} = 0 \quad (3.15)$$

and equation (3.14) may be written:

$$\frac{dC_m}{dC_{L_w}} = (h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \frac{a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) \quad (3.16)$$

Or, writing,

$$K_n = -\frac{dC_m}{dC_{L_w}} = h_n - h \quad (3.17)$$

where  $K_n$  is the *controls fixed stability margin*, the slope of the  $C_m$ – $C_L$  plot. The location of the *controls fixed neutral point*  $h_n$  on the mean aerodynamic chord  $\bar{c}$  is therefore given by

$$h_n = h_0 + \bar{V}_T \frac{a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) \quad (3.18)$$

For a statically stable aircraft the stability margin  $K_n$  is positive, and the greater its value the greater the degree of stability possessed by the aircraft. With reference to equation (3.17) it is clear that the aircraft will be stable when the *cg* position  $h$  is ahead of the controls fixed neutral point  $h_n$ . The acceptable margins of stability therefore determine the permitted range of *cg* position in a given aircraft. The aft limit often corresponds with the controls fixed neutral point, whereas the forward limit is determined by the maximum permissible stability margin. Remember, Section 3.1.3, that too much stability can be as hazardous as too little stability.

The meaning of controls fixed stability is easily interpreted by considering the pilot actions required to trim an aircraft in a controls fixed sense. It is assumed at the outset that the aircraft is in fact stable and hence can be trimmed to an equilibrium flight condition. When the aircraft is in a trimmed initial equilibrium state the pitching moment is zero and equation (3.12) may be written:

$$0 = C_{m_0} + C_{L_w}(h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( C_{L_w} \frac{a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) + a_2\eta + a_3\beta_\eta + a_1\eta_T \right) \quad (3.19)$$

It is assumed that the pilot is holding the controls at the required elevator angle, the power is set to give steady level flight and the elevator tab is set at its datum,  $\beta_\eta = 0$ . Now, to retrim the aircraft at a new flight condition in a controls fixed sense it is necessary for the pilot to move the controls to the new elevator setting and then to hold the controls at that setting. For example, to retrim at a higher speed in a more nose down attitude, the pilot would move the control column forward until his new condition was established and would then simply hold the column at that position. This would of course leave the aircraft in a descending condition unless the power were increased sufficient to maintain level flight at the higher speed. However, power variations are not allowed for in the simple model reviewed here.

Thus to trim a stable aircraft at any condition in its speed envelope simply requires the selection of the correct elevator angle, all other parameters remaining constant. Therefore, the variable in controls fixed stability analysis is elevator angle to trim. Differentiating equation (3.19) with respect to  $C_{L_w}$  and making the same assumptions as before but allowing elevator angle  $\eta$  to vary with trim, then after some rearrangement it may be shown that

$$\frac{d\eta}{dC_{L_w}} = \frac{-1}{\bar{V}_T a_2} (h_n - h) = \frac{-1}{\bar{V}_T a_2} K_n \quad (3.20)$$

Thus, since  $\bar{V}_T$  and  $a_2$  are constants, the *elevator angle to trim* characteristic  $d\eta/dC_{L_w}$  is proportional to the controls fixed stability margin  $K_n$ . Measurements of elevator angle to trim for a range of flight conditions, subject to the assumptions described, provide a practical means for determining controls fixed stability characteristics from flight experiments. However, in such experiments it is not generally possible to completely eliminate the effects of power on the results.

### Example 3.2

The practical evaluation of controls fixed static stability centres on the application of equations (3.13), (3.19) and (3.20) to a stable aircraft. It is relatively straightforward to obtain measurements of the elevator angle  $\eta$  required to trim an aircraft at a chosen value of lift coefficient  $C_L$ . Provided that the power and elevator trim tab angle  $\beta_\eta$  are maintained at a constant setting throughout the measurement process then the above mentioned equations apply directly. A flight test exercise conducted in a Handley Page Jetstream by the author, under these conditions, provided the trim data plotted in Fig. 3.10 for three different  $cg$  positions. At any given value of lift coefficient  $C_L$  the corresponding value of elevator angle to trim  $\eta$  is given by the solution of equation (3.13), or alternatively equation (3.19). The plots are clearly non-linear and the non-linearity in this aircraft is almost entirely due to the effects of power.

Since the gradients of the plots shown in Fig. 3.10 are all negative the aircraft is statically stable in accordance with equation (3.20). However, for any given  $cg$  position the gradient varies with lift coefficient indicating a small variation in stability margin. In a detailed analysis the stability margin would be evaluated at each value of trimmed lift coefficient to quantify the variation in stability. In the present example the quality of the data was not good enough to allow such a complete analysis. To establish the location of the controls fixed neutral point  $h_n$  equation (3.20) must be solved at each value of trim lift coefficient. This is most easily done graphically as shown in Fig. 3.11.

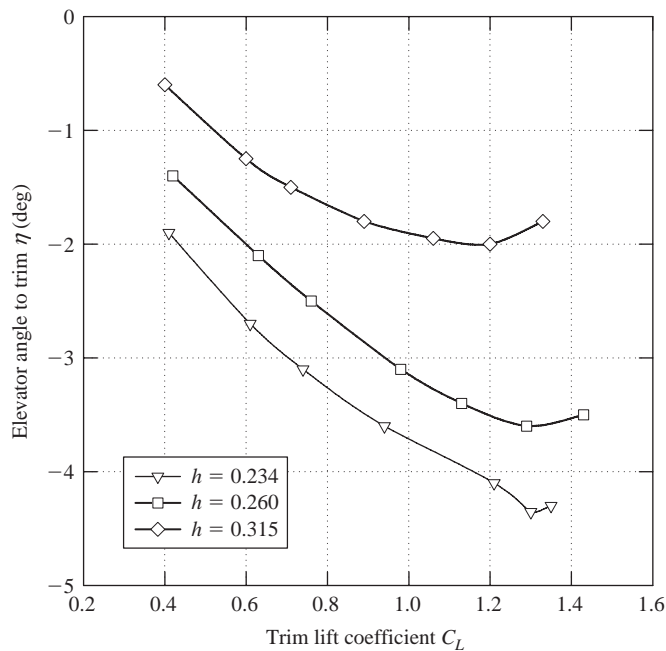


Figure 3.10 Plot of elevator angle to trim.

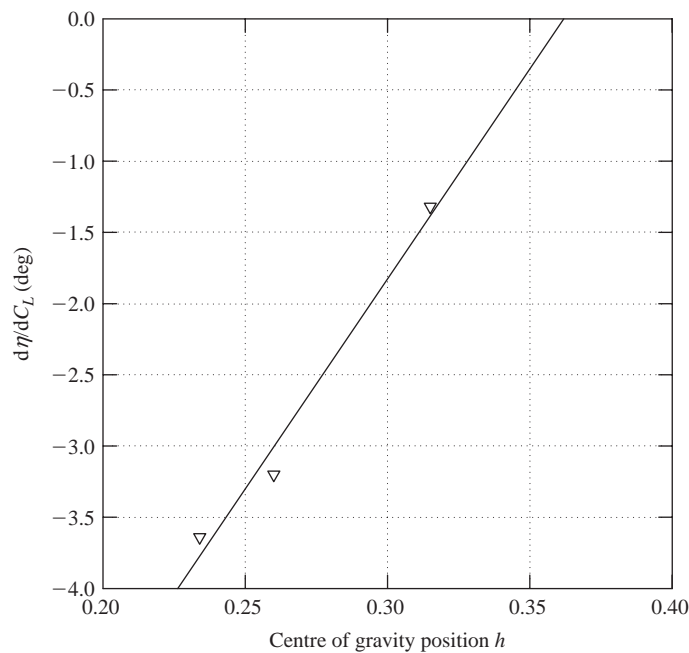


Figure 3.11 Determination of controls fixed neutral point.

Equation (3.20) is solved by plotting  $d\eta/dC_L$  against  $cg$  position  $h$  as shown. In this example, the mean gradient for each  $cg$  position is plotted rather than the value at each trim point. Since equation (3.20) represents a linear plot a straight line may be fitted to the three data points as shown. Extrapolation to the neutral stability point at which  $d\eta/dC_L = 0$  corresponds with a  $cg$  position of approximately  $h = 0.37$ . Clearly, three data points through which to draw a line is barely adequate for this kind of evaluation. A controls fixed neutral point  $h_n$  at 37% of  $mac$  correlates well with the known properties of the aircraft. The most aft  $cg$  position permitted is in fact at 37% of  $mac$ . Having established the location of the controls fixed neutral point the controls fixed stability margin  $K_n$  for each  $cg$  position follows from the application of equation (3.20).

In a more searching stability evaluation rather more data points would be required and data of much better quality would be essential. Although limited, the present example does illustrate the typical controls fixed longitudinal static stability characteristics of a well behaved classical aircraft.

### 3.3.2 Controls free stability

The condition described as *controls free* is taken to mean the condition when the elevator is free to float at an angle corresponding to the prevailing trim condition. In practice this means that the pilot can fly the aircraft with his hands off the controls whilst the aircraft remains in its trimmed flight condition. Again, it is assumed that the aircraft is stable, otherwise it will diverge when the controls are released. Now this situation can only be obtained if the controls can be adjusted such that the elevator will float at the correct angle for the desired *hands-off* trim condition. This is arranged by adjusting the elevator trim tab until the required trim is obtained. Thus controls free stability is concerned with the trim tab and its control characteristics.

When the controls are free, the elevator hinge moment  $H$  is zero and the elevator floats at an indeterminate angle  $\eta$ . It is therefore necessary to eliminate elevator angle from the pitching moment equation (3.12) in order to facilitate the analysis of controls free stability. Elevator hinge moment coefficient is given by the expression

$$C_H = b_1\alpha_T + b_2\eta + b_3\beta_\eta \quad (3.21)$$

where  $b_1$ ,  $b_2$  and  $b_3$  are constants determined by the design of the elevator and trim tab control circuitry. Substituting for local tailplane incidence  $\alpha_T$  as given by equation (3.11), then equation (3.21) may be rearranged to determine the angle at which the elevator floats. Thus,

$$\eta = \frac{1}{b_2}C_H - \frac{C_{L_w}}{a} \frac{b_1}{b_2} \left(1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha}\right) - \frac{b_3}{b_2}\beta_\eta - \frac{b_1}{b_2}\eta_T \quad (3.22)$$

To eliminate elevator angle from the pitching moment equation, substitute equation (3.22) into equation (3.12) to obtain

$$C_m = C_{m_0} + C_{L_w}(h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( C_{L_w} \frac{a_1}{a} \left(1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha}\right) \left(1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2}\right) + a_3 \beta_\eta \left(1 - \frac{a_2 b_3}{a_3 b_2}\right) + a_1 \eta_T \left(1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2}\right) + \frac{a_2}{b_2} C_H \right) \quad (3.23)$$

Now in the controls free condition  $C_H = 0$  and noting that  $\eta_T$ ,  $C_{m_0}$  and, since the tab is set at the trim value,  $\beta_\eta$  are constants then, differentiating equation (3.23) with respect to  $C_{L_w}$ :

$$\frac{dC_m}{dC_{L_w}} = (h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \frac{a_1}{a} \left(1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha}\right) \left(1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2}\right) \quad (3.24)$$

Or, writing,

$$K'_n = -\frac{dC_m}{dC_{L_w}} = h'_n - h \quad (3.25)$$

where  $K'_n$  is the *controls free stability margin*, the slope of the  $C_m$ - $C_L$  plot with the controls free. The location of the *controls free neutral point*  $h'_n$  on the mean aerodynamic chord  $\bar{c}$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned} h'_n &= h_0 + \bar{V}_T \frac{a_1}{a} \left(1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha}\right) \left(1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2}\right) \\ &= h_n - \bar{V}_T \frac{a_2 b_1}{a b_2} \left(1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha}\right) \end{aligned} \quad (3.26)$$

Thus, as before, for a statically stable aircraft the controls free stability margin  $K'_n$  is positive and the greater its value the greater the degree of stability possessed by the aircraft. With reference to equation (3.25) it is clear that for controls free stability the *cg* position  $h$  must be ahead of the controls free neutral point  $h'_n$ . Equation (3.26) shows the relationship between the controls fixed and the controls free neutral points. The numerical values of the elevator and tab constants are such that usually  $h'_n > h_n$ , which means that it is common for the controls free neutral point to lie aft of the controls fixed neutral point. Thus an aircraft that is stable controls fixed will also usually be stable controls free and it follows that the controls free stability margin  $K'_n$  will be greater than the controls fixed stability margin  $K_n$ .

The meaning of controls free stability is readily interpreted by considering the pilot actions required to trim the aircraft in a controls free sense. It is assumed that the aircraft is stable and is initially in a hands-off trim condition. In this condition the pitching moment is zero and hence equation (3.23) may be written:

$$0 = C_{m_0} + C_{L_w}(h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( C_{L_w} \frac{a_1}{a} \left(1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha}\right) \left(1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2}\right) + a_3 \beta_\eta \left(1 - \frac{a_2 b_3}{a_3 b_2}\right) + a_1 \eta_T \left(1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2}\right) \right) \quad (3.27)$$

Now, to retrim the aircraft, it is necessary for the pilot to grasp the control column and move it to the position corresponding with the elevator angle required for the new trim condition. However, if he now releases the control it will simply move back to its original trim position since an out-of-trim elevator hinge moment, and hence stick

force, will exist at the new position. To rectify the problem he must use the trim tab. Having moved the control to the position corresponding with the new trim condition he will be holding a force on the control. By adjusting the trim tab he can null the force and following which, he can release the control and it will stay in the new hands-off position as required. Thus trim tab adjustment is equivalent to control force adjustment, which in turn is directly related to elevator hinge moment adjustment in a mechanical flying control system. To reiterate the previous illustration, consider the situation when the pilot wishes to retrim the aircraft at a higher speed in a more nose down attitude. As before, he will *push* the control column forward until he obtains the desired condition which leaves him holding an out-of-trim force and descending. Elevator tab adjustment will enable him to reduce the control force to zero whereupon he can release the control to enjoy his new hands-off trim condition. Since he will be descending it would normally be necessary to increase power in order to regain level flight. However, as already stated thrust variations are not allowed for in this model; if they were, the analysis would be considerably more complex.

Thus to trim a stable aircraft at any hands-off flight condition in its speed envelope simply requires the correct selection of elevator tab angle. The variable in controls free stability analysis is therefore elevator tab angle to trim. Differentiating equation (3.27) with respect to  $C_{L_w}$  and making the same assumptions as previously but allowing elevator tab angle  $\beta_\eta$  to vary with trim, then after some rearrangement it may be shown that

$$\frac{d\beta_\eta}{dC_{L_w}} = \frac{-(h'_n - h)}{a_3 \bar{V}_T \left(1 - \frac{a_2 b_3}{a_3 b_2}\right)} = \frac{-K'_n}{a_3 \bar{V}_T \left(1 - \frac{a_2 b_3}{a_3 b_2}\right)} \quad (3.28)$$

Since it is usual for

$$-a_3 \bar{V}_T \left(1 - \frac{a_2 b_3}{a_3 b_2}\right) > 0 \quad (3.29)$$

then the *elevator tab angle to trim* characteristic  $d\beta_\eta/dC_{L_w}$  is positive and is proportional to the controls free stability margin  $K'_n$ . Measurement of the tab angle to trim a range of flight conditions, subject to the assumptions described, provides a practical means for determining controls free stability characteristics from flight experiments. However, since tab angle, elevator hinge moment and control force are all equivalent, it is often more meaningful to investigate control force to trim directly since this is the parameter of direct concern to the pilot.

To determine the equivalence between elevator tab angle to trim and control force to trim, consider the aircraft in a stable hands-off trim state with the tab set at its correct trim value. If the pilot moves the controls in this condition the elevator hinge moment, and hence control force, will vary. Equation (3.23) is applicable and may be written:

$$0 = C_{m_0} + C_{L_w}(h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( C_{L_w} \frac{a_1}{a} \left(1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha}\right) \left(1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2}\right) + a_3 \beta_\eta \left(1 - \frac{a_2 b_3}{a_3 b_2}\right) + a_1 \eta_T \left(1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2}\right) + \frac{a_2}{b_2} C_H \right) \quad (3.30)$$



where  $\beta_\eta$  is set at to its datum trim position and is assumed constant and hinge moment coefficient  $C_H$  is allowed to vary with trim condition. Differentiate equation (3.30) with respect to  $C_{L_w}$  subject to these constraints and rearrange to obtain

$$\frac{dC_H}{dC_{L_w}} = \frac{-1}{\bar{V}_T \frac{a_2}{b_2}} (h'_n - h) = \frac{-1}{\bar{V}_T \frac{a_2}{b_2}} K'_n \quad (3.31)$$

Comparison of equation (3.31) with equation (3.28) demonstrates the equivalence of tab angle to trim and hinge moment to trim. Further, if the elevator control force is denoted  $F_\eta$  and  $g_\eta$  denotes the mechanical gearing between the control column and elevator then,

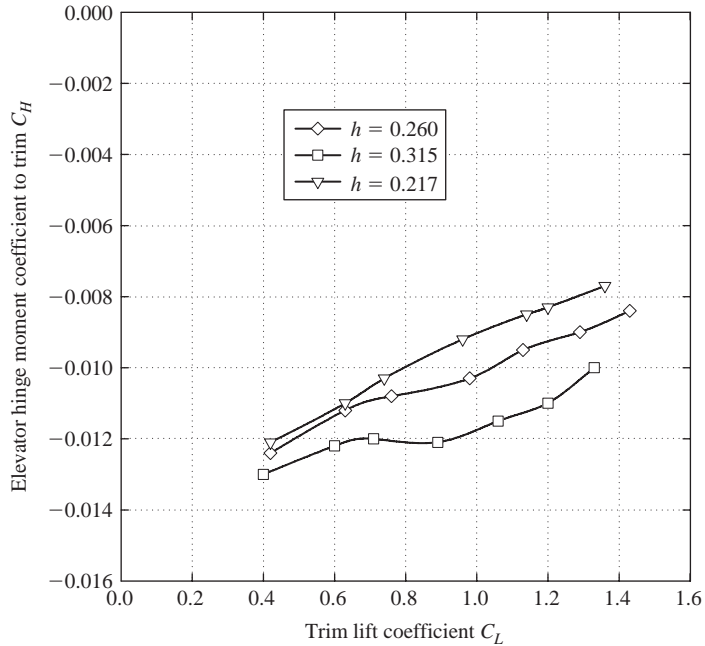
$$F_\eta = g_\eta H = \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S_\eta \bar{c}_\eta g_\eta C_H \quad (3.32)$$

where  $S_\eta$  is the elevator area aft of the hinge line and  $\bar{c}_\eta$  is the mean aerodynamic chord of the elevator aft of the hinge line. This therefore demonstrates the relationship between control force and hinge moment although equation (3.32) shows the relationship also depends on the square of the speed.

### Example 3.3

The practical evaluation of controls free static stability is undertaken in much the same way as the evaluation of controls fixed stability discussed in Example 3.2. In this case the evaluation of controls free static stability centres on the application of equations (3.30)–(3.32) to a stable aircraft. It is relatively straightforward to obtain measurements of the elevator stick force  $F_\eta$ , and hence hinge moment coefficient  $C_H$ , required to trim an aircraft at a chosen value of lift coefficient  $C_L$ . Provided that the power and elevator trim tab angle  $\beta_\eta$  are maintained at a constant setting throughout the measurement process then the above mentioned equations apply directly. As before, a flight test exercise conducted in a Handley Page Jetstream under these conditions provided the trim data plotted in Fig. 3.12 for three different  $cg$  positions. At any given value of lift coefficient  $C_L$  the corresponding value of elevator hinge moment to trim  $C_H$  is given by the solution of equation (3.30). Again, the plots are non-linear due primarily to the effects of power. However, since force measurements are involved the influence of friction in the mechanical control runs is significant and inconsistent. The result of this is data with rather too many spurious points. In order to provide a meaningful example the obviously spurious data points have been “adjusted” to correlate with the known characteristics of the aircraft.

Since the gradients of the plots shown in Fig. 3.12 are all positive the aircraft is statically stable in accordance with equation (3.31). However, for any given  $cg$  position the gradient varies with lift coefficient indicating rather inconsistent variations in stability margin. However, in this case, the variations are more likely to be the result of poor quality data rather than orderly changes in the aerodynamic properties of the aircraft. Again, in a detailed analysis the stability margin would be evaluated at each value of trimmed lift coefficient in order to quantify the variation in stability.



**Figure 3.12** Plot of hinge moment coefficient to trim.

In the present example the quality of the data was clearly not good enough to allow such a complete analysis. To establish the location of the controls free neutral point  $h'_n$  equation (3.31) must be solved at each value of trim lift coefficient. This is most easily done graphically as shown in Fig. 3.13.

Equation (3.31) is solved by plotting  $dC_H/dC_L$  against  $cg$  position  $h$  as shown. In this example, the mean gradient for each  $cg$  position is plotted rather than the value at each trim point. Since equation (3.31) represents a linear plot a straight line may be fitted to the three data points as shown. Extrapolation to the neutral stability point at which  $dC_H/dC_L = 0$  corresponds with a  $cg$  position of approximately  $h = 0.44$ . A controls free neutral point  $h'_n$  at 44% of  $mac$  correlates reasonably well with the known properties of the aircraft. Having established the location of the controls free neutral point the controls free stability margin  $K'_n$  for each  $cg$  position follows from the application of equation (3.25).

### 3.3.3 Summary of longitudinal static stability

A physical interpretation of the meaning of longitudinal static stability may be brought together in the summary shown in Fig. 3.14.

The important parameters are neutral point positions and their relationship to the  $cg$  position which, in turn, determines the stability margins of the aircraft. The stability margins determine literally how much stability the aircraft has in hand, in the controls fixed and free senses, over and above neutral stability. The margins therefore indicate

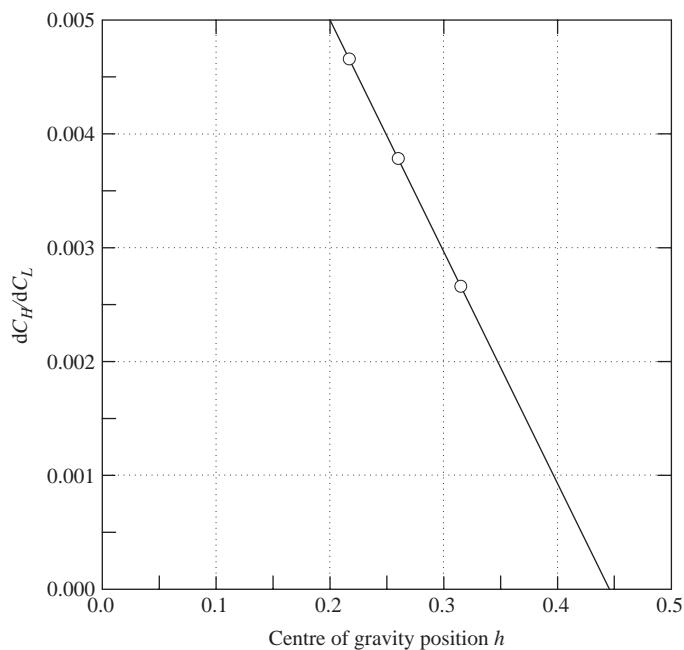


Figure 3.13 Determination of controls free neutral point.

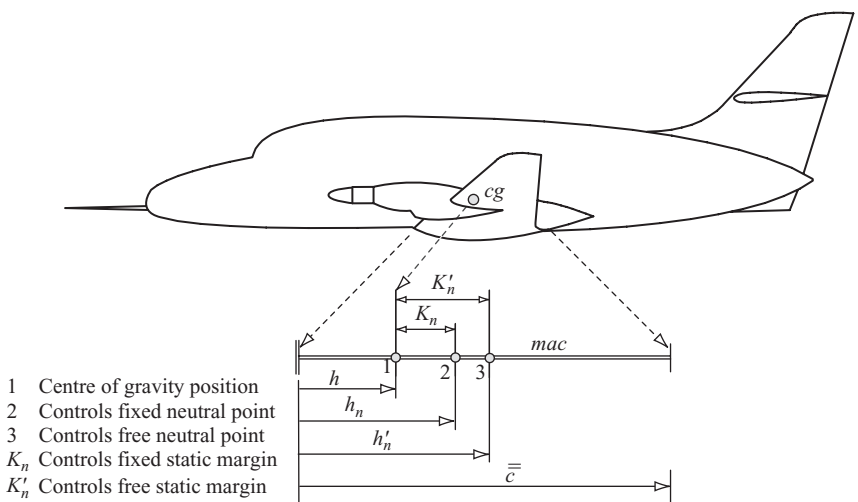


Figure 3.14 Longitudinal stability margins.

how safe the aircraft is. However, equally importantly, the stability margins provide a measure of the control actions required to trim the aircraft. In particular, the controls fixed stability margin is a measure of the control displacement required to trim and the controls free stability margin is a measure of the control force required to trim. From a

flying and handling qualities point of view it is the interpretation of stability in terms of control characteristics which is by far the most important consideration. In practice, the assessment of longitudinal static stability is frequently concerned only with the measurement of control characteristics as illustrated by Examples 3.2 and 3.3.

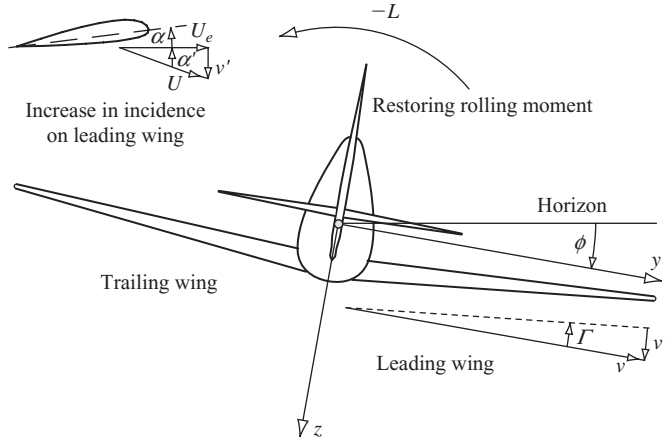


Figure 3.15 Dihedral effect.

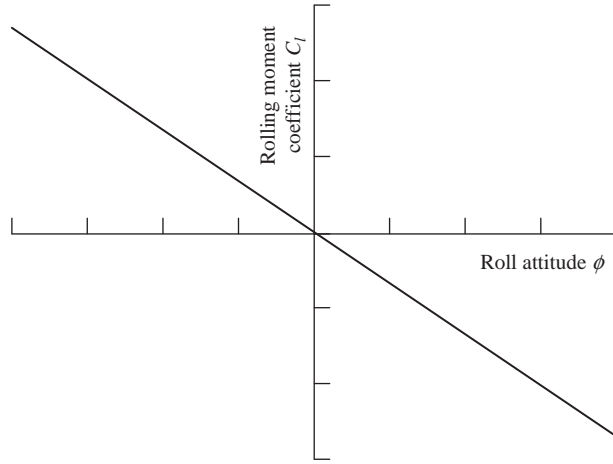
### 3.4 LATERAL STATIC STABILITY

Lateral static stability is concerned with the ability of the aircraft to maintain wings level equilibrium in the roll sense. Wing dihedral is the most visible parameter which confers lateral static stability on an aircraft although there are many other contributions, some of which are destabilising. Since all aircraft are required to fly with their wings level in the steady trim state lateral static stability is designed in from the outset. Dihedral is the easiest parameter to adjust in the design process in order to “tune” the degree of stability to an acceptable level. Remember that too much lateral static stability will result in an aircraft that is reluctant to manoeuvre laterally, so it is important to obtain the correct degree of stability.

The effect of dihedral as a means for providing lateral static stability is easily appreciated by considering the situation depicted in Fig. 3.15. Following a small lateral disturbance in roll  $\phi$  the aircraft will commence to slide “downhill” sideways with a sideslip velocity  $v$ . Consider the resulting change in the aerodynamic conditions on the leading wing which has dihedral angle  $\Gamma$ . Since the wing has dihedral the sideslip velocity has a small component  $v'$  resolved perpendicular to the plane of the wing panel where

$$v' = v \sin \Gamma \quad (3.33)$$

The velocity component  $v'$  combines with the axial velocity component  $U_e$  to increase the angle of attack of the leading wing by  $\alpha'$ . Since  $v' \ll U_e$  the change in angle of attack  $\alpha'$  is small and the total disturbed axial velocity component  $U \cong U_e$ . The



**Figure 3.16**  $C_l$ - $\phi$  plot for a stable aircraft.

increase in angle of attack on the leading wing gives rise to an increase in lift which in turn gives rise to a restoring rolling moment  $-L$ . The corresponding aerodynamic change on the wing trailing into the sideslip results in a small decrease in lift which also produces a restoring rolling moment. The net effect therefore is to create a negative rolling moment which causes the aircraft to recover its zero sideslip wings level equilibrium. Thus, the condition for an aircraft to be laterally stable is that the rolling moment resulting from a positive disturbance in roll attitude must be negative, or in mathematical terms:

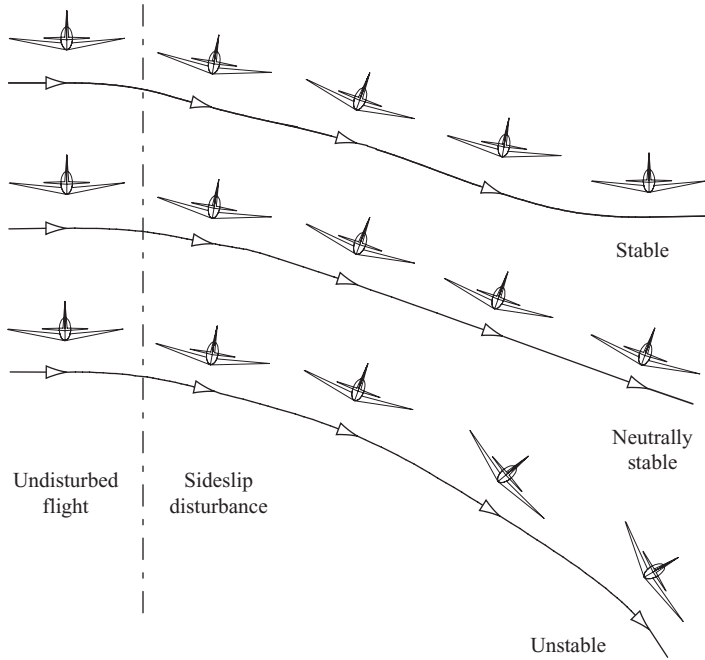
$$\frac{dC_l}{d\phi} < 0 \quad (3.34)$$

where  $C_l$  is the rolling moment coefficient. This is shown graphically in Fig. 3.16 and may be interpreted in a similar way to the pitching moment plot shown in Fig. 3.2.

The sequence of events following a sideslip disturbance are shown for a laterally stable, neutrally stable and unstable aircraft on Fig. 3.17. However, it must be remembered that once disturbed the subsequent motion will be determined by the lateral dynamic stability characteristics as well.

### 3.5 DIRECTIONAL STATIC STABILITY

Directional static stability is concerned with the ability of the aircraft to yaw or *weathercock* into wind in order to maintain directional equilibrium. Since all aircraft are required to fly with zero sideslip in the yaw sense, positive directional stability is designed in from the outset. The fin is the most visible contributor to directional static stability although, as in the case of lateral stability, there are many other contributions, some of which are destabilising. Again, it is useful to remember that too much directional static stability will result in an aircraft that is reluctant to manoeuvre directionally, so it is important to obtain the correct degree of stability.



**Figure 3.17** *The effect of dihedral on lateral stability.*

Consider an aircraft that is subject to a positive sideslip disturbance as shown in Fig. 3.18. The combination of sideslip velocity  $v$  and axial velocity component  $U$  results in a positive sideslip angle  $\beta$ . Note that a positive sideslip angle equates to a negative yaw angle since the nose of the aircraft has swung to the left of the resultant total velocity vector  $V$ . Now, as shown in Fig. 3.18, in the disturbance the fin is at a non-zero angle of attack equivalent to the sideslip angle  $\beta$ . The fin therefore generates lift  $L_F$  which acts in the sense shown thereby creating a positive yawing moment  $N$ . The yawing moment is stabilising since it causes the aircraft to yaw to the right until the sideslip angle is reduced to zero. Thus, the condition for an aircraft to be directionally stable is readily established and is

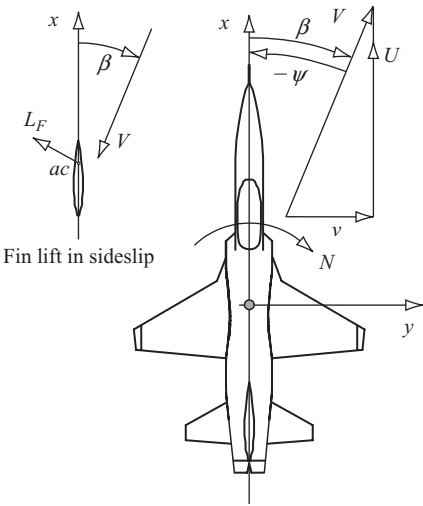
$$\frac{dC_n}{d\psi} < 0 \quad \text{or, equivalently,} \quad \frac{dC_n}{d\beta} > 0 \quad (3.35)$$

where  $C_n$  is the yawing moment coefficient.

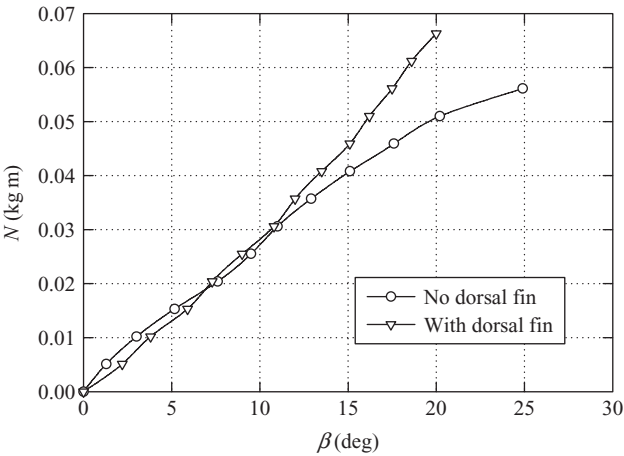
A typical plot of yawing moment against sideslip angle for a directionally stable aircraft is shown in Fig. 3.19. The plots show the results of a wind tunnel test on a simple conventional aircraft model. For small disturbances in yaw the plot is reasonably linear since it is dominated by the lifting properties of the fin. However, as the fin approaches the stall its lifting properties deteriorate and other influences begin to dominate resulting ultimately in loss of directional stability. The main destabilising contribution comes from the fuselage which at small yaw angles is masked by the powerful fin effect. The addition of a dorsal fin significantly delays the onset of

fin stall thereby enabling directional static stability to be maintained at higher yaw disturbance angles as indicated in Fig. 3.19.

Fin effectiveness also deteriorates with increasing body incidence angle since the base of the fin becomes increasingly immersed in the fuselage wake thereby reducing the effective working area of the fin. This problem has become particularly evident in a number of modern combat aircraft. Typically, such aircraft have two engines mounted side by side in the rear fuselage. This results in a broad flat fuselage ahead of the fin which creates a substantial wake to dramatically reduce fin effectiveness at moderate to high angles of incidence. For this reason many aircraft of this type have



**Figure 3.18** Directional weathercock effect.



**Figure 3.19** Plot of yawing moment against sideslip for a stable aircraft.

noticeably large fins and in some cases the aircraft have two fins attached to the outer edges of the upper fuselage.

### 3.6 CALCULATION OF AIRCRAFT TRIM CONDITION

As described in Section 3.1, the condition for an aircraft to remain in steady trimmed flight requires that the forces and moments acting on the aircraft sum to zero and that it is stable. Thus, in order to calculate the trim condition of an aircraft it is convenient to assume straight or symmetric flight and to apply the principles described earlier in Chapter 3. For a given aircraft mass,  $cg$  position, altitude and airspeed, symmetric trim is described by the aerodynamic operating condition, namely angle of attack, thrust, pitch attitude, elevator angle and flight path angle. Other operating condition parameters can then be derived as required.

The forces and moments acting on an aeroplane in the general case of steady symmetric climbing flight are shown in Fig. 3.20 where the symbols have their usual meanings. Since the aircraft is symmetric, the lateral-directional forces and moments are assumed to remain in equilibrium throughout, and the problem reduces to the establishment of longitudinal equilibrium only. Thus, the reference axes are aircraft body axes which define the plane of symmetry  $oxz$ , with the origin  $o$  located at the aircraft  $cg$  as shown.

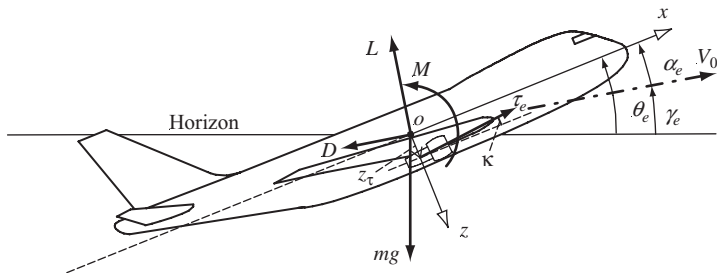
#### 3.6.1 Defining the trim condition

The total axial force  $X$  is given by resolving the total lift  $L$ , total drag  $D$ , weight  $mg$  and thrust  $\tau_e$  into the  $ox$  axis and these components must sum to zero in trim. Whence

$$X = L \sin \alpha_e + \tau_e \cos \kappa - D \cos \alpha_e - mg \sin (\alpha_e + \gamma_e) = 0 \quad (3.36)$$

where  $\alpha_e$  is the equilibrium body incidence,  $\gamma_e$  is the steady flight path angle and  $\kappa$  is the inclination of the thrust line to the  $ox$  body axis (positive nose up). Similarly, the total normal force  $Z$  is given by resolving the forces into the  $oz$  axis and these also must sum to zero in trim. Whence

$$Z = mg \cos (\alpha_e + \gamma_e) - L \cos \alpha_e - D \sin \alpha_e - \tau_e \sin \kappa = 0 \quad (3.37)$$



**Figure 3.20** *Symmetric forces and moments acting on a trimmed aircraft.*



The development of the aerodynamic pitching moment about the  $cg$  is described in Section 3.2 and is given by equation (3.6). However, since the total pitching moment is required, equation (3.6) must be modified to include the thrust, and any other significant, moment contributions. As before, the total drag moment is assumed insignificant since the normal displacement between the  $cg$  and aerodynamic centre is typically small for most aircraft configurations. Also, the tailplane zero lift pitching moment  $M_T$  is assumed small since the aerofoil section is usually symmetrical and the tailplane drag moment is very small since the tailplane setting would be designed to trim at small local incidence angle. Thus, the total pitching moment about the  $cg$  is given by the sum of the wing-body, tailplane and thrust moments, and these moments must sum to zero in trim. Whence

$$M = M_0 + L_w(h - h_0)\bar{c} - L_T l_T + \tau_e z_\tau = 0 \quad (3.38)$$

where  $L_w$  is the wing-body lift and  $L_T$  is the tailplane lift. The other symbols are evident from Fig. 3.20. It is convenient to write equations (3.36)–(3.38) in coefficient form

$$\frac{mg}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S} \sin(\alpha_e + \gamma_e) = C_\tau \cos \kappa + C_L \sin \alpha_e - C_D \cos \alpha_e \quad (3.39)$$

$$\frac{mg}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S} \cos(\alpha_e + \gamma_e) = C_L \cos \alpha_e + C_D \sin \alpha_e + C_\tau \sin \kappa \quad (3.40)$$

$$0 = C_{m_0} + (h - h_0)C_{L_w} - \bar{V}_T C_{L_T} + \frac{z_\tau}{\bar{c}} C_\tau = 0 \quad (3.41)$$

where the thrust coefficient is given by

$$C_\tau = \frac{\tau_e}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S} \quad (3.42)$$

the total lift coefficient is given by

$$C_L = C_{L_w} + \frac{S_T}{S} C_{L_T} \quad (3.43)$$

and the total drag coefficient is given by

$$C_D = C_{D_0} + \frac{1}{\pi A e} C_L^2 \equiv C_{D_0} + K C_L^2 \quad (3.44)$$

The wing-body lift coefficient, which is assumed to comprise wing aerodynamic properties only, is given by

$$C_{L_w} = a(\alpha_w - \alpha_{w_0}) \equiv a(\alpha_e + \alpha_{wr} - \alpha_{w_0}) \quad (3.45)$$

where  $\alpha_{wr}$  is the wing rigging angle as shown in Fig. 3.21 and  $\alpha_{w_0}$  is the zero lift angle of attack of the wing.



and tailplane angle of attack is given by

$$\alpha_T = \eta_T + \alpha_e - \varepsilon - \varepsilon_0 = \eta_T + \alpha_w - \alpha_{wr} - \varepsilon - \varepsilon_0 \quad (3.47)$$

With reference to equation (3.10):

$$\alpha_w - \varepsilon = \alpha_w \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) \quad (3.48)$$

and equation (3.47) may be written:

$$\alpha_T = \eta_T + \alpha_w \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) - \alpha_{wr} - \varepsilon_0 \quad (3.49)$$

It is assumed that the elevator trim tab angle is zero and that aircraft trim is determined by the elevator angle to trim  $\eta_e$ . As before, it is assumed that  $a_0 = 0$  since the tailplane aerofoil section is typically symmetrical. The tailplane lift coefficient given by equation (3.8) may therefore be re-stated with the appropriate substitution of equation (3.49):

$$C_{LT} = a_1 \alpha_T + a_2 \eta_e = a_1 \left( \eta_T + \alpha_w \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) - \alpha_{wr} - \varepsilon_0 \right) + a_2 \eta_e \quad (3.50)$$

Thus, the elevator angle to trim follows by rearrangement of equation (3.50):

$$\eta_e = \frac{C_{LT}}{a_2} - \frac{a_1}{a_2} \left( \eta_T + \alpha_w \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) - \alpha_{wr} - \varepsilon_0 \right) \quad (3.51)$$

Note that equation (3.51) is equivalent to equation (3.13).

### 3.6.3 Controls fixed static stability

The location of the controls fixed neutral point on the mean aerodynamic chord and the controls fixed static margin are very important parameters in any aircraft trim assessment, since they both influence the aerodynamic, thrust and control requirements for achieving trim. In practice, the achievement of a satisfactory range of elevator angles to trim over the flight envelope is determined by the static margin, and this in turn places constraints on the permitted range of  $cg$  positions. The neutral point usually determines the most aft  $cg$  limit in a stable aircraft. Fortunately, the simple expressions given by equations (3.17) and (3.18) are sufficient for most practical assessment and they are repeated here for convenience. The neutral point location  $h_n$  is given by

$$h_n = h_0 + \bar{V}_T \frac{a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) \quad (3.52)$$

and the static margin  $K_n$  is given by

$$K_n = h_n - h \quad (3.53)$$

Estimation of the wing-body aerodynamic centre location  $h_0$  on the mean aerodynamic chord requires careful consideration. For a subsonic wing, typically  $h_0 = 0.25$  and for the purpose of illustrating the simple theory in Section 3.3 this value is often assumed, incorrectly, to apply to a wing-body combination. However, the presence of the fuselage usually causes a forward shift of the combined wing-body aerodynamic

centre to a value more like  $h_0 = 0.1$ , or less. Clearly, this has an impact on the requirements for trim and it is important to obtain the best estimate of its location. This can be done by wind tunnel tests on a wing-body combination, or more conveniently by reference to empirical data sources. Estimation of  $h_0$  is described in ESDU 92024, Volume 4b in the ESDU Aerodynamics Series (2006).

Estimation of the rate of change of downwash angle at the tail with wing angle of attack is another parameter that requires careful estimation for the same reasons. Typical values are in the region of  $d\epsilon/d\alpha \approx 0.5$ , but the geometric location of the tailplane with respect to the wing strongly influences the actual value. Again, a value can be estimated by wind tunnel test of a suitable model. Alternatively,  $d\epsilon/d\alpha$  can be estimated with the aid of ESDU 80020, Volume 9a in the ESDU Aerodynamics Series (2006). A simple computer program for estimating  $d\epsilon/d\alpha$  may be found in Stribling (1984), and the use of the program is illustrated in the next section.

### 3.6.4 “AeroTrim”: a *Mathcad* trim program

A computer program called “AeroTrim” has been written by the author in the *Mathcad* language to implement the trim calculations described above, and a listing is given in Appendix 1. Since *Mathcad* permits the development of programs in the format of a mathematical document, the listing is easy to read and is self-explanatory. Because of its computational visibility *Mathcad* is an ideal tool for programs of this type, although it could be written in a number of alternative languages. AeroTrim is a simple generic trim calculator and is limited to subsonic flight at altitudes up to 36,000 ft. However, it is very easy for the user to modify the program to suit particular requirements and it should be regarded as a foundation for such further development. Indeed, the author has produced versions of the program to deal with transonic flight conditions, aircraft performance and versions substantially extended to include aerodynamic derivative estimation.

As listed in Appendix 1, the program includes numerical data for the Cranfield University Jetstream 31 flying laboratory aircraft. To use the program for other aircraft applications it is necessary only to delete and replace the numerical data where prompted to do so. Although based on simple mathematical models, the program produces plausible estimates for the known trim characteristics of the Jetstream, but the small differences from observed practice are thought to be due mainly to propeller effects which are notoriously difficult to model adequately.

With the program loaded into *Mathcad*, operation is as simple as clicking on the calculate button. Thus the impact on trim of changing one or more of the numerical input values can be evaluated instantaneously. Points to note include:

- Section 1** The user inputs flight condition data for which a trim evaluation is required.
- Section 2** Calculates atmospheric temperature, air density and density ratio for the chosen altitude based on the ISA model. Currently limited to the troposphere, but easily modified to include the stratosphere.
- Section 3** The user defines the velocity range over which the trim conditions are required, but bearing in mind that the computations are only valid for subsonic flight conditions. The counter sets the number of velocity steps

through the range, currently set at 10. The range expression sets the starting velocity, currently set at 100 kt, and the increment, currently set at 15 kt.

- Section 4** The user inserts values for the aircraft geometry constants taking care to observe the body axis system used. All of this information would be readily available in a dimensioned three-view drawing of the aircraft.
- Section 5** The user inputs values for the principal wing-body aerodynamic parameters for the aircraft. Unknowns obviously have to be estimated by whatever means are available.
- Section 6** Repeats Section 5 for the tailplane aerodynamic parameters.
- Section 7** Calculates some basic wing-body-tail parameters.
- Section 8** Estimates  $d\epsilon/d\alpha$  for the given aircraft geometry using a simple algorithm described by Stribling (1984). Since the model does not include fuselage interference effects or thrust effects it may underestimate the parameter by a small amount. However, results obtained with the algorithm would seem to be plausible and appropriate.
- Section 9** Estimates the induced drag factor  $K$  in the drag polar  $C_D = C_{D_0} + KC_L^2$  using an empirical method described in Shevell (1989), which is based on industrial flight test experience. The very limited data for the fuselage drag factor  $s_d$  and the empirical constant  $k_D$  were plotted and curves were fitted to give expressions suitable for inclusion in the computation. Results obtained for the Jetstream compare very favourably with the known drag properties of the aircraft.
- Section 10** Calculates some useful standard performance and stability parameters.
- Section 11** Contains the trim calculation, which solves equations (3.39)–(3.45) simultaneously for each velocity step defined in Section 3.
- Section 12** Calculates the dependent trim variables, including elevator angle, for the velocity steps defined in Section 3 and using the results of Section 11.
- Sections 13 and 14** Contain self-explanatory auxiliary computations.
- Section 15** Results. Gives a summary of the flight condition parameters for the chosen application.
- Section 16** Results. Gives a tabulated summary of the trim values of all the variables at each velocity step in the range chosen.
- Section 17** Results. Shows some plotted variables to illustrate the kind of output *Mathcad* can provide. It is very easy to edit this section to include plots of any variables from the table in Section 16.

### Example 3.4

To illustrate the use of AeroTrim it is applied to the Cranfield University Jetstream 31 flying laboratory aircraft. Since a comprehensive flight simulation model of the aircraft has been assembled and matched to observed flight behaviour the numerical data are believed to be reasonably representative of the actual aircraft. The sources of data used include manufacturer's published technical information, flight manual, limited original wind tunnel test data and data obtained from flight experiments. Aerodynamic data not provided by any of these sources were estimated using the ESDU Aerodynamics Series (2006) and refined by reference to observed flight behaviour. The numerical data are not listed here since they are illustrated in the *Mathcad* listing in Appendix 1.

The chosen operating condition is typical for the aircraft and the speed range was chosen to vary from the stall, at around 100 kt, to 250 kt in 15 kt increments. Good quality data for the remaining input parameters were available, with the possible exception of the values for wing-body aerodynamic centre position  $h_0$ , and the rate of change of downwash at the tail with wing angle of attack  $d\varepsilon/d\alpha$ . Both parameters were estimated for the aircraft, although the actual value for  $d\varepsilon/d\alpha$  is thought to be larger than the value estimated by the programme. Using the value  $d\varepsilon/d\alpha = 0.279$  as calculated, the value of  $h_0 = -0.08$  was estimated since it returned values for the neutral point position  $h_n$  and static margin  $K_n$  close to their known values. It is likely that this places the aerodynamic centre too far forward in the aircraft. However, with a value of  $d\varepsilon/d\alpha$  nearer to its probable value,  $d\varepsilon/d\alpha \cong 0.4$ , a more aft aerodynamic centre position would return the known stability properties. This illustrates one of the difficulties of getting reliable aerodynamic data together for an aircraft, and for unconventional configurations the difficulties are generally greater.

Running the programme returns trim data for the chosen operating flight condition, of which a reduced selection is shown.

Flight condition		
	Units	Value
Aircraft weight	kN	61.8
Altitude	ft	6562
Flight path angle	deg	0
cg position		0.29
Neutral point		0.412
Static margin		0.122
Minimum drag speed	kt	150
Stall speed	kt	116

Example trim data

$V_{true}$ (knots)	$C_L$	$C_D$	$C_\tau$	$L/D$	$\alpha_e$ (deg)	$\eta_e$ (deg)	$L$ (kN)	$D$ (kN)	$\tau_e$ (kN)
100	1.799	0.174	0.181	9.409	15.105	-1.208	60.23	5.834	6.042
115	1.374	0.114	0.116	11.017	10.885	-0.460	60.83	5.053	5.146
130	1.081	0.082	0.083	12.106	7.970	0.100	61.15	4.643	4.688
145	0.872	0.064	0.064	12.603	5.885	0.521	61.34	4.494	4.518
160	0.717	0.053	0.053	12.573	4.346	0.842	61.46	4.535	4.548
175	0.600	0.046	0.046	12.154	3.181	1.091	61.54	4.722	4.729
190	0.510	0.042	0.042	11.496	2.277	1.287	61.60	5.025	5.029
205	0.438	0.039	0.039	10.720	1.564	1.444	61.65	5.424	5.426
220	0.381	0.036	0.036	9.912	0.990	1.572	61.70	5.907	5.908
235	0.334	0.035	0.035	9.123	0.523	1.677	61.74	6.465	6.465
250	0.295	0.034	0.034	8.383	0.136	1.764	61.79	7.089	7.089

For the purpose of trim analysis the data can be graphed as required and some examples are given in the *Mathcad* program listing. It follows that the effect of any aerodynamic variable on aircraft design performance can be evaluated quickly using the program. Indeed, this approach was used to identify plausible values for some of the more uncertain values in the model definition.

## REFERENCES

- Babister, A.W. 1961: *Aircraft Stability and Control*. Pergamon Press, London.
- Duncan, W.J. 1959: *The Principles of the Control and Stability of Aircraft*. Cambridge University Press.
- ESDU Aerodynamics Series. 2006. Engineering Sciences Data, ESDU International Ltd., 27 Corsham Street, London. [www.esdu.com](http://www.esdu.com)
- Gates, S.B. and Lyon, H.M. 1944: *A Continuation of Longitudinal Stability and Control Analysis; Part 1, General Theory*. Aeronautical Research Council, Reports and Memoranda No. 2027. Her Majesty's Stationery Office, London.
- Mathcad*. Adept Scientific, Amor Way, Letchworth, Herts, SG6 1ZA. [www.adeptscience.co.uk](http://www.adeptscience.co.uk).
- Shevell, R.S. 1989: *Fundamentals of Flight*, Second Edition. Prentice Hall Inc., New Jersey, USA.
- Storey, R.F.R. 1966: *H.P.137. Longitudinal and Lateral Stability Measurements on a 1/6th Scale Model*. W.T. Report No. 3021, BAC (Operating) Ltd., Weybridge, Surrey.
- Stribling, C.B. 1984: *BASIC Aerodynamics*. Butterworth & Co (Publishers) Ltd., London.

## PROBLEMS

1. Explain why the pitching moment coefficient  $C_{m_{ac}}$  about the aerodynamic centre of an aerofoil is constant. What is the special condition for  $C_{m_{ac}}$  to be zero?  
The NACA 64-412 is a cambered aerofoil with lift coefficient given by

$$C_L = 0.11\alpha + 0.3$$

when  $\alpha$  is in degree units. What is the value of the constant pitching moment coefficient about the aerodynamic centre? Estimate the position of the centre of pressure for the aerofoil at an angle of attack of  $5^\circ$ . State all assumptions made in answering this question. (CU 1998)

2. What are the conditions for the stable longitudinal trim equilibrium of an aircraft? The pitching moment coefficient about the *cg* for a stable aircraft is given by

$$C_m = C_{m_0} + C_{L_w}(h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( C_{L_w} \frac{a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) + a_2 \eta \right)$$

where the symbols have the usual meaning. Derive expressions for the controls fixed static margin  $K_n$  and the elevator angle to trim as a function of static margin. Explain the physical meaning of the controls fixed neutral point. (CU 1998)

3. State the conditions required for an aeroplane to remain in longitudinal trimmed equilibrium in steady level flight. The pitching moment equation, referred to the centre of gravity ( $cg$ ), for a canard configured combat aircraft is given by

$$C_m = C_{m_0} + (h - h_0)C_{L_{wb}} + \bar{V}_f \left( \frac{a_{1f}}{a_{wb}} C_{L_{wb}} + a_{1f} \delta \right)$$

where the symbols have the usual meaning and, additionally,  $\bar{V}_f$  is the foreplane volume ratio,  $a_{1f}$  is the foreplane lift curve slope and  $\delta$  is the control angle of the all moving foreplane. Derive expressions for the controls fixed static margin and for the controls fixed neutral point. State any assumptions made.

Given that the mean aerodynamic chord ( $mac$ ) is 4.7 m, the wing-body aerodynamic centre is located at 15% of  $mac$ , the foreplane volume ratio is 0.12 and the lift curve slope of the wing-body and foreplane are 3.5 and 4.9 1/rad respectively, calculate the aft  $cg$  limit for the aircraft to remain stable with controls fixed. Calculate also the  $cg$  location for the aircraft to have a controls fixed static margin of 15%. (CU 1999)

4. Sketch a typical  $C_m-\alpha$  plot and explain the condition for trim, the requirement for static stability and the concept of stability margin. Why is too much stability as hazardous as too little stability? (CU 2001)



---

## Chapter 4

# The Equations of Motion

### 4.1 THE EQUATIONS OF MOTION OF A RIGID SYMMETRIC AIRCRAFT

As stated in Chapter 1, the first formal derivation of the equations of motion for a rigid symmetric aircraft is usually attributed to Bryan (1911). His treatment, with very few changes, remains in use today and provides the basis for the following development. The object is to realise Newton's second law of motion for each of the six degrees of freedom which simply states that,

$$\text{mass} \times \text{acceleration} = \text{disturbing force} \quad (4.1)$$

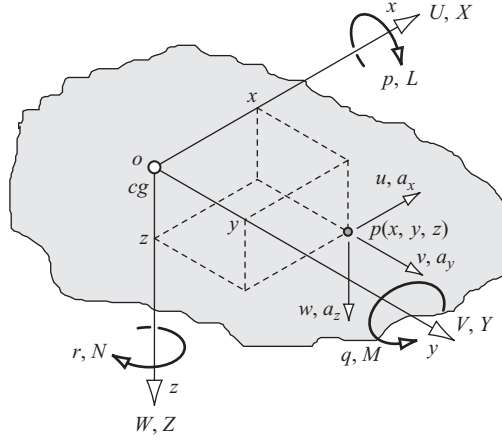
For the rotary degrees of freedom the mass and acceleration become moment of inertia and angular acceleration respectively whilst the disturbing force becomes the disturbing moment or torque. Thus the derivation of the equations of motion requires that equation (4.1) be expressed in terms of the motion variables defined in Chapter 2. The derivation is *classical* in the sense that the equations of motion are differential equations which are derived from first principles. However, a number of equally valid alternative means for deriving the equations of motion are frequently used, for example, vector methods. The classical approach is retained here since, in the author's opinion, maximum physical visibility is maintained throughout.

#### 4.1.1 The components of inertial acceleration

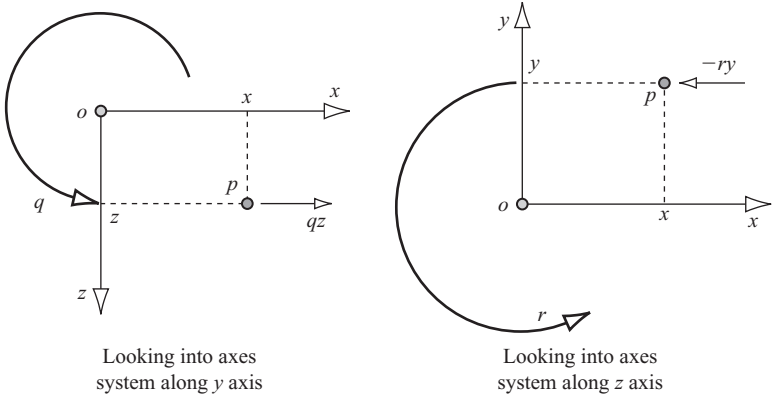
The first task in realising equation (4.1) is to define the inertial acceleration components resulting from the application of disturbing force components to the aircraft. Consider the motion referred to an orthogonal axis set ( $oxyz$ ) with the origin  $o$  coincident with the  $cg$  of the arbitrary and, in the first instance, not necessarily rigid body shown in Fig. 4.1. The body, and hence the axes, are assumed to be in motion with respect to an external reference frame such as earth (or *inertial*) axes. The components of velocity and force along the axes  $ox$ ,  $oy$  and  $oz$  are denoted ( $U, V, W$ ) and ( $X, Y, Z$ ) respectively. The components of angular velocity and moment about the same axes are denoted ( $p, q, r$ ) and ( $L, M, N$ ) respectively. The point  $p$  is an arbitrarily chosen point within the body with coordinates ( $x, y, z$ ). The local components of velocity and acceleration at  $p$  relative to the body axes are denoted ( $u, v, w$ ) and ( $a_x, a_y, a_z$ ) respectively.

The velocity components at  $p(x, y, z)$  relative to  $o$  are given by

$$\begin{aligned} u &= \dot{x} - ry + qz \\ v &= \dot{y} - pz + rx \\ w &= \dot{z} - qx + py \end{aligned} \quad (4.2)$$



**Figure 4.1** Motion referred to generalised body axes.



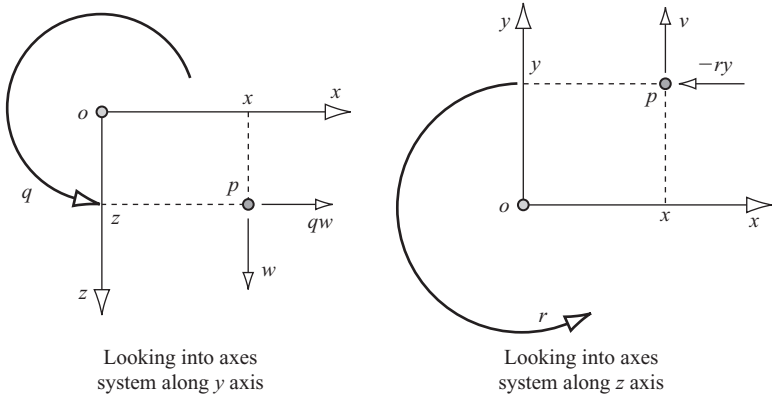
**Figure 4.2** Velocity terms due to rotary motion.

It will be seen that the velocity components each comprise a linear term and two additional terms due to rotary motion. The origin of the terms due to rotary motion in the component  $u$ , for example, is illustrated in Fig. 4.2. Both  $-ry$  and  $qz$  represent *tangential velocity* components acting along a line through  $p(x, y, z)$  parallel to the  $ox$  axis. The rotary terms in the remaining two components of velocity are determined in a similar way. Now, since the generalised body shown in Fig. 4.1 represents the aircraft which is assumed to be rigid then

$$\dot{x} = \dot{y} = \dot{z} = 0 \quad (4.3)$$

and equations (4.2) reduce to

$$\begin{aligned} u &= qz - ry \\ v &= rx - pz \\ w &= py - qx \end{aligned} \quad (4.4)$$



**Figure 4.3** Acceleration terms due to rotary motion

The corresponding components of acceleration at  $p(x, y, z)$  relative to  $o$  are given by

$$\begin{aligned} a_x &= \dot{u} - rv + qw \\ a_y &= \dot{v} - pw + ru \\ a_z &= \dot{w} - qu + pv \end{aligned} \quad (4.5)$$

Again, it will be seen that the acceleration components each comprise a linear term and two additional terms due to rotary motion. The origin of the terms due to rotary motion in the component  $a_x$ , for example, is illustrated in Fig. 4.3. Both  $-rv$  and  $qw$  represent *tangential acceleration* components acting along a line through  $p(x, y, z)$  parallel to the  $ox$  axis. The accelerations arise from the mutual interaction of the linear components of velocity with the components of angular velocity. The acceleration terms due to rotary motion in the remaining two components of acceleration are determined in a similar way.

By superimposing the velocity components of the *cg* ( $U, V, W$ ) on to the local velocity components ( $u, v, w$ ) the absolute, or inertial, velocity components ( $u', v', w'$ ) of the point  $p(x, y, z)$  are obtained. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} u' &= U + u = U - ry + qz \\ v' &= V + v = V - pz + rx \\ w' &= W + w = W - qx + py \end{aligned} \quad (4.6)$$

where the expressions for ( $u, v, w$ ) are substituted from equations (4.4). Similarly, the components of inertial acceleration ( $a'_x, a'_y, a'_z$ ) at the point  $p(x, y, z)$  are obtained simply by substituting the expressions for ( $u', v', w'$ ), equations (4.6), in place of ( $u, v, w$ ) in equations (4.5). Whence

$$\begin{aligned} a'_x &= \dot{u}' - rv' + qw' \\ a'_y &= \dot{v}' - pw' + ru' \\ a'_z &= \dot{w}' - qu' + pv' \end{aligned} \quad (4.7)$$

Differentiate equations (4.6) with respect to time and note that since a rigid body is assumed equation (4.3) applies then

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{u}' &= \dot{U} - \dot{r}y + \dot{q}z \\ \dot{v}' &= \dot{V} - \dot{p}z + \dot{r}x \\ \dot{w}' &= \dot{W} - \dot{q}x + \dot{p}y \end{aligned} \quad (4.8)$$

Thus, by substituting from equations (4.6) and (4.8) into equations (4.7) the inertial acceleration components of the point  $p(x, y, z)$  in the rigid body are obtained which, after some rearrangement, may be written,

$$\begin{aligned} a'_x &= \dot{U} - rV + qW - x(q^2 + r^2) + y(pq - \dot{r}) + z(pr + \dot{q}) \\ a'_y &= \dot{V} - pW + rU + x(pq + \dot{r}) - y(p^2 + r^2) + z(qr - \dot{p}) \\ a'_z &= \dot{W} - qU + pV + x(pr - \dot{q}) + y(qr + \dot{p}) - z(p^2 + q^2) \end{aligned} \quad (4.9)$$

### Example 4.1

To illustrate the usefulness of equations (4.9) consider the following simple example.

A pilot in an aerobatic aircraft performs a loop in 20 s at a steady velocity of 100 m/s. His seat is located 5 m ahead of, and 1 m above the *cg*. What total normal load factor does he experience at the top and at the bottom of the loop?

Assuming the motion is in the plane of symmetry only, then  $V = \dot{p} = p = r = 0$  and since the pilot's seat is also in the plane of symmetry  $y = 0$  and the expression for normal acceleration is, from equations (4.9):

$$a'_z = \dot{W} - qU + x\dot{q} - zq^2$$

Since the manoeuvre is steady, the further simplification can be made  $\dot{W} = \dot{q} = 0$  and the expression for the normal acceleration at the pilots seat reduces to

$$a'_z = -qU - zq^2$$

Now,

$$q = \frac{2\pi}{20} = 0.314 \text{ rad/s}$$

$$U = 100 \text{ m/s}$$

$$x = 5 \text{ m}$$

$$z = -1 \text{ m (above } cg \text{ hence negative)}$$

whence  $a'_z = -31.30 \text{ m/s}^2$ . Now, by definition, the corresponding incremental normal load factor due to the manoeuvre is given by

$$n' = \frac{-a'_z}{g} = \frac{31.30}{9.81} = 3.19$$

The total normal load factor  $n$  comprises that due to the manoeuvre  $n'$  plus that due to gravity  $n_g$ . At the top of the loop  $n_g = -1$ , thus the total normal load factor is given by

$$n = n' + n_g = 3.19 - 1 = 2.19$$

and at the bottom of the loop  $n_g = 1$  and in this case the total normal load factor is given by

$$n = n' + n_g = 3.19 + 1 = 4.19$$

It is interesting to note that the normal acceleration measured by an accelerometer mounted at the pilots seat corresponds with the total normal load factor. The accelerometer would therefore give the following readings:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{at the top of the loop} & a_z = ng = 2.19 \times 9.81 = 21.48 \text{ m/s}^2 \\ \text{at the bottom of the loop} & a_z = ng = 4.19 \times 9.81 = 41.10 \text{ m/s}^2 \end{array}$$

Equations (4.9) can therefore be used to determine the accelerations that would be measured by suitably aligned accelerometers located at any point in the airframe and defined by the coordinates  $(x, y, z)$ .

#### 4.1.2 The generalised force equations

Consider now an incremental mass  $\delta m$  at point  $p(x, y, z)$  in the rigid body. Applying Newton's second law, equation (4.1), to the incremental mass the incremental components of force acting on the mass are given by  $(\delta m a'_x, \delta m a'_y, \delta m a'_z)$ . Thus the total force components  $(X, Y, Z)$  acting on the body are given by summing the force increments over the whole body, whence,

$$\begin{aligned} \sum \delta m a'_x &= X \\ \sum \delta m a'_y &= Y \\ \sum \delta m a'_z &= Z \end{aligned} \tag{4.10}$$

Substitute the expressions for the components of inertial acceleration  $(a'_x, a'_y, a'_z)$  from equations (4.9) into equations (4.10) and note that since the origin of axes coincides with the  $cg$ :

$$\sum \delta m x = \sum \delta m y = \sum \delta m z = 0 \tag{4.11}$$

Therefore the resultant components of total force acting on the rigid body are given by

$$\begin{aligned} m(\dot{U} - rV + qW) &= X \\ m(\dot{V} - pW + rU) &= Y \\ m(\dot{W} - qU + pV) &= Z \end{aligned} \tag{4.12}$$

where  $m$  is the total mass of the body.

Equations (4.12) represent the force equations of a generalised rigid body and describe the motion of its *cg* since the origin of the axis system is co-located with the *cg* in the body. In some applications, for example the airship, it is often convenient to locate the origin of the axis system at some point other than the *cg*. In such cases the condition described by equation (4.11) does not apply and equations (4.12) would include rather more terms.

### 4.1.3 The generalised moment equations

Consider now the moments produced by the forces acting on the incremental mass  $\delta m$  at point  $p(x, y, z)$  in the rigid body. The incremental force components create an incremental moment component about each of the three body axes and by summing these over the whole body the moment equations are obtained. The moment equations are, of course, the realisation of the rotational form of Newton's second law of motion.

For example, the total moment  $L$  about the *ox* axis is given by summing the incremental moments over the whole body:

$$\sum \delta m(ya'_z - za'_y) = L \quad (4.13)$$

Substituting in equation (4.13) for  $a'_y$  and for  $a'_z$  obtained from equations (4.9) and noting that equation (4.11) applies then, after some rearrangement, equation (4.13) may be written:

$$\left( \dot{p} \sum \delta m(y^2 + z^2) + qr \sum \delta m(y^2 - z^2) + (r^2 - q^2) \sum \delta myz - (pq + \dot{r}) \sum \delta mxz + (pr - \dot{q}) \sum \delta mxy \right) = L \quad (4.14)$$

Terms under the summation sign  $\sum$  in equation (4.14) have the units of moment of inertia thus, it is convenient to define the moments and products of inertia as set out in Table 4.1.

Equation (4.14) may therefore be rewritten:

$$I_x \dot{p} - (I_y - I_z)qr + I_{xy}(pr - \dot{q}) - I_{xz}(pq + \dot{r}) + I_{yz}(r^2 - q^2) = L \quad (4.15)$$

In a similar way the total moments  $M$  and  $N$  about the *oy* and *oz* axes respectively are given by summing the incremental moment components over the whole body:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum \delta m(za'_x - xa'_z) &= M \\ \sum \delta m(xa'_y - ya'_x) &= N \end{aligned} \quad (4.16)$$

**Table 4.1** Moments and Products of Inertia

$I_x = \sum \delta m(y^2 + z^2)$	Moment of inertia about <i>ox</i> axis
$I_y = \sum \delta m(x^2 + z^2)$	Moment of inertia about <i>oy</i> axis
$I_z = \sum \delta m(x^2 + y^2)$	Moment of inertia about <i>oz</i> axis
$I_{xy} = \sum \delta mxy$	Product of inertia about <i>ox</i> and <i>oy</i> axes
$I_{xz} = \sum \delta mxz$	Product of inertia about <i>ox</i> and <i>oz</i> axes
$I_{yz} = \sum \delta myz$	Product of inertia about <i>oy</i> and <i>oz</i> axes

Substituting  $a'_x$ ,  $a'_y$  and  $a'_z$ , obtained from equations (4.9), in equations (4.16), noting again that equation (4.11) applies and making use of the inertia definitions given in Table 4.1 then, the moment  $M$  about the  $oy$  axis is given by

$$I_y \dot{q} + (I_x - I_z)pr + I_{yz}(pq - \dot{r}) + I_{xz}(p^2 - r^2) - I_{xy}(qr + \dot{p}) = M \quad (4.17)$$

and the moment  $N$  about the  $oz$  axis is given by

$$I_z \dot{r} - (I_x - I_y)pq - I_{yz}(pr + \dot{q}) + I_{xz}(qr - \dot{p}) + I_{xy}(q^2 - p^2) = N \quad (4.18)$$

Equations (4.15), (4.17) and (4.18) represent the moment equations of a generalised rigid body and describe the rotational motion about the orthogonal axes through its  $cg$  since the origin of the axis system is co-located with the  $cg$  in the body.

When the generalised body represents an aircraft the moment equations may be simplified since it is assumed that the aircraft is symmetric about the  $oxz$  plane and that the mass is uniformly distributed. As a result the products of inertia  $I_{xy} = I_{yz} = 0$ . Thus the moment equations simplify to the following:

$$\begin{aligned} I_x \dot{p} - (I_y - I_z)qr - I_{xz}(pq + \dot{r}) &= L \\ I_y \dot{q} + (I_x - I_z)pr + I_{xz}(p^2 - r^2) &= M \\ I_z \dot{r} - (I_x - I_y)pq + I_{xz}(qr - \dot{p}) &= N \end{aligned} \quad (4.19)$$

The equations (4.19), describe rolling motion, pitching motion and yawing motion respectively. A further simplification can be made if it is assumed that the aircraft body axes are aligned to be *principal inertia axes*. In this special case the remaining product of inertia  $I_{xz}$  is also zero. This simplification is not often used owing to the difficulty of precisely determining the principal inertia axes. However, the symmetry of the aircraft determines that  $I_{xz}$  is generally very much smaller than  $I_x$ ,  $I_y$  and  $I_z$  and can often be neglected.

#### 4.1.4 Disturbance forces and moments

Together, equations (4.12) and (4.19) comprise the generalised six degrees of freedom equations of motion of a rigid symmetric airframe having a uniform mass distribution. Further development of the equations of motion requires that the terms on the right hand side of the equations adequately describe the disturbing forces and moments. The traditional approach, after Bryan (1911), is to assume that the disturbing forces and moments are due to *aerodynamic effects*, *gravitational effects*, *movement of aerodynamic controls*, *power effects* and the effects of atmospheric *disturbances*. Thus bringing together equations (4.12) and (4.19) they may be written to include these contributions as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} m(\dot{U} - rV + qW) &= X_a + X_g + X_c + X_p + X_d \\ m(\dot{V} - pW + rU) &= Y_a + Y_g + Y_c + Y_p + Y_d \\ m(\dot{W} - qU + pV) &= Z_a + Z_g + Z_c + Z_p + Z_d \end{aligned} \quad (4.20)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
I_x \dot{p} - (I_y - I_z)qr - I_{xz}(pq + \dot{r}) &= L_a + L_g + L_c + L_p + L_d \\
I_y \dot{q} + (I_x - I_z)pr + I_{xz}(p^2 - r^2) &= M_a + M_g + M_c + M_p + M_d \\
I_z \dot{r} - (I_x - I_y)pq + I_{xz}(qr - \dot{p}) &= N_a + N_g + N_c + N_p + N_d
\end{aligned}$$

Now the equations (4.20) describe the generalised motion of the aeroplane without regard for the magnitude of the motion and subject to the assumptions applying. The equations are *non-linear* and their solution by analytical means is not generally practicable. Further, the terms on the right hand side of the equations must be replaced with suitable expressions which are particularly difficult to determine for the most general motion. Typically, the continued development of the non-linear equations of motion and their solution is most easily accomplished using computer modelling, or simulation techniques which are beyond the scope of this book.

In order to proceed with the development of the equations of motion for analytical purposes, they must be linearised. Linearisation is very simply accomplished by constraining the motion of the aeroplane to small perturbations about the trim condition.

## 4.2 THE LINEARISED EQUATIONS OF MOTION

Initially the aeroplane is assumed to be flying in steady trimmed rectilinear flight with zero roll, sideslip and yaw angles. Thus, the plane of symmetry of the aeroplane *oxz* is *vertical* with respect to the earth reference frame. At this flight condition the velocity of the aeroplane is  $V_0$ , the components of linear velocity are  $(U_e, V_e, W_e)$  and the angular velocity components are all zero. Since there is no sideslip  $V_e = 0$ . A stable undisturbed atmosphere is also assumed such that

$$X_d = Y_d = Z_d = L_d = M_d = N_d = 0 \quad (4.21)$$

If now the aeroplane experiences a small perturbation about trim, the components of the linear disturbance velocities are  $(u, v, w)$  and the components of the angular disturbance velocities are  $(p, q, r)$  with respect to the undisturbed aeroplane axes  $(oxyz)$ . Thus the total velocity components of the *cg* in the disturbed motion are given by

$$\begin{aligned}
U &= U_e + u \\
V &= V_e + v = v \\
W &= W_e + w
\end{aligned} \quad (4.22)$$

Now, by definition  $(u, v, w)$  and  $(p, q, r)$  are small quantities such that terms involving products and squares of these terms are insignificantly small and may be ignored. Thus, substituting equations (4.21) and (4.22) into equations (4.20), note that  $(U_e, V_e, W_e)$  are steady and hence constant, and eliminating the insignificantly small terms, the linearised equations of motion are obtained:

$$\begin{aligned}
m(\dot{u} + qW_e) &= X_a + X_g + X_c + X_p \\
m(\dot{v} - pW_e + rU_e) &= Y_a + Y_g + Y_c + Y_p \\
m(\dot{w} - qU_e) &= Z_a + Z_g + Z_c + Z_p
\end{aligned} \quad (4.23)$$



$$\begin{aligned}
I_x \dot{p} - I_{xz} \dot{r} &= L_a + L_g + L_c + L_p \\
I_y \dot{q} &= M_a + M_g + M_c + M_p \\
I_z \dot{r} - I_{xz} \dot{p} &= N_a + N_g + N_c + N_p
\end{aligned}$$

The development of expressions to replace the terms on the right hand sides of equations (4.23) is now much simpler since it is only necessary to consider small disturbances about trim.

#### 4.2.1 Gravitational terms

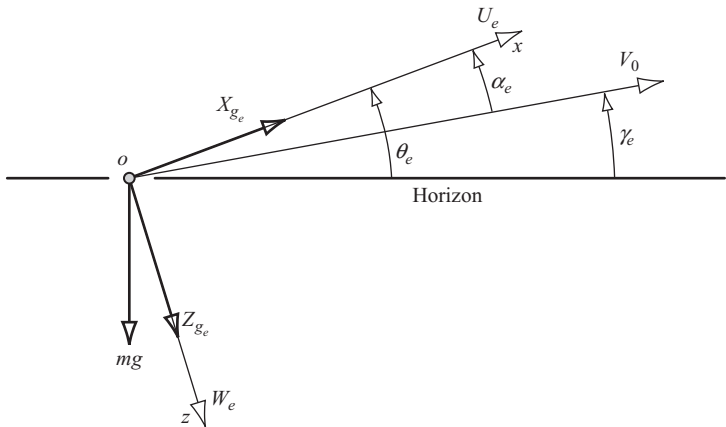
The weight force  $mg$  acting on the aeroplane may be resolved into components acting in each of the three aeroplane axes. When the aeroplane is disturbed these components will vary according to the perturbations in attitude thereby making a contribution to the disturbed motion. Thus the gravitational contribution to equations (4.23) is obtained by resolving the aeroplane weight into the disturbed body axes. Since the origin of the aeroplane body axes is coincident with the  $cg$  there is no weight moment about any of the axes, therefore

$$L_g = M_g = N_g = 0 \quad (4.24)$$

Since the aeroplane is flying wings level in the initial symmetric flight condition, the components of weight only appear in the plane of symmetry as shown in Fig. 4.4. Thus in the steady state the components of weight resolved into aeroplane axes are

$$\begin{bmatrix} X_{g_e} \\ Y_{g_e} \\ Z_{g_e} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -mg \sin \theta_e \\ 0 \\ mg \cos \theta_e \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.25)$$

During the disturbance the aeroplane attitude perturbation is  $(\phi, \theta, \psi)$  and the components of weight in the disturbed aeroplane axes may be derived with the aid of



**Figure 4.4** Steady state weight components in the plane of symmetry.

the transformation equation (2.11). As, by definition, the angular perturbations are small, small angle approximations may be used in the direction cosine matrix to give the following relationship:

$$\begin{bmatrix} X_g \\ Y_g \\ Z_g \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \psi & -\theta \\ -\psi & 1 & \phi \\ \theta & -\phi & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} X_{ge} \\ Y_{ge} \\ Z_{ge} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \psi & -\theta \\ -\psi & 1 & \phi \\ \theta & -\phi & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -mg \sin \theta_e \\ 0 \\ mg \cos \theta_e \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.26)$$

And, again, the products of small quantities have been neglected on the grounds that they are insignificantly small. Thus, the gravitational force components in the small perturbation equations of motion are given by

$$\begin{aligned} X_g &= -mg \sin \theta_e - mg\theta \cos \theta_e \\ Y_g &= mg\psi \sin \theta_e + mg\phi \cos \theta_e \\ Z_g &= mg \cos \theta_e - mg\theta \sin \theta_e \end{aligned} \quad (4.27)$$

#### 4.2.2 Aerodynamic terms

Whenever the aeroplane is disturbed from its equilibrium the aerodynamic balance is obviously upset. To describe explicitly the aerodynamic changes occurring during a disturbance provides a considerable challenge in view of the subtle interactions present in the motion. However, although limited in scope, the method first described by Bryan (1911) works extremely well for classical aeroplanes when the motion of interest is limited to (relatively) small perturbations. Although the approach is unchanged the rather more modern notation of Hopkin (1970) is adopted.

The usual procedure is to assume that the aerodynamic force and moment terms in equations (4.20) are dependent on the disturbed motion variables and their derivatives only. Mathematically this is conveniently expressed as a function comprising the sum of a number of Taylor series, each series involving one motion variable or derivative of a motion variable. Since the motion variables are  $(u, v, w)$  and  $(p, q, r)$  the aerodynamic term  $X_a$  in the axial force equation, for example, may be expressed:

$$\begin{aligned} X_a &= X_{ae} + \left( \frac{\partial X}{\partial u} u + \frac{\partial^2 X}{\partial u^2} \frac{u^2}{2!} + \frac{\partial^3 X}{\partial u^3} \frac{u^3}{3!} + \frac{\partial^4 X}{\partial u^4} \frac{u^4}{4!} + \dots \right) \\ &+ \left( \frac{\partial X}{\partial v} v + \frac{\partial^2 X}{\partial v^2} \frac{v^2}{2!} + \frac{\partial^3 X}{\partial v^3} \frac{v^3}{3!} + \frac{\partial^4 X}{\partial v^4} \frac{v^4}{4!} + \dots \right) \\ &+ \left( \frac{\partial X}{\partial w} w + \frac{\partial^2 X}{\partial w^2} \frac{w^2}{2!} + \frac{\partial^3 X}{\partial w^3} \frac{w^3}{3!} + \frac{\partial^4 X}{\partial w^4} \frac{w^4}{4!} + \dots \right) \\ &+ \left( \frac{\partial X}{\partial p} p + \frac{\partial^2 X}{\partial p^2} \frac{p^2}{2!} + \frac{\partial^3 X}{\partial p^3} \frac{p^3}{3!} + \frac{\partial^4 X}{\partial p^4} \frac{p^4}{4!} + \dots \right) \\ &+ \left( \frac{\partial X}{\partial q} q + \frac{\partial^2 X}{\partial q^2} \frac{q^2}{2!} + \frac{\partial^3 X}{\partial q^3} \frac{q^3}{3!} + \frac{\partial^4 X}{\partial q^4} \frac{q^4}{4!} + \dots \right) \\ &+ \left( \frac{\partial X}{\partial r} r + \frac{\partial^2 X}{\partial r^2} \frac{r^2}{2!} + \frac{\partial^3 X}{\partial r^3} \frac{r^3}{3!} + \frac{\partial^4 X}{\partial r^4} \frac{r^4}{4!} + \dots \right) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& + \left( \frac{\partial X}{\partial \dot{u}} \dot{u} + \frac{\partial^2 X}{\partial \dot{u}^2} \frac{\dot{u}^2}{2!} + \frac{\partial^3 X}{\partial \dot{u}^3} \frac{\dot{u}^3}{3!} + \dots \right) \\
& + \left( \frac{\partial X}{\partial \dot{v}} \dot{v} + \frac{\partial^2 X}{\partial \dot{v}^2} \frac{\dot{v}^2}{2!} + \frac{\partial^3 X}{\partial \dot{v}^3} \frac{\dot{v}^3}{3!} + \dots \right) \\
& + \text{series terms in } \dot{w}, \dot{p}, \dot{q} \text{ and } \dot{r} \\
& + \text{series terms in higher order derivatives}
\end{aligned} \tag{4.28}$$

where  $X_{a_e}$  is a constant term. Since the motion variables are small, for all practical aeroplanes only the first term in each of the series functions is significant. Further, the only significant higher order derivative terms commonly encountered are those involving  $\dot{w}$ . Thus equation (4.28) is dramatically simplified to

$$X_a = X_{a_e} + \frac{\partial X}{\partial u} u + \frac{\partial X}{\partial v} v + \frac{\partial X}{\partial w} w + \frac{\partial X}{\partial p} p + \frac{\partial X}{\partial q} q + \frac{\partial X}{\partial r} r + \frac{\partial X}{\partial \dot{w}} \dot{w} \tag{4.29}$$

Using an alternative shorthand notation for the derivatives, equation (4.29) may be written:

$$X_a = X_{a_e} + \overset{\circ}{X}_u u + \overset{\circ}{X}_v v + \overset{\circ}{X}_w w + \overset{\circ}{X}_p p + \overset{\circ}{X}_q q + \overset{\circ}{X}_r r + \overset{\circ}{X}_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} \tag{4.30}$$

The coefficients  $\overset{\circ}{X}_u, \overset{\circ}{X}_v, \overset{\circ}{X}_w$  etc. are called *aerodynamic stability derivatives* and the dressing ( $\circ$ ) denotes the derivatives to be *dimensional*. Since equation (4.30) has the units of force, the units of each of the aerodynamic stability derivatives are self-evident. In a similar way the force and moment terms in the remaining equations (4.20) are determined. For example, the aerodynamic term in the rolling moment equation is given by

$$L_a = L_{a_e} + \overset{\circ}{L}_u u + \overset{\circ}{L}_v v + \overset{\circ}{L}_w w + \overset{\circ}{L}_p p + \overset{\circ}{L}_q q + \overset{\circ}{L}_r r + \overset{\circ}{L}_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} \tag{4.31}$$

### 4.2.3 Aerodynamic control terms

The primary aerodynamic controls are the elevator, ailerons and rudder. Since the forces and moments created by control deflections arise from the changes in aerodynamic conditions, it is usual to quantify their effect in terms of *aerodynamic control derivatives*. The assumptions applied to the aerodynamic terms are also applied to the control terms thus, for example, the pitching moment due to aerodynamic controls may be expressed:

$$M_c = \frac{\partial M}{\partial \xi} \xi + \frac{\partial M}{\partial \eta} \eta + \frac{\partial M}{\partial \zeta} \zeta \tag{4.32}$$

where aileron angle, elevator angle and rudder angle are denoted  $\xi$ ,  $\eta$  and  $\zeta$  respectively. Since equation (4.32) describes the effect of the aerodynamic controls with respect to the prevailing trim condition it is important to realise that the control angles,

$\xi$ ,  $\eta$  and  $\zeta$  are measured relative to the trim settings  $\xi_e$ ,  $\eta_e$  and  $\zeta_e$  respectively. Again, the shorthand notation may be used and equation (4.32) may be written:

$$M_c = \dot{M}_\xi \xi + \dot{M}_\eta \eta + \dot{M}_\zeta \zeta \quad (4.33)$$

The aerodynamic control terms in the remaining equations of motion are assembled in a similar way. If it is required to study the response of an aeroplane to other aerodynamic controls, for example, flaps, spoilers, leading edge devices, etc. then additional terms may be appended to equation (4.33) and the remaining equations of motion as required.

#### 4.2.4 Power terms

Power, and hence thrust  $\tau$ , is usually controlled by throttle lever angle  $\varepsilon$  and the relationship between the two variables is given for a simple turbojet by equation (2.34) in Chapter 2. Movement of the throttle lever causes a thrust change which in turn gives rise to a change in the components of force and moment acting on the aeroplane. It is mathematically convenient to describe these effects in terms of engine thrust derivatives. For example, normal force due to thrust may be expressed in the usual shorthand notation:

$$Z_p = \dot{Z}_\tau \tau \quad (4.34)$$

The contributions to the remaining equations of motion are expressed in a similar way. As for the aerodynamic controls, power changes are measured with respect to the prevailing trim setting. Therefore  $\tau$  quantifies the thrust perturbation relative to the trim setting  $\tau_e$ .

#### 4.2.5 The equations of motion for small perturbations

To complete the development of the linearised equations of motion it only remains to substitute the appropriate expressions for the aerodynamic, gravitational, aerodynamic control and thrust terms into equations (4.23). The aerodynamic terms are exemplified by expressions like equations (4.30) and (4.31), expressions for the gravitational terms are given in equations (4.27), the aerodynamic control terms are exemplified by expressions like equation (4.33) and the thrust terms are exemplified by expressions like equation (4.34). Bringing all of these together the following equations are obtained:

$$\begin{aligned} m(\dot{u} + qW_e) &= X_{a_e} + \dot{X}_u u + \dot{X}_v v + \dot{X}_w w + \dot{X}_p p + \dot{X}_q q + \dot{X}_r r + \dot{X}_w \dot{w} \\ &\quad - mg \sin \theta_e - mg \theta \cos \theta_e + \dot{X}_\xi \xi + \dot{X}_\eta \eta + \dot{X}_\zeta \zeta + \dot{X}_\tau \tau \\ m(\dot{v} - pW_e + rU_e) &= Y_{a_e} + \dot{Y}_u u + \dot{Y}_v v + \dot{Y}_w w + \dot{Y}_p p + \dot{Y}_q q + \dot{Y}_r r + \dot{Y}_w \dot{w} \\ &\quad + mg \psi \sin \theta_e + mg \phi \cos \theta_e + \dot{Y}_\xi \xi + \dot{Y}_\eta \eta + \dot{Y}_\zeta \zeta + \dot{Y}_\tau \tau \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
m(\dot{w} - qU_e) &= Z_{a_e} + \dot{Z}_{u_e} + \dot{Z}_v v + \dot{Z}_w w + \dot{Z}_p p + \dot{Z}_q q + \dot{Z}_r r + \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} \\
&\quad + mg \cos \theta_e - mg \theta \sin \theta_e + \dot{Z}_{\xi} \xi + \dot{Z}_{\eta} \eta + \dot{Z}_{\zeta} \zeta + \dot{Z}_{\tau} \tau \\
I_x \dot{p} - I_{xz} \dot{r} &= L_{a_e} + \dot{L}_{u_e} + \dot{L}_v v + \dot{L}_w w + \dot{L}_p p + \dot{L}_q q + \dot{L}_r r \\
&\quad + \dot{L}_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} + \dot{L}_{\xi} \xi + \dot{L}_{\eta} \eta + \dot{L}_{\zeta} \zeta + \dot{L}_{\tau} \tau \\
I_y \dot{q} &= M_{a_e} + \dot{M}_{u_e} + \dot{M}_v v + \dot{M}_w w + \dot{M}_p p + \dot{M}_q q + \dot{M}_r r \\
&\quad + \dot{M}_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} + \dot{M}_{\xi} \xi + \dot{M}_{\eta} \eta + \dot{M}_{\zeta} \zeta + \dot{M}_{\tau} \tau \\
I_z \dot{r} - I_{xz} \dot{p} &= N_{a_e} + \dot{N}_{u_e} + \dot{N}_v v + \dot{N}_w w + \dot{N}_p p + \dot{N}_q q + \dot{N}_r r \\
&\quad + \dot{N}_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} + \dot{N}_{\xi} \xi + \dot{N}_{\eta} \eta + \dot{N}_{\zeta} \zeta + \dot{N}_{\tau} \tau
\end{aligned} \tag{4.35}$$

Now, in the steady trimmed flight condition all of the perturbation variables and their derivatives are, by definition, zero. Thus in the steady state equations (4.35) reduce to

$$\begin{aligned}
X_{a_e} &= mg \sin \theta_e \\
Y_{a_e} &= 0 \\
Z_{a_e} &= -mg \cos \theta_e \\
L_{a_e} &= 0 \\
M_{a_e} &= 0 \\
N_{a_e} &= 0
\end{aligned} \tag{4.36}$$

Equations (4.36) therefore identify the constant trim terms which may be substituted into equations (4.35) and, following rearrangement they may be written:

$$\begin{aligned}
&m\dot{u} - \dot{X}_{u_e} u - \dot{X}_v v - \dot{X}_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} - \dot{X}_w w \\
&- \dot{X}_p p - \left( \dot{X}_q - mW_e \right) q - \dot{X}_r r + mg \theta \cos \theta_e = \dot{X}_{\xi} \xi + \dot{X}_{\eta} \eta + \dot{X}_{\zeta} \zeta + \dot{X}_{\tau} \tau \\
&- \dot{Y}_{u_e} u + m\dot{v} - \dot{Y}_v v - \dot{Y}_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} - \dot{Y}_w w - \left( \dot{Y}_p + mW_e \right) p \\
&- \dot{Y}_q q - \left( \dot{Y}_r - mU_e \right) r - mg \phi \cos \theta_e - mg \psi \sin \theta_e = \dot{Y}_{\xi} \xi + \dot{Y}_{\eta} \eta + \dot{Y}_{\zeta} \zeta + \dot{Y}_{\tau} \tau \\
&- \dot{Z}_{u_e} u - \dot{Z}_v v + \left( m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}} \right) \dot{w} - \dot{Z}_w w \\
&- \dot{Z}_p p - \left( \dot{Z}_q + mU_e \right) q - \dot{Z}_r r + mg \theta \sin \theta_e = \dot{Z}_{\xi} \xi + \dot{Z}_{\eta} \eta + \dot{Z}_{\zeta} \zeta + \dot{Z}_{\tau} \tau \\
&- \dot{L}_{u_e} u - \dot{L}_v v - \dot{L}_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} - \dot{L}_w w \\
&+ I_x \dot{p} - \dot{L}_p p - \dot{L}_q q - I_{xz} \dot{r} - \dot{L}_r r = \dot{L}_{\xi} \xi + \dot{L}_{\eta} \eta + \dot{L}_{\zeta} \zeta + \dot{L}_{\tau} \tau
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& -\ddot{M}_u u - \ddot{M}_v v - \ddot{M}_w \dot{w} \\
& -\ddot{M}_w w - \ddot{M}_p p + I_y \dot{q} - \ddot{M}_q q - \ddot{M}_r r = \ddot{M}_\xi \xi + \ddot{M}_\eta \eta + \ddot{M}_\zeta \zeta + \ddot{M}_\tau \tau \\
& -\ddot{N}_u u - \ddot{N}_v v - \ddot{N}_w \dot{w} - \ddot{N}_w w \\
& -I_{xz} \dot{p} - \ddot{N}_p p - \ddot{N}_q q + I_z \dot{r} - \ddot{N}_r r = \ddot{N}_\xi \xi + \ddot{N}_\eta \eta + \ddot{N}_\zeta \zeta + \ddot{N}_\tau \tau
\end{aligned} \tag{4.37}$$

Equations (4.37) are the small perturbation equations of motion, referred to body axes, which describe the transient response of an aeroplane about the trimmed flight condition following a small input disturbance. The equations comprise a set of six simultaneous linear differential equations written in the traditional manner with the forcing, or input, terms on the right hand side. As written, and subject to the assumptions made in their derivation, the equations of motion are perfectly general and describe motion in which longitudinal and lateral dynamics may be fully coupled. However, for the vast majority of aeroplanes when small perturbation transient motion only is considered, as is the case here, longitudinal–lateral coupling is usually negligible. Consequently it is convenient to simplify the equations by assuming that longitudinal and lateral motion is in fact fully decoupled.

### 4.3 THE DECOUPLED EQUATIONS OF MOTION

#### 4.3.1 The longitudinal equations of motion

Decoupled longitudinal motion is motion in response to a disturbance which is constrained to the longitudinal plane of symmetry, the  $oxz$  plane, only. The motion is therefore described by the axial force  $X$ , the normal force  $Z$  and the pitching moment  $M$  equations only. Since no lateral motion is involved the lateral motion variables  $v$ ,  $p$  and  $r$  and their derivatives are all zero. Also, decoupled longitudinal–lateral motion means that the aerodynamic coupling derivatives are negligibly small and may be taken as zero whence

$$\dot{X}_v = \dot{X}_p = \dot{X}_r = \dot{Z}_v = \dot{Z}_p = \dot{Z}_r = \dot{M}_v = \dot{M}_p = \dot{M}_r = 0 \tag{4.38}$$

Similarly, since aileron or rudder deflections do not usually cause motion in the longitudinal plane of symmetry the coupling aerodynamic control derivatives may also be taken as zero thus

$$\dot{X}_\xi = \dot{X}_\zeta = \dot{Z}_\xi = \dot{Z}_\zeta = \dot{M}_\xi = \dot{M}_\zeta = 0 \tag{4.39}$$

The equations of longitudinal symmetric motion are therefore obtained by extracting the axial force, normal force and pitching moment equations from equations (4.37) and substituting equations (4.38) and (4.39) as appropriate. Whence

$$\begin{aligned}
& m\ddot{u} - \ddot{X}_{uu} - \ddot{X}_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} - \ddot{X}_{ww} - \left( \ddot{X}_q - mW_e \right) q + mg\theta \cos \theta_e = \ddot{X}_\eta \eta + \ddot{X}_\tau \tau \\
& -\ddot{Z}_{uu} + \left( m - \ddot{Z}_{\dot{w}} \right) \dot{w} - \ddot{Z}_{ww} - \left( \ddot{Z}_q + mU_e \right) q + mg\theta \sin \theta_e = \ddot{Z}_\eta \eta + \ddot{Z}_\tau \tau \\
& -\ddot{M}_{uu} - \ddot{M}_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} - \ddot{M}_{ww} + I_y \dot{q} - \ddot{M}_q q = \ddot{M}_\eta \eta + \ddot{M}_\tau \tau
\end{aligned} \tag{4.40}$$

Equations (4.40) are the most general form of the dimensional decoupled equations of longitudinal symmetric motion referred to aeroplane body axes. If it is assumed that the aeroplane is in level flight and the reference axes are wind or stability axes then

$$\theta_e = W_e = 0 \quad (4.41)$$

and the equations simplify further to

$$\begin{aligned} m\dot{u} - \dot{X}_u u - \dot{X}_w \dot{w} - \dot{X}_q q + mg\theta &= \dot{X}_\eta \eta + \dot{X}_\tau \tau \\ -\dot{Z}_u u + \left(m - \dot{Z}_w\right) \dot{w} - \dot{Z}_q q - \left(\dot{Z}_q + mU_e\right) q &= \dot{Z}_\eta \eta + \dot{Z}_\tau \tau \\ -\dot{M}_u u - \dot{M}_w \dot{w} - \dot{M}_q q + I_y \dot{q} - \dot{M}_q q &= \dot{M}_\eta \eta + \dot{M}_\tau \tau \end{aligned} \quad (4.42)$$

Equations (4.42) represent the simplest possible form of the decoupled longitudinal equations of motion. Further simplification is only generally possible when the numerical values of the coefficients in the equations are known since some coefficients are often negligibly small.

### Example 4.2

Longitudinal derivative and other data for the McDonnell F-4C Phantom aeroplane was obtained from Heffley and Jewell (1972) for a flight condition of Mach 0.6 at an altitude of 35000 ft. The original data is presented in imperial units and in a format preferred in the USA. Normally, it is advisable to work with the equations of motion and the data in the format and units as given. Otherwise, conversion to another format can be tedious in the extreme and is easily subject to error. However, for the purposes of illustration, the derivative data has been converted to a form compatible with the equations developed above and the units have been changed to those of the more familiar SI system. The data is quite typical, it would normally be supplied in this, or similar, form by aerodynamicists and as such it represents the starting point in any flight dynamics analysis:

Flight path angle $\gamma_e = 0^\circ$	Air density $\rho = 0.3809 \text{ kg/m}^3$
Body incidence $\alpha_e = 9.4^\circ$	Wing area $S = 49.239 \text{ m}^2$
Velocity $V_0 = 178 \text{ m/s}$	Mean aerodynamic chord $\bar{c} = 4.889 \text{ m}$
Mass $m = 17642 \text{ kg}$	Acceleration due to gravity $g = 9.81 \text{ m/s}^2$
Pitch moment of inertia $I_y = 165669 \text{ kgm}^2$	

Since the flight path angle  $\gamma_e = 0$  and the body incidence  $\alpha_e$  is non-zero it may be deduced that the following derivatives are referred to a body axes system and that  $\theta_e \equiv \alpha_e$ . The dimensionless longitudinal derivatives are given and any missing aerodynamic derivatives must be assumed insignificant, and hence zero. On the other

hand, missing control derivatives may not be assumed insignificant although their absence will prohibit analysis of response to those controls:

$$\begin{array}{lll}
 X_u = 0.0076 & Z_u = -0.7273 & M_u = 0.0340 \\
 X_w = 0.0483 & Z_w = -3.1245 & M_w = -0.2169 \\
 X_{\dot{w}} = 0 & Z_{\dot{w}} = -0.3997 & M_{\dot{w}} = -0.5910 \\
 X_q = 0 & Z_q = -1.2109 & M_q = -1.2732 \\
 X_{\eta} = 0.0618 & Z_{\eta} = -0.3741 & M_{\eta} = -0.5581
 \end{array}$$

Equations (4.40) are compatible with the data although the dimensional derivatives must first be calculated according to the definitions given in Appendix 2, Tables A2.1 and A2.2. Thus the dimensional longitudinal equations of motion, referred to body axes, are obtained by substituting the appropriate values into equations (4.40) to give

$$\begin{aligned}
 17642\dot{u} - 12.67u - 80.62w + 512852.94q + 170744.06\theta &= 18362.32\eta \\
 1214.01u + 17660.33\dot{w} + 5215.44w - 3088229.7q + 28266.507\theta &= -111154.41\eta \\
 -277.47u + 132.47\dot{w} + 1770.07w + 165669\dot{q} + 50798.03q &= -810886.19\eta
 \end{aligned}$$

where  $W_e = V_0 \sin \theta_e = 29.07$  m/s and  $U_e = V_0 \cos \theta_e = 175.61$  m/s. Note that angular variables in the equations of motion have radian units. Clearly, when written like this the equations of motion are unwieldy. The equations can be simplified a little by dividing through by the mass or inertia as appropriate. Thus the first equation is divided by 17642, the second equation by 17660.33 and the third equation by 165669. After some rearrangement the following rather more convenient version is obtained:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \dot{u} &= 0.0007u + 0.0046w - 29.0700q - 9.6783\theta + 1.0408\eta \\
 \dot{w} &= -0.0687u - 0.2953w + 174.8680q - 1.6000\theta - 6.2940\eta \\
 \dot{q} + 0.0008\dot{w} &= 0.0017u - 0.0107w - 0.3066q - 4.8946\eta
 \end{aligned}$$

It must be remembered that, when written in this latter form, the equations of motion have the units of acceleration. The most striking feature of these equations, however written, is the large variation in the values of the coefficients. Terms which may, at first sight, appear insignificant are frequently important in the solution of the equations. It is therefore prudent to maintain sensible levels of accuracy when manipulating the equations by hand. Fortunately, this is an activity which is not often required.

#### 4.3.2 The lateral-directional equations of motion

Decoupled lateral-directional motion involves roll, yaw and sideslip only. The motion is therefore described by the side force  $Y$ , the rolling moment  $L$  and the yawing moment  $N$  equations only. As no longitudinal motion is involved the longitudinal motion variables  $u$ ,  $w$  and  $q$  and their derivatives are all zero. Also, decoupled longitudinal-lateral motion means that the aerodynamic coupling derivatives are negligibly small and may be taken as zero whence

$$\dot{Y}_u = \dot{Y}_w = \dot{Y}_q = \dot{L}_u = \dot{L}_w = \dot{L}_q = \dot{N}_u = \dot{N}_w = \dot{N}_q = 0 \quad (4.43)$$



Similarly, since the airframe is symmetric, elevator deflection and thrust variation do not usually cause lateral-directional motion and the coupling aerodynamic control derivatives may also be taken as zero thus

$$\dot{Y}_\eta = \dot{Y}_\tau = \dot{L}_\eta = \dot{L}_\tau = \dot{N}_\eta = \dot{N}_\tau = 0 \quad (4.44)$$

The equations of lateral asymmetric motion are therefore obtained by extracting the side force, rolling moment and yawing moment equations from equations (4.37) and substituting equations (4.43) and (4.44) as appropriate. Whence

$$\begin{aligned} \left( m\dot{v} - \dot{Y}_v v - \left( \dot{Y}_p + mW_e \right) p - \left( \dot{Y}_r - mU_e \right) r \right) &= \dot{Y}_\xi \xi + \dot{Y}_\zeta \zeta \\ &- mg\phi \cos \theta_e - mg\psi \sin \theta_e \\ - \dot{L}_v v + I_x \dot{p} - \dot{L}_p p - I_{xz} \dot{r} - \dot{L}_r r &= \dot{L}_\xi \xi + \dot{L}_\zeta \zeta \\ - \dot{N}_v v - I_{xz} \dot{p} - \dot{N}_p p + I_z \dot{r} - \dot{N}_r r &= \dot{N}_\xi \xi + \dot{N}_\zeta \zeta \end{aligned} \quad (4.45)$$

Equations (4.45) are the most general form of the dimensional decoupled equations of lateral-directional asymmetric motion referred to aeroplane body axes. If it is assumed that the aeroplane is in level flight and the reference axes are wind or stability axes then, as before,

$$\theta_e = W_e = 0 \quad (4.46)$$

and the equations simplify further to

$$\begin{aligned} m\dot{v} - \dot{Y}_v v - p\dot{Y}_p - \left( \dot{Y}_r - mU_e \right) r - mg\phi &= \dot{Y}_\xi \xi + \dot{Y}_\zeta \zeta \\ - \dot{L}_v v + I_x \dot{p} - \dot{L}_p p - I_{xz} \dot{r} - \dot{L}_r r &= \dot{L}_\xi \xi + \dot{L}_\zeta \zeta \\ - \dot{N}_v v - I_{xz} \dot{p} - \dot{N}_p p + I_z \dot{r} - \dot{N}_r r &= \dot{N}_\xi \xi + \dot{N}_\zeta \zeta \end{aligned} \quad (4.47)$$

Equations (4.47) represent the simplest possible form of the decoupled lateral-directional equations of motion. As for the longitudinal equations of motion, further simplification is only generally possible when the numerical values of the coefficients in the equations are known since some coefficients are often negligibly small.

## 4.4 ALTERNATIVE FORMS OF THE EQUATIONS OF MOTION

### 4.4.1 The dimensionless equations of motion

Traditionally the development of the equations of motion and investigations of stability and control involving their use have been securely resident in the domain of the aerodynamicist. Many aerodynamic phenomena are most conveniently explained in terms of *dimensionless aerodynamic coefficients*, for example, lift coefficient, Mach number, Reynolds number, etc., and often this mechanism provides the only practical

means for making progress. The advantage of this approach is that the aerodynamic properties of an aeroplane can be completely described in terms of dimensionless parameters which are independent of airframe geometry and flight condition. A lift coefficient of 0.5, for example, has precisely the same meaning whether it applies to a Boeing 747 or to a Cessna 150. It is not surprising therefore, to discover that historically the small perturbation equations of motion of an aeroplane were treated in the same way. This in turn leads to the concept of the *dimensionless derivative* which is just another aerodynamic coefficient and may be interpreted in much the same way. However, the dimensionless equations of motion are of little use to the modern flight dynamicist other than as a means for explaining the origin of the dimensionless derivatives. Thus the development of the dimensionless decoupled small perturbation equations of motion is outlined below solely for this purpose.

As formally described by Hopkin (1970) the equations of motion are rendered dimensionless by dividing each equation by a generalised force or moment parameter as appropriate. Sometimes the dimensionless equations of motion are referred to as the *aero-normalised* equations and the corresponding derivative coefficients are also referred to as *aero-normalised derivatives*. To illustrate the procedure consider the axial force equation taken from the decoupled longitudinal equations of motion (4.42):

$$m\ddot{u} - \dot{X}_u \dot{u} - \dot{X}_w \dot{w} - q\dot{X}_q + mg\theta = \dot{X}_\eta \eta + \dot{X}_\tau \tau \quad (4.48)$$

Since equation (4.48) has the units of force it may be rendered dimensionless by dividing, or normalising, each term by the aerodynamic force parameter  $\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S$  where  $S$  is the reference wing area. Defining the following parameters:

(i) Dimensionless time

$$\hat{t} = \frac{t}{\sigma} \quad \text{where } \sigma = \frac{m}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S} \quad (4.49)$$

(ii) The longitudinal relative density factor

$$\mu_1 = \frac{m}{\frac{1}{2}\rho S \bar{c}} \quad (4.50)$$

where the longitudinal reference length is  $\bar{c}$ , the mean aerodynamic chord.

(iii) Dimensionless velocities

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{u} &= \frac{u}{V_0} \\ \hat{w} &= \frac{w}{V_0} \\ \hat{q} &= q\sigma = \frac{qm}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S} \end{aligned} \quad (4.51)$$

(iv) Since level flight is assumed the lift and weight are equal thus

$$mg = \frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S C_L \quad (4.52)$$

Thus, dividing equation (4.48) through by the aerodynamic force parameter and making use of the parameters defined in equations (4.49)–(4.52) above, the following is obtained:

$$\begin{aligned} & \left( \begin{array}{c} \frac{\dot{u}}{V_0} \sigma - \left( \frac{\dot{X}_u}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S} \right) \frac{u}{V_0} - \left( \frac{\dot{X}_w}{\frac{1}{2} \rho S \bar{c}} \right) \frac{\dot{w} \sigma}{V_0 \mu_1} \\ - \left( \frac{\dot{X}_w}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S} \right) \frac{w}{V_0} - \left( \frac{\dot{X}_q}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S \bar{c}} \right) \frac{q \sigma}{\mu_1} + \frac{mg}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 S} \theta \end{array} \right) \\ &= \left( \frac{\dot{X}_\eta}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 S} \right) \eta + \dot{X}_\tau \left( \frac{\tau}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 S} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (4.53)$$

which is more conveniently written:

$$\hat{u} - X_u \hat{u} - X_w \frac{\hat{w}}{\mu_1} - X_q \frac{\hat{q}}{\mu_1} + C_L \theta = X_\eta \eta + X_\tau \hat{\tau} \quad (4.54)$$

The derivatives denoted  $X_u, X_w, X_q, X_\eta$  and  $X_\tau$  are the *dimensionless* or *aero-normalised derivatives* and their definitions follow from equation (4.53). It is in this form that the aerodynamic stability and control derivatives would usually be provided for an aeroplane by the aerodynamicists.

In a similar way the remaining longitudinal equations of motion may be rendered dimensionless. Note that the aerodynamic moment parameter used to divide the pitching moment equation is  $\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 S \bar{c}$ . Whence

$$\begin{aligned} -Z_u \hat{u} + \hat{w} - Z_w \frac{\hat{w}}{\mu_1} - Z_q \frac{\hat{q}}{\mu_1} - \hat{q} &= Z_\eta \eta + Z_\tau \hat{\tau} \\ -M_u \hat{u} - M_w \frac{\hat{w}}{\mu_1} - M_q \frac{\hat{q}}{\mu_1} + i_y \frac{\hat{q}}{\mu_1} - M_q \frac{\hat{q}}{\mu_1} &= M_\eta \eta + M_\tau \hat{\tau} \end{aligned} \quad (4.55)$$

where  $i_y$  is the dimensionless pitch inertia and is given by

$$i_y = \frac{I_y}{m \bar{c}^2} \quad (4.56)$$

Similarly the lateral equations of motion (4.47) may be rendered dimensionless by dividing the side force equation by the aerodynamic force parameter  $\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 S$  and the rolling and yawing moment equations by the aerodynamic moment parameter  $\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 S b$ , where for lateral motion the reference length is the wing span  $b$ . Additional parameter definitions required to deal with the lateral equations are:

(v) The lateral relative density factor

$$\mu_2 = \frac{m}{\frac{1}{2} \rho S b} \quad (4.57)$$

(vi) The dimensionless inertias

$$i_x = \frac{I_x}{mb^2}, i_z = \frac{I_z}{mb^2} \text{ and } i_{xz} = \frac{I_{xz}}{mb^2} \quad (4.58)$$

Since the equations of motion are referred to wind axes and since level flight is assumed then equations (4.47) may be written in dimensionless form as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{v} - Y_v \hat{v} - Y_p \frac{\hat{p}}{\mu_2} - Y_r \frac{\hat{r}}{\mu_2} - \hat{r} - C_L \phi &= Y_\xi \xi + Y_\zeta \zeta \\ -L_v \hat{v} + i_x \frac{\hat{p}}{\mu_2} - L_p \frac{\hat{p}}{\mu_2} - i_{xz} \frac{\hat{r}}{\mu_2} - L_r \frac{\hat{r}}{\mu_2} &= L_\xi \xi + L_\zeta \zeta \\ -N_v \hat{v} - i_{xz} \frac{\hat{p}}{\mu_2} - N_p \frac{\hat{p}}{\mu_2} + i_z \frac{\hat{r}}{\mu_2} - N_r \frac{\hat{r}}{\mu_2} &= N_\xi \xi + N_\zeta \zeta \end{aligned} \quad (4.59)$$

For convenience, the definitions of all of the dimensionless aerodynamic stability and control derivatives are given in Appendix 2.

#### 4.4.2 The equations of motion in state space form

Today the solution of the equations of motion poses few problems since very powerful computational tools are readily available. Since computers are very good at handling numerical matrix calculations the use of matrix methods for solving linear dynamic system problems has become an important topic in modern applied mathematics. In particular, matrix methods together with the digital computer have led to the development of the relatively new field of modern control system theory. For small perturbations, the aeroplane is a classical example of a linear dynamic system and frequently the solution of its equations of motion is a prelude to flight control system design and analysis. It is therefore convenient and straight forward to utilise multi-variable system theory tools in the solution of the equations of motion. However, it is first necessary to arrange the equations of motion in a suitable format.

The motion, or *state*, of any linear dynamic system may be described by a minimum set of variables called the *state variables*. The number of state variables required to completely describe the motion of the system is dependent on the number of degrees of freedom the system has. Thus the motion of the system is described in a multi-dimensional vector space called the *state space*, the number of state variables being equal to the number of dimensions. The equation of motion, or *state equation*, of the *linear time invariant* (LTI) multi-variable system is written:

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(t) \quad (4.60)$$

where

- $\mathbf{x}(t)$  is the column vector of  $n$  state variables called the *state vector*.
- $\mathbf{u}(t)$  is the column vector of  $m$  input variables called the *input vector*.
- $\mathbf{A}$  is the  $(n \times n)$  *state matrix*.
- $\mathbf{B}$  is the  $(n \times m)$  *input matrix*.

Since the system is LTI the matrices  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$  have constant elements. Equation (4.60) is the matrix equivalent of a set of  $n$  simultaneous linear differential equations and it is a straightforward matter to configure the small perturbation equations of motion for an aeroplane in this format.

Now for many systems some of the state variables may be inaccessible or their values may not be determined directly. Thus a second equation is required to determine the system output variables. The output equation is written in the general form

$$\mathbf{y}(t) = \mathbf{C}\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{u}(t) \quad (4.61)$$

where

$\mathbf{y}(t)$  is the column vector of  $r$  output variables called the *output vector*.

$\mathbf{C}$  is the  $(r \times n)$  *output matrix*.

$\mathbf{D}$  is the  $(r \times m)$  *direct matrix*.

and, typically,  $r \leq n$ . Again, for a LTI system the matrices  $\mathbf{C}$  and  $\mathbf{D}$  have constant elements. Together equations (4.60) and (4.61) provide a complete description of the system. A complete description of the formulation of the general state model and the mathematics required in its analysis may be found in Barnett (1975).

For most aeroplane problems it is convenient to choose the output variables to be the state variables. Thus

$$\mathbf{y}(t) = \mathbf{x}(t) \quad \text{and} \quad r = n$$

and consequently

$\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{I}$ , the  $(n \times n)$  *identity matrix*

$\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{0}$ , the  $(n \times m)$  *zero matrix*

As a result the output equation simplifies to

$$\mathbf{y}(t) = \mathbf{I}\mathbf{x}(t) \equiv \mathbf{x}(t) \quad (4.62)$$

and it is only necessary to derive the state equation from the aeroplane equations of motion.

Consider, for example, the longitudinal equations of motion (4.40) referred to aeroplane body axes. These may be rewritten with the acceleration terms on the left hand side as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} m\ddot{u} - \dot{X}_w\dot{w} &= \dot{X}_u u + \dot{X}_w w + \left( \dot{X}_q - mW_e \right) q - mg\theta \cos \theta_e + \dot{X}_\eta \eta + \dot{X}_\tau \tau \\ m\dot{w} - \dot{Z}_w\dot{w} &= \dot{Z}_u u + \dot{Z}_w w + \left( \dot{Z}_q + mU_e \right) q - mg\theta \sin \theta_e + \dot{Z}_\eta \eta + \dot{Z}_\tau \tau \\ I_y \dot{q} - \dot{M}_w\dot{w} &= \dot{M}_u u + \dot{M}_w w + \dot{M}_q q + \dot{M}_\eta \eta + \dot{M}_\tau \tau \end{aligned} \quad (4.63)$$

Since the longitudinal motion of the aeroplane is described by four state variables  $u$ ,  $w$ ,  $q$  and  $\theta$  four differential equations are required. Thus the additional equation is the auxiliary equation relating pitch rate to attitude rate, which for small perturbations is

$$\dot{\theta} = q \quad (4.64)$$

Equations (4.63) and (4.64) may be combined and written in matrix form:

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) = \mathbf{A}'\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{B}'\mathbf{u}(t) \quad (4.65)$$

where

$$\mathbf{x}^T(t) = [u \quad w \quad q \quad \theta] \quad \mathbf{u}^T(t) = [\eta \quad \tau]$$

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} m & -\overset{\circ}{X}_{\dot{w}} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & (m - \overset{\circ}{Z}_{\dot{w}}) & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -\overset{\circ}{M}_{\dot{w}} & I_y & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{A}' = \begin{bmatrix} \overset{\circ}{X}_u & \overset{\circ}{X}_w & (\overset{\circ}{X}_q - mW_e) & -mg \cos \theta_e \\ \overset{\circ}{Z}_u & \overset{\circ}{Z}_w & (\overset{\circ}{Z}_q + mU_e) & -mg \sin \theta_e \\ \overset{\circ}{M}_u & \overset{\circ}{M}_w & \overset{\circ}{M}_q & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \mathbf{B}' = \begin{bmatrix} \overset{\circ}{X}_\eta & \overset{\circ}{X}_\tau \\ \overset{\circ}{Z}_\eta & \overset{\circ}{Z}_\tau \\ \overset{\circ}{M}_\eta & \overset{\circ}{M}_\tau \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

The longitudinal state equation is derived by pre-multiplying equation (4.65) by the inverse of the *mass matrix*  $\mathbf{M}$  whence

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(t) \quad (4.66)$$

where

$$\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{M}^{-1}\mathbf{A}' = \begin{bmatrix} x_u & x_w & x_q & x_\theta \\ z_u & z_w & z_q & z_\theta \\ m_u & m_w & m_q & m_\theta \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{M}^{-1}\mathbf{B}' = \begin{bmatrix} x_\eta & x_\tau \\ z_\eta & z_\tau \\ m_\eta & m_\tau \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

The coefficients of the state matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  are the aerodynamic stability derivatives, referred to aeroplane body axes, in *concise form* and the coefficients of the input matrix  $\mathbf{B}$  are the control derivatives also in concise form. The definitions of the concise derivatives follow directly from the above relationships and are given in full in Appendix 2. Thus the longitudinal state equation may be written out in full:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_u & x_w & x_q & x_\theta \\ z_u & z_w & z_q & z_\theta \\ m_u & m_w & m_q & m_\theta \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} x_\eta & x_\tau \\ z_\eta & z_\tau \\ m_\eta & m_\tau \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \eta \\ \tau \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.67)$$

and the output equation is, very simply,

$$\mathbf{y}(t) = \mathbf{I}\mathbf{x}(t) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.68)$$

Clearly the longitudinal small perturbation motion of the aeroplane is completely described by the four state variables  $u$ ,  $w$ ,  $q$  and  $\theta$ . Equation (4.68) determines that, in this instance, the output variables are chosen to be the same as the four state variables.

### Example 4.3

Consider the requirement to write the longitudinal equations of motion for the McDonnell F-4C Phantom of Example 4.2 in state space form. As the derivatives are given in dimensionless form it is convenient to express the matrices  $\mathbf{M}$ ,  $\mathbf{A}'$  and  $\mathbf{B}'$  in terms of the dimensionless derivatives. Substituting appropriately for the dimensional derivatives and after some rearrangement the matrices may be written:

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} m' & -\frac{X_{\dot{w}}\bar{c}}{V_0} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \left(m' - \frac{Z_{\dot{w}}\bar{c}}{V_0}\right) & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -\frac{M_{\dot{w}}\bar{c}}{V_0} & I'_y & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{A}' = \begin{bmatrix} X_u & X_w & (X_q\bar{c} - m'W_e) & -m'g \cos \theta_e \\ Z_u & Z_w & (Z_q\bar{c} + m'U_e) & -m'g \sin \theta_e \\ M_u & M_w & M_q\bar{c} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \mathbf{B}' = \begin{bmatrix} V_0 X_\eta & V_0 X_\tau \\ V_0 Z_\eta & V_0 Z_\tau \\ V_0 M_\eta & V_0 M_\tau \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

where

$$m' = \frac{m}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S} \quad \text{and} \quad I'_y = \frac{I_y}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S \bar{c}}$$

and in steady symmetric flight,  $U_e = V_0 \cos \theta_e$  and  $W_e = V_0 \sin \theta_e$ .

Substituting the derivative values given in Example 4.2 the longitudinal state equation (4.65) may be written:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 10.569 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 10.580 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.0162 & 20.3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.0076 & 0.0483 & -307.26 & -102.29 \\ -0.7273 & -3.1245 & 1850.10 & -16.934 \\ 0.034 & -0.2169 & -6.2247 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 11.00 \\ -66.5898 \\ -99.341 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \eta$$

This equation may be reduced to the preferred form by pre-multiplying each term by the inverse of  $\mathbf{M}$ , as indicated above, to obtain the longitudinal state equation,

referred to body axes, in concise form,

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 7.181 \times 10^{-4} & 4.570 \times 10^{-3} & -29.072 & -9.678 \\ -0.0687 & -0.2953 & 174.868 & -1.601 \\ 1.73 \times 10^{-3} & -0.0105 & -0.4462 & 1.277 \times 10^{-3} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 1.041 \\ -6.294 \\ -4.888 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \eta$$

This computation was carried out with the aid of *Program CC* and it should be noted that the resulting equation compares with the final equations given in Example 4.2. The coefficients of the matrices could equally well have been calculated using the concise derivative definitions given in Appendix 2, Tables A2.5 and A2.6. For the purpose of illustration some of the coefficients in the matrices have been rounded to a more manageable number of decimal places. In general this is not good practice since the rounding errors may lead to accumulated computational errors in any subsequent computer analysis involving the use of these equations. However, once the basic matrices have been entered into a computer program at the level of accuracy given, all subsequent computations can be carried out using computer-generated data files. In this way computational errors will be minimised although it is prudent to be aware that not all computer algorithms for handling matrices can cope with poorly conditioned matrices. Occasionally, aeroplane computer models fall into this category.

The lateral small perturbation equations (4.45), referred to body axes, may be treated in exactly the same way to obtain the lateral-directional state equation:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{v} \\ \dot{p} \\ \dot{r} \\ \dot{\phi} \\ \dot{\psi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} y_v & y_p & y_r & y_\phi & y_\psi \\ l_v & l_p & l_r & l_\phi & l_\psi \\ n_v & n_p & n_r & n_\phi & n_\psi \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \\ \phi \\ \psi \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} y_\xi & y_\zeta \\ l_\xi & l_\zeta \\ n_\xi & n_\zeta \\ 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \xi \\ \zeta \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.69)$$

Note that when the lateral-directional equations of motion are referred to wind axes, equations (4.47), the lateral-directional state equation (4.69) is reduced from fifth order to fourth order to become

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{v} \\ \dot{p} \\ \dot{r} \\ \dot{\phi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} y_v & y_p & y_r & y_\phi \\ l_v & l_p & l_r & l_\phi \\ n_v & n_p & n_r & n_\phi \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \\ \phi \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} y_\xi & y_\zeta \\ l_\xi & l_\zeta \\ n_\xi & n_\zeta \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \xi \\ \zeta \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.70)$$

However, in this case the derivatives are referred to aeroplane wind axes rather than to body axes and will generally have slightly different values. The definitions of the concise lateral stability and control derivatives referred to aeroplane body axes are also given in Appendix 2.

Examples of the more general procedures used to create the state descriptions of various dynamic systems may be found in many books on control systems; for



example, Shinnars (1980) and Friedland (1987) both contain useful aeronautical examples.

#### Example 4.4

Lateral derivative data for the McDonnell F-4C Phantom, referred to body axes, were also obtained from Heffley and Jewell (1972) and are used to illustrate the formulation of the lateral state equation. The data relate to the same flight condition, namely Mach 0.6 and an altitude of 35000 ft. As before the leading aerodynamic variables have the following values:

Flight path angle	$\gamma_e = 0^\circ$	Inertia product	$I_{xz} = 2952 \text{ kgm}^2$
Body incidence	$\alpha_e = 9.4^\circ$	Air density	$\rho = 0.3809 \text{ kg/m}^3$
Velocity	$V_0 = 178 \text{ m/s}$	Wing area	$S = 49.239 \text{ m}^2$
Mass	$m = 17642 \text{ kg}$	Wing span	$b = 11.787 \text{ m}$
Roll moment of inertia	$I_x = 33898 \text{ kg m}^2$	Acceleration due	
Yaw moment of inertia	$I_z = 189496 \text{ kg m}^2$	to gravity	$g = 9.81 \text{ m/s}^2$

The dimensionless lateral derivatives, referred to body axes, are given and, as before, any missing aerodynamic derivatives must be assumed insignificant, and hence zero. Note that, in accordance with American notation the roll control derivative  $L_\xi$  is positive:

$Y_v = -0.5974$	$L_v = -0.1048$	$N_v = 0.0987$
$Y_p = 0$	$L_p = -0.1164$	$N_p = -0.0045$
$Y_r = 0$	$L_r = 0.0455$	$N_r = -0.1132$
$Y_\xi = -0.0159$	$L_\xi = 0.0454$	$N_\xi = 0.00084$
$Y_\zeta = 0.1193$	$L_\zeta = 0.0086$	$N_\zeta = -0.0741$

As for the longitudinal equations of motion, the lateral state equation (4.65) may be written in terms of the more convenient lateral dimensionless derivatives:

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) = \mathbf{A}'\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{B}'\mathbf{u}(t)$$

where

$$\mathbf{x}^T(t) = [v \quad p \quad r \quad \phi \quad \psi] \quad \mathbf{u}^T(t) = [\xi \quad \zeta]$$

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} m' & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & I'_x & -I'_{xz} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -I'_{xz} & I'_z & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{A}' = \begin{bmatrix} Y_v & (Y_p b + m' W_e) & (Y_r b - m' U_e) & m' g \cos \theta_e & m' g \sin \theta_e \\ L_v & L_p b & L_r b & 0 & 0 \\ N_v & N_p b & N_r b & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{B}' = \begin{bmatrix} V_0 Y_\xi & V_0 Y_\zeta \\ V_0 L_\xi & V_0 L_\zeta \\ V_0 N_\xi & V_0 N_\zeta \\ 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

where

$$m' = \frac{m}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S}, \quad I'_x = \frac{I_x}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S b}, \quad I'_z = \frac{I_z}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S b} \quad \text{and} \quad I'_{xz} = \frac{I_{xz}}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S b}$$

and, as before, in steady symmetric flight,  $U_e = V_0 \cos \theta_e$  and  $W_e = V_0 \sin \theta_e$ .

Substituting the appropriate values into the above matrices and pre-multiplying the matrices  $\mathbf{A}'$  and  $\mathbf{B}'$  by the inverse of the mass matrix  $\mathbf{M}$  the concise lateral state equation (4.69), referred to body axes, is obtained:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{v} \\ \dot{p} \\ \dot{r} \\ \dot{\phi} \\ \dot{\psi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -0.0565 & 29.072 & -175.610 & 9.6783 & 1.6022 \\ -0.0601 & -0.7979 & -0.2996 & 0 & 0 \\ 9.218 \times 10^{-3} & -0.0179 & -0.1339 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \\ \phi \\ \psi \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -0.2678 & 2.0092 \\ 4.6982 & 0.7703 \\ 0.0887 & -1.3575 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \xi \\ \zeta \end{bmatrix}$$

Again, the matrix computation was undertaken with the aid of *Program CC*. However, the coefficients of the matrices could equally well have been calculated using the expressions for the concise derivatives given in Appendix 2, Tables A2.7 and A2.8.

#### 4.4.3 The equations of motion in American normalised form

The preferred North American form of the equations of motion expresses the axial equations of motion in units of linear acceleration, rather than force, and the angular equations of motion in terms of angular acceleration, rather than moment. This is easily achieved by *normalising* the force and moment equations, by dividing by mass or moment of inertia as appropriate. Re-stating the linear equations of motion (4.23):

$$\begin{aligned} m(\dot{u} + qW_e) &= X \\ m(\dot{v} - pW_e + rU_e) &= Y \\ m(\dot{w} - qU_e) &= Z \end{aligned} \tag{4.71}$$

$$I_x \dot{p} - I_{xz} \dot{r} = L$$

$$I_y \dot{q} = M$$

$$I_z \dot{r} - I_{xz} \dot{p} = N$$

the normalised form of the decoupled longitudinal equations of motion from equations (4.71) are written:

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{u} + qW_e &= \frac{X}{m} \\ \dot{w} - qU_e &= \frac{Z}{m} \\ \dot{q} &= \frac{M}{I_y} \end{aligned} \quad (4.72)$$

and the normalised form of the decoupled lateral-directional equations of motion may also be extracted from equations (4.71):

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{v} - pW_e + rU_e &= \frac{Y}{m} \\ \dot{p} - \frac{I_{xz}}{I_x} \dot{r} &= \frac{L}{I_x} \\ \dot{r} - \frac{I_{xz}}{I_z} \dot{p} &= \frac{N}{I_z} \end{aligned} \quad (4.73)$$

Further, both the rolling and yawing moment equations in (4.73) include roll and yaw acceleration terms,  $\dot{p}$  and  $\dot{r}$  respectively, and it is usual to eliminate  $\dot{r}$  from the rolling moment equation and  $\dot{p}$  from the yawing moment equation. This reduces equations (4.73) to the alternative form:

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{v} - pW_e + rU_e &= \frac{Y}{m} \\ \dot{p} &= \left( \frac{L}{I_x} + \frac{N}{I_z} \frac{I_{xz}}{I_x} \right) \left( \frac{1}{1 - I_{xz}^2/I_x I_z} \right) \\ \dot{r} &= \left( \frac{N}{I_z} + \frac{L}{I_x} \frac{I_{xz}}{I_z} \right) \left( \frac{1}{1 - I_{xz}^2/I_x I_z} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (4.74)$$

Now the decoupled longitudinal force and moment expressions as derived in Section 4.2, may be obtained from equations (4.40):

$$\begin{aligned} X &= \dot{X}_u u + \dot{X}_w \dot{w} + \dot{X}_q q + \dot{X}_\eta \eta + \dot{X}_\tau \tau - mg \theta \cos \theta_e \\ Z &= \dot{Z}_u u + \dot{Z}_w \dot{w} + \dot{Z}_q q + \dot{Z}_\eta \eta + \dot{Z}_\tau \tau - mg \theta \sin \theta_e \\ M &= \dot{M}_u u + \dot{M}_w \dot{w} + \dot{M}_q q + \dot{M}_\eta \eta + \dot{M}_\tau \tau \end{aligned} \quad (4.75)$$

Substituting equations (4.75) into equations (4.72), and after some rearrangement the longitudinal equations of motion may be written:

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{u} &= \frac{\dot{X}_u}{m}u + \frac{\dot{X}_{\dot{w}}}{m}\dot{w} + \frac{\dot{X}_w}{m}w + \left( \frac{\dot{X}_q}{m} - W_e \right) q - g\theta \cos \theta_e + \frac{\dot{X}_\eta}{m}\eta + \frac{\dot{X}_\tau}{m}\tau \\ \dot{w} &= \frac{\dot{Z}_u}{m}u + \frac{\dot{Z}_{\dot{w}}}{m}\dot{w} + \frac{\dot{Z}_w}{m}w + \left( \frac{\dot{Z}_q}{m} - U_e \right) q - g\theta \sin \theta_e + \frac{\dot{Z}_\eta}{m}\eta + \frac{\dot{Z}_\tau}{m}\tau \quad (4.76) \\ \dot{q} &= \frac{\dot{M}_u}{I_y}u + \frac{\dot{M}_{\dot{w}}}{I_y}\dot{w} + \frac{\dot{M}_w}{I_y}w + \frac{\dot{M}_q}{I_y}q + \frac{\dot{M}_\eta}{I_y}\eta + \frac{\dot{M}_\tau}{I_y}\tau\end{aligned}$$

Alternatively, equations (4.76) may be expressed in terms of American normalised derivatives as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{u} &= X_{uu}u + X_{u\dot{w}}\dot{w} + X_{uw}w + (X_q - W_e)q - g\theta \cos \theta_e + X_{\delta_e}\delta_e + X_{\delta_{th}}\delta_{th} \\ \dot{w} &= Z_{uu}u + Z_{u\dot{w}}\dot{w} + Z_{uw}w + (Z_q + U_e)q - g\theta \sin \theta_e + Z_{\delta_e}\delta_e + Z_{\delta_{th}}\delta_{th} \quad (4.77) \\ \dot{q} &= M_{uu}u + M_{u\dot{w}}\dot{w} + M_{uw}w + M_qq + M_{\delta_e}\delta_e + M_{\delta_{th}}\delta_{th}\end{aligned}$$

and the control inputs are stated in American notation, elevator angle  $\delta_e \equiv \eta$  and thrust  $\delta_{th} \equiv \tau$ .

In a similar way, the decoupled lateral-directional force and moment expressions may be obtained from equations (4.45):

$$\begin{aligned}Y &= \dot{Y}_v v + \dot{Y}_p p + \dot{Y}_r r + \dot{Y}_\xi \xi + \dot{Y}_\zeta \zeta + mg\phi \cos \theta_e + mg\psi \sin \theta_e \\ L &= \dot{L}_v v + \dot{L}_p p + \dot{L}_r r + \dot{L}_\xi \xi + \dot{L}_\zeta \zeta \quad (4.78) \\ N &= \dot{N}_v v + \dot{N}_p p + \dot{N}_r r + \dot{N}_\xi \xi + \dot{N}_\zeta \zeta\end{aligned}$$

Substituting equations (4.78) into equations (4.74), and after some rearrangement the lateral-directional equations of motion may be written:

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{v} &= \frac{\dot{Y}_v}{m}v + \left( \frac{\dot{Y}_p}{m} + W_e \right) p + \left( \frac{\dot{Y}_r}{m} - U_e \right) r + \frac{\dot{Y}_\xi}{m}\xi + \frac{\dot{Y}_\zeta}{m}\zeta + g\phi \cos \theta_e + g\psi \sin \theta_e \\ \dot{p} &= \left( \left( \frac{\dot{L}_v}{I_x} + \frac{\dot{N}_v}{I_z} \frac{I_{xz}}{I_x} \right) v + \left( \frac{\dot{L}_p}{I_x} + \frac{\dot{N}_p}{I_z} \frac{I_{xz}}{I_x} \right) p + \left( \frac{\dot{L}_r}{I_x} + \frac{\dot{N}_r}{I_z} \frac{I_{xz}}{I_x} \right) r \right) \left( \frac{1}{1 - I_{xz}^2/I_x I_z} \right) \\ &\quad + \left( \frac{\dot{L}_\xi}{I_x} + \frac{\dot{N}_\xi}{I_z} \frac{I_{xz}}{I_x} \right) \xi + \left( \frac{\dot{L}_\zeta}{I_x} + \frac{\dot{N}_\zeta}{I_z} \frac{I_{xz}}{I_x} \right) \zeta\end{aligned}$$

$$\dot{r} = \begin{pmatrix} \left( \frac{\dot{N}_v}{I_z} + \frac{\dot{L}_v}{I_x} \frac{I_{xz}}{I_z} \right) v + \left( \frac{\dot{N}_p}{I_z} + \frac{\dot{L}_p}{I_x} \frac{I_{xz}}{I_z} \right) p + \left( \frac{\dot{N}_r}{I_z} + \frac{\dot{L}_r}{I_x} \frac{I_{xz}}{I_z} \right) r \\ + \left( \frac{\dot{N}_\xi}{I_z} + \frac{\dot{L}_\xi}{I_x} \frac{I_{xz}}{I_z} \right) \xi + \left( \frac{\dot{N}_\zeta}{I_z} + \frac{\dot{L}_\zeta}{I_x} \frac{I_{xz}}{I_z} \right) \zeta \end{pmatrix} \left( \frac{1}{1 - I_{xz}^2/I_x I_z} \right) \quad (4.79)$$

As before, equations (4.79) may be expressed in terms of American normalised derivatives as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{v} &= Y_v v + (Y_p + W_e) p + (Y_r - U_e) r + Y_{\delta_a} \delta_a + Y_{\delta_r} \delta_r + g \phi \cos \theta_e + g \psi \sin \theta_e \\ \dot{p} &= \left( \left( L_v + N_v \frac{I_{xz}}{I_x} \right) v + \left( L_p + N_p \frac{I_{xz}}{I_x} \right) p + \left( L_r + N_r \frac{I_{xz}}{I_x} \right) r \right) \left( \frac{1}{1 - I_{xz}^2/I_x I_z} \right) \\ &\quad + \left( L_{\delta_a} + N_{\delta_a} \frac{I_{xz}}{I_x} \right) \delta_a + \left( L_{\delta_r} + N_{\delta_r} \frac{I_{xz}}{I_x} \right) \delta_r \\ \dot{r} &= \left( \left( N_v + L_v \frac{I_{xz}}{I_z} \right) v + \left( N_p + L_p \frac{I_{xz}}{I_z} \right) p + \left( N_r + L_r \frac{I_{xz}}{I_z} \right) r \right) \left( \frac{1}{1 - I_{xz}^2/I_x I_z} \right) \\ &\quad + \left( N_{\delta_a} + L_{\delta_a} \frac{I_{xz}}{I_z} \right) \delta_a + \left( N_{\delta_r} + L_{\delta_r} \frac{I_{xz}}{I_z} \right) \delta_r \end{aligned} \quad (4.80)$$

and the control inputs are stated in American notation, aileron angle  $\delta_a \equiv \xi$  and rudder angle  $\delta_r \equiv \zeta$ .

Clearly, the formulation of the rolling and yawing moment equations in (4.80) is very cumbersome, so it is usual to modify the definitions of the rolling and yawing moment derivatives to reduce equations (4.80) to the more manageable format:

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{v} &= Y_v v + (Y_p + W_e) p + (Y_r - U_e) r + Y_{\delta_a} \delta_a + Y_{\delta_r} \delta_r + g \phi \cos \theta_e + g \psi \sin \theta_e \\ \dot{p} &= L'_v v + L'_p p + L'_r r + L'_{\delta_a} \delta_a + L'_{\delta_r} \delta_r \\ \dot{r} &= N'_v v + N'_p p + N'_r r + N'_{\delta_a} \delta_a + N'_{\delta_r} \delta_r \end{aligned} \quad (4.81)$$

where, for example, the modified normalised derivatives are given by expressions like

$$\begin{aligned} L'_v &= \left( L_v + N_v \frac{I_{xz}}{I_x} \right) \left( \frac{1}{1 - I_{xz}^2/I_x I_z} \right) \equiv \left( \frac{\dot{L}_v}{I_x} + \frac{\dot{N}_v}{I_z} \frac{I_{xz}}{I_x} \right) \left( \frac{1}{1 - I_{xz}^2/I_x I_z} \right) \\ N'_r &= \left( N_r + L_r \frac{I_{xz}}{I_z} \right) \left( \frac{1}{1 - I_{xz}^2/I_x I_z} \right) \equiv \left( \frac{\dot{N}_r}{I_z} + \frac{\dot{L}_r}{I_x} \frac{I_{xz}}{I_z} \right) \left( \frac{1}{1 - I_{xz}^2/I_x I_z} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (4.82)$$

and the remaining modified derivatives are defined in a similar way with reference to equations (4.79), (4.80) and (4.81). Thus the small perturbation equations of motion in American normalised notation, referred to aircraft body axes, are given

by equations (4.77) and (4.81). A full list of the American normalised derivatives and their British equivalents is given in Appendix 7.

A common alternative formulation of the longitudinal equations of motion (4.77) is frequently used when the thrust is assumed to have a velocity or Mach number dependency. The normalised derivatives  $X_u$ ,  $Z_u$  and  $M_u$ , as stated in equations (4.77), denote the aerodynamic derivatives only and the thrust is assumed to remain constant for small perturbations in velocity or Mach number. However, the notation  $X_u^*$ ,  $Z_u^*$  and  $M_u^*$ , as shown in equations (4.83), denotes that the normalised derivatives include both the aerodynamic and thrust dependencies on small perturbations in velocity or Mach number.

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{u} &= X_u^* u + X_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} + X_w w + (X_q - W_e) q - g \theta \cos \theta_e + X_{\delta_e} \delta_e + X_{\delta_{th}} \delta_{th} \\ \dot{w} &= Z_u^* u + Z_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} + Z_w w + (Z_q + U_e) q - g \theta \sin \theta_e + Z_{\delta_e} \delta_e + Z_{\delta_{th}} \delta_{th} \\ \dot{q} &= M_u^* u + M_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} + M_w w + M_q q + M_{\delta_e} \delta_e + M_{\delta_{th}} \delta_{th}\end{aligned}\quad (4.83)$$

It is also common to express the lateral velocity perturbation  $v$  in equations (4.81) in terms of sideslip angle  $\beta$ , since for small disturbances  $v = \beta V_0$ :

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{\beta} &= Y_v \beta + \frac{1}{V_0} (Y_p + W_e) p + \frac{1}{V_0} (Y_r - U_e) r + Y_{\delta_a}^* \delta_a + Y_{\delta_r}^* \delta_r \\ &\quad + \frac{g}{V_0} (\phi \cos \theta_e + \psi \sin \theta_e) \\ \dot{p} &= L_\beta' \beta + L_p' p + L_r' r + L_{\delta_a}' \delta_a + L_{\delta_r}' \delta_r \\ \dot{r} &= N_\beta' \beta + N_p' p + N_r' r + N_{\delta_a}' \delta_a + N_{\delta_r}' \delta_r\end{aligned}\quad (4.84)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}Y_{\delta_a}^* &= \frac{Y_{\delta_a}}{V_0} & Y_{\delta_r}^* &= \frac{Y_{\delta_r}}{V_0} \\ L_\beta' &= L_v' V_0 & N_\beta' &= N_v' V_0\end{aligned}$$

Equations (4.83) and (4.84) probably represent the most commonly encountered form of the American normalised equations of motion.

## REFERENCES

- Barnett, S. 1975: *Introduction to Mathematical Control Theory*. Clarendon Press, Oxford.
- Bryan, G.H. 1911: *Stability in Aviation*. Macmillan and Co., London.
- Friedland, B. 1987: *Control System Design*. McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York.
- Heffley, R.K. and Jewell, W.F. 1972: *Aircraft Handling Qualities Data*. NASA Contractor Report, NASA CR-2144, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington D.C. 20546.
- Hopkin, H.R. 1970: *A Scheme of Notation and Nomenclature for Aircraft Dynamics and Associated Aerodynamics*. Aeronautical Research Council, Reports and Memoranda No. 3562. Her Majesty's Stationery Office, London.
- Shinners, S.M. 1980: *Modern Control System Theory and Application*. Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., Reading, Massachusetts.

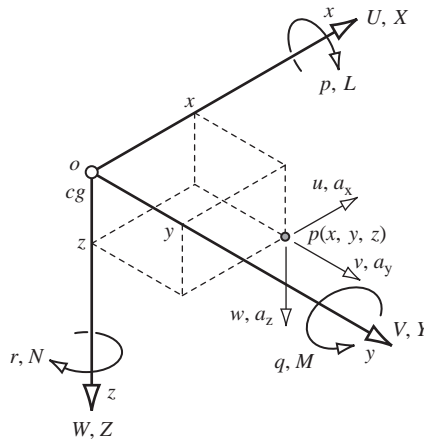
## PROBLEMS

1. Given the dimensional longitudinal equations of motion of an aircraft in the following format

$$\begin{aligned} m\dot{u} - \dot{X}_u u - \dot{X}_w w - (\dot{X}_q - mW_e)q + mg\theta \cos \theta_e &= \dot{X}_\eta \eta \\ -\dot{Z}_u u + m\dot{w} - \dot{Z}_w w - (\dot{Z}_q + mU_e)q + mg\theta \sin \theta_e &= \dot{Z}_\eta \eta \\ -\dot{M}_u u - \dot{M}_w w - \dot{M}_q q + I_y \dot{q} - \dot{M}_q q &= \dot{M}_\eta \eta \end{aligned}$$

rearrange them in dimensionless form referred to wind axes. Discuss the relative merits of using the equations of motion in dimensional, dimensionless and concise forms. (CU 1982)

2. The right handed orthogonal axis system ( $oxyz$ ) shown in the figure below is fixed in a rigid airframe such that  $o$  is coincident with the centre of gravity.



The components of velocity and force along  $ox$ ,  $oy$ , and  $oz$  are  $U$ ,  $V$ ,  $W$ , and  $X$ ,  $Y$ ,  $Z$  respectively. The components of angular velocity about  $ox$ ,  $oy$ , and  $oz$  are  $p$ ,  $q$ ,  $r$  respectively. The point  $p(x, y, z)$  in the airframe has local velocity and acceleration components  $u$ ,  $v$ ,  $w$ , and  $a_x$ ,  $a_y$ ,  $a_z$  respectively. Show that by superimposing the motion of the axes ( $oxyz$ ) on to the motion of the point  $p(x, y, z)$ , the absolute acceleration components of  $p(x, y, z)$  are given by

$$\begin{aligned} a'_x &= \dot{U} - rV + qW - x(q^2 + r^2) + y(pq - \dot{r}) + z(pr + \dot{q}) \\ a'_y &= \dot{V} - pW + rU + x(pq + \dot{r}) - y(p^2 + r^2) + z(qr - \dot{p}) \\ a'_z &= \dot{W} - qU + pV + x(pr - \dot{q}) + y(qr + \dot{p}) - z(p^2 + q^2) \end{aligned}$$

Further, assuming the mass of the aircraft to be uniformly distributed show that the total body force components are given by

$$X = m(\dot{U} - rV + qW)$$

$$Y = m(\dot{V} - pW + rU)$$

$$Z = m(\dot{W} - qU + pV)$$

where  $m$  is the mass of the aircraft.

(CU 1986)

3. The linearised longitudinal equations of motion of an aircraft describing small perturbations about a steady trimmed rectilinear flight condition are given by

$$m(\dot{u}(t) + q(t)W_e) = X(t)$$

$$m(\dot{w}(t) - q(t)U_e) = Z(t)$$

$$I_y \dot{q}(t) = M(t)$$

Develop expressions for  $X(t)$ ,  $Z(t)$  and  $M(t)$  and hence complete the equations of motion referred to generalised aircraft body axes. What simplifications may be made if a wind axes reference and level flight are assumed? (CU 1987)

4. State the assumptions made in deriving the small perturbation longitudinal equations of motion for an aircraft. For each assumption give a realistic example of an aircraft type, or configuration, which may make the assumption invalid. (LU 2002)
5. Show that when the product of inertia  $I_{xz}$  is much smaller than the moments of inertia in roll and yaw,  $I_x$  and  $I_z$  respectively, the lateral-directional derivatives in modified American normalised form may be approximated by the American normalised form.



---

## Chapter 5

# The Solution of the Equations of Motion

### 5.1 METHODS OF SOLUTION

The primary reason for solving the equations of motion is to obtain a mathematical, and hence graphical, description of the time histories of all the motion variables in response to a control input, or atmospheric disturbance, and to enable an assessment of stability to be made. It is also important that the chosen method of solution provides good insight into the way in which the physical properties of the airframe influence the nature of the responses. Since the evolution of the development of the equations of motion and their solution followed in the wake of observation of aeroplane behaviour, it was no accident that practical constraints were applied which resulted in the decoupled small perturbation equations. The longitudinal and lateral decoupled equations of motion are each represented by a set of three simultaneous linear differential equations which have traditionally been solved using classical mathematical analysis methods. Although laborious to apply, the advantage of the traditional approach is that it is capable of providing excellent insight into the nature of aircraft stability and response. However, since the traditional methods of solution invariably involve the use of the dimensionless equations of motion considerable care in the interpretation of the numerical results is required if confusion is to be avoided. A full discussion of these methods can be found in many of the earlier books on the subject, for example, in Duncan (1959).

Operational methods have also enjoyed some popularity as a means for solving the equations of motion. In particular, the Laplace transform method has been, and continues to be used extensively. By transforming the differential equations, they become algebraic equations expressed in terms of the Laplace operator  $s$ . Their manipulation to obtain a solution then becomes a relatively straightforward exercise in algebra. Thus the problem is transformed into one of solving a set of simultaneous linear algebraic equations, a process that is readily accomplished by computational methods. Further, the input–output response relationship or transfer characteristic is described by a simple algebraic *transfer function* in terms of the Laplace operator. The time response then follows by finding the inverse Laplace transform of the transfer function for the input of interest.

Now the transfer function as a means for describing the characteristics of a linear dynamic system is the principal tool of the control systems engineer and a vast array of mathematical tools is available for analysing transfer functions. With relative ease, analysis of the transfer function of a system enables a complete picture of its dynamic behaviour to be drawn. In particular, stability, time response and frequency

response information is readily obtained. Furthermore, obtaining the system transfer function is usually the prelude to the design of a feedback control system and an additional array of mathematical tools is also available to support this task. Since most modern aeroplanes are dependent, to a greater or lesser extent, on feedback control for their continued proper operation, it would seem particularly advantageous to be able to describe the aeroplane in terms of transfer functions. Fortunately this is easily accomplished. The Laplace transform of the linearised small perturbation equations of motion is readily obtained and by the subsequent application of the appropriate mathematical tools the *response transfer functions* may be derived. An analysis of the dynamic properties of the aeroplane may then be made using control engineering tools as an alternative to the traditional methods of the aerodynamicist. Indeed, as already described in Chapter 1, many computer software packages are available which facilitate the rapid and accurate analysis of linear dynamic systems and the design of automatic control systems. Today, access to computer software of this type is essential for the flight dynamicist.

Thus the process of solution requires that the equations of motion are assembled in the appropriate format, numerical values for the derivatives and other parameters are substituted and then the whole model is input to a suitable computer program. The output, which is usually obtained instantaneously, is most conveniently arranged in terms of response transfer functions. Thus the objective can usually be achieved relatively easily, with great rapidity and with good accuracy. A significant shortcoming of such computational methods is the lack of *visibility*; the functional steps in the solution process are hidden from the investigator. Consequently, considerable care, and some skill, is required to analyse the solution correctly and this can be greatly facilitated if the investigator has a good understanding of the computational solution process. Indeed, it is considered essential to have an understanding of the steps involved in the solution of the equations of motion using the operational methods common to most computer software packages.

The remainder of this chapter is therefore concerned with a discussion of the use of the Laplace transform for solving the small perturbation equations of motion to obtain the response transfer functions. This is followed by a description of the computational process involving matrix methods which is normally undertaken with the aid of a suitable computer software package.

## 5.2 CRAMER'S RULE

Cramer's rule describes a mathematical process for solving sets of simultaneous linear algebraic equations and may usefully be used to solve the equations of motion algebraically. It may be found in many degree-level mathematical texts, and in books devoted to the application of computational methods to linear algebra, for example in Goult *et al.* (1974). Since Cramer's rule involves the use of matrix algebra it is easily implemented in a digital computer.

To solve the system of  $n$  simultaneous linear algebraic equations described in matrix form as

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{Ax} \quad (5.1)$$

where  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{y}$  are column vectors and  $\mathbf{A}$  is a matrix of constant coefficients, then Cramer's rule states that

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{y} \equiv \left( \frac{\text{Adjoint } \mathbf{A}}{\text{Det } \mathbf{A}} \right) \mathbf{y} \quad (5.2)$$

where the solution for  $x_i$ , the  $i$ th row of equation (5.2) is given by

$$x_i = \frac{1}{|\mathbf{A}|} (A_{1i}y_1 + A_{2i}y_2 + A_{3i}y_3 + \cdots + A_{ni}y_n) \quad (5.3)$$

The significant observation is that the numerator of equation (5.3) is equivalent to the determinant of  $\mathbf{A}$  with the  $i$ th column replaced by the vector  $\mathbf{y}$ . Thus the solution of equation (5.1) to find all of the  $x_i$  reduces to the relatively simple problem of evaluating  $n + 1$  determinants.

### Example 5.1

To illustrate the use of Cramer's rule consider the trivial example in which it is required to solve the simultaneous linear algebraic equations:

$$y_1 = x_1 + 2x_2 + 3x_3$$

$$y_2 = 2x_2 + 4x_3 + 5x_1$$

$$y_3 = 3x_1 + 5x_2 + 6x_3$$

or, in matrix notation,

$$\begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ y_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 & 5 \\ 3 & 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Applying Cramer's rule to solve for  $x_i$ :

$$x_1 = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} y_1 & 2 & 3 \\ y_2 & 4 & 5 \\ y_3 & 5 & 6 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 & 5 \\ 3 & 5 & 6 \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{y_1 \begin{vmatrix} 4 & 5 \\ 5 & 6 \end{vmatrix} - y_2 \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 5 & 6 \end{vmatrix} + y_3 \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 \end{vmatrix}}{-1} = y_1 - 3y_2 + 2y_3$$

$$x_2 = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} 1 & y_1 & 3 \\ 2 & y_2 & 5 \\ 3 & y_3 & 6 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 & 5 \\ 3 & 5 & 6 \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{-y_1 \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 3 & 6 \end{vmatrix} + y_2 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 3 & 6 \end{vmatrix} - y_3 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 5 \end{vmatrix}}{-1} = -3y_1 + 3y_2 - y_3$$

and

$$x_3 = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & y_1 \\ 2 & 4 & y_2 \\ 3 & 5 & y_3 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 & 5 \\ 3 & 5 & 6 \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{y_1 \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 3 & 5 \end{vmatrix} - y_2 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 5 \end{vmatrix} + y_3 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 4 \end{vmatrix}}{-1} = 2y_1 - y_2$$

Clearly, in this example, the numerator determinants are found by expanding about the column containing  $y$ . The denominator determinant may be found by expanding about the first row thus

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 & 5 \\ 3 & 5 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = 1 \begin{vmatrix} 4 & 5 \\ 5 & 6 \end{vmatrix} - 2 \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 3 & 6 \end{vmatrix} + 3 \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 3 & 5 \end{vmatrix} = -1 + 6 - 6 = -1$$

### 5.3 AIRCRAFT RESPONSE TRANSFER FUNCTIONS

Aircraft response transfer functions describe the dynamic relationships between the input and output variables. The relationships are indicated diagrammatically in Fig. 5.1 and clearly, a number of possible input–output relationships exist. When the mathematical model of the aircraft comprises the decoupled small perturbation equations of motion, transfer functions relating longitudinal input variables to lateral output variables do not exist and *vice versa*. This may not necessarily be the case when the aircraft is described by a fully coupled set of small perturbation equations of motion. For example, such a description is quite usual when modelling the helicopter.

All transfer functions are written as a ratio of two polynomials in the Laplace operator  $s$ . All *proper* transfer functions have a numerator polynomial which is at least one order less than the denominator polynomial although, occasionally, *improper* transfer functions crop up in aircraft applications. For example, the transfer function describing acceleration response to an input variable is improper, the numerator and denominator polynomials are of the same order. Care is needed when working with improper transfer functions as sometimes the computational tools are unable to deal with them correctly. Clearly, this is a situation where some understanding of the physical meaning of the transfer function can be of considerable advantage. A shorthand

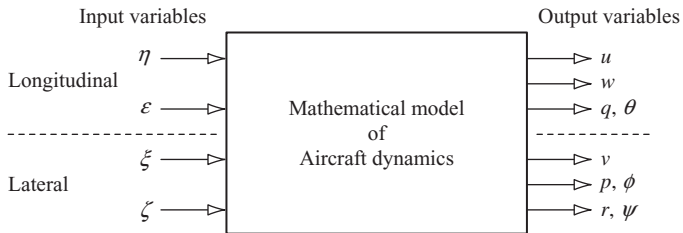


Figure 5.1 Aircraft input–output relationships.

notation is used to represent aircraft response transfer functions in this book. For example, pitch attitude  $\theta(s)$  response to elevator  $\eta(s)$  is denoted:

$$\frac{\theta(s)}{\eta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_{\eta}^{\theta}(s)}{\Delta(s)} \quad (5.4)$$

where  $N_{\eta}^{\theta}(s)$  is the unique numerator polynomial in  $s$  relating pitch attitude response to elevator input and  $\Delta(s)$  is the denominator polynomial in  $s$  which is common to all longitudinal response transfer functions. Similarly, for example, roll rate response to aileron is denoted:

$$\frac{p(s)}{\xi(s)} \equiv \frac{N_{\xi}^p(s)}{\Delta(s)} \quad (5.5)$$

where, in this instance,  $\Delta(s)$  is the denominator polynomial which is common to all of the lateral response transfer functions. Since  $\Delta(s)$  is context dependent its correct identification does not usually present problems.

The denominator polynomial  $\Delta(s)$  is called the *characteristic polynomial* and when equated to zero defines the *characteristic equation*. Thus  $\Delta(s)$  completely describes the longitudinal or lateral stability characteristics of the aeroplane as appropriate and the roots, or *poles*, of  $\Delta(s)$  describe the *stability modes* of the aeroplane. Thus the stability characteristics of an aeroplane can be determined simply on inspection of the response transfer functions.

### 5.3.1 The longitudinal response transfer functions

The Laplace transforms of the differential quantities  $\dot{x}(t)$  and  $\ddot{x}(t)$ , for example, are given by

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}\{\dot{x}(t)\} &= sx(s) - x(0) \\ \mathcal{L}\{\ddot{x}(t)\} &= s^2x(s) - sx(0) - \dot{x}(0) \end{aligned} \quad (5.6)$$

where  $x(0)$  and  $\dot{x}(0)$  are the initial values of  $x(t)$  and  $\dot{x}(t)$  respectively at  $t = 0$ . Now, taking the Laplace transform of the longitudinal equations of motion (4.40), referred to body axes, assuming zero initial conditions and since small perturbation motion only is considered write:

$$\dot{\theta}(t) = q(t) \quad (5.7)$$

then

$$\begin{aligned} \left( ms - \overset{\circ}{X}_u \right) u(s) - \left( \overset{\circ}{X}_w s + \overset{\circ}{X}_w \right) w(s) - \left( \left( \overset{\circ}{X}_q - mW_e \right) s - mg \cos \theta_e \right) \theta(s) \\ = \overset{\circ}{X}_{\eta} \eta(s) + \overset{\circ}{X}_{\tau} \tau(s) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 & -\ddot{Z}_u u(s) - \left( \left( \ddot{Z}_w - m \right) s + \ddot{Z}_w \right) w(s) - \left( \left( \ddot{Z}_q + m U_e \right) s - mg \sin \theta_e \right) \theta(s) \\
 & = \ddot{Z}_\eta \eta(s) + \ddot{Z}_\tau \tau(s) \\
 & -\ddot{M}_u u(s) - \left( \ddot{M}_w s + \ddot{M}_w \right) w(s) + \left( I_y s^2 - \ddot{M}_q s \right) \theta(s) \\
 & = \ddot{M}_\eta \eta(s) + \ddot{M}_\tau \tau(s)
 \end{aligned} \tag{5.8}$$

Writing equations (5.8) in matrix format:

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \begin{bmatrix} \left( ms - \ddot{X}_u \right) & - \left( \ddot{X}_w s + \ddot{X}_w \right) & - \left( \left( \ddot{X}_q - m W_e \right) s - mg \cos \theta_e \right) \\ -\ddot{Z}_u & - \left( \left( \ddot{Z}_w - m \right) s + \ddot{Z}_w \right) & - \left( \left( \ddot{Z}_q + m U_e \right) s - mg \sin \theta_e \right) \\ -\ddot{M}_u & - \left( \ddot{M}_w s + \ddot{M}_w \right) & \left( I_y s^2 - \ddot{M}_q s \right) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u(s) \\ w(s) \\ \theta(s) \end{bmatrix} \\
 & = \begin{bmatrix} \ddot{X}_\eta & \ddot{X}_\tau \\ \ddot{Z}_\eta & \ddot{Z}_\tau \\ \ddot{M}_\eta & \ddot{M}_\tau \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \eta(s) \\ \tau(s) \end{bmatrix}
 \end{aligned} \tag{5.9}$$

Cramer's rule can now be applied to obtain the longitudinal response transfer functions, for example, to obtain the transfer functions describing response to elevator. Assume, therefore, that the thrust remains constant. This means that the throttle is fixed at its trim setting  $\tau_e$  and  $\tau(s)=0$ . Therefore, after dividing through by  $\eta(s)$  equation (5.9) may be simplified to

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \begin{bmatrix} \left( ms - \ddot{X}_u \right) & - \left( \ddot{X}_w s + \ddot{X}_w \right) & - \left( \left( \ddot{X}_q - m W_e \right) s - mg \cos \theta_e \right) \\ -\ddot{Z}_u & - \left( \left( \ddot{Z}_w - m \right) s + \ddot{Z}_w \right) & - \left( \left( \ddot{Z}_q + m U_e \right) s - mg \sin \theta_e \right) \\ -\ddot{M}_u & - \left( \ddot{M}_w s + \ddot{M}_w \right) & \left( I_y s^2 - \ddot{M}_q s \right) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \frac{u(s)}{\eta(s)} \\ \frac{w(s)}{\eta(s)} \\ \frac{\theta(s)}{\eta(s)} \end{bmatrix} \\
 & = \begin{bmatrix} \ddot{X}_\eta \\ \ddot{Z}_\eta \\ \ddot{M}_\eta \end{bmatrix}
 \end{aligned} \tag{5.10}$$

Equation (5.10) is of the same form as equation (5.1); Cramer's rule may be applied directly and the elevator response transfer functions are given by

$$\frac{u(s)}{\eta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\eta^u(s)}{\Delta(s)} \quad \frac{w(s)}{\eta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\eta^w(s)}{\Delta(s)} \quad \frac{\theta(s)}{\eta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\eta^\theta(s)}{\Delta(s)} \tag{5.11}$$

Since the Laplace transform of equation (5.7) is  $s\theta(s) = q(s)$  the pitch rate response transfer function follows directly:

$$\frac{q(s)}{\eta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\eta^q(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{sN_\eta^\theta(s)}{\Delta(s)} \quad (5.12)$$

The numerator polynomials are given by the following determinants:

$$N_\eta^u(s) = \begin{vmatrix} \dot{X}_\eta & -(\dot{X}_{\dot{w}}s + \dot{X}_w) & -\left(\left(\dot{X}_q - mW_e\right)s - mg \cos \theta_e\right) \\ \dot{Z}_\eta & -\left(\left(\dot{Z}_{\dot{w}} - m\right)s + \dot{Z}_w\right) & -\left(\left(\dot{Z}_q + mU_e\right)s - mg \sin \theta_e\right) \\ \dot{M}_\eta & -(\dot{M}_{\dot{w}}s + \dot{M}_w) & (I_y s^2 - \dot{M}_q s) \end{vmatrix} \quad (5.13)$$

$$N_\eta^w(s) = \begin{vmatrix} (ms - \dot{X}_u) & \dot{X}_\eta & -\left(\left(\dot{X}_q - mW_e\right)s - mg \cos \theta_e\right) \\ -\dot{Z}_u & \dot{Z}_\eta & -\left(\left(\dot{Z}_q + mU_e\right)s - mg \sin \theta_e\right) \\ -\dot{M}_u & \dot{M}_\eta & (I_y s^2 - \dot{M}_q s) \end{vmatrix} \quad (5.14)$$

$$N_\eta^\theta(s) = \begin{vmatrix} (ms - \dot{X}_u) & -(\dot{X}_{\dot{w}}s + \dot{X}_w) & \dot{X}_\eta \\ -\dot{Z}_u & -(\dot{Z}_{\dot{w}} - m)s + \dot{Z}_w & \dot{Z}_\eta \\ -\dot{M}_u & -(\dot{M}_{\dot{w}}s + \dot{M}_w) & \dot{M}_\eta \end{vmatrix} \quad (5.15)$$

and the common denominator polynomial is given by the determinant:

$$\Delta(s) = \begin{vmatrix} (ms - \dot{X}_u) & -(\dot{X}_{\dot{w}}s + \dot{X}_w) & -\left(\left(\dot{X}_q - mW_e\right)s - mg \cos \theta_e\right) \\ -\dot{Z}_u & -\left(\left(\dot{Z}_{\dot{w}} - m\right)s + \dot{Z}_w\right) & -\left(\left(\dot{Z}_q + mU_e\right)s - mg \sin \theta_e\right) \\ -\dot{M}_u & -(\dot{M}_{\dot{w}}s + \dot{M}_w) & (I_y s^2 - \dot{M}_q s) \end{vmatrix} \quad (5.16)$$

The thrust response transfer functions may be derived by assuming the elevator to be fixed at its trim value, thus  $\eta(s) = 0$ , and  $\tau(s)$  is written in place of  $\eta(s)$ . Then the derivatives  $\dot{X}_\eta$ ,  $\dot{Z}_\eta$  and  $\dot{M}_\eta$  in equations (5.13)–(5.15) are replaced by  $\dot{X}_\tau$ ,  $\dot{Z}_\tau$  and  $\dot{M}_\tau$  respectively. Since the polynomial expressions given by the determinants are substantial they are set out in full in Appendix 3.

### 5.3.2 The lateral–directional response transfer functions

The lateral–directional response transfer functions may be obtained by exactly the same means as the longitudinal transfer functions. The Laplace transform, assuming zero initial conditions, of the lateral–directional equations of motion referred to body axes, equations (4.45), may be written in matrix form as follows:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \left( ms - \dot{Y}_v \right) - \left( \left( \dot{Y}_p + mW_e \right) s \right) - \left( \left( \dot{Y}_r - mU_e \right) s \right) \\ -\dot{L}_v & \left( I_x s^2 - \dot{L}_p s \right) & - \left( I_{xz} s^2 + \dot{L}_r s \right) \\ -\dot{N}_v & - \left( I_{xz} s^2 + \dot{N}_p s \right) & \left( I_z s^2 - \dot{N}_r s \right) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v(s) \\ \phi(s) \\ \psi(s) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \dot{Y}_\xi & \dot{Y}_\zeta \\ \dot{L}_\xi & \dot{L}_\zeta \\ \dot{N}_\xi & \dot{N}_\zeta \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \xi(s) \\ \zeta(s) \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.17)$$

where  $s\phi(s) = p(s)$  and  $s\psi(s) = r(s)$ . By holding the rudder at its trim setting,  $\zeta(s) = 0$ , the aileron response transfer functions may be obtained by applying Cramer's rule to equation (5.17). Similarly, by holding the ailerons at the trim setting,  $\xi(s) = 0$ , the rudder response transfer functions may be obtained. For example roll rate response to aileron is given by

$$\frac{N_\xi^p(s)}{\Delta(s)} \equiv \frac{p(s)}{\xi(s)} = \frac{s\phi(s)}{\xi(s)} \equiv \frac{sN_\xi^\phi(s)}{\Delta(s)} \quad (5.18)$$

where the numerator polynomial is given by

$$N_\xi^p(s) = s \begin{vmatrix} (ms - \dot{Y}_v) & \dot{Y}_\xi & - \left( \left( \dot{Y}_r - mU_e \right) s \right) \\ -\dot{L}_v & \dot{L}_\xi & - \left( I_{xz} s^2 + \dot{L}_r s \right) \\ -\dot{N}_v & \dot{N}_\xi & \left( I_z s^2 - \dot{N}_r s \right) \end{vmatrix} \quad (5.19)$$



and the denominator polynomial is given by

$$\Delta(s) = \begin{vmatrix} \left( ms - \dot{Y}_v \right) & - \left( \left( \dot{Y}_p + mW_e \right) s \right) & - \left( \left( \dot{Y}_r - mU_e \right) s \right) \\ -\dot{L}_v & \left( I_x s^2 - \dot{L}_p s \right) & - \left( I_{xz} s^2 + \dot{L}_r s \right) \\ -\dot{N}_v & - \left( I_{xz} s^2 + \dot{N}_p s \right) & \left( I_z s^2 - \dot{N}_r s \right) \end{vmatrix} \quad (5.20)$$

Again, since the polynomial expressions given by the determinants are substantial they are also set out in full in Appendix 3.

### Example 5.2

To obtain the transfer function describing pitch attitude response to elevator for the Lockheed F-104 Starfighter. The data were obtained from Teper (1969) and describe a sea level flight condition. Inspection of the data revealed that  $\theta_e = 0$ ; thus it was concluded that the equations of motion to which the data relate are referred to wind axes.

Air density	$\rho = 0.00238 \text{ slug/ft}^3$
Axial velocity component	$U_e = 305 \text{ ft/s}$
Aircraft mass	$m = 746 \text{ slugs}$
Moment of inertia in pitch	$I_y = 65,000 \text{ slug ft}^2$
Gravitational constant	$g = 32.2 \text{ ft/s}^2$

The dimensional aerodynamic stability and control derivatives follow. Derivatives that are not quoted are assumed to be insignificant and are given a zero value, whence

$\dot{X}_u = -26.26 \text{ slug/s}$	$\dot{Z}_u = -159.64 \text{ slug/s}$	$\dot{M}_u = 0$
$\dot{X}_w = 79.82 \text{ slug/s}$	$\dot{Z}_w = -328.24 \text{ slug/s}$	$\dot{M}_w = -1014.0 \text{ slug ft/s}$
$\dot{X}_{\dot{w}} = 0$	$\dot{Z}_{\dot{w}} = 0$	$\dot{M}_{\dot{w}} = -36.4 \text{ slug ft}$
$\dot{X}_q = 0$	$\dot{Z}_q = 0$	$\dot{M}_q = -18,135 \text{ slug ft}^2/\text{s}$
$\dot{X}_\eta = 0$	$\dot{Z}_\eta = -16,502 \text{ slug ft/s}^2/\text{rad}$	$\dot{M}_\eta = -303,575 \text{ slug ft/s}^2/\text{rad}$

The American Imperial units are retained in this example since it is preferable to work with the equations of motion and in the dimensional units appropriate to the source material. Conversion from one system of units to another often leads to confusion and error and is not therefore recommended. However, for information, factors for conversion from American Imperial units to SI units are given in Appendix 4.

These numerical values are substituted into equation (5.10) to obtain

$$\begin{bmatrix} 746s + 26.26 & -79.82 & 24021.2 \\ 159.64 & 746s + 328.24 & -227530s \\ 0 & 36.4s + 1014 & 65000s^2 + 18135s \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u(s) \\ w(s) \\ \theta(s) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -16502 \\ -303575 \end{bmatrix} \eta(s) \quad (5.21)$$

Cramer's rule may be applied directly to equation (5.21) to obtain the transfer function of interest:

$$\frac{N_\eta^\theta(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} 746s + 26.26 & -79.82 & 0 \\ 159.64 & 746s + 328.24 & -16502 \\ 0 & 36.4s + 1014 & -303575 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} 746s + 26.26 & -79.82 & 24021.2 \\ 159.64 & 746s + 328.24 & -227530s \\ 0 & 36.4s + 1014 & 65000s^2 + 18135s \end{vmatrix}} \text{ rad/rad} \quad (5.22)$$

whence

$$\frac{N_\eta^\theta(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{-16.850 \times 10^{10}(s^2 + 0.402s + 0.036)}{3.613 \times 10^{10}(s^4 + 0.925s^3 + 4.935s^2 + 0.182s + 0.108)} \text{ rad/rad} \quad (5.23)$$

Or, in the preferable factorised form,

$$\frac{N_\eta^\theta(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{-4.664(s + 0.135)(s + 0.267)}{(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.022)(s^2 + 0.893s + 4.884)} \text{ rad/rad} \quad (5.24)$$

The denominator of equation (5.24) factorises into two pairs of complex roots (*poles*) each pair of which describes a longitudinal stability mode. The factors describing the modes may be written alternatively  $(s^2 + 2\zeta\omega s + \omega^2)$ , which is clearly the characteristic polynomial describing damped harmonic motion. The stability of each mode is determined by the damping ratio  $\zeta$  and the undamped natural frequency by  $\omega$ . The lower frequency mode is called the *phugoid* and the higher frequency mode is called the *short period pitching oscillation*. For the aeroplane to be completely longitudinally stable the damping ratio of both modes must be positive.

The units of the transfer function given in equation (5.24) are rad/rad, or equivalently deg/deg. Angular measure is usually, and correctly, quantified in radians and care must be applied when interpreting transfer functions since the radian is a very large angular quantity in the context of small perturbation motion of aircraft. This becomes especially important when dealing with transfer functions in which the input and output variables have different units. For example, the transfer function describing speed response to elevator for the F-104 has units ft/s/rad and one radian of elevator input is impossibly large! It is therefore very important to remember that one radian is equivalent to  $57.3^\circ$ . It is also important to remember that all transfer functions have units and they should always be indicated if confusion is to be avoided.

The transfer function given by equation (5.24) provides a complete description of the longitudinal stability characteristics and the dynamic pitch response to elevator of the F-104 at the flight condition in question. It is interesting to note that the transfer function has a negative sign. This means that a positive elevator deflection results in a negative pitch response that is completely in accordance with the notation defined in Chapter 2. Clearly, the remaining longitudinal response transfer functions can be obtained by applying Cramer's rule to equation (5.21) for each of the remaining motion variables. A comprehensive review of aeroplane dynamics based on transfer function analysis is contained in Chapters 6 and 7.

The complexity of this example is such that, although tedious, the entire computation is easily undertaken manually to produce a result of acceptable accuracy. Alternatively, transfer function (5.23) can be calculated merely by substituting the values of the derivative and other data into the appropriate polynomial expressions given in Appendix 3.

## 5.4 RESPONSE TO CONTROLS

Time histories for the aircraft response to controls are readily obtained by finding the inverse Laplace transform of the appropriate transfer function expression. For example, the roll rate response to aileron is given by equation (5.5) as

$$p(s) = \frac{N_{\xi}^p(s)}{\Delta(s)} \xi(s) \quad (5.25)$$

assuming that the aeroplane is initially in trimmed flight. The numerator polynomial  $N_{\xi}^p(s)$  and denominator polynomial  $\Delta(s)$  are given in Appendix 3. The aileron input  $\xi(s)$  is simply the Laplace transform of the required input function. For example, two commonly used inputs are the *impulse* and *step* functions where

Impulse of magnitude  $k$  is given by  $\xi(s) = k$

Step of magnitude  $k$  is given by  $\xi(s) = k/s$

Other useful input functions include the *ramp*, *pulse* (or step) of finite length, *doublet* and *sinusoid*. However, the Laplace transform of these functions is not quite so straightforward to obtain. Fortunately, most computer programs for handling transfer function problems have the most commonly used functions "built-in".

To continue with the example, the roll rate response to an aileron step input of magnitude  $k$  is therefore given by

$$p(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1} \left\{ \frac{k N_{\xi}^p(s)}{s \Delta(s)} \right\} \quad (5.26)$$

Solution of equation (5.26) to obtain the time response involves finding the inverse Laplace transform of the expression on the right hand side which may be accomplished

manually with the aid of a table of standard transforms. However, this calculation is painlessly achieved with the aid of an appropriate computer software package such as *MATLAB* or *Program CC* for example. However, it is instructive to review the mathematical procedure since this provides valuable insight to aid the correct interpretation of a computer solution and this is most easily achieved by the following example.

### Example 5.3

To obtain the pitch response of the F-104 aircraft to a unit step elevator input at the flight condition evaluated in Example 5.2. Assuming the unit step input to be in degree units, then from equation (5.24):

$$\theta(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1} \left\{ \frac{-4.664(s + 0.135)(s + 0.267)}{s(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.022)(s^2 + 0.893s + 4.884)} \right\} \text{ deg} \quad (5.27)$$

Before the inverse Laplace transform of the expression in parentheses can be found, it is first necessary to reduce it to partial fractions. Thus writing,

$$\frac{-4.664(s^2 + 0.402s + 0.036)}{s(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.022)(s^2 + 0.893s + 4.884)} = -4.664 \left( \frac{\frac{A}{s} + \frac{Bs + C}{(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.022)}}{+ \frac{Ds + E}{(s^2 + 0.893s + 4.884)}} \right) \quad (5.28)$$

To determine the values for  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ ,  $D$  and  $E$  multiply out the fractions on the righthand side and equate the numerator coefficients from both sides of the equation for like powers of  $s$  to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= (A + B + D)s^4 \\ 0 &= (0.925A + 0.893B + C + 0.033D + E)s^3 \\ s^2 &= (4.935A + 4.884B + 0.893C + 0.022D + 0.033E)s^2 \\ 0.402s &= (0.182A + 4.884C + 0.022E)s \\ 0.036 &= 0.108A \end{aligned}$$

These simultaneous linear algebraic equations are easily solved using Cramer's rule if they are first written in matrix form:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0.925 & 0.893 & 1 & 0.033 & 1 \\ 4.935 & 4.884 & 0.893 & 0.022 & 0.033 \\ 0.182 & 0 & 4.884 & 0 & 0.022 \\ 0.108 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} A \\ B \\ C \\ D \\ E \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0.402 \\ 0.036 \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.29)$$

Thus,  $A = 0.333$ ,  $B = -0.143$ ,  $C = 0.071$ ,  $D = -0.191$ , and  $E = -0.246$ . Thus equation (5.27) may be written:

$$\theta(t) = L^{-1} \left\{ -4.664 \left( \frac{0.333}{s} - \frac{(0.143s - 0.071)}{(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.022)} \right) - \frac{(0.191s + 0.246)}{(s^2 + 0.893s + 4.884)} \right\} \text{deg} \quad (5.30)$$

A very short table of Laplace transforms relevant to this problem is given in Appendix 5. Inspection of the table of transforms determines that equation (5.30) needs some rearrangement before its inverse transform can be found. When solving problems of this type it is useful to appreciate that the solution will contain terms describing damped harmonic motion; the required form of the terms in equation (5.30) is then more easily established. With reference to Appendix 5, transform pairs 1, 5 and 6 would appear to be most applicable. Therefore rearranging equation (5.30) to suit

$$\theta(t) = L^{-1} \left\{ -4.664 \left( \frac{0.333}{s} - \left( \frac{0.143(s + 0.017)}{(s + 0.017)^2 + 0.148^2} - \frac{0.496(0.148)}{(s + 0.017)^2 + 0.148^2} \right) - \left( \frac{0.191(s + 0.447)}{(s + 0.447)^2 + 2.164^2} + \frac{0.074(2.164)}{(s + 0.447)^2 + 2.164^2} \right) \right) \right\} \text{deg} \quad (5.31)$$

Using transform pairs 1, 5 and 6 equation (5.31) may be evaluated to give the time response:

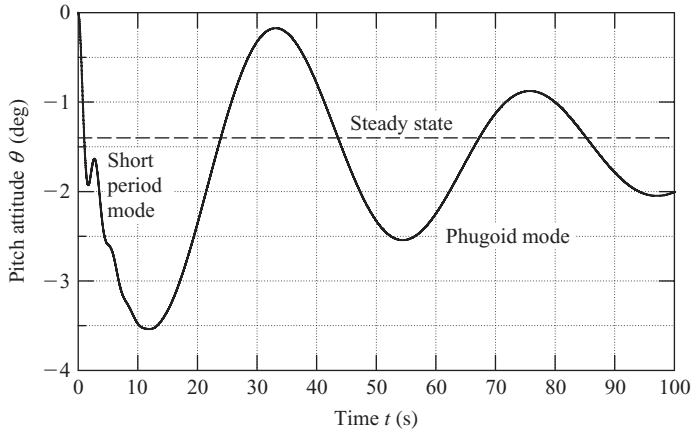
$$\begin{aligned} \theta(t) = & -1.553 + 0.667e^{-0.017t}(\cos 0.148t - 3.469 \sin 0.148t) \\ & + 0.891e^{-0.447t}(\cos 2.164t + 0.389 \sin 2.164t) \text{deg} \end{aligned} \quad (5.32)$$

The solution given by equation (5.32) comprises three terms that may be interpreted as follows:

- (i) The first term,  $-1.553^\circ$ , is the constant steady state pitch attitude (gain) of the aeroplane.
- (ii) The second term describes the contribution made by the phugoid dynamics, the undamped natural frequency  $\omega_p = 0.148$  rad/s and since  $\zeta_p \omega_p = 0.017$  rad/s the damping ratio is  $\zeta_p = 0.115$ .
- (iii) The third term describes the contribution made by the short period pitching oscillation dynamics, the undamped natural frequency  $\omega_s = 2.164$  rad/s and since  $\zeta_s \omega_s = 0.447$  rad/s the damping ratio is  $\zeta_s = 0.207$ .

The time response described by equation (5.32) is shown in Fig. 5.2 and the two dynamic modes are clearly visible. It is also clear that the pitch attitude eventually settles to the steady state value predicted above.

Example 5.3 illustrates that it is not necessary to obtain a complete time response solution merely to obtain the characteristics of the dynamic modes. The principal mode characteristics, damping ratio and natural frequency, are directly obtainable on



**Figure 5.2** Pitch attitude response of the F-104 to a  $1^\circ$  step of elevator.

inspection of the characteristic polynomial  $\Delta(s)$  in any aircraft transfer function. The steady state gain is also readily established by application of the *final value theorem* which states that

$$f(t)_{t \rightarrow \infty} = \lim_{s \rightarrow 0} (sf(s)) \quad (5.33)$$

The corresponding *initial value theorem* is also a valuable tool and states that

$$f(t)_{t \rightarrow 0} = \lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} (sf(s)) \quad (5.34)$$

A complete discussion of these theorems may be found in most books on control theory, for example in Shinnars (1980).

### Example 5.4

Applying the initial value and final value theorems to find the initial and steady values of the pitch attitude response of the F-104 of the previous examples. From equation (5.27) the Laplace transform of the unit step response is given by

$$\theta(s) = \frac{-4.664(s + 0.135)(s + 0.267)}{s(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.022)(s^2 + 0.893s + 4.884)} \text{ deg} \quad (5.35)$$

Applying the final value theorem to obtain

$$\theta(t)_{t \rightarrow \infty} = \lim_{s \rightarrow 0} \left( \frac{-4.664(s + 0.135)(s + 0.267)}{(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.022)(s^2 + 0.893s + 4.884)} \right) \text{ deg} = -1.565^\circ \quad (5.36)$$

and applying the initial value theorem to obtain

$$\theta(t)_{t \rightarrow 0} = \lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} \left( \frac{-4.664(s + 0.135)(s + 0.267)}{(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.022)(s^2 + 0.893s + 4.884)} \right) \text{deg} = 0^\circ \quad (5.37)$$

Clearly, the values given by equations (5.36) and (5.37) correlate reasonably well with the known pitch attitude response calculated in Example 5.3. Bear in mind that in all the calculations numbers have been rounded to three decimal places for convenience.

## 5.5 ACCELERATION RESPONSE TRANSFER FUNCTIONS

Acceleration response transfer functions are frequently required but are not given directly by the solution of the equations of motion described above. Expressions for the components of inertial acceleration are given in equations (4.9) and clearly, they comprise a number of motion variable contributions. Assuming small perturbation motion such that the usual simplifications can be made, equations (4.9) may be restated:

$$\begin{aligned} a_x &= \dot{u} - rV_e + qW_e - y\dot{r} + z\dot{q} \\ a_y &= \dot{v} - pW_e + rU_e + x\dot{r} - z\dot{p} \\ a_z &= \dot{w} - qU_e + pV_e - x\dot{q} + y\dot{p} \end{aligned} \quad (5.38)$$

Now if, for example, the normal acceleration response to elevator referred to the *cg* is required ( $x = y = z = 0$ ) and if fully decoupled motion is assumed ( $pV_e = 0$ ) then, the equation for normal acceleration simplifies to

$$a_z = \dot{w} - qU_e \quad (5.39)$$

The Laplace transform of equation (5.39), assuming zero initial conditions, may be written:

$$a_z(s) = sw(s) - s\theta(s)U_e \quad (5.40)$$

Or, expressing equation (5.40) in terms of elevator response transfer functions,

$$a_z(s) = s \frac{N_\eta^w(s)}{\Delta(s)} \eta(s) - sU_e \frac{N_\eta^\theta(s)}{\Delta(s)} \eta(s) = \frac{s(N_\eta^w(s) - U_e N_\eta^\theta(s))\eta(s)}{\Delta(s)} \quad (5.41)$$

whence the required normal acceleration response transfer function may be written:

$$\frac{N_\eta^{a_z}(s)}{\Delta(s)} \equiv \frac{a_z(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{s(N_\eta^w(s) - U_e N_\eta^\theta(s))}{\Delta(s)} \quad (5.42)$$

Transfer functions for the remaining acceleration response components may be derived in a similar manner.

Another useful transfer function that is often required in handling qualities studies gives the normal acceleration response to elevator measured at the pilot's seat. In this special case,  $x$  in equations (5.38) represents the distance measured from the  $cg$  to the pilot's seat and the normal acceleration is therefore given by

$$a_z = \dot{w} - qU_e - x\dot{q} \quad (5.43)$$

As before, the transfer function is easily derived:

$$\left. \frac{N_\eta^{a_z}(s)}{\Delta(s)} \right|_{\text{pilot}} = \frac{s(N_\eta^w(s) - (U_e + xs)N_\eta^\theta(s))}{\Delta(s)} \quad (5.44)$$

### Example 5.5

To calculate the normal acceleration response to elevator at the  $cg$  for the F-104 Starfighter aeroplane at the flight condition defined in Example 5.2. At the flight condition in question the steady axial velocity component  $U_e = 305$  ft/s and the pitch attitude and normal velocity transfer functions describing response to elevator are given by

$$\frac{N_\eta^\theta(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{-4.664(s + 0.135)(s + 0.267)}{(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.022)(s^2 + 0.893s + 4.884)} \text{ rad/rad} \quad (5.45)$$

and

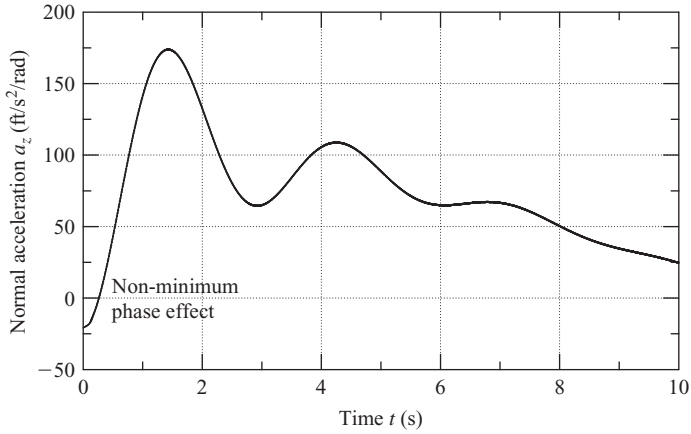
$$\frac{N_\eta^w(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{-22.147(s^2 + 0.035s + 0.022)(s + 64.675)}{(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.022)(s^2 + 0.893s + 4.884)} \text{ ft/s/rad} \quad (5.46)$$

Substitute equations (5.45) and (5.46) together with  $U_e$  into equation (5.42), pay particular attention to the units, multiply out the numerator and factorise the result to obtain the required transfer function:

$$\frac{N_\eta^{a_z}(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{-22.147s(s + 0.037)(s - 4.673)(s + 5.081)}{(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.022)(s^2 + 0.893s + 4.884)} \text{ ft/s}^2/\text{rad} \quad (5.47)$$

Note that since the numerator and denominator are of the same order, the acceleration transfer function (5.47) is an *improper* transfer function. The positive numerator root, or *zero*, implies that the transfer function is *non-minimum phase* which is typical of aircraft acceleration transfer functions. The non-minimum phase effect is illustrated in the unit (1 rad) step response time history shown in Fig. 5.3 and causes the initial response to be in the wrong sense. The first few seconds of the response only





**Figure 5.3** Normal acceleration response at the cg to an elevator unit step input.

are shown and, as may be determined by application of the final value theorem, the steady state acceleration is zero.

## 5.6 THE STATE SPACE METHOD

The use of the state space method greatly facilitates the solution of the small perturbation equations of motion of aircraft. Since the computational mechanism is based on the use of matrix algebra it is most conveniently handled by a digital computer and, as already indicated, many suitable software packages are available. Most commercial software is intended for application to problems in modern control and some care is needed to ensure that the aircraft equations of motion are correctly assembled before a solution is computed using these tools. However, the available tools are generally very powerful and their use for the solution of the equations of motion of aircraft is a particularly simple application.

### 5.6.1 The transfer function matrix

The general state equations, (4.60) and (4.61), describing a linear dynamic system may be written:

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) &= \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(t) \\ \mathbf{y}(t) &= \mathbf{C}\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{u}(t)\end{aligned}\tag{5.48}$$

and the assembly of the equations of motion in this form, for the particular application to aircraft, is explained in Section 4.4.2. Since  $\mathbf{A}$ ,  $\mathbf{B}$ ,  $\mathbf{C}$  and  $\mathbf{D}$  are matrices of constant coefficients, the Laplace transform of equations (5.48), assuming zero initial conditions is

$$\begin{aligned}s\mathbf{x}(s) &= \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}(s) + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(s) \\ \mathbf{y}(s) &= \mathbf{C}\mathbf{x}(s) + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{u}(s)\end{aligned}\tag{5.49}$$

The state equation may be rearranged and written:

$$\mathbf{x}(s) = (s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})^{-1}\mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(s) \quad (5.50)$$

where  $\mathbf{I}$  is the identity matrix and is the same order as  $\mathbf{A}$ . Thus, eliminating  $\mathbf{x}(s)$ , the state vector, by combining the output equation and equation (5.50), the output vector  $\mathbf{y}(s)$  is given by

$$\mathbf{y}(s) = [\mathbf{C}(s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})^{-1}\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{D}]\mathbf{u}(s) = \mathbf{G}(s)\mathbf{u}(s) \quad (5.51)$$

where  $\mathbf{G}(s)$  is called the *transfer function matrix*. In general the transfer function matrix has the form:

$$\mathbf{G}(s) = \frac{1}{\Delta(s)}\mathbf{N}(s) \quad (5.52)$$

and  $\mathbf{N}(s)$  is a polynomial matrix whose elements are all of the response transfer function numerators. The denominator  $\Delta(s)$  is the characteristic polynomial and is common to all transfer functions. Thus the application of the state space method to the solution of the equations of motion of an aeroplane enables all of the response transfer functions to be obtained in a single computation.

Now as explained in Section 4.4.2, when dealing with the solution of the equations of motion it is usually required that  $\mathbf{y}(s) = \mathbf{x}(s)$ , that is, the output vector and state vector are the same. In this case equation (5.51) may be simplified since  $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{I}$  and  $\mathbf{D} = 0$  therefore

$$\mathbf{G}(s) = (s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})^{-1}\mathbf{B} = \frac{\text{Adj}(s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})\mathbf{B}}{|s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}|} \quad (5.53)$$

and equation (5.53) is equivalent to the multi-variable application of Cramer's rule as discussed in Section 5.3. Thus, comparing equation (5.53) with equation (5.52) it is evident that the polynomial numerator matrix is given by

$$\mathbf{N}(s) = \text{Adj}(s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})\mathbf{B}$$

and the characteristic polynomial is given by

$$\Delta(s) = |s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}|$$

### 5.6.2 The longitudinal transfer function matrix

The concise longitudinal state equations are given by equations (4.67) and (4.68). Thus substituting for  $\mathbf{A}$ ,  $\mathbf{B}$  and  $\mathbf{I}$  into equation (5.53) the longitudinal transfer function matrix is given by

$$\mathbf{G}(s) = \begin{bmatrix} s - x_u & -x_w & -x_q & -x_\theta \\ -z_u & s - z_w & -z_q & -z_\theta \\ -m_u & -m_w & s - m_q & -m_\theta \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & s \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} x_\eta & x_\tau \\ z_\eta & z_\tau \\ m_\eta & m_\tau \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.54)$$

Algebraic manipulation of equation (5.54) leads to

$$\mathbf{G}(s) = \frac{1}{\Delta(s)} \begin{bmatrix} N_\eta^u(s) & N_\tau^u(s) \\ N_\eta^w(s) & N_\tau^w(s) \\ N_\eta^q(s) & N_\tau^q(s) \\ N_\eta^\theta(s) & N_\tau^\theta(s) \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.55)$$

In this case the numerator and denominator polynomials are expressed in terms of the concise derivatives. A complete listing of the longitudinal algebraic transfer functions in this form is given in Appendix 3.

### 5.6.3 The lateral-directional transfer function matrix

The lateral-directional state equation is given in terms of normalised derivatives by equation (4.69). Thus substituting for  $\mathbf{A}$ ,  $\mathbf{B}$  and  $\mathbf{I}$  into equation (5.53) the lateral-directional transfer function matrix is given by

$$\mathbf{G}(s) = \begin{bmatrix} s - y_v & -y_p & -y_r & -y_\phi & -y_\psi \\ -l_v & s - l_p & -l_r & -l_\phi & -l_\psi \\ -n_v & -n_p & s - n_r & -n_\phi & -n_\psi \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & s & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 & s \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} y_\xi & y_\zeta \\ l_\xi & l_\zeta \\ n_\xi & n_\zeta \\ 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.56)$$

And, as for the longitudinal solution, the lateral-directional transfer function matrix may be written:

$$\mathbf{G}(s) = \frac{1}{\Delta(s)} \begin{bmatrix} N_\xi^v(s) & N_\zeta^v(s) \\ N_\xi^p(s) & N_\zeta^p(s) \\ N_\xi^r(s) & N_\zeta^r(s) \\ N_\xi^\phi(s) & N_\zeta^\phi(s) \\ N_\xi^\psi(s) & N_\zeta^\psi(s) \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.57)$$

Again the numerator and denominator polynomials are expressed in terms of the concise derivatives. A complete listing of the lateral-directional algebraic transfer functions in this form is given in Appendix 3.

### Example 5.6

To illustrate the use of the state space method for obtaining the lateral-directional transfer function matrix, data for the Lockheed C-5A was obtained from Heffley and Jewell (1972). The data relate to a flight condition at an altitude of 20,000 ft and Mach number 0.6 and are referred to aircraft body axes. Although the data is given in American Imperial units, here it is converted to SI units simply for illustration. The

normalised derivatives were derived from the data, great care being exercised to ensure the correct units. The derivatives are listed below and, as in previous examples, missing derivatives are assumed to be insignificant and made equal to zero.

$$\begin{array}{lll}
 y_v = -0.1060 \text{ 1/s} & l_v = -0.0070 \text{ 1/m s} & n_v = 0.0023 \text{ 1/m s} \\
 y_p = 0 & l_p = -0.9880 \text{ 1/s} & n_p = -0.0921 \text{ 1/s} \\
 y_r = -189.586 \text{ m/s} & l_r = 0.2820 \text{ 1/s} & n_r = -0.2030 \text{ 1/s} \\
 y_\phi = 9.8073 \text{ m/s}^2 & l_\phi = 0 & n_\phi = 0 \\
 y_\psi = 0.3768 \text{ m/s}^2 & l_\psi = 0 & n_\psi = 0 \\
 y_\xi = -0.0178 \text{ m/s}^2 & l_\xi = 0.4340 \text{ 1/s}^2 & n_\xi = 0.0343 \text{ 1/s}^2 \\
 y_\zeta = 3.3936 \text{ m/s}^2 & l_\zeta = 0.1870 \text{ 1/s}^2 & n_\zeta = -0.5220 \text{ 1/s}^2
 \end{array}$$

The lateral-directional state equation is obtained by substituting the derivative values into equation (4.69):

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{v} \\ \dot{p} \\ \dot{r} \\ \dot{\phi} \\ \dot{\psi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -0.106 & 0 & -189.586 & 9.8073 & 0.3768 \\ -0.007 & -0.988 & 0.282 & 0 & 0 \\ 0.0023 & -0.0921 & -0.203 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \\ \phi \\ \psi \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -0.0178 & 3.3936 \\ 0.434 & 0.187 \\ 0.0343 & -0.522 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \xi \\ \zeta \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.58)$$

and the output equation, written out in full, is

$$\begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \\ \phi \\ \psi \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \\ \phi \\ \psi \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \xi \\ \zeta \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.59)$$

The transfer function matrix was calculated using *Program CC*. The matrices **A**, **B**, **C** and **D** are input to the program and the command for finding the transfer function matrix is invoked. A printout of the result produced the following:

$$\mathbf{G}(s) = \frac{1}{\Delta(s)} \mathbf{N}(s) \quad (5.60)$$

where equation (5.60) is the shorthand version of equation (5.57) and

$$\mathbf{N}(s) = \begin{bmatrix} -0.018s(s + 0.15)(s - 0.98)(s + 367.35) & 3.394s(s - 0.012)(s + 1.05)(s + 2.31) \\ 0.434s(s - 0.002)(s^2 + 0.33s + 0.57) & 0.187s(s - 0.002)(s + 1.55)(s - 2.16) \\ 0.343s(s + 0.69)(s^2 - 0.77s + 0.51) & -0.522s(s + 1.08)(s^2 + 0.031s + 0.056) \\ 0.434(s - 0.002)(s^2 + 0.33s + 0.57) & 0.187(s - 0.002)(s + 1.55)(s - 2.16) \\ 0.343(s + 0.69)(s^2 - 0.77s + 0.51) & -0.522(s + 1.08)(s^2 + 0.031s + 0.056) \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.61)$$

and the common denominator, the lateral-directional characteristic polynomial, is given by

$$\Delta(s) = s(s + 0.01)(s + 1.11)(s^2 + 0.18s + 0.58) \quad (5.62)$$

The lateral-directional characteristic polynomial factorises into three real roots and a complex pair of roots. The roots, or poles, of the lateral-directional characteristic polynomial provide a complete description of the lateral-directional stability characteristics of the aeroplane. The zero root indicates *neutral stability* in yaw, the first non-zero real root describes the *spiral mode*, the second real root describes the *roll subsidence mode* and the complex pair of roots describe the *oscillatory dutch roll mode*.

It is very important to remember the units of the transfer functions comprising the transfer function matrix which are

$$\text{units of } \mathbf{G}(s) = \frac{1}{\Delta(s)} \begin{bmatrix} N_{\xi}^v(s) & N_{\zeta}^v(s) \\ N_{\xi}^p(s) & N_{\zeta}^p(s) \\ N_{\xi}^r(s) & N_{\zeta}^r(s) \\ N_{\xi}^{\phi}(s) & N_{\zeta}^{\phi}(s) \\ N_{\xi}^{\psi}(s) & N_{\zeta}^{\psi}(s) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \text{m/s/rad} & \text{m/s/rad} \\ \text{rad/s/rad} & \text{rad/s/rad} \\ \text{rad/s/rad} & \text{rad/s/rad} \\ \text{rad/rad} & \text{rad/rad} \\ \text{rad/rad} & \text{rad/rad} \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.63)$$

Thus the transfer functions of interest can be obtained from inspection of equation (5.61) together with equation (5.62). For example, the transfer function describing sideslip velocity response to rudder is given by

$$\frac{v(s)}{\zeta(s)} = \frac{N_{\zeta}^v(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{3.394(s - 0.012)(s + 1.05)(s + 29.31)}{(s + 0.01)(s + 1.11)(s^2 + 0.18s + 0.58)} \text{m/s/rad} \quad (5.64)$$

Comparison of these results with those of the original source material in Heffley and Jewell (1972) reveals a number of small numerical discrepancies. This is due in part to the numerical rounding employed to keep this illustration to a reasonable size and in part to the differences in the computational algorithms used to obtain the solutions. However, in both cases, the accuracy is adequate for most practical purposes.

It is worth noting that many matrix inversion algorithms introduce numerical errors that accumulate rapidly with increasing matrix order and it is possible to obtain seriously inaccurate results with some poorly conditioned matrices. The typical aircraft state matrix has a tendency to fall into this category so it is advisable to check the result of a transfer function matrix computation for reasonableness when the accuracy is in doubt. This may be done, for example, by making a test calculation using the expressions given in Appendix 3. For this reason *Program CC* includes two different algorithms for calculating the transfer function matrix. In Example 5.6 it was found that the *Generalised Eigenvalue Problem* algorithm gave obviously incorrect values for some transfer function numerators whereas, the *Fadeeva* algorithm gave entirely the correct solution. Thus when using computer tools for handling aircraft stability and control problems it is advisable to input the aircraft derivative and other data at the accuracy given.

### 5.6.4 Response in terms of state description

The main reasons for the adoption of state space modelling tools are the extreme power and convenience of machine solution of the equations of motion and that the solution is obtained in a form that readily lends itself to further analysis in the context of flight control. Thus the solution process is usually completely hidden from the investigator. However, it is important to be aware of the mathematical procedures implemented in the software algorithms for the reasons mentioned above. A description of the methods of solution of the state equations describing a general system may be found in many books on modern control or system theory. For example, descriptions may be found in Barnett (1975), Shinnars (1980) and Owens (1981). The following description is a summary of the solution of the aircraft state equations and only includes those aspects of the process that are most relevant to the aircraft application. For a more comprehensive review the reader should consult the references.

The Laplace transform of the state equations (5.49) may be restated for the general case in which non-zero initial conditions are assumed:

$$\begin{aligned} s\mathbf{x}(s) - \mathbf{x}(0) &= \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}(s) + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(s) \\ \mathbf{y}(s) &= \mathbf{C}\mathbf{x}(s) + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{u}(s) \end{aligned} \quad (5.65)$$

whence the state equation may be written:

$$\mathbf{x}(s) = [s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}]^{-1}\mathbf{x}(0) + [s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}]^{-1}\mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(s) \quad (5.66)$$

or

$$\mathbf{x}(s) = \Phi(s)\mathbf{x}(0) + \Phi(s)\mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(s) \quad (5.67)$$

where  $\Phi(s)$  is called the *resolvent* of  $\mathbf{A}$ . The most general expression for the state vector  $\mathbf{x}(t)$  is determined by finding the inverse Laplace transform of equation (5.67) and is written:

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = \Phi(t - t_0)\mathbf{x}(t_0) + \int_{t_0}^t \Phi(t - \tau)\mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(\tau)d\tau \quad (5.68)$$

The *state transition matrix*  $\Phi(t - t_0)$  is defined:

$$\Phi(t - t_0) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{[s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}]^{-1}\} = e^{\mathbf{A}(t-t_0)} \quad (5.69)$$

It is equivalent to the *matrix exponential* and describes the transition in the state response  $\mathbf{x}(t)$  from time  $t_0$  to time  $t$ . The state transition matrix has the following special properties:

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi(0) &= e^{\mathbf{A}t}_{t=0} = \mathbf{I} \\ \Phi(\infty) &= e^{\mathbf{A}t}_{t=\infty} = \mathbf{0} \\ \Phi(t + \tau) &= \Phi(t)\Phi(\tau) = e^{\mathbf{A}t}e^{\mathbf{A}\tau} \end{aligned} \quad (5.70)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\Phi(t_2 - t_0) &= \Phi(t_2 - t_1)\Phi(t_1 - t_0) = e^{\mathbf{A}(t_2 - t_1)}e^{\mathbf{A}(t_1 - t_0)} \\ \Phi^{-1}(t) &= \Phi(-t) = e^{-\mathbf{A}t}\end{aligned}$$

The integral term in equation (5.68) is a *convolution integral* whose properties are well known and are discussed in most texts on linear systems theory. A very accessible explanation of the role of the convolution integral in determining system response may be found in Auslander *et al.* (1974).

For aircraft applications it is usual to measure time from  $t_0 = 0$  and equation (5.68) may be written:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{x}(t) &= \Phi(t)\mathbf{x}(0) + \int_0^t \Phi(t - \tau)\mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(\tau)d\tau \\ &= e^{\mathbf{A}t}\mathbf{x}(0) + \int_0^t e^{\mathbf{A}(t-\tau)}\mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(\tau)d\tau\end{aligned}\quad (5.71)$$

The output response vector  $\mathbf{y}(t)$  is determined by substituting the state vector  $\mathbf{x}(t)$ , obtained from equation (5.71), into the output equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{y}(t) &= \mathbf{C}\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{u}(t) \\ &= \mathbf{C}e^{\mathbf{A}t}\mathbf{x}(0) + \mathbf{C}\int_0^t e^{\mathbf{A}(t-\tau)}\mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(\tau)d\tau + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{u}(t)\end{aligned}\quad (5.72)$$

Analytical solution of the state equation (5.71) is only possible when the form of the input vector  $\mathbf{u}(t)$  is known; therefore further limited progress can only be made for specified applications. Three solutions are of particular interest in aircraft applications, the *unforced* or *homogeneous* response, the *impulse* response and the *step* response.

#### 5.6.4.1 Eigenvalues and eigenvectors

The characteristic equation is given by equating the characteristic polynomial to zero:

$$\Delta(s) = |s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}| = 0 \quad (5.73)$$

The roots or *zeros* of equation (5.73), denoted  $\lambda_i$ , are the *eigenvalues* of the state matrix  $\mathbf{A}$ . An eigenvalue  $\lambda_i$  and its corresponding non-zero *eigenvector*  $\mathbf{v}_i$  are such that:

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{v}_i = \lambda_i\mathbf{v}_i \quad (5.74)$$

whence

$$[\lambda_i\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}]\mathbf{v}_i = 0 \quad (5.75)$$

Since  $\mathbf{v}_i \neq 0$  then  $[\lambda_i\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}]$  is singular. The eigenvectors  $\mathbf{v}_i$  are always linearly independent provided the eigenvalues  $\lambda_i$  are *distinct*, that is, the characteristic equation (5.73) has no repeated roots. When an eigenvalue is complex its corresponding

eigenvector is also complex and the complex conjugate  $\lambda_i^*$  corresponds with the complex conjugate  $\mathbf{v}_i^*$ .

The *eigenvector* or *modal matrix* comprises all of the eigenvectors and is defined:

$$\mathbf{V} = [\mathbf{v}_1 \quad \mathbf{v}_2 \quad \cdots \quad \mathbf{v}_m] \quad (5.76)$$

It follows directly from equation (5.74) that

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{V} = \mathbf{V} \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1 & & & \\ & \lambda_2 & & \mathbf{0} \\ & & \ddots & \\ \mathbf{0} & & & \ddots \\ & & & & \lambda_m \end{bmatrix} \equiv \mathbf{V}\mathbf{\Lambda} \quad (5.77)$$

where  $\mathbf{\Lambda}$  is the diagonal *eigenvalue matrix*. Thus

$$\mathbf{V}^{-1}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{V} = \mathbf{\Lambda} \quad (5.78)$$

and  $\mathbf{A}$  is said to be *similar* to the diagonal eigenvalue matrix  $\mathbf{\Lambda}$ . The mathematical operation on the state matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  described by equation (5.78) is referred to as a *similarity transform*. Similar matrices possess the special property that their eigenvalues are the same. When the state equations are transformed to a similar form such that the state matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  is replaced by the diagonal eigenvalue matrix  $\mathbf{\Lambda}$  their solution is greatly facilitated. Presented in this form the state equations are said to be in *modal form*.

Eigenvectors may be determined as follows. Now by definition

$$[\lambda_i \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}]^{-1} = \frac{\text{Adj}[\lambda_i \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}]}{|\lambda_i \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}|} \quad (5.79)$$

and since, for any eigenvalue  $\lambda_i$ ,  $|\lambda_i \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}| = 0$ , equation (5.79) may be rearranged and written:

$$[\lambda_i \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}]\text{Adj}[\lambda_i \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}] = |\lambda_i \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}|\mathbf{I} = \mathbf{0} \quad (5.80)$$

Comparing equation (5.80) with equation (5.75) the eigenvector  $\mathbf{v}_i$  corresponding to the eigenvalue  $\lambda_i$  is defined:

$$\mathbf{v}_i = \text{Adj}[\lambda_i \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}] \quad (5.81)$$

Any non-zero column of the adjoint matrix is an eigenvector and if there is more than one column they differ only by a constant factor. Eigenvectors are therefore unique in direction only and not in magnitude. However, the dynamic characteristics of a system determine the unique relationship between each of its eigenvectors.



### 5.6.4.2 The modal equations

Define the transform

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = \mathbf{V}\mathbf{z}(t) \equiv \mathbf{v}_1 z_1(t) + \mathbf{v}_2 z_2(t) + \cdots + \mathbf{v}_m z_m(t) = \sum_{i=1}^{i=m} \mathbf{v}_i z_i(t) \quad (5.82)$$

then the state equations (5.48) may be rewritten in modal form:

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\mathbf{z}}(t) &= \mathbf{\Lambda}\mathbf{z}(t) + \mathbf{V}^{-1}\mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(t) \\ \mathbf{y}(t) &= \mathbf{C}\mathbf{V}\mathbf{z}(t) + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{u}(t) \end{aligned} \quad (5.83)$$

### 5.6.4.3 Unforced response

With reference to equation (5.71) the solution to the state equation in modal form, equation (5.83), is given by

$$\mathbf{z}(t) = e^{\mathbf{\Lambda}t}\mathbf{z}(0) + \int_0^t e^{\mathbf{\Lambda}(t-\tau)}\mathbf{V}^{-1}\mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(\tau)d\tau \quad (5.84)$$

The *matrix exponential*  $e^{\mathbf{\Lambda}t}$  in diagonal form is defined:

$$e^{\mathbf{\Lambda}t} = \begin{bmatrix} e^{\lambda_1 t} & & & \\ & e^{\lambda_2 t} & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & \ddots & \\ & \mathbf{0} & & & e^{\lambda_m t} \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.85)$$

and since it is diagonal the solution for the transformed state variables  $z_i(t)$  given by equation (5.84) are uncoupled, the principal advantage of the transform, whence

$$z_i(t) = e^{\lambda_i t} z_i(0) + \int_0^t e^{\lambda_i(t-\tau)} \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{B} u_i(\tau) d\tau \quad (5.86)$$

The unforced response is given by equation (5.84) when  $\mathbf{u}(t) = 0$  whence

$$\mathbf{z}(t) = e^{\mathbf{\Lambda}t}\mathbf{z}(0) \quad (5.87)$$

Or, substituting equation (5.87) into equation (5.82), the unforced state trajectory  $\mathbf{x}(t)$  may be derived:

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = \mathbf{V}e^{\mathbf{\Lambda}t}\mathbf{z}(0) = \sum_{i=1}^{i=m} \mathbf{v}_i e^{\lambda_i t} z_i(0) = \sum_{i=1}^{i=m} \mathbf{v}_i e^{\lambda_i t} \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{x}_i(0) \quad (5.88)$$

or

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = \mathbf{V}e^{\mathbf{\Lambda}t}\mathbf{V}^{-1}\mathbf{x}(0) \equiv e^{\mathbf{A}t}\mathbf{x}(0) \quad (5.89)$$

and from equation (5.72) the output response follows:

$$\mathbf{y}(t) = \mathbf{C}\mathbf{x}(t) = \mathbf{C}\mathbf{V}\mathbf{e}^{\mathbf{A}t}\mathbf{V}^{-1}\mathbf{x}(0) \equiv \mathbf{C}\mathbf{e}^{\mathbf{A}t}\mathbf{x}(0) \quad (5.90)$$

Clearly the system behaviour is governed by the *system modes*  $\mathbf{e}^{\lambda_i t}$ , the *eigenfunctions*  $\mathbf{v}_i \mathbf{e}^{\lambda_i t}$  and by the *initial state*  $\mathbf{z}(0) = \mathbf{V}^{-1}\mathbf{x}(0)$ .

#### 5.6.4.4 Impulse response

The *unit impulse function* or *Dirac delta function*, denoted  $\delta(t)$ , is usually taken to mean a rectangular pulse of unit area and in the limit, the width of the pulse tends to zero whilst its magnitude tends to infinity. Thus the special property of the unit impulse function is

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \delta(t - t_0) dt = 1 \quad (5.91)$$

where  $t_0$  is the time at which the impulse commences.

The solution of the modal state equation in response to a unit impulse follows from equation (5.84):

$$\mathbf{z}(t) = \mathbf{e}^{\mathbf{A}t}\mathbf{z}(0) + \int_0^t \mathbf{e}^{\mathbf{A}(t-\tau)}\mathbf{V}^{-1}\mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}_\delta(\tau) d\tau \quad (5.92)$$

where  $\mathbf{u}_\delta(\tau)$  is a unit impulse vector. The property of the unit impulse function enables the convolution integral to be solved and

$$\mathbf{z}(t) = \mathbf{e}^{\mathbf{A}t}\mathbf{z}(0) + \mathbf{e}^{\mathbf{A}t}\mathbf{V}^{-1}\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{e}^{\mathbf{A}t}[\mathbf{z}(0) + \mathbf{V}^{-1}\mathbf{B}] \quad (5.93)$$

Thus the transform, equation (5.82), enables the state vector to be determined:

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = \mathbf{V}\mathbf{e}^{\mathbf{A}t}\mathbf{V}^{-1}[\mathbf{x}(0) + \mathbf{B}] \equiv \mathbf{e}^{\mathbf{A}t}[\mathbf{x}(0) + \mathbf{B}] \quad (5.94)$$

and the corresponding output response vector is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{y}(t) &= \mathbf{C}\mathbf{V}\mathbf{e}^{\mathbf{A}t}\mathbf{V}^{-1}[\mathbf{x}(0) + \mathbf{B}] + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{u}_\delta(t) \\ &\equiv \mathbf{C}\mathbf{e}^{\mathbf{A}t}[\mathbf{x}(0) + \mathbf{B}] + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{u}_\delta(t) \end{aligned} \quad (5.95)$$

Now for application to aeroplanes it has already been established in Section 4.4.2 that the direct matrix  $\mathbf{D}$  is zero. Comparing equations (5.95) and (5.90) it is seen that the impulse response is the same as the unforced response with initial condition  $[\mathbf{x}(0) + \mathbf{B}]$ .

#### 5.6.4.5 Step response

When the vector input to the system is a step of constant magnitude, denoted  $\mathbf{u}_k$ , applied at time  $t_0 = 0$  then the state equation (5.96) may be written:

$$\mathbf{z}(t) = \mathbf{e}^{\mathbf{A}t}\mathbf{z}(0) + \int_0^t \mathbf{e}^{\mathbf{A}(t-\tau)}\mathbf{V}^{-1}\mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}_k d\tau \quad (5.96)$$

Since the input is constant the convolution integral is easily evaluated and

$$\mathbf{z}(t) = e^{\Lambda t} \mathbf{z}(0) + \Lambda^{-1} [e^{\Lambda t} - \mathbf{I}] \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{B} \mathbf{u}_k \quad (5.97)$$

Thus the transform, equation (5.82), enables the state vector to be determined:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x}(t) &= \mathbf{V} e^{\Lambda t} [\mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{x}(0) + \Lambda^{-1} \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{B} \mathbf{u}_k] - \Lambda^{-1} \mathbf{B} \mathbf{u}_k \\ &\equiv e^{\Lambda t} [\mathbf{x}(0) + \Lambda^{-1} \mathbf{B} \mathbf{u}_k] - \Lambda^{-1} \mathbf{B} \mathbf{u}_k \end{aligned} \quad (5.98)$$

The derivation of equation (5.98) makes use of the following property of the matrix exponential:

$$\Lambda^{-1} e^{\Lambda t} \equiv e^{\Lambda t} \Lambda^{-1} \quad (5.99)$$

and the similarity transform:

$$\Lambda^{-1} = \mathbf{V} \Lambda^{-1} \mathbf{V}^{-1} \quad (5.100)$$

Again, the output response is obtained by substituting the state vector  $\mathbf{x}(t)$ , equation (5.98), into the output equation to give

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{y}(t) &= \mathbf{C} \mathbf{V} e^{\Lambda t} [\mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{x}(0) + \Lambda^{-1} \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{B} \mathbf{u}_k] - [\mathbf{C} \Lambda^{-1} \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{D}] \mathbf{u}_k \\ &\equiv \mathbf{C} e^{\Lambda t} [\mathbf{x}(0) + \Lambda^{-1} \mathbf{B} \mathbf{u}_k] - [\mathbf{C} \Lambda^{-1} \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{D}] \mathbf{u}_k \end{aligned} \quad (5.101)$$

Since the direct matrix  $\mathbf{D}$  is zero for aeroplanes, comparing equations (5.101) and (5.95) it is seen that the step response is the same as the impulse response with initial condition  $[\mathbf{x}(0) + \Lambda^{-1} \mathbf{B} \mathbf{u}_k]$  superimposed on the constant output  $-\mathbf{C} \Lambda^{-1} \mathbf{B} \mathbf{u}_k$ .

#### 5.6.4.6 Response shapes

With reference to equations (5.90), (5.95) and (5.101) it is clear that irrespective of the input the transient output response shapes are governed by the system eigenfunctions  $\mathbf{V} e^{\Lambda t}$ , or alternatively, by the eigenvectors and eigenvalues. Most computer solutions of the state equations produce output response in the form of time history data together with the eigenvalues and eigenvectors. Thus, in aircraft response analysis, the system modes and eigenfunctions may be calculated if required. The value of this facility is that it provides a very effective means for gaining insight into the key physical properties governing the response. In particular, it enables the mode content in any response variable to be assessed merely by inspection of the corresponding eigenvectors.

The output response to other input functions may also be calculated algebraically provided the input function can be expressed in a suitable analytic form. Typical examples include the ramp function and various sinusoidal functions. Computer software packages intended for analysing system response always include a number of common input functions and usually have provision for creating other functions. However, in aircraft response analysis input functions other than those discussed in detail above are generally of less interest.

**Example 5.7**

The longitudinal equations of motion for the Lockheed F-104 Starfighter aircraft given in Example 5.2 may be written in state form as described in Section 4.4.2. Whence

$$\begin{bmatrix} 746 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 746 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 36.4 & 65000 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -26.26 & 79.82 & 0 & -24021.2 \\ -159.64 & -328.24 & 227530 & 0 \\ 0 & -1014 & -18135 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -16502 \\ -303575 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \eta \quad (5.102)$$

Pre-multiplying this equation by the inverse of the mass matrix results in the usual form of the state equation in terms of the concise derivatives:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -0.0352 & 0.1070 & 0 & -32.2 \\ -0.2140 & -0.4400 & 305 & 0 \\ 1.198 \times 10^{-4} & -0.0154 & -0.4498 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -22.1206 \\ -4.6580 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \eta \quad (5.103)$$

or, in algebraic form,

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(t) \quad (5.104)$$

which defines the matrices  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$  and the vectors  $\mathbf{x}(t)$  and  $\mathbf{u}(t)$ . Using the computer software package *MATLAB* interactively the diagonal eigenvalue matrix is calculated:

$$\mathbf{\Lambda} = \begin{bmatrix} -0.4459 + 2.1644j & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -0.4459 - 2.1644j & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -0.0166 + 0.1474j & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -0.0166 - 0.1474j \end{bmatrix} \equiv \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_s & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_s^* & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda_p & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \lambda_p^* \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.105)$$

and the corresponding eigenvector matrix is calculated:

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.0071 - 0.0067j & 0.0071 + 0.0067j & -0.9242 - 0.3816j & -0.9242 + 0.3816j \\ 0.9556 - 0.2944j & 0.9556 + 0.2944j & 0.0085 + 0.0102j & 0.0085 - 0.0102j \\ 0.0021 + 0.0068j & 0.0021 - 0.0068j & -0.0006 - 0.0002j & -0.0006 + 0.0002j \\ 0.0028 - 0.0015j & 0.0028 + 0.0015j & -0.0012 + 0.0045j & -0.0012 - 0.0045j \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.106)$$

$\lambda_s, \lambda_p$  and their complex conjugates  $\lambda_s^*, \lambda_p^*$  are the eigenvalues corresponding to the short period pitching oscillation and the phugoid respectively. The corresponding matrix exponential is given by

$$e^{\Lambda t} = \begin{bmatrix} e^{(-0.4459+2.1644j)t} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & e^{(-0.4459-2.1644j)t} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & e^{(-0.0166+0.1474j)t} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & e^{(-0.0166-0.1474j)t} \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.107)$$

The eigenfunction matrix  $\mathbf{V}e^{\Lambda t}$  therefore has complex non-zero elements and each row describes the dynamic content of the state variable to which it relates. For example, the *first row* describes the dynamic content of the velocity perturbation  $u$  and comprises the following four elements:

$$\begin{aligned} & (0.0071 - 0.0067j)e^{(-0.4459+2.1644j)t} \\ & (0.0071 + 0.0067j)e^{(-0.4459-2.1644j)t} \\ & (-0.9242 - 0.3816j)e^{(-0.0166+0.1474j)t} \\ & (-0.9242 + 0.3816j)e^{(-0.0166-0.1474j)t} \end{aligned} \quad (5.108)$$

The first two elements in (5.108) describe the short period pitching oscillation content in a velocity perturbation and the second two elements describe the phugoid content. The relative *magnitudes* of the eigenvectors, the terms in parentheses, associated with the phugoid dynamics are largest and clearly indicate that the phugoid dynamics are dominant in a velocity perturbation. The short period pitching oscillation, on the other hand, is barely visible. Obviously, this kind of observation can be made for all of the state variables simply by inspection of the eigenvector and eigenvalue matrices only. This is a very useful facility for investigating the response properties of an aeroplane, especially when the behaviour is not conventional, when stability modes are obscured or when a significant degree of mode coupling is present.

When it is recalled that

$$e^{j\pi t} = \cos \pi t + j \sin \pi t \quad (5.109)$$

where  $\pi$  represents an arbitrary scalar variable, the velocity eigenfunctions (5.108), may be written alternatively:

$$\begin{aligned} & (0.0071 - 0.0067j)e^{-0.4459t}(\cos 2.1644t + j \sin 2.1644t) \\ & (0.0071 + 0.0067j)e^{-0.4459t}(\cos 2.1644t - j \sin 2.1644t) \\ & (-0.9242 - 0.3816j)e^{-0.0166t}(\cos 0.1474t + j \sin 0.1474t) \\ & (-0.9242 + 0.3816j)e^{-0.0166t}(\cos 0.1474t - j \sin 0.1474t) \end{aligned} \quad (5.110)$$

Since the elements in (5.110) include sine and cosine functions of time the origins of the oscillatory response characteristics in the overall solution of the equations of motion are identified.

As described in Examples 5.2 and 5.3 the damping ratio and undamped natural frequency characterise the stability modes. This information comprises the eigenvalues, included in the matrix equation (5.105), and is interpreted as follows:

- (i) For the short period pitching oscillation, the higher frequency mode:

$$\text{Undamped natural frequency } \omega_s = 2.1644 \text{ rad/s}$$

$$\zeta_s \omega_s = 0.4459 \text{ rad/s}$$

$$\text{Damping ratio } \zeta_s = 0.206$$

- (ii) For the phugoid oscillation, the lower frequency mode:

$$\text{Undamped natural frequency } \omega_p = 0.1474 \text{ rad/s}$$

$$\zeta_p \omega_p = 0.0166 \text{ rad/s}$$

$$\text{Damping ratio } \zeta_p = 0.1126$$

It is instructive to calculate the pitch attitude response to a unit elevator step input using the state space method for comparison with the method described in Example 5.3. The step response is given by equation (5.101) which, for zero initial conditions, a zero direct matrix **D** and output matrix **C** replaced with the identity matrix **I** reduces to

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{y}(t) &= \mathbf{I} \mathbf{e}^{\mathbf{A}t} \mathbf{A}^{-1} \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{B} \mathbf{u}_k - \mathbf{I} \mathbf{A}^{-1} \mathbf{B} \mathbf{u}_k \\ &= \mathbf{V} \mathbf{e}^{\mathbf{A}t} \mathbf{A}^{-1} \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{b} - \mathbf{A}^{-1} \mathbf{b} \end{aligned} \quad (5.111)$$

Since the single elevator input is a unit step  $\mathbf{u}_k = 1$  and the input matrix **B** becomes the column matrix **b**. The expression on the right hand side of equation (5.111) is a  $(4 \times 1)$  column matrix the elements of which describe  $u$ ,  $w$ ,  $q$  and  $\theta$  responses to the input. With the aid of *MATLAB* the following were calculated:

$$\mathbf{A}^{-1} \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 147.36 + 19.07j \\ 147.36 - 19.07j \\ 223.33 - 133.29j \\ 223.33 + 133.29j \end{bmatrix} \quad \mathbf{A}^{-1} \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} -512.2005 \\ 299.3836 \\ 0 \\ 1.5548 \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.112)$$

The remainder of the calculation of the first term on the right hand side of equation (5.111) was completed by hand, an exercise that is definitely not recommended! Pitch attitude response is given by the fourth row of the resulting column matrix  $\mathbf{y}(t)$  and is

$$\begin{aligned} \theta(t) &= 0.664e^{-0.017t}(\cos 0.147t - 3.510 \sin 0.147t) \\ &\quad + 0.882e^{-0.446t}(\cos 2.164t + 0.380 \sin 2.164t) - 1.5548 \end{aligned} \quad (5.113)$$

This equation compares very favourably with equation (5.32) and may be interpreted in exactly the same way.

This example is intended to illustrate the role of the various elements contributing to the solution and as such would not normally be undertaken on a routine basis. Machine computation simply produces the result in the most accessible form that is usually graphical although the investigator can obtain additional information in much the same way as shown in this example.

## 5.7 STATE SPACE MODEL AUGMENTATION

It is frequently necessary to obtain response characteristics for variables that are not included in the equations of motion of the aeroplane. Provided that the variables of interest can be expressed as functions of the basic aeroplane motion variables then response transfer functions can be derived in the same way as the acceleration response transfer functions described in Section 5.5. However, when the additional transfer functions of interest are strictly proper they can also be obtained by extending, or *augmenting*, the state description of the aeroplane and solving in the usual way as described above. This latter course of action is extremely convenient as it extends the usefulness of the aeroplane state space model and requires little additional effort on behalf of the investigator.

For some additional variables, such as height, it is necessary to create a new state variable and to augment the state equation accordingly. Whereas for others, such as flight path angle, which may be expressed as the simple sum of basic aeroplane state variables it is only necessary to create an additional output variable and to augment the output equation accordingly. It is also a straightforward matter to augment the state description to include the additional dynamics of components such as engines and control surface actuators. In this case, all of the response transfer functions obtained in the solution of the equations of motion implicitly include the effects of the additional dynamics.

### 5.7.1 Height response transfer function

An expression for height rate is given by equation (2.17) which, for small perturbations, may be written:

$$\dot{h} = U\theta - V\phi - W \quad (5.114)$$

Substitute for  $(U, V, W)$  from equation (2.1) and note that for symmetric flight  $V_e = 0$ . Since the products of small quantities are insignificantly small they may be ignored and equation (5.114) may be written:

$$\dot{h} = U_e\theta - W_e - w \quad (5.115)$$

With reference to Fig. 2.4, assuming  $\alpha_e$  to be small then,  $U_e \cong V_0$ ,  $W_e \cong 0$  and to a good approximation equation (5.114) may be written:

$$\dot{h} = V_0\theta - w \quad (5.116)$$

The decoupled longitudinal state equation in concise form, equation (4.67), may be augmented to include the height variable by the inclusion of equation (5.116):

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \\ \dot{h} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_u & x_w & x_q & x_\theta & 0 \\ z_u & z_w & z_q & z_\theta & 0 \\ m_u & m_w & m_q & m_\theta & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & V_0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \\ h \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} x_\eta & x_\tau \\ z_\eta & z_\tau \\ m_\eta & m_\tau \\ 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \eta \\ \tau \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.117)$$

Alternatively, this may be written in a more compact form:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) \\ \dots \\ \dot{h}(t) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{A} & \vdots & \mathbf{0} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & V_0 & \vdots & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{x}(t) \\ \dots \\ h(t) \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{B} \\ \dots \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{u}(t) \quad (5.118)$$

where  $\mathbf{x}(t)$  and  $\mathbf{u}(t)$  are the state and input vectors respectively, and  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$  are the state and input matrices respectively of the basic aircraft state equation (4.67). Solution of equation (5.118) to obtain the longitudinal response transfer functions will now result in two additional transfer functions describing the height response to an elevator perturbation and the height response to a thrust perturbation.

### 5.7.2 Incidence and sideslip response transfer functions

Dealing with the inclusion of incidence angle in the longitudinal decoupled equations of motion first. It follows from equation (2.5) that for small perturbation motion incidence  $\alpha$  is given by

$$\alpha \cong \tan \alpha = \frac{w}{V_0} \quad (5.119)$$

since  $U_e \rightarrow V_0$  as the perturbation tends to zero. Thus incidence  $\alpha$  is equivalent to normal velocity  $w$  divided by the steady free stream velocity. Incidence can be included in the longitudinal state equations in two ways. Either, incidence can be added to the output vector  $\mathbf{y}(t)$  without changing the state vector or, it can replace normal velocity  $w$  in the state vector. When the output equation is augmented the longitudinal state equations (4.67) and (4.68) are written:

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) &= \mathbf{Ax}(t) + \mathbf{Bu}(t) \\ \mathbf{y}(t) &= \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \\ \alpha \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1/V_0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{I} & \vdots & 0 \\ \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 0 & 1/V_0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{x}(t) \end{aligned} \quad (5.120)$$



When incidence replaces normal velocity, it is first necessary to note that equation (5.119) may be differentiated to give  $\dot{\alpha} = \dot{w}/V_0$ . Thus the longitudinal state equation (4.67) may be rewritten:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{\alpha} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_u & x_w V_0 & x_q & x_\theta \\ z_u/V_0 & z_w & z_q/V_0 & z_\theta/V_0 \\ m_u & m_w V_0 & m_q & m_\theta \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ \alpha \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} x_\eta & x_\tau \\ z_\eta/V_0 & z_\tau/V_0 \\ m_\eta & m_\tau \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \eta \\ \tau \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.121)$$

The output equation (4.68) remains unchanged except that the output vector  $\mathbf{y}(t)$  now includes  $\alpha$  instead of  $w$  thus

$$\mathbf{y}^T(t) = [u \quad \alpha \quad q \quad \theta] \quad (5.122)$$

In a similar way it is easily shown that in a lateral perturbation the sideslip angle  $\beta$  is given by

$$\beta \cong \tan \beta = \frac{v}{V_0} \quad (5.123)$$

and the lateral small perturbation equations can be modified in the same way as the longitudinal equations in order to incorporate sideslip angle  $\beta$  in the output equation or alternatively, it may replace lateral velocity  $v$  in the state equation. When the output equation is augmented, the lateral state equations may be written:

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) &= \mathbf{Ax}(t) + \mathbf{Bu}(t) \\ \mathbf{y}(t) &= \begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \\ \phi \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1/V_0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \\ \phi \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{I} \\ \dots\dots\dots \\ 1/V_0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{x}(t) \end{aligned} \quad (5.124)$$

where the lateral state equation is given by equation (4.70). When sideslip angle  $\beta$  replaces lateral velocity  $v$  in the lateral state equation (4.70), it is then written:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{\beta} \\ \dot{p} \\ \dot{r} \\ \dot{\phi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} y_v & y_p/V_0 & y_r/V_0 & y_\phi/V_0 \\ l_v V_0 & l_p & l_r & l_\phi \\ n_v V_0 & n_p & n_r & n_\phi \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \beta \\ p \\ r \\ \phi \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} y_\xi/V_0 & y_\zeta/V_0 \\ l_\xi & l_\zeta \\ n_\xi & n_\zeta \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \xi \\ \zeta \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.125)$$

Again, for this alternative, the lateral output vector  $\mathbf{y}(t)$  remains unchanged except that sideslip angle  $\beta$  replaces lateral velocity  $v$  thus

$$\mathbf{y}^T(t) = [\beta \quad p \quad r \quad \phi] \quad (5.126)$$

Solution of the longitudinal or lateral state equations will produce the transfer function matrix in the usual way. In every case, transfer functions will be calculated to correspond with the particular set of variables comprising the output vector.

### 5.7.3 Flight path angle response transfer function

Sometimes flight path angle  $\gamma$  response to controls is required, especially when handling qualities in the approach flight condition are under consideration. Perturbations in flight path angle  $\gamma$  may be expressed in terms of perturbations in pitch attitude  $\theta$  and incidence  $\alpha$ , as indicated for the steady state case by equation (2.2). Whence

$$\gamma = \theta - \alpha \cong \theta - \frac{w}{V_0} \quad (5.127)$$

Thus the longitudinal output equation (4.68) may be augmented to include flight path angle as an additional output variable. The form of the longitudinal state equations is then similar to equation (5.120) and

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) &= \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(t) \\ \mathbf{y}(t) &= \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \\ \gamma \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} & & & & \\ & \mathbf{I} & & & \\ & \dots\dots\dots & & & \\ 0 & -1/V_0 & 0 & 1 & \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{x}(t) \end{aligned} \quad (5.128)$$

where the state vector  $\mathbf{x}(t)$  remains unchanged:

$$\mathbf{x}^T(t) = [u \quad w \quad q \quad \theta] \quad (5.129)$$

### 5.7.4 Addition of engine dynamics

Provided that the thrust producing devices can be modelled by a linear transfer function then, in general, it can be integrated into the aircraft state description. This then enables the combined engine and airframe dynamics to be modelled by the overall system response transfer functions. A very simple engine thrust model is described by equation (2.34), with transfer function:

$$\frac{\tau(s)}{\varepsilon(s)} = \frac{k_\tau}{(1 + sT_\tau)} \quad (5.130)$$

where  $\tau(t)$  is the thrust perturbation in response to a perturbation in throttle lever angle  $\varepsilon(t)$ . The transfer function equation (5.130) may be rearranged thus

$$s\tau(s) = \frac{k_\tau}{T_\tau}\varepsilon(s) - \frac{1}{T_\tau}\tau(s) \quad (5.131)$$

and this is the Laplace transform, assuming zero initial conditions, of the following time domain equation:

$$\dot{\tau}(t) = \frac{k_\tau}{T_\tau}\varepsilon(t) - \frac{1}{T_\tau}\tau(t) \quad (5.132)$$

The longitudinal state equation (4.67) may be augmented to include the engine dynamics described by equation (5.132) which, after some rearrangement, may be written:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \\ \dot{\tau} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_u & x_w & x_q & x_\theta & x_\tau \\ z_u & z_w & z_q & z_\theta & z_\tau \\ m_u & m_w & m_q & m_\theta & m_\tau \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -1/T_\tau \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \\ \tau \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} x_\eta & 0 \\ z_\eta & 0 \\ m_\eta & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 0 & k_\tau/T_\tau \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \eta \\ \varepsilon \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.133)$$

Thus the longitudinal state equation has been augmented to include thrust as an additional state and the second input variable is now throttle lever angle  $\varepsilon$ . The output equation (4.68) remains unchanged except that the  $\mathbf{C}$  matrix is increased in order to the  $(5 \times 5)$  identity matrix  $\mathbf{I}$  in order to provide the additional output variable corresponding to the extra state variable  $\tau$ .

The procedure described above in which a transfer function model of engine dynamics is converted to a form suitable for augmenting the state equation is known as *system realisation*. More generally, relatively complex higher order transfer functions can be *realised* as state equations although the procedure for so doing is rather more involved than that illustrated here for a particularly simple example. The mathematical methods required are described in most books on modern control theory. The advantage and power of this relatively straightforward procedure is very considerable since it literally enables the state equation describing a very complex system, such as an aircraft with advanced flight controls, to be built by repeated augmentation. The state descriptions of the various system components are simply added to the matrix state equation until the overall system dynamics are fully represented. Typically this might mean, for example, that the basic longitudinal or lateral  $(4 \times 4)$  airframe state matrix might be augmented to a much higher order of perhaps  $(12 \times 12)$  or more, depending on the complexity of the engine model, control system, surface actuators and so on. However, whatever the result the equations are easily solved using the tools described above.

### Example 5.8

To illustrate the procedure for augmenting an aeroplane state model, let the longitudinal model for the Lockheed F-104 Starfighter of Example 5.2 be augmented to include height  $h$  and flight path angle  $\gamma$  and to replace normal velocity  $w$  with incidence  $\alpha$ . The longitudinal state equation expressed in terms of concise derivatives is given by equation (5.103) and this is modified in accordance with equation (5.121) to replace normal velocity  $w$  with incidence  $\alpha$ ,

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{\alpha} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -0.0352 & 32.6342 & 0 & -32.2 \\ -7.016E-04 & -0.4400 & 1 & 0 \\ 1.198E-04 & -4.6829 & -0.4498 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ \alpha \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -0.0725 \\ -4.6580 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \eta \quad (5.134)$$

Equation (5.134) is now augmented by the addition of equation (5.116), the height equation expressed in terms of incidence  $\alpha$  and pitch attitude  $\theta$ :

$$\dot{h} = V_0(\theta - \alpha) = 305\theta - 305\alpha \quad (5.135)$$

whence the augmented state equation is written:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{\alpha} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \\ \dot{h} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -0.0352 & 32.6342 & 0 & -32.2 & 0 \\ -7.016 \times 10^{-4} & -0.4400 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1.198 \times 10^{-4} & -4.6829 & -0.4498 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -305 & 0 & 305 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ \alpha \\ q \\ \theta \\ h \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -0.0725 \\ -4.6580 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \eta \quad (5.136)$$

The corresponding output equation is augmented to include flight path angle  $\gamma$  as given by equation (5.127) and is then written:

$$\begin{bmatrix} u \\ \alpha \\ q \\ \theta \\ h \\ \gamma \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ \alpha \\ q \\ \theta \\ h \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.137)$$

This, of course, assumes the direct matrix  $\mathbf{D}$  to be zero as discussed above. Equations (5.136) and (5.137) together provide the complete state description of the Lockheed F-104 as required. Solving these equations with the aid of *Program CC* results in the six transfer functions describing the response to elevator;

- (i) The common denominator polynomial (the characteristic polynomial) is given by

$$\Delta(s) = s(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.022)(s^2 + 0.892s + 4.883) \quad (5.138)$$

- (ii) The numerator polynomials are given by

$$\begin{aligned} N_\eta^u(s) &= -2.367s(s - 4.215)(s + 5.519) \text{ ft/s/rad} \\ N_\eta^\alpha(s) &= -0.073s(s + 64.675)(s^2 + 0.035s + 0.023) \text{ rad/rad} \\ N_\eta^q(s) &= -4.658s^2(s + 0.134)(s + 0.269) \text{ rad/s/rad} \\ N_\eta^\theta(s) &= -4.658s(s + 0.134)(s + 0.269) \text{ rad/rad} \\ N_\eta^h(s) &= 22.121(s + 0.036)(s - 4.636)(s + 5.085) \text{ ft/rad} \\ N_\eta^\gamma(s) &= 0.073s(s + 0.036)(s - 4.636)(s + 5.085) \text{ rad/rad} \end{aligned} \quad (5.139)$$

Note that the additional zero pole in the denominator is due to the increase in order of the state equation from four to five and represents the *height integration*. This is easily interpreted since an elevator step input will cause the aeroplane to climb or descend steadily after the transient has died away when the response becomes similar to that of a simple integrator. Note also that the denominator zero cancels with a zero in all numerator polynomials except that describing the height response. Thus the response transfer functions describing the basic aircraft motion variables  $u$ ,  $\alpha$ ,  $q$  and  $\theta$  are identically the same as those obtained from the basic fourth order state equations. The reason for the similarity between the height and flight path angle response numerators becomes obvious if the expression for the height equation (5.135) is compared with the expression for flight path angle, equation (5.127).

## REFERENCES

- Auslander, D.M., Takahashi, Y. and Rabins, M.J. 1974: *Introducing Systems and Control*. McGraw Hill Kogakusha Ltd, Tokyo.
- Barnett, S. 1975: *Introduction to Mathematical Control Theory*. Clarendon Press, Oxford.
- Duncan, W.J. 1959: *The Principles of the Control and Stability of Aircraft*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- Goult, R.J., Hoskins, R.F., Milner, J.A. and Pratt, M.J. 1974: *Computational Methods in Linear Algebra*. Stanley Thornes (Publishers) Ltd., London.
- Heffley, R.K. and Jewell, W.F. 1972: *Aircraft Handling Qualities Data*. NASA Contractor Report, NASA CR-2144, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington D.C. 20546.
- Owens, D.H. 1981: *Multivariable and Optimal Systems*. Academic Press, London.
- Shinners, S.M. 1980: *Modern Control System Theory and Application*. Addison-Wesley Publishing Co, Reading, Massachusetts.
- Teper, G.L. 1969: *Aircraft Stability and Control Data*. Systems Technology, Inc., STI Technical Report 176-1. NASA Contractor Report, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington D.C. 20546.

## PROBLEMS

1. The free response  $x(t)$  of a linear second order system after release from an initial displacement  $A$  is given by

$$x(t) = \frac{1}{2} A e^{-\omega \zeta t} \left( \left( 1 + \frac{\zeta}{\sqrt{\zeta^2 - 1}} \right) e^{-\omega t \sqrt{\zeta^2 - 1}} + \left( 1 - \frac{\zeta}{\sqrt{\zeta^2 - 1}} \right) e^{\omega t \sqrt{\zeta^2 - 1}} \right)$$

where  $\omega$  is the undamped natural frequency and  $\zeta$  is the damping ratio:

- (i) With the aid of sketches show the possible forms of the motion as  $\zeta$  varies from zero to a value greater than 1.
- (ii) How is the motion dependent on the sign of  $\zeta$ ?
- (iii) How do the time response shapes relate to the solution of the equations of motion of an aircraft?

- (iv) Define the damped natural frequency and explain how it depends on damping ratio  $\zeta$ . (CU 1982)
2. For an aircraft in steady rectilinear flight describe flight path angle, incidence and attitude and show how they are related. (CU 1986)
3. Write down the Laplace transform of the longitudinal small perturbation equations of motion of an aircraft for the special case when the phugoid motion is suppressed. It may be assumed that the equations are referred to wind axes and that the influence of the derivatives  $\dot{Z}_q$ ,  $\dot{Z}_w$  and  $\dot{M}_w$  is negligible. State all other assumptions made:
- By the application of Cramer's rule obtain algebraic expressions for the pitch rate response and incidence angle response to elevator transfer functions.
  - Derivative data for the Republic Thunderchief F-105B aircraft flying at an altitude of 35,000 ft and a speed of 518 kt are,

$$\frac{\dot{Z}_w}{m} = -0.4 \text{ 1/s} \quad \frac{\dot{M}_w}{I_y} = -0.0082 \text{ 1/ft s} \quad \frac{\dot{M}_q}{I_y} = -0.485 \text{ 1/s}$$

$$\frac{\dot{M}_\eta}{I_y} = -12.03 \text{ 1/s}^2 \quad \frac{\dot{Z}_\eta}{m} = -65.19 \text{ ft/s}^2$$

Evaluate the transfer functions for this aircraft and calculate values for the longitudinal short period mode frequency and damping.

- Sketch the pitch rate response to a  $1^\circ$  step of elevator angle and indicate the significant features of the response. (CU 1990)
4. The roll response to aileron control of the Douglas DC-8 airliner in an approach flight condition is given by the following transfer function:

$$\frac{\phi(s)}{\xi(s)} = \frac{-0.726(s^2 + 0.421s + 0.889)}{(s - 0.013)(s + 1.121)(s^2 + 0.22s + 0.99)}$$

Realise the transfer function in terms of its partial fractions and by calculating the inverse Laplace transform, obtain an expression for the roll time history in response to a unit aileron impulse. State all assumptions.

5. Describe the methods by which the normal acceleration response to elevator transfer function may be calculated. Using the Republic Thunderchief F-105B model given in Question 3 calculate the transfer function  $a_z(s)/\eta(s)$ :
- With the aid of *MATLAB*, *Program CC* or similar software tools, obtain a normal acceleration time history response plot for a unit elevator step input. Choose a time scale of about 10 s.
  - Calculate the inverse Laplace transform of  $a_z(s)/\eta(s)$  for a unit step elevator input. Plot the time history given by the response function and compare with that obtained in 5(i).

6. The lateral-directional equations of motion for the Boeing B-747 cruising at Mach 0.8 at 40,000 ft are given by Heffley and Jewell (1972) as follows:

$$\begin{bmatrix} (s + 0.0558) & | & -\frac{(62.074s + 32.1)}{774} & | & \frac{(771.51s - 2.576)}{774} \\ \hline 3.05 & | & s(s + 0.465) & | & -0.388 \\ \hline -0.598 & | & 0.0318s & | & (s + 0.115) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \beta \\ \frac{p}{s} \\ r \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 0 & | & 0.00729 \\ \hline 0.143 & | & 0.153 \\ \hline 0.00775 & | & -0.475 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \xi \\ \zeta \end{bmatrix}$$

where  $s$  is the Laplace operator and all angles are in radians. Using Cramer's rule, calculate all of the response transfer functions and factorize the numerators and common denominator. What are the stability modes characteristics at this flight condition?

7. The longitudinal equations of motion as given by Heffley and Jewell (1972) are

$$\begin{bmatrix} (1 - X_{\dot{u}})s - X_u^* & | & -X_{\dot{w}}s - X_w^* & | & (-X_q + W_e)s + g \cos \theta_e \\ \hline -Z_{\dot{u}}s - Z_u^* & | & (1 - Z_{\dot{w}})s - Z_w & | & (-Z_q - U_e)s + g \sin \theta_e \\ \hline -M_{\dot{u}}s - M_u^* & | & -(M_{\dot{w}}s + M_w) & | & s^2 - M_q s \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ \theta \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} X_\eta \\ Z_\eta \\ M_\eta \end{bmatrix} \eta$$

$$q = s\theta$$

$$\dot{h} = -w \cos \theta_e + u \sin \theta_e + (U_e \cos \theta_e + W_e \sin \theta_e)$$

$$a_z = sw - U_e q + (g \sin \theta_e) \theta$$

Note that the derivatives are in an American notation and represent the mass or inertia divided dimensional derivatives as appropriate. The \* symbol on the speed dependent derivatives indicates that they include thrust effects as well as the usual aerodynamic characteristics. All other symbols have their usual meanings.

Rearrange these equations into the state space format:

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) = \mathbf{A}'\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{B}'\mathbf{u}(t)$$

$$\mathbf{y}(t) = \mathbf{C}\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{u}(t)$$

with state vector  $\mathbf{x} = [u \ w \ q \ \theta \ h]$ , input vector  $\mathbf{u} = \eta$  and output vector  $\mathbf{y} = [u \ w \ q \ \theta \ h \ a_z]$ . State all assumptions made.

8. Longitudinal data for the Douglas A-4D Skyhawk flying at Mach 1.0 at 15,000 ft are given in Teper (1969) as follows:

Trim pitch attitude			0.4°
Speed of sound at 15,000 ft			1058 ft/s
$X_w$	- 0.0251 1/s	$M_{\dot{w}}$	-0.000683 1/ft
$X_u$	- 0.1343 1/s	$M_q$	-2.455 1/s
$Z_w$	- 1.892 1/s	$X_\eta$	-15.289 ft/rad/s <sup>2</sup>
$Z_u$	- 0.0487 1/s	$Z_\eta$	-94.606 ft/rad/s <sup>2</sup>
$M_w$	- 0.1072	$M_\eta$	-31.773 1/s <sup>2</sup>
$M_u$	0.00263 1/ft s		

Using the state space model derived in Problem 7, obtain the state equations for the Skyhawk in the following format:

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) = \mathbf{Ax}(t) + \mathbf{Bu}(t)$$

$$\mathbf{y}(t) = \mathbf{Cx}(t) + \mathbf{Du}(t)$$

Using *MATLAB* or *Program CC*, solve the state equations to obtain the response transfer functions for all output variables. What are the longitudinal stability characteristics of the Skyhawk at this flight condition?



---

## Chapter 6

# Longitudinal Dynamics

### 6.1 RESPONSE TO CONTROLS

The solution of the longitudinal equations of motion by, for example, the methods described in Chapter 5 enables the response transfer functions to be obtained. These completely describe the linear dynamic response to a control input in the plane of symmetry. Implicit in the response are the dynamic properties determined by the stability characteristics of the aeroplane. The transfer functions and the response variables described by them are linear since the entire modelling process is based on the assumption that the motion is constrained to small disturbances about an equilibrium trim state. However, it is common practice to assume that the response to controls is valid when the magnitude of the response can hardly be described as “a small perturbation”. For many conventional aeroplanes the error incurred by so doing is generally acceptably small as such aeroplanes tend to have substantially linear aerodynamic characteristics over their flight envelopes. For aeroplanes with very large flight envelopes, significant aerodynamic non-linearity and, or, dependence on sophisticated flight control systems, it is advisable not to use the linearised equations of motion for analysis of response other than that which can justifiably be described as being of small magnitude.

It is convenient to review the longitudinal response to elevator about a trim state in which the thrust is held constant. The longitudinal state equation (4.67) may then be written:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_u & x_w & x_q & x_\theta \\ z_u & z_w & z_q & z_\theta \\ m_u & m_w & m_q & m_\theta \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} x_\eta \\ z_\eta \\ m_\eta \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \eta \quad (6.1)$$

The four response transfer functions obtained in the solution of equation (6.1) may conveniently be written:

$$\frac{u(s)}{\eta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\eta^u(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{k_u(s + 1/T_u)(s^2 + 2\zeta_u\omega_us + \omega_u^2)}{(s^2 + 2\zeta_p\omega_ps + \omega_p^2)(s^2 + 2\zeta_s\omega_ss + \omega_s^2)} \quad (6.2)$$

$$\frac{w(s)}{\eta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\eta^w(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{k_w(s + 1/T_w)(s^2 + 2\zeta_w\omega_ws + \omega_w^2)}{(s^2 + 2\zeta_p\omega_ps + \omega_p^2)(s^2 + 2\zeta_s\omega_ss + \omega_s^2)} \quad (6.3)$$

$$\frac{q(s)}{\eta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\eta^q(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{k_q s(s + (1/T_{\theta_1}))(s + (1/T_{\theta_2}))}{(s^2 + 2\zeta_p \omega_p s + \omega_p^2)(s^2 + 2\zeta_s \omega_s s + \omega_s^2)} \quad (6.4)$$

$$\frac{\theta(s)}{\eta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\eta^\theta(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{k_\theta(s + (1/T_{\theta_1}))(s + (1/T_{\theta_2}))}{(s^2 + 2\zeta_p \omega_p s + \omega_p^2)(s^2 + 2\zeta_s \omega_s s + \omega_s^2)} \quad (6.5)$$

The solution of the equations of motion results in polynomial descriptions of the transfer function numerators and common denominator as set out in Appendix 3. The polynomials factorise into real and complex pairs of roots that are most explicitly quoted in the style of equations (6.2)–(6.5) above. Since the roots are interpreted as time constants, damping ratios and natural frequencies the above style of writing makes the essential information instantly available. It should also be noted that the numerator and denominator factors are typical for a conventional aeroplane. Sometimes complex pairs of roots may become two real roots and *vice versa*. However, this does not usually mean that the dynamic response characteristics of the aeroplane become dramatically different. Differences in the interpretation of response may be evident but will not necessarily be large.

As has already been indicated, the common denominator of the transfer functions describes the characteristic polynomial which, in turn, describes the stability characteristics of the aeroplane. Thus the response of all variables to an elevator input is dominated by the denominator parameters namely, damping ratios and natural frequencies. The differences between the individual responses is entirely determined by their respective numerators. It is therefore important to fully appreciate the role of the numerator in determining response dynamics. The *response shapes* of the individual variables are determined by the common denominator and “coloured” by their respective numerators. The numerator plays no part in determining stability in a linear system which is how the aeroplane is modelled here.

### Example 6.1

The equations of motion and aerodynamic data for the Ling-Temco-Vought A-7A Corsair II aircraft were obtained from Teper (1969). The flight condition corresponds to level cruising flight at an altitude of 15,000 ft at Mach 0.3. The equations of motion, referred to a body axis system, arranged in state space format are

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.00501 & 0.00464 & -72.90000 & -31.34000 \\ -0.08570 & -0.54500 & 309.00000 & -7.40000 \\ 0.00185 & -0.00767 & -0.39500 & 0.00132 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 5.63000 \\ -23.80000 \\ -4.51576 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \eta \quad (6.6)$$

Since incidence  $\alpha$  and flight path angle  $\gamma$  are useful variables in the evaluation of handling qualities, it is convenient to augment the corresponding output equation, as

described in paragraph 5.7, in order to obtain their response transfer functions in the solution of the equations of motion. The output equation is therefore,

$$\begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \\ \alpha \\ \gamma \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0.00316 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -0.00316 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \eta \quad (6.7)$$

Note that all elements in the matrices in equations (6.6) and (6.7) have been rounded to five decimal places simply to keep the equations to a reasonable physical size. This should not be done with the equations used in the actual computation.

Solution of the equations of motion using *Program CC* determines the following response transfer functions:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{u(s)}{\eta(s)} &= \frac{5.63(s + 0.369)(s + 0.587)(s + 58.437)}{(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.020)(s^2 + 0.902s + 2.666)} \text{ ft/s/rad} \\ \frac{w(s)}{\eta(s)} &= \frac{-23.8(s^2 - 0.0088s + 0.0098)(s + 59.048)}{(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.020)(s^2 + 0.902s + 2.666)} \text{ ft/s/rad} \\ \frac{q(s)}{\eta(s)} &= \frac{-4.516s(s - 0.008)(s + 0.506)}{(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.020)(s^2 + 0.902s + 2.666)} \text{ rad/s/rad (deg/s/deg)} \\ \frac{\theta(s)}{\eta(s)} &= \frac{-4.516(s - 0.008)(s + 0.506)}{(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.020)(s^2 + 0.902s + 2.666)} \text{ rad/rad (deg/deg)} \\ \frac{\alpha(s)}{\eta(s)} &= \frac{-0.075(s^2 - 0.0088s + 0.0098)(s + 59.048)}{(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.020)(s^2 + 0.902s + 2.666)} \text{ rad/rad (deg/deg)} \\ \frac{\gamma(s)}{\eta(s)} &= \frac{0.075(s - 0.027)(s + 5.004)(s - 6.084)}{(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.020)(s^2 + 0.902s + 2.666)} \text{ rad/rad (deg/deg)} \end{aligned} \quad (6.8)$$

All coefficients have again been rounded to a convenient number of decimal places and the above caution should be noted.

The characteristic equation is given by equating the common denominator polynomial to zero:

$$\Delta(s) = (s^2 + 0.033s + 0.020)(s^2 + 0.902s + 2.666) = 0$$

The first pair of complex roots describes the phugoid stability mode, with characteristics:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Damping ratio} & \quad \zeta_p = 0.11 \\ \text{Undamped natural frequency} & \quad \omega_p = 0.14 \text{ rad/s} \end{aligned}$$

The second pair of complex roots describes the short period pitching oscillation, or short period stability mode, with characteristics:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Damping ratio} & \quad \zeta_s = 0.28 \\ \text{Undamped natural frequency} & \quad \omega_s = 1.63 \text{ rad/s}\end{aligned}$$

These mode characteristics indicate that the airframe is aerodynamically stable although it will be shown later that the short-period mode damping ratio is unacceptably low.

The response of the aircraft to a unit step ( $1^\circ$ ) elevator input is shown in Fig. 6.1. All of the variables in the solution of the equations of motion are shown the responses being characterised by the transfer functions, equations (6.8).

The responses clearly show both dynamic stability modes, the short period pitching oscillation and the phugoid. However, the magnitude of each stability mode differs in each response variable. For example, the short period pitching oscillation is most visible as the initial transient in the variables  $w$ ,  $q$  and  $\alpha$  whereas the phugoid mode is visible in all variables although the relative magnitudes vary considerably. Clearly the stability of the responses is the same, as determined by the common denominator of the transfer functions, equations (6.8), but the differences between each of the response variables is determined by the unique numerator of each response transfer function.

The mode content in each of the motion variables is given most precisely by the eigenvectors. The analytical procedure described in Example 5.7 is applied to the equations of motion for the A-7A. With the aid of *MATLAB* the eigenvector matrix  $\mathbf{V}$  is determined as follows:

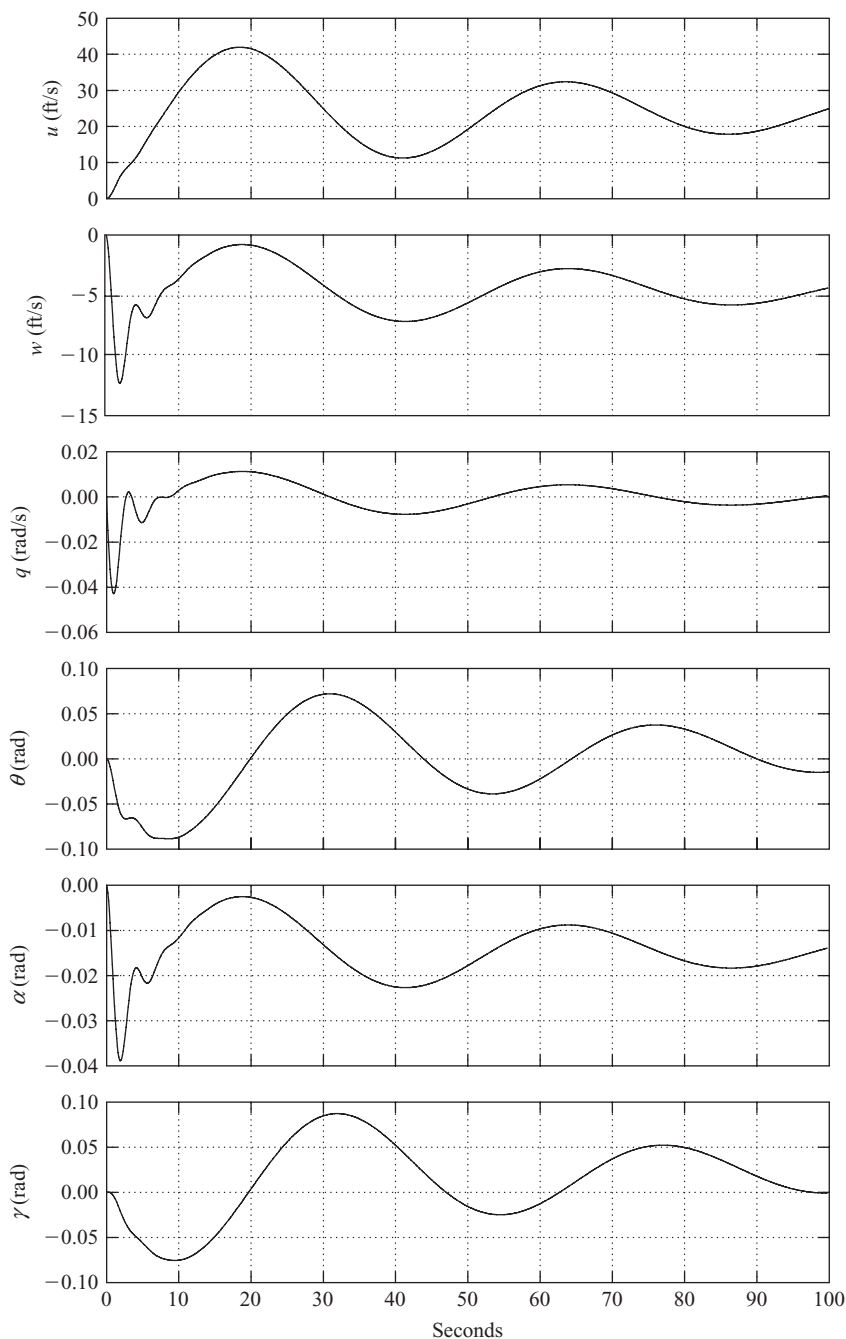
$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{array}{cc|cc} \text{Short period mode} & & \text{Phugoid mode} & \\ \hline \begin{bmatrix} -0.1682 - 0.1302j & -0.1682 + 0.1302j \\ 0.2993 + 0.9301j & 0.2993 - 0.9301j \\ -0.0046 + 0.0018j & -0.0046 - 0.0018j \\ 0.0019 + 0.0024j & 0.0019 - 0.0024j \end{bmatrix} & \begin{bmatrix} 0.1467 + 0.9677j & 0.1467 - 0.9677j \\ 0.0410 + 0.2008j & 0.0410 - 0.2008j \\ 0.0001 + 0.0006j & 0.0001 - 0.0006j \\ 0.0041 - 0.0013j & 0.0041 + 0.0013j \end{bmatrix} & \begin{array}{l} : u \\ : w \\ : q \\ : \theta \end{array} \end{array} \quad (6.9)$$

To facilitate interpretation of the eigenvector matrix, the magnitude of each component eigenvector is calculated as follows:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0.213 & 0.213 & | & 0.979 & 0.979 \\ 0.977 & 0.977 & | & 0.204 & 0.204 \\ 0.0049 & 0.0049 & | & 0.0006 & 0.0006 \\ 0.0036 & 0.0036 & | & 0.0043 & 0.0043 \end{bmatrix} : \begin{array}{l} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \end{array}$$

Clearly, the phugoid mode is dominant in  $u$  since  $0.979 \gg 0.213$ , the short period mode is dominant in  $w$  since  $0.977 \gg 0.204$ , the short period mode is dominant in  $q$  since  $0.0049 \gg 0.0006$  and the short period and phugoid modes content in  $\theta$  are of a similar order. These observations accord very well with the responses shown in Fig. 6.1.

The steady state values of the variables following a unit step ( $1^\circ$ ) elevator input may be determined by application of the final value theorem, equation (5.33). The



**Figure 6.1** Aircraft response to  $1^\circ$  elevator step input.

transfer functions, equations (6.8), assume a unit elevator displacement to mean 1 rad and this has transfer function:

$$\eta(s) = \frac{1}{s} \text{ rad}$$

For a unit step input of  $1^\circ$  the transfer function becomes

$$\eta(s) = \frac{1}{57.3s} = \frac{0.0175}{s} \text{ rad}$$

Thus, for example, the Laplace transform of the speed response to a  $1^\circ$  elevator step input is given by

$$u(s) = \frac{5.63(s + 0.369)(s + 0.587)(s + 58.437)}{(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.020)(s^2 + 0.902s + 2.666)} \frac{0.0175}{s} \text{ ft/s}$$

Applying the final value theorem, equation (5.33):

$$\begin{aligned} u(t)|_{ss} &= \lim_{s \rightarrow 0} \left( s \frac{5.63(s + 0.369)(s + 0.587)(s + 58.437)}{(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.020)(s^2 + 0.902s + 2.666)} \frac{0.0175}{s} \right) \text{ ft/s} \\ &= 23.39 \text{ ft/s} \end{aligned}$$

Since the step input is positive in the nose down sense the response eventually settles to the small steady increase in speed indicated.

In a similar way the steady state response of all the motion variables may be calculated to give

$$\begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \\ \alpha \\ \gamma \end{bmatrix}_{\text{steady state}} = \begin{bmatrix} 23.39 \text{ ft/s} \\ -4.53 \text{ ft/s} \\ 0 \\ 0.34^\circ \\ -0.81^\circ \\ 1.15^\circ \end{bmatrix} \quad (6.10)$$

It is important to remember that the steady state values given in equation (6.10) represent the *changes* with respect to the initial equilibrium trim state following the  $1^\circ$  elevator step input. Although the initial response is applied in the nose down sense, inspection of equation (6.10) indicates that after the mode transients have damped out the aircraft is left with a small reduction in incidence, a small increase in pitch attitude and is climbing steadily at a flight path angle of  $1.15^\circ$ . This apparent anomaly is due to the fact that at the chosen flight condition the aircraft is operating close to the stall boundary on the *back side* of the drag-speed curve, that is, below the minimum drag speed. Thus the disturbance results in a significant decrease in drag leaving the aircraft with sufficient excess power enabling it to climb gently. It is for the same reason that a number of the transfer functions (6.8), have non-minimum phase numerator terms where these would not normally be expected.

### 6.1.1 The characteristic equation

The longitudinal characteristic polynomial for a classical aeroplane is fourth order; it determines the common denominator in the longitudinal response transfer functions and, when equated to zero, defines the characteristic equation which may be written:

$$As^4 + Bs^3 + Cs^2 + Ds + E = 0 \quad (6.11)$$

The characteristic equation (6.11) most commonly factorises into two pairs of complex roots which are most conveniently written:

$$(s^2 + 2\zeta_p\omega_p s + \omega_p^2)(s^2 + 2\zeta_s\omega_s s + \omega_s^2) = 0 \quad (6.12)$$

As already explained, the second order characteristics in equation (6.12) describe the phugoid and short period stability modes respectively. The stability modes comprising equation (6.12) provide a *complete description* of the longitudinal stability properties of the aeroplane subject to the constraint of small perturbation motion. Interpretation of the characteristic equation written in this way is most readily accomplished if reference is first made to the properties of the classical mechanical mass-spring-damper system which are summarised in Appendix 6.

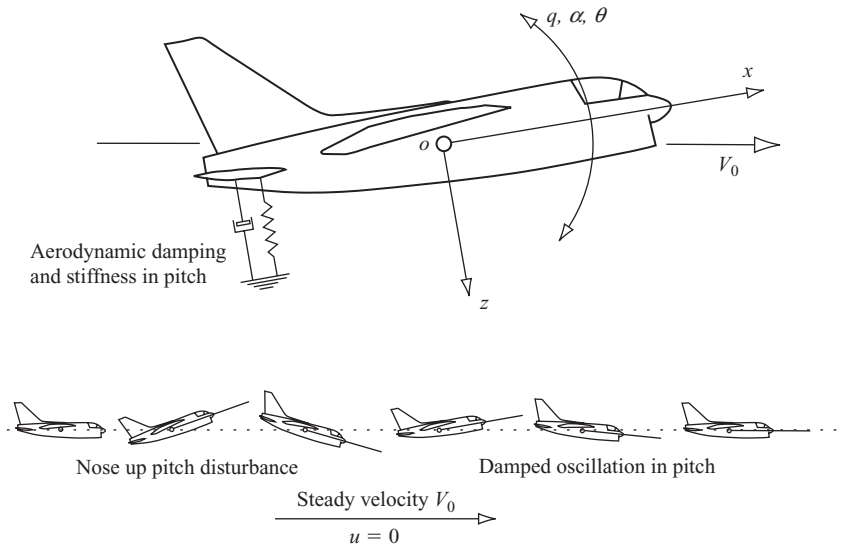
Thus the longitudinal dynamics of the aeroplane may be likened to a pair of loosely coupled mass-spring-damper systems and the interpretation of the motion of the aeroplane following a disturbance from equilibrium may be made by direct comparison with the behaviour of the mechanical mass-spring-damper. However, the damping and frequency characteristics of the aeroplane are obviously not mechanical in origin, they derive entirely from the aerodynamic properties of the airframe. The connection between the observed dynamics of the aeroplane and its aerodynamic characteristics is made by comparing equation (6.12) with equation (6.11) and then referring to Appendix 3 for the definitions of the coefficients in equation (6.11) in terms of aerodynamic stability derivatives. Clearly, the relationships between the damping ratios and undamped frequencies of equation (6.12) and their aerodynamic *drivers* are neither obvious nor simple. Means for dealing with this difficulty are described below in which simplifying approximations are made based on the observation and understanding of the physical behaviour of aeroplane dynamics.

## 6.2 THE DYNAMIC STABILITY MODES

Both longitudinal dynamic stability modes are excited whenever the aeroplane is disturbed from its equilibrium trim state. A disturbance may be initiated by pilot control inputs, a change in power setting, airframe configuration changes such as flap deployment and by external atmospheric influences such as gusts and turbulence.

### 6.2.1 The short period pitching oscillation

The short period mode is typically a damped oscillation in pitch about the *oy* axis. Whenever an aircraft is disturbed from its pitch equilibrium state the mode is excited

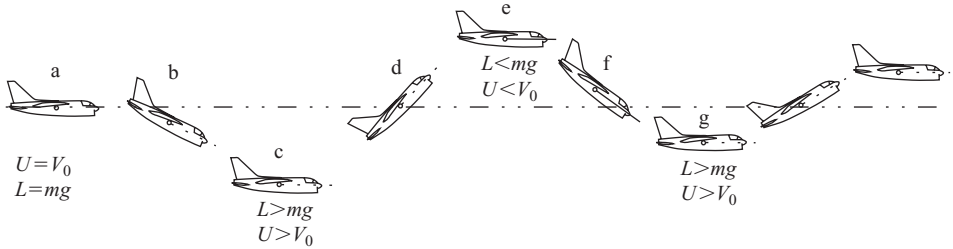


**Figure 6.2** *A stable short period pitching oscillation.*

and manifests itself as a classical second order oscillation in which the principal variables are incidence  $\alpha(w)$ , pitch rate  $q$  and pitch attitude  $\theta$ . This observation is easily confirmed by reference to the eigenvectors in the solution of the equations of motion; this may be seen in Example 6.1 and also in Fig. 6.1. Typically the undamped natural frequency of the mode is in the range 1 rad/s to 10 rad/s and the damping is usually stabilising although the damping ratio is often lower than desired. A significant feature of the mode is that the speed remains approximately constant ( $u = 0$ ) during a disturbance. As the period of the mode is short, inertia and momentum effects ensure that speed response in the time scale of the mode is negligible.

The physical situation applying can be interpreted by comparison with a torsional mass-spring-damper system. The aircraft behaves as if it were restrained by a torsional spring about the  $oy$  axis as indicated in Fig. 6.2. A pitch disturbance from trim equilibrium causes the “spring” to produce a restoring moment thereby giving rise to an oscillation in pitch. The oscillation is damped and this can be interpreted as a viscous damper as suggested in Fig. 6.2. Of course the spring and viscous damping effects are not mechanical. In reality they are produced entirely by aerodynamic mechanisms with contributions from all parts of the airframe, not all of which are necessarily stabilising in effect. However, in the interests of promoting understanding, the stiffness and damping effects are assumed to be dominated by the aerodynamics of the tailplane. The spring stiffness arises from the natural *weathercock* tendency of the tailplane to align with the incident flow. The damping arises from the motion of the tailplane during the oscillation when, clearly, it behaves as a kind of viscous paddle damper. The total observed mode dynamics depend not only on the tailplane contribution, but also on the magnitudes of the additional contributions from other parts of the airframe. When the overall stability is marginal it is implied that the additional contributions are also significant and it becomes much more difficult to identify and quantify the principal aerodynamic mode drivers.





**Figure 6.3** *The development of a stable phugoid.*

## 6.2.2 The phugoid

The phugoid mode is most commonly a lightly damped low frequency oscillation in speed  $u$  which couples into pitch attitude  $\theta$  and height  $h$ . A significant feature of this mode is that the incidence  $\alpha(w)$  remains substantially constant during a disturbance. Again, these observations are easily confirmed by reference to the eigenvectors in the solution of the equations of motion, this may be seen in Example 6.1 and also in Fig. 6.1. However, it is clear that the phugoid appears, to a greater or lesser extent, in all of the longitudinal motion variables but the relative magnitudes of the phugoid components in incidence  $\alpha(w)$  and in pitch rate  $q$  are very small. Typically, the undamped natural frequency of the phugoid is in the range 0.1 rad/s to 1 rad/s and the damping ratio is very low. However, the apparent damping characteristics of the mode may be substantially influenced by power effects in some aeroplanes.

Consider the development of classical phugoid motion following a small disturbance in speed as shown in Fig. 6.3. Initially the aeroplane is in trimmed level equilibrium flight with steady velocity  $V_0$  such that the lift  $L$  and weight  $mg$  are equal. Let the aeroplane be disturbed at (a) such that the velocity is reduced by a small amount  $u$ . Since the incidence remains substantially constant this results in a small reduction in lift such that the aeroplane is no longer in vertical equilibrium. It therefore starts to lose height and since it is flying “down hill” it starts to accelerate as at (b). The speed continues to build up to a value in excess of  $V_0$  which is accompanied by a build up in lift which eventually exceeds the weight by a significant margin. The build up in speed and lift cause the aircraft to pitch up steadily until at (c) it starts to climb. Since it now has an excess of kinetic energy, inertia and momentum effects cause it to fly up through the nominal trimmed height datum at (d) losing speed and lift as it goes as it is now flying “up hill”. As it decelerates it pitches down steadily until at (e) its lift is significantly less than the weight and the accelerating descent starts again. Inertia and momentum effects cause the aeroplane to continue flying down through the nominal trimmed height datum (f) and as the speed and lift continue to build up so it pitches up steadily until at (g) it starts climbing again to commence the next cycle of oscillation. As the motion progresses the effects of drag cause the motion variable maxima and minima at each peak to reduce gradually in magnitude until the motion eventually damps out.

Thus the phugoid is classical damped harmonic motion resulting in the aircraft flying a gentle sinusoidal flight path about the nominal trimmed height datum. As large inertia and momentum effects are involved the motion is necessarily relatively

slow such that the angular accelerations,  $\dot{q}$  and  $\dot{\alpha}(\dot{w})$ , are insignificantly small. Consequently, the natural frequency of the mode is low and since drag is designed to be low so the damping is also low. Typically, once excited many cycles of the phugoid may be visible before it eventually damps out. Since the rate of loss of energy is low, a consequence of low drag damping effects, the motion is often approximated by undamped harmonic motion in which potential and kinetic energy are exchanged as the aircraft flies the sinusoidal flight path. This in fact was the basis on which Lanchester (1908) first successfully analysed the motion.

### 6.3 REDUCED ORDER MODELS

Thus far the emphasis has been on the exact solution of the longitudinal equations of motion which results in an exact description of the stability and response characteristics of the aircraft. Although this is usually the object of a flight dynamics investigation it has two disadvantages. First, a computational facility is required if a very tedious manual solution is to be avoided and, second, it is difficult, if not impossible, to establish the relationships between the stability characteristics and their aerodynamic drivers. Both these disadvantages can be avoided by seeking approximate solutions that can also provide considerable insight into the physical phenomena governing the dynamic behaviour of the aircraft.

For example, an approximate solution of the longitudinal characteristic equation (6.11) is based on the fact that the coefficients  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ ,  $D$  and  $E$  have relative values that do not change very much for conventional aeroplanes. Generally  $A$ ,  $B$  and  $C$  are significantly larger than  $D$  and  $E$  such that the quartic has the following approximate factors:

$$A \left( s^2 + \frac{(CD - BE)}{C^2}s + \frac{E}{C} \right) \left( s^2 + \frac{B}{A}s + \frac{C}{A} \right) = 0 \quad (6.13)$$

Equation (6.13) is in fact the first step in the classical manual iterative solution of the quartic; the first pair of complex roots describes the phugoid and the second pair describes the short period mode. Algebraic expressions, in terms of aerodynamic derivatives, mass and inertia parameters, etc., for the coefficients  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ ,  $D$  and  $E$  are given in Appendix 3. As these expressions are relatively complex further physical insight is not particularly revealing unless simplifying assumptions are made. However, the approximate solution given by equation (6.13) is often useful for preliminary mode evaluations, or as a check of computer solutions, when the numerical values of the coefficients  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ ,  $D$  and  $E$  are known. For conventional aeroplanes the approximate solution is often surprisingly close to the exact solution of the characteristic equation.

#### 6.3.1 The short period mode approximation

The short term response characteristics of an aircraft are of particular importance in flying and handling qualities considerations for the reasons stated in Section 6.5. Since

short term behaviour is dominated by the short period mode it is convenient to obtain the *reduced-order* equations of motion in which the phugoid is suppressed or omitted. By observing the nature of the short period pitching oscillation, sometimes called the *rapid incidence adjustment*, it is possible to simplify the longitudinal equations of motion to describe short term dynamics only. The terms remaining in the reduced-order equations of motion are therefore the terms that dominate short term dynamics thereby providing insight into the important aerodynamic drivers governing physical behaviour.

It has already been established that the short period pitching oscillation is almost exclusively an oscillation in which the principal variables are pitch rate  $q$  and incidence  $\alpha$ , the speed remaining essentially constant, thus  $u = 0$ . Therefore, the speed equation and the speed dependent terms may be removed from the longitudinal equations of motion 6.1; since they are all approximately zero in short term motion, the revised equations may be written:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} z_w & z_q & z_\theta \\ m_w & m_q & m_\theta \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} w \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} z_\eta \\ m_\eta \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \eta \quad (6.14)$$

Further, assuming the equations of motion are referred to aircraft wind axes and that the aircraft is initially in steady level flight then

$$\theta_e \equiv \alpha_e = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad U_e = V_0$$

and, with reference to Appendix 2, it follows that

$$z_\theta = m_\theta = 0$$

Equation (6.14) then reduces to its simplest possible form:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} z_w & z_q \\ m_w & m_q \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} w \\ q \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} z_\eta \\ m_\eta \end{bmatrix} \eta \quad (6.15)$$

where now, the derivatives are referred to a wind axes system. Equation (6.15) is sufficiently simple that the transfer function matrix may be calculated manually by the application of equation (5.53):

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{G}(s) = \frac{\mathbf{N}(s)}{\Delta(s)} &= \frac{\begin{bmatrix} s - m_q & z_q \\ m_w & s - z_w \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} z_\eta \\ m_\eta \end{bmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} s - z_w & -z_q \\ -m_w & s - m_q \end{vmatrix}} \\ &= \frac{\begin{bmatrix} z_\eta \left( s + \left( m_q + z_q \frac{m_\eta}{z_\eta} \right) \right) \\ m_\eta \left( s + \left( m_w \frac{z_\eta}{m_\eta} - z_w \right) \right) \end{bmatrix}}{(s^2 - (m_q + z_w)s + (m_q z_w - m_w z_q))} \end{aligned} \quad (6.16)$$

The transfer functions may be further simplified by noting that

$$z_q \frac{m_\eta}{z_\eta} \gg m_q \quad \text{and} \quad -z_w \gg m_w \frac{z_\eta}{m_\eta}$$

and with reference to Appendix 2:

$$z_q = \frac{\dot{Z}_q + mU_e}{m - \dot{Z}_w} \cong U_e$$

since

$$\dot{Z}_q \ll mU_e \quad \text{and} \quad m \gg \dot{Z}_w$$

Thus the two short term transfer functions describing response to elevator may be written:

$$\frac{w(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{z_\eta \left( s + U_e \frac{m_\eta}{z_\eta} \right)}{(s^2 - (m_q + z_w)s + (m_q z_w - m_w U_e))} \equiv \frac{k_w(s + 1/T_\alpha)}{(s^2 + 2\zeta_s \omega_s s + \omega_s^2)} \quad (6.17)$$

$$\frac{q(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{m_\eta(s - z_w)}{(s^2 - (m_q + z_w)s + (m_q z_w - m_w U_e))} \equiv \frac{k_q(s + 1/T_{\theta_2})}{(s^2 + 2\zeta_s \omega_s s + \omega_s^2)} \quad (6.18)$$

where now it is understood that  $k_w$ ,  $k_q$ ,  $T_\alpha$ ,  $T_{\theta_2}$ ,  $\zeta_s$  and  $\omega_s$  represent approximate values. Clearly it is now very much easier to relate the most important parameters describing longitudinal short term transient dynamics of the aircraft to the aerodynamic properties of the airframe, represented in equations (6.17) and (6.18) by the concise derivatives.

The reduced order characteristic equation may be written down on inspection of equation (6.17) or (6.18):

$$\Delta(s) = s^2 + 2\zeta_s \omega_s s + \omega_s^2 = s^2 - (m_q + z_w)s + (m_q z_w - m_w U_e) = 0 \quad (6.19)$$

and, by analogy with the classical mass-spring-damper system described in Appendix 6, the damping and natural frequency of the short period mode are given, to a good approximation, by

$$\begin{aligned} 2\zeta_s \omega_s &= -(m_q + z_w) \\ \omega_s &= \sqrt{m_q z_w - m_w U_e} \end{aligned} \quad (6.20)$$

It is instructive to write the damping and natural frequency expressions (6.20) in terms of the dimensional derivatives. The appropriate conversions are obtained from

Appendix 2 and the assumptions made above are applied to give

$$2\zeta_s\omega_s = -\left(\frac{\dot{M}_q}{I_y} + \frac{\dot{Z}_w}{m} + \frac{\dot{M}_w U_e}{I_y}\right)$$

$$\omega_s = \sqrt{\frac{\dot{M}_q}{I_y} \frac{\dot{Z}_w}{m} - \frac{\dot{M}_w U_e}{I_y}} \quad (6.21)$$

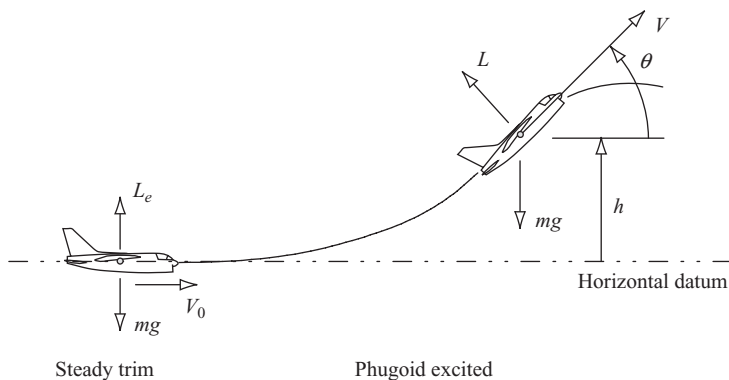
Note that the terms on the right hand side of expressions (6.21) comprise aerodynamic derivatives divided either by mass or moment of inertia in pitch. These terms may be interpreted in exactly the same way as those of the classical mass-spring-damper. Thus, it becomes apparent that the aerodynamic derivatives are providing stiffness and viscous damping in pitch although there is more than one term contributing to damping and to natural frequency. Therefore the aerodynamic origins of the short period dynamics are a little more complex than those of the classical mass-spring-damper and the various contributions do not always act in the most advantageous way. However, for conventional aeroplanes the overall dynamic characteristics usually describe a stable short period mode.

For a typical conventional aeroplane the relative magnitudes of the aerodynamic derivatives are such that to a crude approximation:

$$2\zeta_s\omega_s = \frac{-\dot{M}_q}{I_y}$$

$$\omega_s = \sqrt{\frac{-\dot{M}_w U_e}{I_y}} \quad (6.22)$$

which serves only to indicate what are usually regarded as the dominant terms governing the short period mode. Normally the derivative  $\dot{Z}_w$ , which is dependent on the lift curve slope of the wing, and the derivative  $\dot{M}_q$ , which is determined largely by the viscous “paddle” damping properties of the tailplane, are both negative numbers. The derivative  $\dot{M}_w$  is a measure of the aerodynamic stiffness in pitch and is also dominated by the aerodynamics of the tailplane. The sign of  $\dot{M}_w$  depends on the position of the *cg*, becoming increasingly negative as the *cg* moves forward in the airframe. Thus the short period mode will be stable if the *cg* is far enough forward in the airframe. The *cg* position in the airframe where  $\dot{M}_w$  changes sign is called the *controls fixed neutral point* and  $\dot{M}_w$  is therefore also a measure of the *controls fixed stability margin* of the aircraft. With reference to equation (6.19) and expressions (6.20), the corresponding *cg* position where  $(m_q z_w - m_w U_e)$  changes sign is called the *controls fixed manoeuvre point* and  $(m_q z_w - m_w U_e)$  is a measure of the *controls fixed manoeuvre margin* of the aircraft. The subject of manoeuvrability is discussed in Chapter 8.



**Figure 6.4** *The phugoid oscillation.*

### 6.3.2 The phugoid mode approximation

A reduced order model of the aircraft retaining only the phugoid dynamics is very rarely required in flight dynamics studies. However, the greatest usefulness of such a model is to identify those aerodynamic properties of the airframe governing the characteristics of the mode.

#### 6.3.2.1 The Lanchester model

Probably the first successful analysis of aeroplane dynamics was made by Lanchester (1908) who devised a mathematical model to describe phugoid motion based on his observations of the behaviour of gliding model aeroplanes. His analysis gives excellent insight into the physical nature of the mode and may be applied to the modern aeroplane by interpreting and restating his original assumptions as follows:

- (i) The aircraft is initially in steady level flight.
- (ii) The total energy of the aircraft remains constant.
- (iii) The incidence  $\alpha$  remains constant at its initial trim value.
- (iv) The thrust  $\tau$  balances the drag  $D$ .
- (v) The motion is sufficiently slow that pitch rate  $q$  effects may be ignored.

Referring to Fig. 6.4 the aircraft is initially in trimmed straight level flight with velocity  $V_0$ . Following a disturbance in speed which excites the phugoid mode the disturbed speed, pitch attitude and height are denoted  $V$ ,  $\theta$  and  $h$  respectively. Then based on assumption (ii):

$$\frac{1}{2}mV_0^2 = \frac{1}{2}mV^2 + mgh = \text{constant}$$

whence

$$V^2 = V_0^2 - 2gh \quad (6.23)$$

which describes the exchange of kinetic and potential energy as the aeroplane flies the sinusoidal flight path.

In the initial steady trim state the lift and weight are in balance thus

$$L_e = \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 S C_L = mg \quad (6.24)$$

and in disturbed flight the lift is given by

$$L = \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S C_L \quad (6.25)$$

As a consequence of assumption (iii) the lift coefficient  $C_L$  also remains constant and equations (6.23)–(6.25) may be combined to give

$$L = mg - \rho g h S C_L \quad (6.26)$$

Since simple undamped oscillatory motion is assumed, a consequence of assumption (ii), the single degree of freedom equation of motion in height may be written:

$$m \ddot{h} = L \cos \theta - mg \cong L - mg \quad (6.27)$$

since, by definition,  $\theta$  is a small angle. Substituting for lift  $L$  from equation (6.26) into equation (6.27):

$$\ddot{h} + \left( \frac{\rho g S C_L}{m} \right) h = \ddot{h} + \omega_p^2 h = 0 \quad (6.28)$$

Thus, approximately, the frequency of the phugoid mode is given by

$$\omega_p = \sqrt{\frac{\rho g S C_L}{m}} = \frac{g \sqrt{2}}{V_0} \quad (6.29)$$

when equation (6.24) is used to eliminate the mass.

Thus, to a reasonable approximation, Lanchester's model shows that the phugoid frequency is inversely proportional to the steady trimmed speed about which the mode oscillates and that its damping is zero.

### 6.3.2.2 A reduced order model

A more detailed approximate model of the phugoid mode may be derived from the equations of motion by making simplifications based on assumptions about the nature of the motion. Following a disturbance, the variables  $w(\alpha)$  and  $q$  respond in the time scale associated with the short period mode; thus, it is reasonable to assume that  $w(\alpha)$  and  $q$  are quasi-steady in the longer time scale associated with the phugoid. Whence, it follows that

$$\dot{w} = \dot{q} = 0$$

Once again, it is assumed that the equations of motion are referred to aircraft wind axes and since the disturbance takes place about steady level flight then

$$\theta_e \equiv \alpha_e = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad U_e = V_0$$

and, with reference to Appendix 2, it follows that

$$x_\theta = -g \quad \text{and} \quad z_\theta = m_\theta = 0$$

Also, as for the reduced order short period model and with reference to Appendix 2:

$$z_q = \frac{\dot{Z}_q + mU_e}{m - \dot{Z}_w} \cong U_e$$

since

$$\dot{Z}_q \ll mU_e \quad \text{and} \quad m \gg \dot{Z}_w$$

Additionally, it is usually assumed that the aerodynamic derivative  $x_q$  is insignificantly small. Thus the equations of motion (6.1) may be simplified accordingly:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \dot{\theta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_u & x_w & 0 & -g \\ z_u & z_w & U_e & 0 \\ m_u & m_w & m_q & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} x_\eta \\ z_\eta \\ m_\eta \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \eta \quad (6.30)$$

The second and third rows of equation (6.30) may be written:

$$\begin{aligned} z_u u + z_w w + U_e q + z_\eta \eta &= 0 \\ m_u u + m_w w + m_q q + m_\eta \eta &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (6.31)$$

Equations (6.31) may be solved algebraically to obtain expressions for  $w$  and  $q$  in terms of  $u$  and  $\eta$ :

$$\begin{aligned} w &= \left( \frac{m_u U_e - m_q z_u}{m_q z_w - m_w U_e} \right) u + \left( \frac{m_\eta U_e - m_q z_\eta}{m_q z_w - m_w U_e} \right) \eta \\ q &= \left( \frac{m_w z_u - m_u z_w}{m_q z_w - m_w U_e} \right) u + \left( \frac{m_w z_\eta - m_\eta z_w}{m_q z_w - m_w U_e} \right) \eta \end{aligned} \quad (6.32)$$

The expressions for  $w$  and  $q$  are substituted into rows one and four of equation (6.30) and following some rearrangement the reduced order state equation is obtained:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{\theta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_u - x_w \left( \frac{m_u U_e - m_q z_u}{m_w U_e - m_q z_w} \right) & -g \\ \left( \frac{m_u z_w - m_w z_u}{m_w U_e - m_q z_w} \right) & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} x_\eta - \left( \frac{m_\eta U_e - m_q z_\eta}{m_w U_e - m_q z_w} \right) \\ \left( \frac{m_\eta z_w - m_w z_\eta}{m_w U_e - m_q z_w} \right) \end{bmatrix} \eta \quad (6.33)$$

or

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}_p \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{B}_p \mathbf{u} \quad (6.34)$$



Equation (6.33) may be solved algebraically to obtain the response transfer functions for the phugoid variables  $u$  and  $\theta$ . However, it is not very meaningful to analyse long term dynamic response to elevator in this way. The characteristic equation describing the reduced order phugoid dynamics is considerably more useful and is given by

$$\Delta(s) = \det[s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}_p] = 0$$

whence

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta(s) &= s^2 + 2\zeta_p\omega_p s + \omega_p^2 \\ &= s^2 - \left(x_u - x_w \left(\frac{m_u U_e - m_q z_u}{m_w U_e - m_q z_w}\right)\right)s + g \left(\frac{m_u z_w - m_w z_u}{m_w U_e - m_q z_w}\right)\end{aligned}\quad (6.35)$$

Thus the approximate damping and natural frequency of the phugoid mode are given in terms of a limited number of aerodynamic derivatives. More explicit, but rather more approximate, insight into the aerodynamic properties of the aeroplane dominating the mode characteristics may be obtained by making some further assumptions. Typically, for conventional aeroplanes in subsonic flight:

$$m_u \rightarrow 0, \quad |m_u z_w| \ll |m_w z_u| \quad \text{and} \quad |m_w U_e| \gg |m_q z_w|$$

then the corresponding expressions for the damping and natural frequency become:

$$\begin{aligned}2\zeta_p\omega_p &= -x_u \\ \omega_p &= \sqrt{\frac{-gz_u}{U_e}}\end{aligned}\quad (6.36)$$

Now, with reference to Appendix 2:

$$x_u \cong \frac{\dot{X}_u}{m} = \frac{\rho V_0 S X_u}{2m} \quad \text{and} \quad z_u \cong \frac{\dot{Z}_u}{m} = \frac{\rho V_0 S Z_u}{2m}\quad (6.37)$$

since  $\dot{X}_w$  is negligibly small and  $m \gg \dot{Z}_w$ . Expressions for the dimensionless aerodynamic derivatives are given in Appendix 8 and may be approximated as shown in expressions (6.38) when the basic aerodynamic properties are assumed to be independent of speed. This follows from the assumption that the prevailing flight condition is subsonic such that the aerodynamic properties of the airframe are not influenced by compressibility effects:

$$\begin{aligned}X_u &= -2C_D - V_0 \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial V} + \left(\frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S}\right) \frac{\partial \tau}{\partial V} \cong -2C_D \\ Z_u &= -2C_L - V_0 \frac{\partial C_L}{\partial V} \cong -2C_L\end{aligned}\quad (6.38)$$

Expressions (6.36) may therefore be restated in terms of aerodynamic parameters, assuming again that the trimmed lift is equal to the aircraft weight, to obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\zeta_p \omega_p &= \frac{g C_D}{C_L V_0} \\ \omega_p &= \sqrt{\frac{2g^2}{U_e V_0}} \equiv \frac{g\sqrt{2}}{V_0}\end{aligned}\quad (6.39)$$

and a simplified approximate expression for the damping ratio follows:

$$\zeta_p \cong \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \frac{C_D}{C_L} \right) \quad (6.40)$$

These expressions for damping ratio and natural frequency of the phugoid mode are obviously very approximate since they are the result of many simplifying assumptions. Note that the expression for  $\omega_p$  is the same as that derived by Lanchester, equation (6.29), which indicates that the natural frequency of the phugoid mode is approximately inversely proportional to the trimmed speed. It is also interesting and important to note that the damping ratio of the phugoid mode is approximately inversely proportional to the *lift to drag ratio* of the aeroplane, equation (6.40). Since one of the main objectives of aeroplane design is to achieve a high lift to drag ratio it is easy to see why the damping of the phugoid mode is usually very low.

## Example 6.2

To illustrate the use of reduced order models consider the A-7A Corsair II aircraft of Example 6.1 and at the same flight condition. Now the equations of motion in Example 6.1 are referred to a body axis system and the use of the reduced order models described above requires the equations of motion referred to a wind, or stability axis system. Thus, using the axis transformation relationships given in Appendices 7 and 8 the stability and control derivatives and inertia parameters referred to wind axes were calculated from the original values, which are of course referred to body axes. The longitudinal state equation was then recalculated to give

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -0.04225 & -0.11421 & 0 & -32.2 \\ -0.20455 & -0.49774 & 317.48 & 0 \\ 0.00003 & -0.00790 & -0.39499 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0.00381 \\ -24.4568 \\ -4.51576 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \eta$$

The reduced order model corresponding to the short period approximation, as given by equation (6.15), is simply taken out of equation (6.41) and is written:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -0.49774 & 317.48 \\ -0.00790 & -0.39499 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} w \\ q \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -24.4568 \\ -4.51576 \end{bmatrix} \eta \quad (6.41)$$

Solution of the equations of motion 6.42 using *Program CC* determines the following reduced order response transfer functions:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{w(s)}{\eta(s)} &= \frac{-24.457(s + 59.015)}{(s^2 + 0.893s + 2.704)} \text{ ft/s/rad} \\
 \frac{q(s)}{\eta(s)} &= \frac{-4.516(s + 0.455)}{(s^2 + 0.893s + 2.704)} \text{ rad/s/rad (deg/s/deg)} \\
 \frac{\alpha(s)}{\eta(s)} &= \frac{-0.077(s + 59.015)}{(s^2 + 0.893s + 2.704)} \text{ rad/rad (deg/deg)}
 \end{aligned} \tag{6.42}$$

It is important to remember that these transfer functions describe, approximately, the short term response of those variables that are dominant in short period motion. The corresponding short term pitch attitude response transfer function follows since, for small perturbation motion:

$$\frac{\theta(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{1}{s} \frac{q(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{-4.516(s + 0.455)}{s(s^2 + 0.893s + 2.704)} \text{ rad/rad (deg/deg)} \tag{6.43}$$

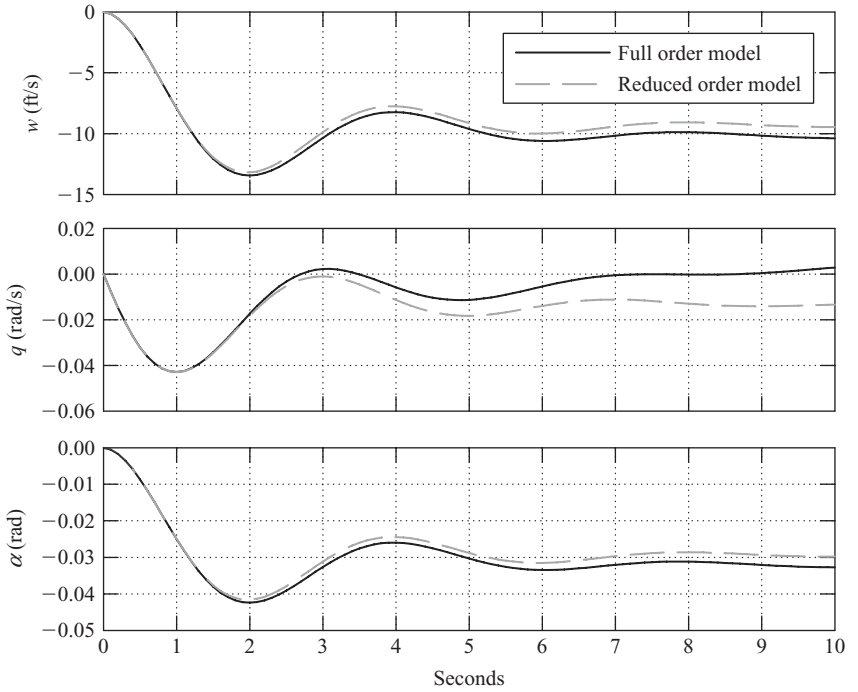
From the pitch rate response transfer function in equations (6.43) it is readily determined that the steady state pitch rate following a positive unit step elevator input is  $-0.76 \text{ rad/s}$ , which implies that the aircraft pitches continuously until the input is removed. The pitch attitude response transfer function confirms this since, after the short period transient has damped out, the aircraft behaves like a perfect integrator in pitch. This is indicated by the presence of the  $s$  term in the denominator of equation (6.44). In reality the phugoid dynamics usually prevent this situation developing unless the input is very large and accompanied by a thrust increase that results in a vertical loop manoeuvre. The model described here would be most inappropriate for the analysis of such large amplitude motion.

The common denominator of transfer functions (6.43) represents the approximate reduced order short period characteristic polynomial, equation (6.19). Thus, approximate values of the damping ratio and undamped natural frequency of the short period mode are easily calculated and are

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Damping ratio} \quad \zeta_s &= 0.27 \\
 \text{Undamped natural frequency} \quad \omega_s &= 1.64 \text{ rad/s}
 \end{aligned}$$

It will be seen that these values compare very favourably with the exact values given in Example 6.1.

Interpretation of the reduced order model is probably best illustrated by observing short term response to an elevator input. The responses to a  $1^\circ$  elevator step input of the variables given in equations (6.43) are shown in Fig. 6.5. Also shown on the same plots are the corresponding responses of the full aircraft model derived from equation (6.41). It is clear that the responses diverge with time, as expected, as no phugoid dynamics are present in the reduced order model. However, for the first ten seconds or so, the comparison is favourable indicating that the reduced order model is acceptable for most short term response studies.



**Figure 6.5** *Reduced order longitudinal response to  $1^\circ$  elevator step input.*

Turning now to the approximate reduced order phugoid mode characteristics. From the state equation referred to wind axes, equation (6.41), the required numerical parameters are

$$\begin{aligned}x_u &= -0.04225 \text{ 1/s} \\z_u &= -0.20455 \text{ 1/s} \\m_u &= 0.00003 \text{ rad/ft/s} \\U_e \equiv V_0 &= 317.48 \text{ ft/s}\end{aligned}$$

The simple Lanchester model determines that the damping of the phugoid is zero and that the undamped natural frequency is given by equation (6.29). Thus the approximate characteristics of the phugoid mode calculated according to this model are

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Damping ratio} \quad \zeta_p &= 0 \\ \text{Undamped natural frequency} \quad \omega_p &= 0.143 \text{ rad/s}\end{aligned}$$

The approximate phugoid mode characteristics determined according to the rather more detailed reduced order model are given by equation (6.36). Since the chosen flight condition is genuinely subsonic, the derivative  $m_u$  is very small indeed which matches the constraints of the model well. The approximate characteristics of the phugoid mode calculated according to this model are

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Damping ratio} \quad \zeta_p &= 0.147 \\ \text{Undamped natural frequency} \quad \omega_p &= 0.144 \text{ rad/s}\end{aligned}$$

Again, comparing these approximate values of the phugoid mode characteristics with the exact values in Example 6.1 indicates good agreement, especially for the undamped natural frequency. Since the phugoid damping ratio is always small (near to zero) it is very sensitive to computational rounding errors and to the approximating assumptions that make a really good approximate match difficult to achieve. The goodness of the match here is enhanced by the very subsonic flight condition that correlates well with assumptions made in the derivation of the approximate models.

## 6.4 FREQUENCY RESPONSE

For the vast majority of flight dynamics investigations time domain analysis is usually adequate, especially when the subject is the classical unaugmented aeroplane. The principal graphical tool used in time domain analysis is, of course, the time history plot showing the response of the aeroplane to controls or to some external disturbance. However, when the subject aeroplane is an advanced modern aeroplane fitted with a flight control system, flight dynamics analysis in the frequency domain can provide additional valuable insight into its behaviour. In recent years frequency domain analysis has made an important contribution to the understanding of the sometimes unconventional handling qualities of aeroplanes whose flying qualities are largely shaped by a flight control system. It is for this reason that a brief review of simple frequency response ideas is considered here. Since frequency response analysis tools are fundamental to classical control engineering their description can be found in almost every book on the subject; very accessible material can be found in Shinnars (1980) and Friedland (1987) for example.

Consider the hypothetical situation when the elevator of an otherwise trimmed aeroplane is operated sinusoidally with constant amplitude  $k$  and variable frequency  $\omega$ ; the longitudinal input to the aeroplane may therefore be expressed:

$$\eta(t) = k \sin \omega t \quad (6.44)$$

It is reasonable to expect that each of the output variables describing aircraft motion will respond sinusoidally to the input. However, the amplitudes of the output variables will not necessarily be the same and they will not necessarily be in phase with one another or with the input. Thus the general expression describing any output response variable may be written:

$$y(t) = K \sin(\omega t + \phi) \quad (6.45)$$

where both the output amplitude  $K$  and phase shift  $\phi$  are functions of the exciting frequency  $\omega$ . As the exciting frequency  $\omega$  is increased from zero so, initially, at low frequencies, the sinusoidal response will be clearly visible in all output variables. As the exciting frequency is increased further so the sinusoidal response will start to diminish in magnitude and will eventually become imperceptible in the outputs. Simultaneously, the phase shift  $\phi$  will indicate an increasingly large lag between the input and output. The reason for these observations is that at sufficiently high frequencies the mass and inertia properties of the aeroplane simply prevent it responding quickly enough to follow the input. The limiting frequency at which the response commences

to diminish rapidly is referred to as the *bandwidth* of the aeroplane with respect to the output variable of interest. A more precise definition of bandwidth is given below. Since aeroplanes only respond to frequencies below the bandwidth frequency they have the frequency response properties of a *low pass system*. At exciting frequencies corresponding to the damped natural frequencies of the phugoid and the short period mode, peaks in output magnitude  $K$  will be seen together with significant changes in phase shift  $\phi$ . The mode frequencies are described as *resonant frequencies* and the magnitudes of the output parameters  $K$  and  $\phi$  at *resonance* are determined by the damping ratios of the modes. The system (or aeroplane) *gain* in any particular response variable is defined:

$$\text{System gain} = \left| \frac{K(\omega)}{k} \right| \quad (6.46)$$

where, in normal control system applications, it is usually assumed that the input and output variables have the same units. This is often not the case in aircraft applications and care must be exercised in the interpretation of gain.

A number of graphical tools have been developed for the frequency response analysis of linear systems and include the Nyquist diagram, the Nichols chart and the Bode diagram. All are intended to simplify analytical procedures, the mathematical calculation of which is tedious without a computer, and all plot input–output gain and phase as functions of frequency. Perhaps the simplest of the graphical tools to use and interpret is the Bode diagram although the amount of information it is capable of providing is limited. However, today it is used extensively for flight dynamics analysis, especially in advanced handling qualities studies.

#### 6.4.1 The Bode diagram

The intention here is not to describe the method for constructing a Bode diagram but to describe its application to the aeroplane and to explain its correct interpretation. For an explanation of the method for constructing a Bode diagram the reader should consult a suitable control engineering text, such as either of those referenced above.

To illustrate the application of the Bode diagram to a typical classical aeroplane consider the pitch attitude response to elevator transfer function as given by equation (6.5):

$$\frac{\theta(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{k_\theta(s + (1/T_{\theta_1}))(s + (1/T_{\theta_2}))}{(s^2 + 2\zeta_p\omega_p s + \omega_p^2)(s^2 + 2\zeta_s\omega_s s + \omega_s^2)} \quad (6.47)$$

This response transfer function is of particular relevance to longitudinal handling studies and it has the simplifying advantage that both the input and output variables have the same units. Typically, in frequency response calculation it is usual to assume a sinusoidal input signal of unit magnitude. It is also important to note that whenever the response transfer function is negative, which is often the case in aircraft applications, a negative input is assumed that ensures the correct computation of phase. Therefore, in this particular application, since  $k_\theta$  is usually a negative number a sinusoidal elevator input of unit magnitude,  $\eta(t) = -1 \sin \omega t$  is assumed. The pitch attitude frequency

response is calculated by writing  $s = j\omega$  in equation (6.48); the right hand side then becomes a complex number whose magnitude and phase can be evaluated for a suitable range of frequency  $\omega$ . Since the input magnitude is unity the *system gain*, equation (6.47), is given simply by the absolute value of the magnitude of the complex number representing the right hand side of equation (6.48) and is, of course, a function of frequency  $\omega$ .

Since the calculation of gain and phase involves the products of several complex numbers it is preferred to work in terms of the logarithm of the complex number representing the transfer function. The total gain and phase then become the simple sums of the gain and phase of each factor in the transfer function. For example, each factor in parentheses on the right hand side of equation (6.48) may have its gain and phase characteristics calculated separately as a function of frequency; the total gain and phase is then given by summing the contributions from each factor. However, the system gain is now expressed as a logarithmic function of the gain ratio, equation (6.47), and is defined:

$$\text{Logarithmic gain} = 20 \log_{10} \left| \frac{K(\omega)}{k} \right| \text{ dB} \quad (6.48)$$

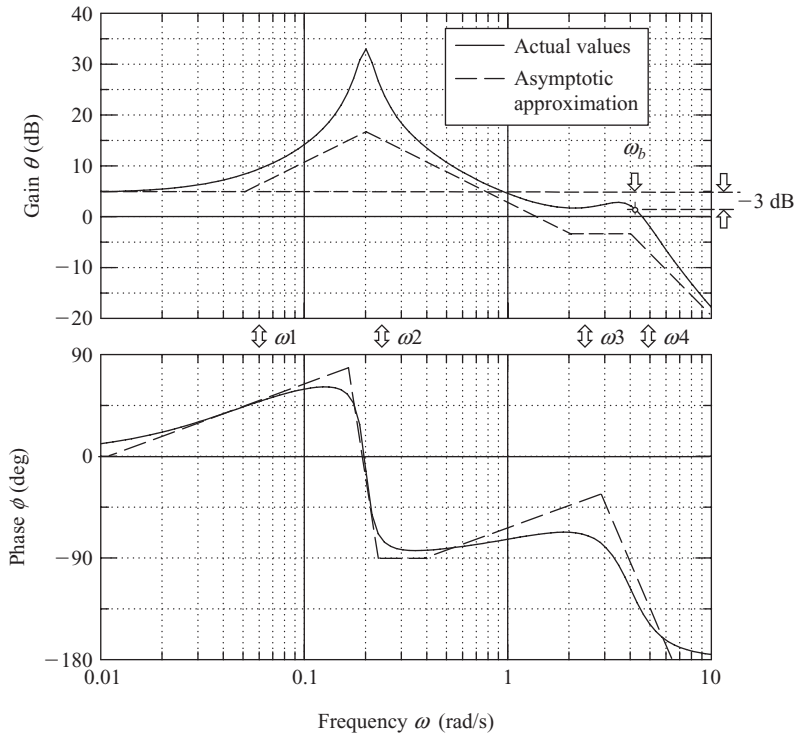
and has units of *decibels* denoted dB. Fortunately it is no longer necessary to calculate frequency response by hand since many computer software packages, such as *MATLAB*, have this facility and can also provide the desired graphical output. However, as always, some knowledge of the analytical procedure for obtaining frequency response is essential so that the computer output may be correctly interpreted.

The Bode diagram comprises two corresponding plots, the *gain plot* and the *phase plot*. The gain plot shows the logarithmic gain, in dB, plotted against  $\log_{10}(\omega)$  and the phase plot shows the phase, in degrees, also plotted against  $\log_{10}(\omega)$ . To facilitate interpretation the two plots are often superimposed on a common frequency axis. The Bode diagram showing the typical pitch attitude frequency response, as given by transfer function (6.48), is shown in Fig. 6.6.

Also shown in Fig. 6.6 are the asymptotic approximations to the actual gain and phase plots as functions of frequency. The asymptotes can be drawn in simply from inspection of the transfer function, equation (6.48), and serve as an aid to interpretation. Quite often the asymptotic approximation is sufficient for the evaluation in hand, thereby dispensing with the need to compute the actual frequency response entirely.

The shape of the gain plot is characterised by the *break frequencies*  $\omega_1$  to  $\omega_4$  which determine the locations of the discontinuities in the asymptotic gain plot. Each break frequency is defined by a key frequency parameter in the transfer function, namely

$$\begin{aligned} \omega_1 &= \frac{1}{T_{\theta_1}} && \text{with first order phase lead } (+45^\circ) \\ \omega_2 &= \omega_p && \text{with second order phase lag } (-90^\circ) \\ \omega_3 &= \frac{1}{T_{\theta_2}} && \text{with first order phase lead } (+45^\circ) \\ \omega_4 &= \omega_s && \text{with second order phase lag } (-90^\circ) \end{aligned}$$



**Figure 6.6** Bode diagram showing classical pitch attitude frequency response.

Since the transfer function is classical minimum phase, the corresponding phase shift at each break frequency is a *lead* if it arises from a numerator term or a *lag* if it arises from a denominator term. If, as is often the case in aircraft studies, non-minimum phase terms appear in the transfer function then, their frequency response properties are unchanged except that the sign of the phase is reversed. Further, a first order term gives rise to a total phase shift of  $90^\circ$  and a second order term gives rise to a total phase shift of  $180^\circ$ . The characteristic phase response is such that half the total phase shift associated with any particular transfer function factor occurs at the corresponding break frequency. Armed with this limited information a modest interpretation of the pitch attitude frequency response of the aeroplane is possible. The frequency response of the other motion variables may be dealt with in a similar way.

#### 6.4.2 Interpretation of the Bode diagram

With reference to Fig. 6.6 it is seen that at very low frequencies,  $\omega < 0.01$  rad/s, there is no phase shift between the input and output and the gain remains constant, at a little below 5 dB in this illustration. In other words, the pitch attitude will follow the stick movement more or less precisely. As the input frequency is increased through  $\omega_1$  so the pitch response leads the input in phase, the output magnitude increases rapidly and



the aeroplane appears to behave like an *amplifier*. At the phugoid frequency the output reaches a substantial peak, consistent with the low damping, and thereafter the gain drops rapidly accompanied by a rapid increase in phase lag. As the input frequency is increased further so the gain continues to reduce gently and the phase settles at  $-90^\circ$  until the influence of break frequency  $\omega_3$  comes into play. The reduction in gain is arrested and the effect of the phase lead may be seen clearly. However, when the input frequency reaches the short period break frequency a small peak in gain is seen, consistent with the higher damping ratio, and at higher frequencies the gain continues to reduce steadily. Meanwhile, the phase lag associated with the short period mode results in a constant total phase lag of  $-180^\circ$  at higher frequencies.

Once the output–input gain ratio drops below unity, or 0 dB, the aeroplane appears to behave like an *attenuator*. The frequency at which the gain becomes sufficiently small that the magnitude of the output response becomes insignificant is called the *bandwidth frequency*, denoted  $\omega_b$ . There are various definitions of bandwidth, but the definition used here is probably the most common and defines the bandwidth frequency as the frequency at which the gain first drops to  $-3$  dB below the zero frequency, or steady state, gain. The bandwidth frequency is indicated in Fig. 6.6 and it is commonly a little higher than the short period frequency. A gain of  $-3$  dB corresponds with a gain ratio of  $1/\sqrt{2} = 0.707$ . Thus, by definition, the gain at the bandwidth frequency is 0.707 times the steady state gain. Since the pitch attitude bandwidth frequency is close to the short period frequency the latter may sometimes be substituted for the bandwidth frequency which is often good enough for most practical purposes.

The peaks in the gain plot are determined by the characteristics of the stability modes. A very pronounced peak indicates low mode damping and *vice versa*; an infinite peak corresponding with zero damping. The magnitude of the changes in gain and phase occurring in the vicinity of a peak indicates the significance of the mode in the response variable in question. Figure 6.6 indicates the magnitude of the phugoid to be much greater than the magnitude of the short period mode in the pitch response of the aeroplane. This would, in fact, be confirmed by response time histories and inspection of the corresponding eigenvectors.

In the classical application of the Bode diagram, as used by the control engineer, inspection of the gain and phase properties in the vicinity of the bandwidth frequency enables conclusions about the stability of the system to be made. Typically, stability is quantified in terms of *gain margin* and *phase margin*. However, such evaluations are only appropriate when the system transfer function is *minimum phase*. Since aircraft transfer functions that are non-minimum phase are frequently encountered, and many also have the added complication that they are negative, it is not usual for aircraft stability to be assessed on the Bode diagram. It is worth noting that, for aircraft augmented with flight control systems, the behaviour of the phase plot in the vicinity of the bandwidth frequency is now known to be linked to the susceptibility of the aircraft to *pilot induced oscillations*, a particularly nasty handling deficiency.

Now the foregoing summary interpretation of frequency response assumes a sinusoidal elevator input to the aircraft. Clearly, this is never likely to occur as a result of normal pilot action. However, normal pilot actions may be interpreted to comprise a mix of many different frequency components. For example, in gentle manoeuvring the frequency content of the input would generally be low whilst, in aggressive or high

workload situations the frequency content would be higher and might even exceed the bandwidth of the aeroplane. In such a limiting condition the pilot would certainly be aware that the aeroplane could not follow his demands quickly enough and, depending in detail on the gain and phase response properties of the aeroplane, he could well encounter hazardous handling problems. Thus bandwidth is a measure of the *quickness of response* achievable in a given aeroplane. As a general rule it is desirable that flight control system designers should seek the highest response bandwidth consistent with the dynamic capabilities of the airframe.

### Example 6.3

The longitudinal frequency response of the A-7A Corsair II aircraft is evaluated for the same flight condition as Examples 6.1 and 6.2. However, the longitudinal response transfer functions used for the evaluations are referred to wind axes and were obtained in the solution of the full order state equation (6.41). The transfer functions of primary interest are

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{u(s)}{\eta(s)} &= \frac{0.00381(s + 0.214)(s + 135.93)(s + 598.3)}{(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.02)(s^2 + 0.902s + 2.666)} \text{ ft/s/rad} \\ \frac{\theta(s)}{\eta(s)} &= \frac{-4.516(s - 0.008)(s + 0.506)}{(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.02)(s^2 + 0.902s + 2.666)} \text{ rad/rad} \\ \frac{\alpha(s)}{\eta(s)} &= \frac{-0.077(s^2 + 0.042s + 0.02)(s + 59.016)}{(s^2 + 0.033s + 0.02)(s^2 + 0.902s + 2.666)} \text{ rad/rad}\end{aligned}\quad (6.49)$$

It will be noticed that the values of the various numerator terms in the velocity and incidence transfer functions differ significantly from the values in the corresponding transfer functions in Example 6.1, equation (6.8). This is due to the different reference axes used and to the fact that the angular difference between body and wind axes is a significant body incidence angle of  $13.3^\circ$ . Such a large angle is consistent with the very low speed flight condition. The frequency response of each transfer function was calculated with the aid of *Program CC* and the Bode diagrams are shown in Figures 6.7–6.9 respectively. Interpretation of the Bode diagrams for the three variables is straightforward and follows the general interpretation discussed above. However, important or significant differences are commented on as follows.

The frequency response of axial velocity  $u$  to elevator input  $\eta$  is shown in Fig. 6.7 and it is clear, as might be expected, that it is dominated by the phugoid. The very large low frequency gain values are due entirely to the transfer function units that are ft/s/rad, and a unit radian elevator input is of course unrealistically large! The peak gain of 75 dB at the phugoid frequency corresponds with a gain ratio of approximately 5600 ft/s/rad. However, since the aircraft model is linear, this very large gain ratio may be interpreted equivalently as approximately 98 ft/s/deg, which is much easier to appreciate physically. Since the gain drops away rapidly as the frequency increases beyond the phugoid frequency, the velocity bandwidth frequency is only a little higher than the phugoid frequency. This accords well with practical observation; velocity

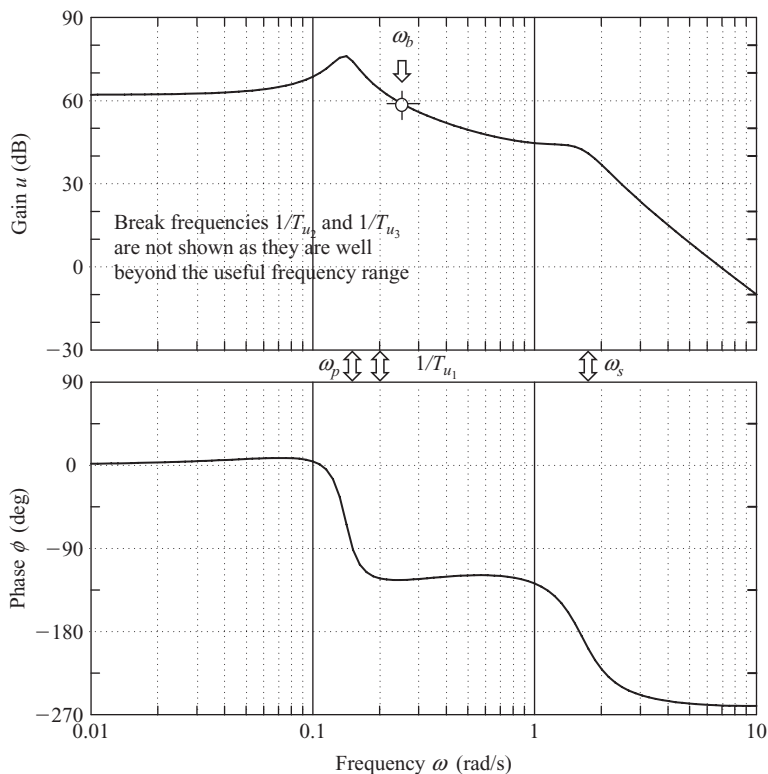
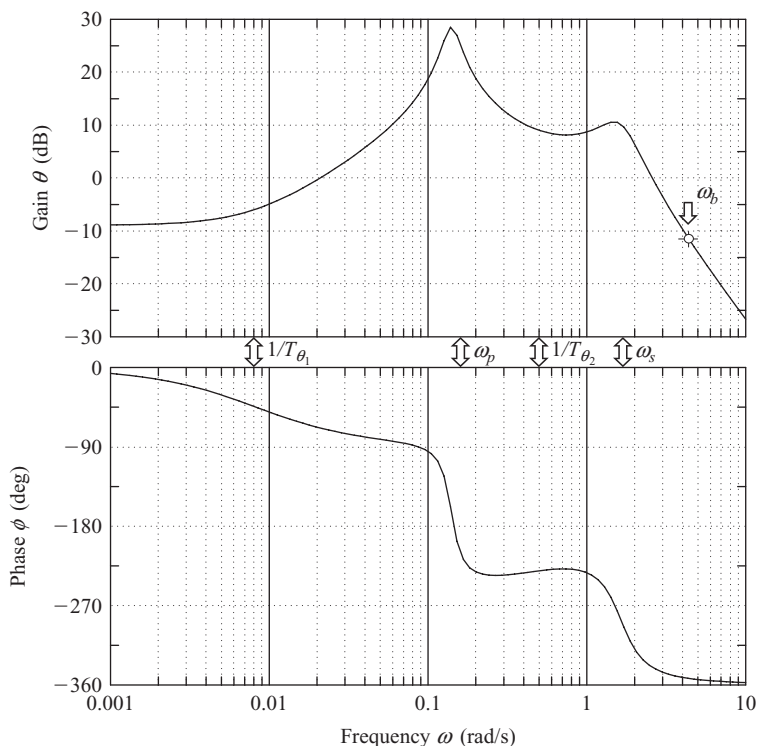


Figure 6.7 A-7A velocity frequency response.

perturbations at frequencies in the vicinity of the short period mode are usually insignificantly small. The phase plot indicates that there is no appreciable phase shift between input and output until the frequency exceeds the phugoid frequency when there is a rapid increase in phase lag. This means that for all practical purposes speed changes demanded by the pilot will follow the stick in the usable frequency band.

The pitch attitude  $\theta$  frequency response to elevator input  $\eta$  is shown in Fig. 6.8. Its general interpretation follows the discussion of Fig. 6.6 and is not repeated here. However, there are some significant differences which must not be overlooked. The differences are due to the fact that the transfer function is non-minimum phase, a consequence of selecting a very low speed flight condition for the example. Referring to equations (6.50), this means that the numerator zero  $1/T_{\theta_1}$  is negative, and the reasons for this are discussed in Example 6.1. The non-minimum phase effects do not influence the gain plot in any significant way, so its interpretation is quite straightforward. However, the effect of the non-minimum phase numerator zero is to introduce phase lag at very low frequencies rather than the usual phase lead. It is likely that in manoeuvring at this flight condition the pilot would be aware of the pitch attitude lag in response to his stick input.

The body incidence  $\alpha$  frequency response to elevator input  $\eta$  is shown in Fig. 6.9 and it is clear that, as might be expected, this is dominated by the short period

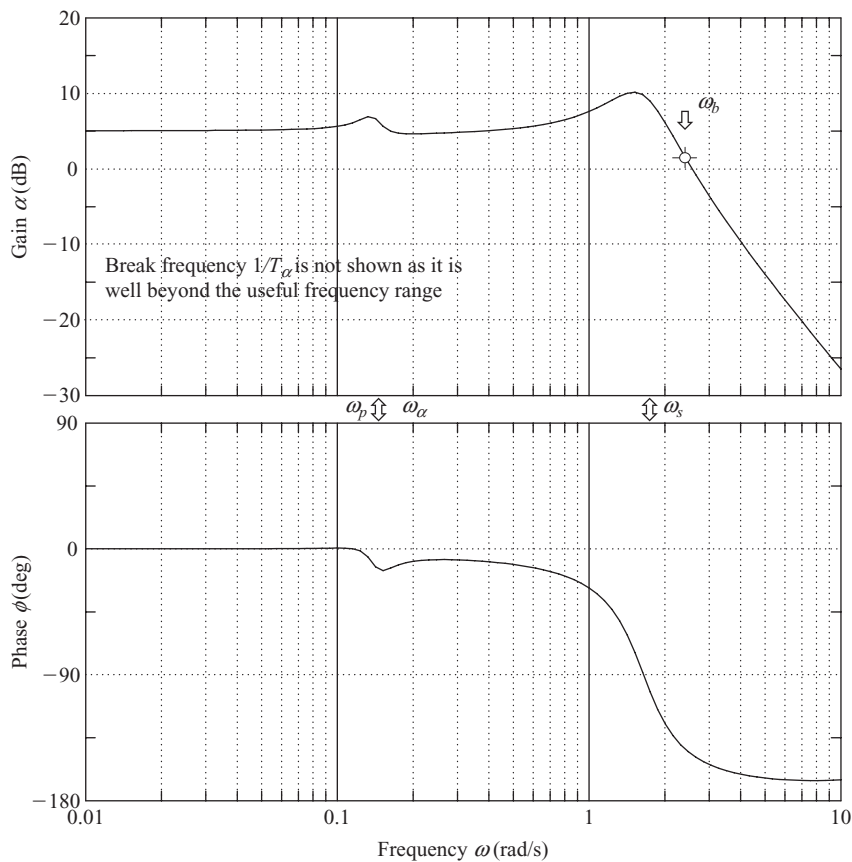


**Figure 6.8** *A-7A pitch attitude frequency response.*

mode. For all practical purposes the influence of the phugoid on both the gain and phase frequency responses is insignificant. This may be confirmed by reference to the appropriate transfer function in equations (6.50), where it will be seen that the second order numerator term very nearly cancels the phugoid term in the denominator. This is an important observation since it is quite usual to cancel approximately equal numerator and denominator terms in any response transfer function to simplify it. Simplified transfer functions often provide adequate response models in both the time and frequency domains, and can be extremely useful for explaining and interpreting aircraft dynamic behaviour. In modern control parlance the phugoid dynamics would be said to be *not observable* in this illustration. The frequency response in both gain and phase is more or less *flat* at frequencies up to the short period frequency, or for most of the usable frequency range. In practical terms this means that incidence will follow the stick at constant gain and without appreciable phase lag, which is obviously a desirable state of affairs.

### 6.5 FLYING AND HANDLING QUALITIES

The longitudinal stability modes play an absolutely fundamental part in determining the longitudinal flying and handling qualities of an aircraft and it is essential that their



**Figure 6.9** A-7A body incidence frequency response.

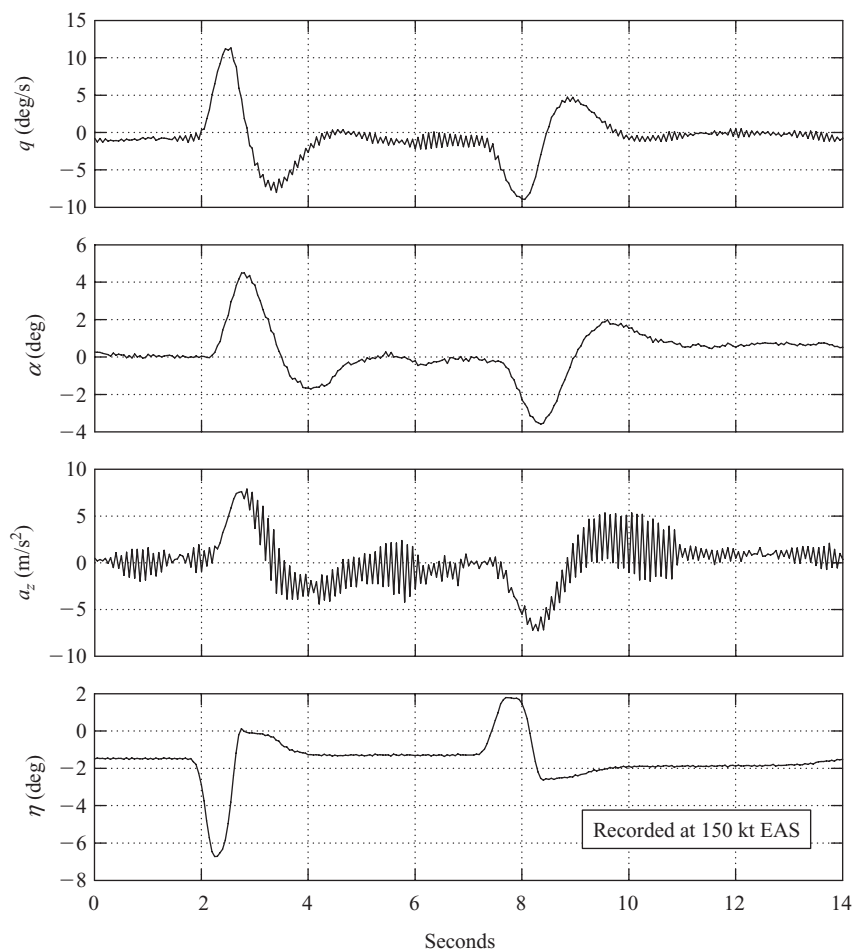
characteristics must be “correct” if the aircraft is to be flown by a human pilot. A simplistic view of the human pilot suggests that he behaves like an adaptive dynamic system and will adapt his dynamics to harmonise with those of the controlled vehicle. Since his dynamics interact and couple with those of the aircraft he will adapt, within human limits, to produce the best *closed loop* system dynamics compatible with the piloting task. His adaptability enables him to cope well with aircraft with less than desirable flying qualities. However, the problems of coupling between incompatible dynamic systems can be disastrous and it is this latter aspect of the piloting task that has attracted much attention in recent years. Every time the aircraft is disturbed in response to control commands the stability modes are excited and it is not difficult to appreciate why their characteristics are so important. Similarly, the stability modes are equally important in determining *ride quality* when the main concern is response to atmospheric disturbances. In military combat aircraft ride quality determines the effectiveness of the airframe as a weapons platform and in the civil transport aircraft it determines the comfort of passengers.

In general it is essential that the short period mode, which has a natural frequency close to human pilot natural frequency, is adequately damped. Otherwise, dynamic coupling with the pilot may occur under certain conditions leading to severe, or even catastrophic, handling problems. On the other hand, as the phugoid mode is much lower in frequency its impact on the piloting task is much less demanding. The average human pilot can easily control the aircraft even when the phugoid is mildly unstable. The phugoid mode can, typically, manifest itself as a minor trimming problem when poorly damped. Although not in itself hazardous, it can lead to increased pilot workload and for this reason it is desirable to ensure adequate phugoid damping. It is also important that the natural frequencies of the stability modes should be well separated in order to avoid interaction, or coupling, between the modes. Mode coupling may give rise to unusual handling characteristics and is generally regarded as an undesirable feature in longitudinal dynamics. The subject of aircraft handling qualities is discussed in rather more detail in Chapter 10.

## 6.6 MODE EXCITATION

Since the longitudinal stability modes are usually well separated in frequency, it is possible to excite the modes more or less independently for the purposes of demonstration or measurement. Indeed, it is a general flying qualities requirement that the modes be well separated in frequency in order to avoid handling problems arising from dynamic mode coupling. The modes may be excited selectively by the application of a sympathetic elevator input to the trimmed aircraft. The methods developed for in-flight mode excitation reflect an intimate understanding of the dynamics involved and are generally easily adapted to the analytical environment. Because the longitudinal modes are usually well separated in frequency the form of the input disturbance is not, in practice, very critical. However, some consistency in the flight test or analytical procedures adopted is desirable if meaningful comparative studies are to be made.

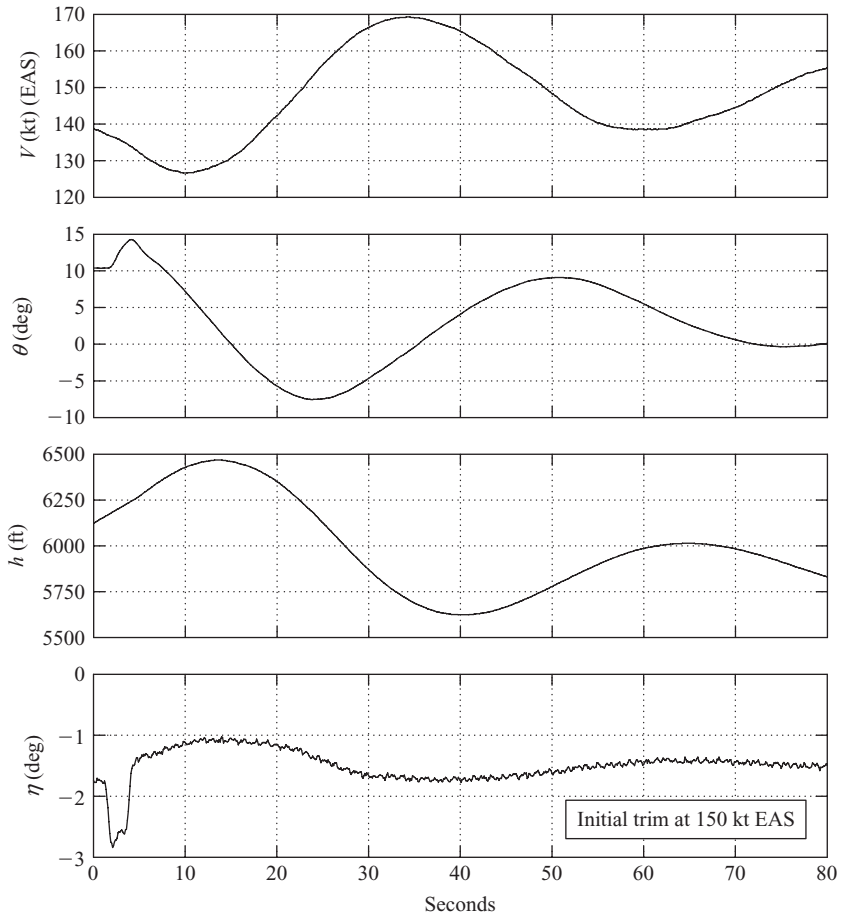
The short period pitching oscillation may be excited by applying a short duration disturbance in pitch to the trimmed aircraft. This is best achieved with an elevator pulse having a duration of a second or less. Analytically this is adequately approximated by a unit impulse applied to the elevator. The essential feature of the disturbance is that it must be sufficiently short so as not to excite the phugoid significantly. However, as the phugoid damping is usually very low it is almost impossible not to excite the phugoid at the same time but, it does not usually develop fast enough to obscure observation of the short period mode. An example of a short period response recorded during a flight test exercise in a Handley Page Jetstream aircraft is shown in Fig. 6.10. In fact two excitations are shown, the first in the nose up sense and the second in the nose down sense. The pilot input “impulse” is clearly visible and represents his best attempt at achieving a clean impulse like input; some practice is required before consistently good results are obtained. Immediately following the input the pilot released the controls to obtain the controls free dynamic response which explains why the elevator angle does not recover its equilibrium trim value until the short period transient has settled. During this short elevator free period its motion is driven by oscillatory aerodynamic loading and is also coloured by the control circuit



**Figure 6.10** *Flight recording of the short period pitching oscillation.*

dynamics which can be noticeably intrusive. Otherwise the response is typical of a well damped aeroplane.

The phugoid mode may be excited by applying a small speed disturbance to the aircraft in trimmed flight. This is best achieved by applying a small step input to the elevator which will cause the aircraft to fly up, or down, according to the sign of the input. If the power is left at its trimmed setting then the speed will decrease, or increase, accordingly. When the speed has diverged from its steady trimmed value by about 5% or so, the elevator is returned to its trim setting. This provides the disturbance and a stable aircraft will then execute a phugoid oscillation as it recovers its trim equilibrium. Analytically, the input is equivalent to an elevator pulse of several seconds duration. The magnitude and length of the pulse would normally be established by trial and error since its effect will be very aircraft dependent. However, it should be remembered that for proper interpretation of the resulting response the



**Figure 6.11** *Flight recording of the phugoid.*

disturbance should be small in magnitude since a small perturbation model is implied. An example of a phugoid response recorded during a flight test exercise in a Handley Page Jetstream aircraft is shown in Fig. 6.11. The pilot input “pulse” is clearly visible and, as for the short period mode, some practice is required before consistently good results are obtained. Again, the controls are released following the input to obtain the controls free dynamic response and the subsequent elevator motion is caused by the sinusoidal aerodynamic loading on the surface itself. The leading and trailing edge steps of the input elevator pulse may excite the short period mode. However, the short period mode transient would normally decay to zero well before the phugoid has properly developed and would not therefore obscure the observation of interest.

It is clear from an inspection of Fig. 6.11 that the phugoid damping is significantly higher than might be expected from the previous discussion of the mode characteristics. What is in fact shown is the aerodynamic, or basic airframe, phugoid modified by



the inseparable effects of power. The Astazou engines of the Jetstream are governed to run at constant rpm and thrust changes are achieved by varying the propeller blade pitch. Thus as the aircraft flies the sinusoidal flight path during a phugoid disturbance the sinusoidal propeller loading causes the engine to automatically adjust its power to maintain constant propeller rpm. This very effectively increases the apparent damping of the phugoid. It is possible to operate the aircraft at a constant power condition when the “power damping” effect is suppressed. Under these circumstances it is found that the aerodynamic phugoid is much less stable, as predicted by the simple theoretical model, and at some flight conditions it is unstable.

The above flight recording of the longitudinal stability modes illustrates the *controls free* dynamic stability characteristics. The same exercise could of course be repeated with the controls held fixed following the disturbing input. In this event the *controls fixed* dynamic stability characteristics would be observed. In general the differences between the responses would be small and not too significant. Now controls free dynamic response is only possible in aeroplanes with reversible controls which includes most small classical aeroplanes. Virtually all larger modern aircraft have powered controls, driven by electronic flight control systems, which are effectively irreversible and which means that they are only capable of exhibiting controls fixed dynamic response. Thus, today, most theoretical modelling and analysis is concerned with controls fixed dynamics only, as is the case throughout this book. However, a discussion of the differences between controls fixed and controls free aeroplane dynamics may be found in Hancock (1995).

When it is required to analyse the dynamics of a single mode in isolation, the best approach is to emulate flight test practice as far as that is possible. It is necessary to choose the most appropriate transfer functions to show the dominant response variables in the mode of interest. For example, as shown in Figures 6.10 and 6.11 the short period mode is best observed in the dominant response variables  $q$  and  $w(\alpha)$  whereas the phugoid is best observed in its dominant response variables  $u$ ,  $h$  and  $\theta$ . It is necessary to apply a control input disturbance sympathetic to the mode dynamics and it is necessary to observe the response for an appropriate period of time. For example, Fig. 6.1 shows both longitudinal modes but the time scale of the illustration reveals the phugoid in much greater detail than the short period mode, whereas the time scale of Fig. 6.5 was chosen to reveal the short period mode in detail since that is the mode of interest. The form of the control input is not usually difficult to arrange in analytical work since most software packages have built-in impulse, step and pulse functions, whilst more esoteric functions can usually be programmed by the user. This kind of informed approach to the analysis is required if the best possible visualisation of the longitudinal modes and their associated dynamics is to be obtained.

## REFERENCES

- Friedland, B. 1987: *Control System Design*. McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York.  
Hancock, G.J. 1995: *An Introduction to the Flight Dynamics of Rigid Aeroplanes*. Ellis Horwood Ltd., Hemel Hempstead.  
Lanchester, F.W. 1908: *Aerodnetics*. Macmillan and Co.

- Shinners, S.M. 1980: *Modern Control System Theory and Application*. Addison-Wesley Publishing Co, Reading, Massachusetts.
- Teper, G.L. 1969: *Aircraft Stability and Control Data*. Systems Technology, Inc., STI Technical Report 176-1. NASA Contractor Report, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington D.C. 20546.

## PROBLEMS

1. A tailless aeroplane of 9072 kg mass has an aspect ratio 1 delta wing of area  $37 \text{ m}^2$ . The longitudinal short period motion of the aeroplane is described by the characteristic quadratic:

$$\lambda^2 + B\lambda + C = 0 \quad \text{where } B = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{dC_L}{d\alpha} \right) \cos^2 \alpha \quad \text{and}$$

$$C = -\frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{\mu_1}{i_y} \right) \left( \frac{dC_m}{d\alpha} \right) \cos \alpha.$$

$\alpha$  is the wing incidence,  $\mu_1 = m/\frac{1}{2}\rho S\bar{c}$  is the longitudinal relative density parameter, and  $i_y = I_y/m\bar{c}^2$  is the dimensionless moment of inertia in pitch. The aeroplane's moment of inertia in pitch is  $1.356 \times 10^5 \text{ kg/m}^2$ . The variation of  $C_L$  and  $C_m$  with incidence  $\alpha > 0$  is non-linear for the aspect ratio 1 delta wing:

$$C_L = \frac{1}{2}\pi\alpha + 2\alpha^2$$

$$C_m = C_{m_0} - 0.025\pi\alpha - 0.1\alpha^2$$

Compare and describe the short period motions when the aeroplane is flying straight and level at 152 m/s at sea level and at 35,000 ft.

$\rho_0 = 1.225 \text{ kg/m}^3$  at sea level,  $\rho/\rho_0 = 0.310$  at 35,000 ft. Characteristic time  $\sigma = m/\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S$ . (CU 1983)

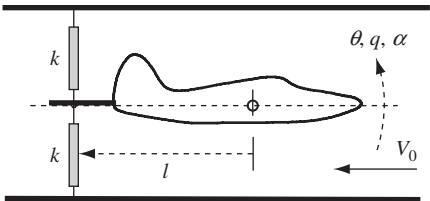
2. (i) List the characteristics of the longitudinal phugoid stability mode.  
 (ii) List the characteristics of the longitudinal short period pitching stability mode.  
 (iii) The transfer function for the unaugmented McDonnell F-4C Phantom describing the pitch attitude response to elevator when flying at Mach 1.2 at an altitude of 35,000 ft is given by

$$\frac{\theta(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{-20.6(s + 0.013)(s + 0.62)}{(s^2 + 0.017s + 0.002)(s^2 + 1.74s + 29.49)} \text{ rad/rad}$$

Write down the longitudinal characteristic equation and state whether the aeroplane is stable, or not.

- (iv) What are the numerical parameters describing the longitudinal stability modes of the McDonnell F-4C Phantom? (CU 1999)
3. Describe the longitudinal short period pitching oscillation. On what parameters do its characteristics depend?

A model aircraft is mounted in a wind tunnel such that it is free to pitch about an axis through its *cg* as shown. The model is restrained by two springs attached at a point on a fuselage aft extension which is at a distance  $l = 0.5\text{ m}$  from the *cg*. The model has wing span  $b = 0.8\text{ m}$ , mean aerodynamic chord  $\bar{c} = 0.15\text{ m}$  and the air density may be taken as  $\rho = 1.225\text{ kg/m}^3$ .



With the wind off the model is displaced in pitch and released. The frequency of the resulting oscillation is  $10\text{ rad/s}$  and the damping ratio  $0.1$ . The experiment is repeated with a wind velocity  $V_0 = 30\text{ m/s}$ , the frequency is now found to be  $12\text{ rad/s}$  and the damping ratio  $0.3$ . Given that the spring stiffness  $k = 16\text{ N/m}$ , calculate the moment of inertia in pitch, and values for the dimensionless stability derivatives  $M_q$  and  $M_w$ . It may be assumed that the influence of the derivative  $M_{\dot{w}}$  is negligible. State all assumptions made. (CU 1987)

4. (i) Show that the period of the phugoid is given approximately by,  $T_p = \sqrt{2\pi} \frac{V_0}{g}$ , and state all assumptions used during the derivation.  
(ii) State which aerodynamic parameters introduce damping into a phugoid, and discuss how varying forward speed whilst on approach to landing may influence phugoid characteristics. (LU 2001)
5. (i) Using a simple physical model, show that the short period pitching oscillation can be approximated to by

$$I_y \ddot{\theta} + \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 a_1 S_T l_T^2 \dot{\theta} - \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 S \bar{c} \frac{dC_m}{d\alpha} \theta = 0$$

- (ii) The aircraft described below is flying at sea level at  $90\text{ m/s}$ . Determine the *cg* location at which the short period pitching oscillation ceases to be oscillatory:

Wing lift curve slope	$= 5.7\text{ 1/rad}$
Tailplane lift curve slope	$= 3.7\text{ 1/rad}$
Horizontal tail arm	$= 6\text{ m}$
Tailplane area	$= 5\text{ m}^2$
$d\varepsilon/d\alpha$	$= 0.30$
$I_y$	$= 40,000\text{ kg/m}^2$
Wing area	$= 30\text{ m}^2$
Mean aerodynamic chord	$= 1.8\text{ m}$
Aerodynamic centre	$= 0.18\bar{c}$

(Hint: Modify the equation in part (i) to include tailplane lag effects.)

- (iii) Determine the period of the short period pitching oscillation if the *cg* location is moved  $0.2\bar{c}$  forward of the position calculated in part (ii).  
(LU 2001)

6. For a conventional aircraft on an approach to landing, discuss how the aircraft's aerodynamics may influence longitudinal stability. (LU 2002)
7. Determine the time to half amplitude and the period of the short period pitching oscillation. Assume that the short period pitching oscillation can be approximated by

$$I_y \ddot{\theta} - \frac{\partial M}{\partial q} \dot{\theta} - \frac{\partial M}{\partial w} V \theta = 0 \quad \text{and in addition } M_w = \partial C_m / \partial \alpha. \quad (\text{LU 2003})$$

---

## Chapter 7

# Lateral–Directional Dynamics

### 7.1 RESPONSE TO CONTROLS

The procedures for investigating and interpreting the lateral–directional dynamics of an aeroplane are much the same as those used to deal with the longitudinal dynamics and are not repeated at the same level of detail in this chapter. However, some aspects of lateral–directional dynamics, and their interpretation, differ significantly from the longitudinal dynamics and the procedures for interpreting the differences are dealt with appropriately. The lateral–directional response transfer functions are obtained in the solution of the lateral–directional equations of motion using, for example, the methods described in Chapter 5. The transfer functions completely describe the linear dynamic asymmetric response in sideslip, roll and yaw to aileron and rudder inputs. As in the longitudinal solution, implicit in the response are the dynamic properties determined by the lateral–directional stability characteristics of the aeroplane. As before, the transfer functions and the response variables described by them are linear since the entire modelling process is based on the assumption that the motion is constrained to small disturbances about an equilibrium trim state. The equilibrium trim state is assumed to mean steady level flight in the first instance and the previously stated caution concerning the magnitude of a small lateral–directional perturbation applies.

The most obvious difference between the solution of the longitudinal equations of motion and the lateral–directional equations of motion is that there is more algebra to deal with. Since two aerodynamic inputs are involved, the ailerons and the rudder, two sets of input–output response transfer functions are produced in the solution of the equations of motion. However, these are no more difficult to deal with than a single input–output set of transfer functions, there are just more of them! The most significant difference between the longitudinal and lateral–directional dynamics of the aeroplane concerns the interpretation. In general the lateral–directional stability modes are not so distinct and tend to exhibit dynamic coupling to a greater extent. Thus some care is needed in the choice of assumptions made to facilitate their interpretation. A mitigating observation is that, unlike the longitudinal dynamics, the lateral–directional dynamics do not change very much with flight condition since most aeroplanes possess aerodynamic symmetry by design.

The lateral–directional equations of motion describing small perturbations about an equilibrium trim condition and referred to wind axes are given by the state equation (4.70) as follows:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{v} \\ \dot{p} \\ \dot{r} \\ \dot{\phi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} y_v & y_p & y_r & y_\phi \\ l_v & l_p & l_r & l_\phi \\ n_v & n_p & n_r & n_\phi \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \\ \phi \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} y_\xi & y_\zeta \\ l_\xi & l_\zeta \\ n_\xi & n_\zeta \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \xi \\ \zeta \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.1)$$

The solution of equation (7.1) produces two sets of four response transfer functions, one set describing motion in response to aileron input and a second set describing response to rudder input. As for the longitudinal response transfer functions, it is convenient to adopt a shorthand style of writing the transfer functions. The transfer functions describing response to aileron are conveniently written

$$\frac{v(s)}{\xi(s)} \equiv \frac{N_{\xi}^v(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{k_v(s + (1/T_{\beta_1}))(s + (1/T_{\beta_2}))}{(s + (1/T_s))(s + (1/T_r))(s^2 + 2\zeta_d\omega_d s + \omega_d^2)} \quad (7.2)$$

$$\frac{p(s)}{\xi(s)} \equiv \frac{N_{\xi}^p(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{k_p s(s^2 + 2\zeta_{\phi}\omega_{\phi} s + \omega_{\phi}^2)}{(s + (1/T_s))(s + (1/T_r))(s^2 + 2\zeta_d\omega_d s + \omega_d^2)} \quad (7.3)$$

$$\frac{r(s)}{\xi(s)} \equiv \frac{N_{\xi}^r(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{k_r(s + (1/T_{\psi}))(s^2 + 2\zeta_{\psi}\omega_{\psi} s + \omega_{\psi}^2)}{(s + (1/T_s))(s + (1/T_r))(s^2 + 2\zeta_d\omega_d s + \omega_d^2)} \quad (7.4)$$

$$\frac{\phi(s)}{\xi(s)} \equiv \frac{N_{\xi}^{\phi}(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{k_{\phi}(s^2 + 2\zeta_{\phi}\omega_{\phi} s + \omega_{\phi}^2)}{(s + (1/T_s))(s + (1/T_r))(s^2 + 2\zeta_d\omega_d s + \omega_d^2)} \quad (7.5)$$

and the transfer functions describing response to rudder are conveniently written

$$\frac{v(s)}{\zeta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_{\zeta}^v(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{k_v(s + (1/T_{\beta_1}))(s + (1/T_{\beta_2}))(s + (1/T_{\beta_3}))}{(s + (1/T_s))(s + (1/T_r))(s^2 + 2\zeta_d\omega_d s + \omega_d^2)} \quad (7.6)$$

$$\frac{p(s)}{\zeta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_{\zeta}^p(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{k_p s(s + (1/T_{\phi_1}))(s + (1/T_{\phi_2}))}{(s + (1/T_s))(s + (1/T_r))(s^2 + 2\zeta_d\omega_d s + \omega_d^2)} \quad (7.7)$$

$$\frac{r(s)}{\zeta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_{\zeta}^r(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{k_r(s + (1/T_{\psi}))(s^2 + 2\zeta_{\psi}\omega_{\psi} s + \omega_{\psi}^2)}{(s + (1/T_s))(s + (1/T_r))(s^2 + 2\zeta_d\omega_d s + \omega_d^2)} \quad (7.8)$$

$$\frac{\phi(s)}{\zeta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_{\zeta}^{\phi}(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{k_{\phi}(s + (1/T_{\phi_1}))(s + (1/T_{\phi_2}))}{(s + (1/T_s))(s + (1/T_r))(s^2 + 2\zeta_d\omega_d s + \omega_d^2)} \quad (7.9)$$

The solution of the equations of motion results in polynomial descriptions of the transfer function numerators and common denominator as set out in Appendix 3. The polynomials factorise into real and complex pairs of roots that are most explicitly quoted in the style of equations (7.2)–(7.9) above. Since the roots are interpreted as time constants, damping ratios and natural frequencies the above style of writing makes the essential information instantly available. It should also be noted that the numerator and denominator factors are typical for a conventional aeroplane. Sometimes complex pairs of roots may be replaced with two real roots and *vice versa*. However, this does not usually mean that the dynamic response characteristics of the aeroplane become dramatically different. Differences in the interpretation of response may be evident but will not necessarily be large.

Transfer functions (7.2)–(7.9) each describe uniquely different, but related, variables in the motion of the aeroplane in response to a control input. However, it will be observed that the notation adopted indicates similar values for some numerator terms in both aileron and rudder response transfer functions, for example,  $k_r$ ,  $T_\psi$ ,  $\zeta_\psi$  and  $\omega_\psi$ , appear in both  $N_\xi^r(s)$  and  $N_\zeta^r(s)$ . *It must be understood that the numerator parameters are context dependent and usually have a numerical value which is unique to the transfer function in question.* To repeat the comment made above, the notation is a convenience for allocating particular numerator terms and serves only to identify the role of each term as a gain, time constant, damping ratio or frequency.

As before, the denominator of the transfer functions describes the characteristic polynomial which, in turn, describes the lateral–directional stability characteristics of the aeroplane. The transfer function denominator is therefore common to all response transfer functions. Thus the response of all variables to an aileron or to a rudder input is dominated by the denominator parameters namely, time constants, damping ratio and natural frequency. The differences between the individual responses are entirely determined by their respective numerators and the *response shapes* of the individual variables are determined by the common denominator and “coloured” by their respective numerators.

### Example 7.1

The equations of motion and aerodynamic data for the Douglas DC-8 aircraft were obtained from Teper (1969). At the flight condition of interest the aircraft has a total weight of 190,000 lb and is flying at Mach 0.44 at an altitude of 15,000 ft. The source data are referenced to aircraft body axes and for the purposes of this illustration it has been converted to a wind axes reference using the transformations given in Appendices 7 and 9. The equations of motion, referred to wind axes and quoted in terms of concise derivatives are, in state space format

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{v} \\ \dot{p} \\ \dot{r} \\ \dot{\phi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -0.1008 & 0 & -468.2 & 32.2 \\ -0.00579 & -1.232 & 0.397 & 0 \\ 0.00278 & -0.0346 & -0.257 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \\ \phi \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 13.48416 \\ -1.62 & 0.392 \\ -0.01875 & -0.864 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \xi \\ \zeta \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.10)$$

Since it is useful to have the transfer function describing sideslip angle  $\beta$  as well as sideslip velocity  $v$ , the output equation is augmented as described in Section 5.7. Thus the output equation is

$$\begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \\ \phi \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0.00214 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \\ \phi \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.11)$$

Again, the numerical values of the matrix elements in equations (7.10) and (7.11) have been rounded to five decimal places in order to keep the equations to a reasonable written size. This should not be done with the equations used in the actual computation.

Solution of the equations of motion using *Program CC* produced the following two sets of transfer functions. First, the transfer functions describing response to aileron

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{v(s)}{\xi(s)} &= \frac{8.779(s + 0.197)(s - 7.896)}{(s + 0.0065)(s + 1.329)(s^2 + 0.254s + 1.433)} \text{ ft/s/rad} \\
 \frac{p(s)}{\xi(s)} &= \frac{-1.62s(s^2 + 0.362s + 1.359)}{(s + 0.0065)(s + 1.329)(s^2 + 0.254s + 1.433)} \text{ rad/s/rad (deg/s/deg)} \\
 \frac{r(s)}{\xi(s)} &= \frac{-0.0188(s + 1.59)(s^2 - 3.246s + 4.982)}{(s + 0.0065)(s + 1.329)(s^2 + 0.254s + 1.433)} \text{ rad/s/rad (deg/s/deg)} \\
 \frac{\phi(s)}{\xi(s)} &= \frac{-1.62(s^2 + 0.362s + 1.359)}{(s + 0.0065)(s + 1.329)(s^2 + 0.254s + 1.433)} \text{ rad/rad (deg/deg)} \\
 \frac{\beta(s)}{\xi(s)} &= \frac{0.0188(s + 0.197)(s - 7.896)}{(s + 0.0065)(s + 1.329)(s^2 + 0.254s + 1.433)} \text{ rad/rad (deg/deg)} \quad (7.12)
 \end{aligned}$$

and second, the transfer functions describing response to rudder

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{v(s)}{\zeta(s)} &= \frac{13.484(s - 0.0148)(s + 1.297)(s + 30.207)}{(s + 0.0065)(s + 1.329)(s^2 + 0.254s + 1.433)} \text{ ft/s/rad} \\
 \frac{p(s)}{\zeta(s)} &= \frac{0.392s(s + 1.85)(s - 2.566)}{(s + 0.0065)(s + 1.329)(s^2 + 0.254s + 1.433)} \text{ rad/s/rad (deg/s/deg)} \\
 \frac{r(s)}{\zeta(s)} &= \frac{-0.864(s + 1.335)(s^2 - 0.03s + 0.109)}{(s + 0.0065)(s + 1.329)(s^2 + 0.254s + 1.433)} \text{ rad/s/rad (deg/s/deg)} \\
 \frac{\phi(s)}{\zeta(s)} &= \frac{0.392(s + 1.85)(s - 2.566)}{(s + 0.0065)(s + 1.329)(s^2 + 0.254s + 1.433)} \text{ rad/rad (deg/deg)} \\
 \frac{\beta(s)}{\zeta(s)} &= \frac{0.029(s - 0.0148)(s + 1.297)(s + 30.207)}{(s + 0.0065)(s + 1.329)(s^2 + 0.254s + 1.433)} \text{ rad/rad (deg/deg)} \quad (7.13)
 \end{aligned}$$

The characteristic equation is given by equating the denominator to zero

$$\Delta(s) = (s + 0.0065)(s + 1.329)(s^2 + 0.254s + 1.433) = 0 \quad (7.14)$$

The first real root describes the *spiral mode* with time constant

$$T_s = \frac{1}{0.0065} \cong 154 \text{ s}$$



the second real root describes the *roll subsidence mode* with time constant

$$T_r = \frac{1}{1.329} = 0.75 \text{ s}$$

and the pair of complex roots describe the oscillatory *dutch roll mode* with characteristics

$$\text{Damping ratio } \zeta_d = 0.11$$

$$\text{Undamped natural frequency } \omega_d = 1.2 \text{ rad/s}$$

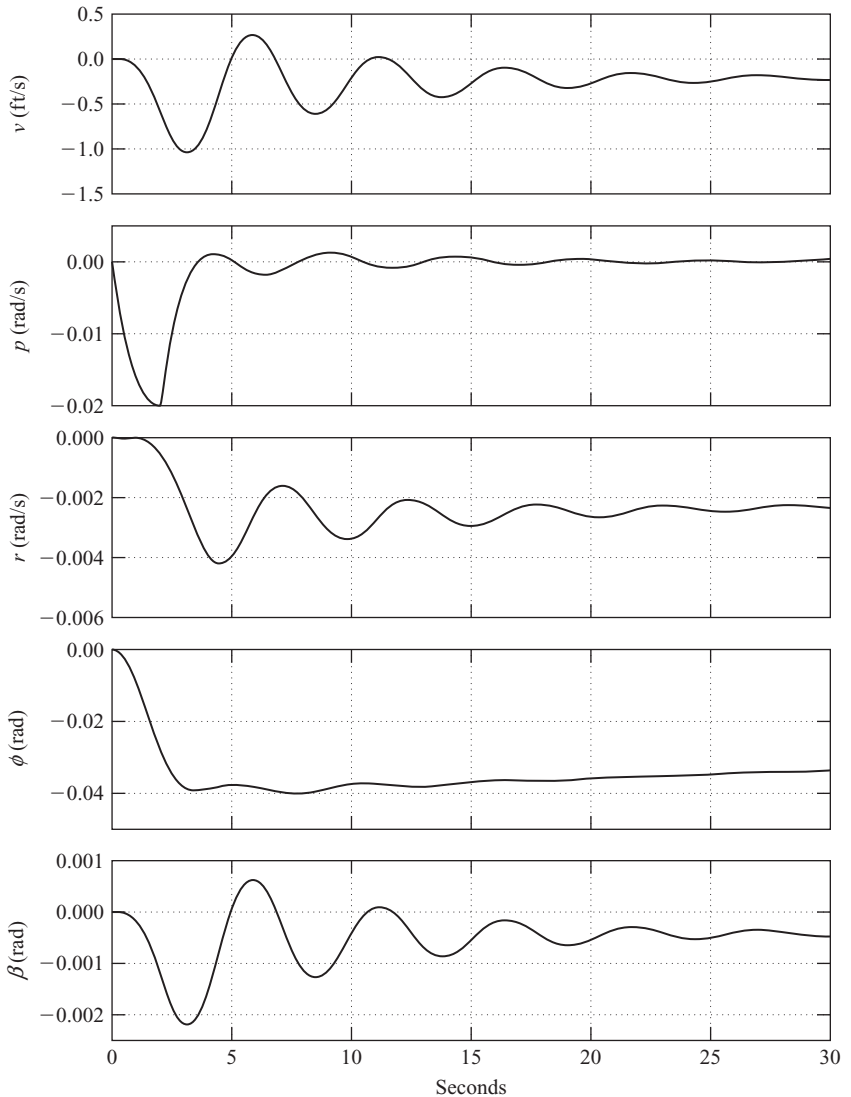
Since both real roots are negative and the pair of complex roots have negative real parts then the mode characteristics indicate the airframe to be aerodynamically stable.

The response of the aeroplane to a unit ( $1^\circ$ ) aileron pulse, held on for 2 s and then returned to zero is shown in Fig. 7.1. All of the variables obtained in the solution of the equations of motion are shown, the individual responses being characterised by the transfer functions, equations (7.12).

The dynamics associated with the three stability modes are visible in the responses although, at first glance, they would appear to be dominated by the oscillatory dutch roll mode since its damping is relatively low. Since the non-oscillatory spiral and roll modes are not so distinct, and since the dynamic coupling between modes is significant it is rather more difficult to expose the modes analytically unless some care is taken in their graphical presentation. This subject is discussed in greater detail in Section 7.6. Both the roll and spiral modes appear as exponentially convergent characteristics since they are both stable in this example. The roll mode converges relatively quickly with a time constant of 0.75 s, whereas the spiral mode converges very slowly indeed with a time constant of 154 s. The roll mode is most clearly seen in the roll rate response  $p$  where it determines the exponential rise at zero seconds and the exponential recovery when the pulse is removed at 2 s. The spiral mode characteristic is rather more subtle and is most easily seen in the roll attitude response  $\phi$  where it determines the longer term convergence to zero and is fully established at 30 s. Once again, all of the response shapes are determined by the common stability mode dynamics and the obvious differences between them are due to the unique numerators in each transfer function. All of the response variables shown in Fig. 7.1 eventually decay to zero in the time scale of the spiral mode (about 200 s) since the aircraft is stable.

The response of the aeroplane to a unit ( $1^\circ$ ) rudder step input is shown in Fig. 7.2. All of the variables obtained in the solution of the equations of motion are shown, the individual responses being characterised by the transfer functions, equations (7.13).

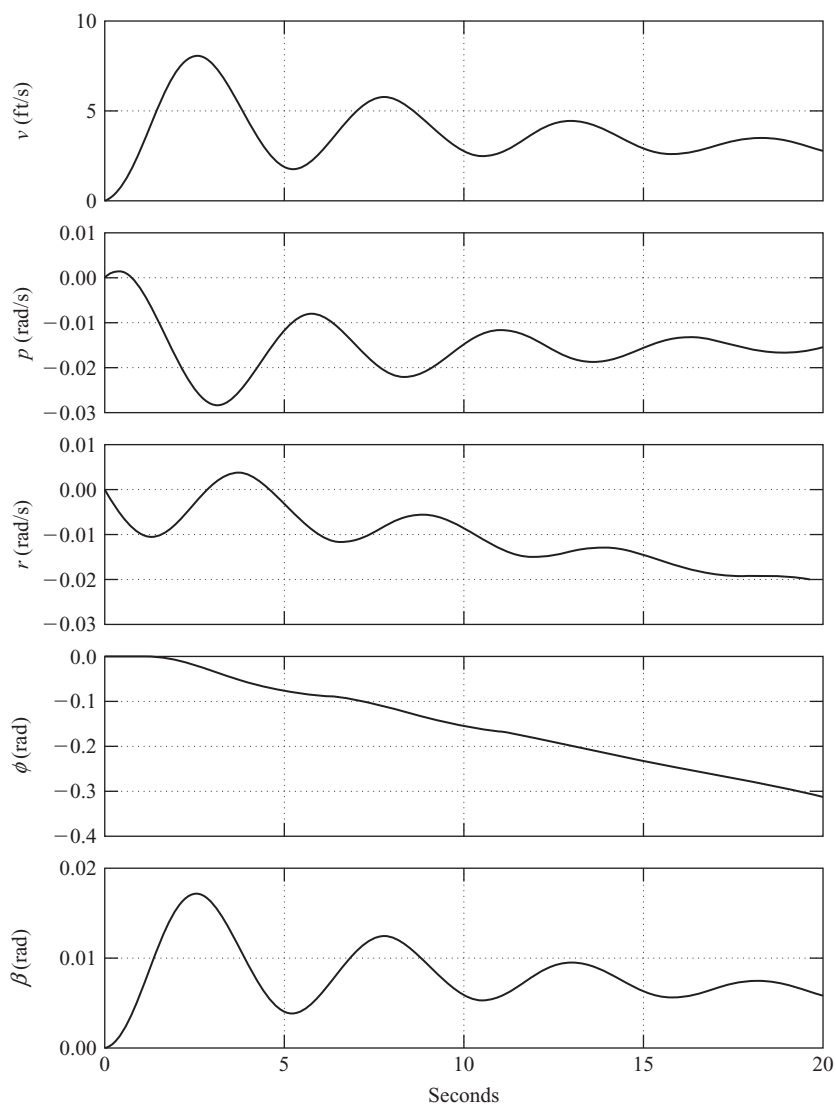
Again, it is very clear that the response is dominated by the oscillatory dutch roll mode. However, unlike the previous illustration, the roll and spiral modes are not discernible in the response. This is due to the fact that a step was chosen as the input which simply causes the aircraft to diverge from its initial equilibrium. This motion, together with the dutch roll oscillation effectively masks the two non-oscillatory modes. Now it is possible to observe another interesting phenomenon in the response. Inspection of the transfer functions, equations (7.12) and (7.13), reveals that a number possess



**Figure 7.1** Aircraft response to  $1^\circ$  2 s aileron pulse input.

non-minimum phase numerator terms. The effect of these non-minimum phase terms would seem to be insignificantly small since they are not detectable in the responses shown in Figs 7.1 and 7.2, with one exception. The roll rate response  $p$  to rudder, shown in Fig. 7.2, exhibits a sign reversal for the first second or so of its response and this is the manifestation of the non-minimum phase effect. In aeronautical parlance it is referred to as *adverse roll* in response to rudder.

A positive rudder step input is assumed and this will cause the aircraft to turn to the left, which is a negative response in accordance with the notation. Once the turn is established this results in negative yaw and yaw rate together with negative



**Figure 7.2** Aircraft response to  $1^\circ$  rudder step input.

roll and roll rate induced by yaw-roll coupling. These general effects are correctly portrayed in the responses shown in Fig. 7.2. However, when the rudder is deflected initially a substantial side force is generated at the centre of pressure of the fin which in turn generates the yawing moment causing the aircraft to turn. However, the side force acts at some distance above the roll axis and also generates a rolling moment which causes the aircraft to roll in the opposite sense to that induced by the yawing motion. Since inertia in roll is somewhat lower than inertia in yaw the aircraft responds quicker in roll and starts to roll in the “wrong” direction, but as the yawing motion becomes established the aerodynamically induced rolling moment eventually

overcomes the adverse rolling moment and the aircraft then rolls in the “correct” sense. This behaviour is clearly visible in Fig. 7.2 and is a characteristic found in most aircraft. The magnitude of the effect is aircraft dependent and if not carefully controlled by design can lead to unpleasant handling characteristics. A similar characteristic, *adverse yaw* in response to aileron is caused by the differential drag effects associated with aileron deflection giving rise to an adverse yawing moment. This characteristic is also commonly observed in many aircraft; reference to equations (7.12) indicates that it is present in the DC-8 but is insignificantly small at the chosen flight condition.

The mode content in each of the motion variables is given most precisely by the eigenvectors. The relevance of eigenvectors is discussed in Section 5.6 and the analytical procedure for obtaining them is shown in Example 5.7. With the aid of *MATLAB* the eigenvector matrix  $\mathbf{V}$  was obtained from the state matrix in equation (7.10)

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{array}{cc|cc|c} & \text{Dutch roll mode} & & \text{Roll mode} & \text{Spiral mode} \\ & & & & \\ \begin{array}{c} \vdots \\ v \\ \vdots \\ p \\ \vdots \\ r \\ \vdots \\ \phi \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} -0.845 + 0.5291j \\ 0.0012 - 0.0033j \\ 0.0011 + 0.0021j \\ -0.0029 - 0.0007j \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} -0.845 - 0.5291j \\ 0.0012 + 0.0033j \\ 0.0011 - 0.0021j \\ -0.0029 + 0.0007j \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} -0.9970 \\ -0.0619 \\ 0.0006 \\ 0.0466 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} 0.9864 \\ -0.0011 \\ 0.0111 \\ 0.1641 \end{array} \end{array} \quad (7.15)$$

To facilitate interpretation of the eigenvector matrix, the magnitude of each component eigenvector is calculated as follows:

$$|\mathbf{V}| = \begin{array}{cc|cc|c} & & & & \\ \begin{array}{c} \vdots \\ v \\ \vdots \\ p \\ \vdots \\ r \\ \vdots \\ \phi \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} 0.9970 \\ 0.0035 \\ 0.0024 \\ 0.0030 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} 0.9970 \\ 0.0035 \\ 0.0024 \\ 0.0030 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} 0.9970 \\ 0.0619 \\ 0.0006 \\ 0.0466 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} 0.9864 \\ 0.0011 \\ 0.0111 \\ 0.1641 \end{array} \end{array}$$

Clearly, the content of all three modes in sideslip velocity  $v$ , and hence in  $\beta$ , is of similar order, the roll mode is dominant in roll rate  $p$  and the spiral mode is dominant in roll attitude response  $\phi$ . These observations correlate well with the responses shown in Figs 7.1 and 7.2 although the low dutch roll damping obscures the observation in some response variables. Although not the case in this example, eigenvector analysis can be particularly useful for interpreting lateral–directional response in aircraft where mode coupling is rather more pronounced and the modes are not so distinct.

The steady state values of the motion variables following a unit step ( $1^\circ$ ) aileron or rudder input may be determined by the application of the final value theorem, equation (5.33), to the transfer functions, equations (7.12) and (7.13). The calculation procedure is shown in Example 6.1 and is not repeated here. Thus the steady state response of all the motion variables to an aileron unit step input is

$$\begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \\ \phi \\ \beta \end{bmatrix}_{\text{steady state}} = \begin{bmatrix} -19.24 \text{ ft/s} \\ 0 \\ -11.99 \text{ deg/s} \\ -177.84 \text{ deg} \\ -2.35 \text{ deg} \end{bmatrix}_{\text{aileron}} \quad (7.16)$$

and the steady state response to a rudder unit step input is

$$\begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \\ \phi \\ \beta \end{bmatrix}_{\text{steady state}} = \begin{bmatrix} -11.00 \text{ ft/s} \\ 0 \\ -10.18 \text{ deg/s} \\ -150.36 \text{ deg} \\ -1.35 \text{ deg} \end{bmatrix}_{\text{rudder}} \quad (7.17)$$

It must be realised that the steady state values given in equations (7.16) and (7.17) serve only to give an indication of the control sensitivity of the aeroplane. At such large roll attitudes the small perturbation model ceases to apply and in practice significant changes in the aerodynamic operating conditions would accompany the response. The actual steady state values would undoubtedly be somewhat different and could only be ascertained with a full non-linear simulation model. This illustration indicates the limiting nature of a small perturbation model for the analysis of lateral-directional dynamics and the need to exercise care in its interpretation.

### 7.1.1 The characteristic equation

The lateral-directional characteristic polynomial for a classical aeroplane is fourth order; it determines the common denominator of the lateral and directional response transfer functions and, when equated to zero, defines the characteristic equation which may be written

$$As^4 + Bs^3 + Cs^2 + Ds + E = 0 \quad (7.18)$$

The characteristic equation (7.18) most commonly factorises into two real roots and a pair of complex roots which are most conveniently written

$$(1 + (1/T_s))(1 + (1/T_r))(s^2 + 2\zeta_d\omega_d s + \omega_d^2) = 0 \quad (7.19)$$

As indicated previously, the first real root in equation (7.19) describes the non-oscillatory spiral mode, the second real root describes the non-oscillatory roll subsidence mode and the pair of complex roots describe the oscillatory dutch roll mode. Now, since the equations of motion from which the characteristic equation is derived are referred to a wind axes reference, the stability modes comprising equation (7.19) provide a complete description of the lateral-directional stability properties of the aeroplane with respect to the total steady velocity vector and subject to the constraints of small perturbation motion.

When the equations of motion are referred to a body axes system, the state equation (4.69) is fifth order and the characteristic equation is also of fifth order. The solution of the characteristic equation then has the following factors:

$$s(1 + (1/T_s))(1 + (1/T_r))(s^2 + 2\zeta_d\omega_d s + \omega_d^2) = 0 \quad (7.20)$$

The modes are unchanged except for the addition of a zero root which indicates neutral stability. The zero root results from the addition of yaw angle to the state equation and indicates neutral stability in yaw, or heading. Interpretation of lateral–directional dynamics is unchanged and the additional information indicates the aeroplane to have an indeterminate yaw or heading angle. In other words, lateral–directional dynamics are evaluated about the steady total velocity vector which assumes an arbitrary direction in azimuth, yaw or heading. Interpretation of the non-zero roots of the characteristic equation is most easily accomplished if reference is first made to the properties of the classical mass–spring–damper system which are summarised in Appendix 6.

Unlike the longitudinal dynamics, interpretation of the lateral–directional dynamics is not quite so straightforward as the stability modes are not so distinct; there usually exists a significantly greater degree of mode coupling, or interaction. This tends to make the necessary simplifying assumptions less appropriate with a consequent reduction of confidence in the observations. However, an assortment of well tried procedures for interpreting the dynamic characteristics of the well behaved aeroplane exist and these will be discussed below. The principal objective of course, is to identify the aerodynamic drivers for each of the stability modes. The connection between the observed dynamics of the aeroplane and its aerodynamic characteristics is made by comparing equation (7.18) with either of equation (7.19) or (7.20), and then referring to Appendix 3 for the definitions of the coefficients in equation (7.18) in terms of aerodynamic stability derivatives. It will be appreciated immediately that further analytical progress is impossibly difficult unless some gross simplifying assumptions are made. Means for dealing with this difficulty requires the derivation of reduced order models as described in Section 7.3.

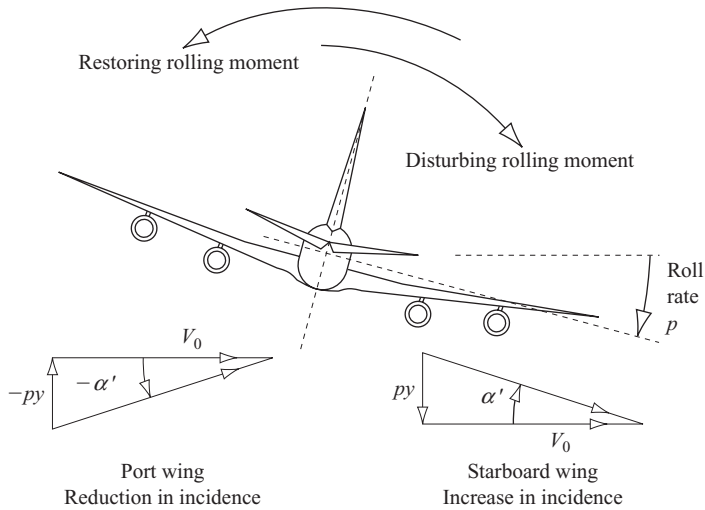
## 7.2 THE DYNAMIC STABILITY MODES

As for the longitudinal stability modes, whenever the aeroplane is disturbed from its equilibrium trim state the lateral–directional stability modes will also be excited. Again, the disturbance may be initiated by pilot control action, a change in power setting, airframe configuration changes, such as flap deployment, and by external influences such as gusts and turbulence.

### 7.2.1 The roll subsidence mode

The *roll subsidence mode*, or simply the *roll mode*, is a non-oscillatory lateral characteristic which is usually substantially decoupled from the spiral and dutch roll modes. Since it is non-oscillatory it is described by a single real root of the characteristic polynomial, and it manifests itself as an exponential lag characteristic in rolling motion. The aeromechanical principles governing the behaviour of the mode are shown in Fig. 7.3.

With reference to Fig. 7.3, the aircraft is viewed from the rear so the indicated motion is shown in the same sense as it would be experienced by the pilot. Assume that the aircraft is constrained to the single degree of freedom motion in roll about the  $ox$  axis only, and that it is initially in trimmed wings level flight. If then, the aeroplane



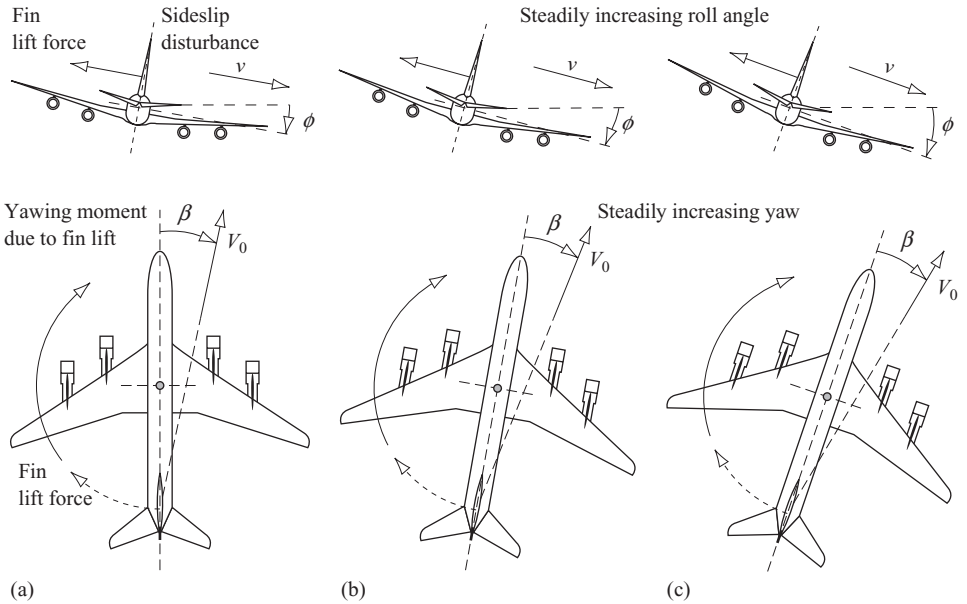
**Figure 7.3** *The roll subsidence mode.*

experiences a positive disturbing rolling moment it will commence to roll with an angular acceleration in accordance with Newton's second law of motion. In rolling motion the wing experiences a component of velocity normal to the wing  $py$ , where  $y$  is the spanwise coordinate measured from the roll axis  $ox$ . As indicated in Fig. 7.3 this results in a small increase in incidence on the down-going starboard wing and a small decrease in incidence on the up-going port wing. The resulting differential lift gives rise to a restoring rolling moment as indicated. The corresponding resulting differential induced drag would also give rise to a yawing moment, but this is usually sufficiently small that it is ignored. Thus following a disturbance the roll rate builds up exponentially until the restoring moment balances the disturbing moment and a steady roll rate is established. In practice, of course, this kind of behaviour would be transient rather than continuous as implied in this figure. The physical behaviour explained is simple "paddle" damping and is stabilising in effect in all aeroplanes operating in normal, aerodynamically linear, flight regimes. For this reason, the stability mode is sometimes referred to as the *damping in roll*.

In some modern combat aeroplanes which are designed to operate in seriously non-linear aerodynamic conditions, for example, at angles of attack approaching  $90^\circ$ , it is possible for the physical conditions governing the roll mode to break down completely. The consequent loss of roll stability can result in rapid roll departure followed by complex lateral-directional motion of a hazardous nature. However, in the conventional aeroplane the roll mode appears to the pilot as a lag in roll response to controls. The lag time constant is largely dependent on the moment of inertia in roll and the aerodynamic properties of the wing, and is typically around 1 s or less.

### 7.2.2 The spiral mode

The *spiral mode* is also non-oscillatory and is determined by the other real root in the characteristic polynomial. When excited, the mode dynamics are usually slow to



**Figure 7.4** The spiral mode development.

develop and involve complex coupled motion in roll, yaw and sideslip. The dominant aeromechanical principles governing the mode dynamics are shown in Fig. 7.4. The mode characteristics are very dependent on the lateral static stability and on the directional static stability of the aeroplane and these topics are discussed in Sections 3.4 and 3.5.

The mode is usually excited by a disturbance in sideslip which typically follows a disturbance in roll causing a wing to drop. Assume that the aircraft is initially in trimmed wings level flight and that a disturbance causes a small positive roll angle  $\phi$  to develop; left unchecked this results in a small positive sideslip velocity  $v$  as indicated at (a) in Fig. 7.4. The sideslip puts the fin at incidence  $\beta$  which produces lift, and which in turn generates a yawing moment to turn the aircraft into the direction of the sideslip. The yawing motion produces differential lift across the wing span which, in turn, results in a rolling moment causing the starboard wing to drop further thereby exacerbating the situation. This developing divergence is indicated at (b) and (c) in Fig. 7.4. Simultaneously, the dihedral effect of the wing generates a negative restoring rolling moment due to sideslip which acts to return the wing to a level attitude. Some additional restoring rolling moment is also generated by the fin lift force when it acts at a point above the roll axis  $ox$ , which is usual.

Therefore, the situation is one in which the fin effect, or directional static stability, and the dihedral effect, or lateral static stability, act in opposition to create this interesting dynamic condition. Typically, the requirements for lateral and directional static stability are such that the opposing effects are very nearly equal. When dihedral effect is greater the spiral mode is stable, and hence convergent, and when the fin effect is greater the spiral mode is unstable, and hence divergent. Since these effects are nearly equal the spiral mode will be nearly neutrally stable, and sometimes it may



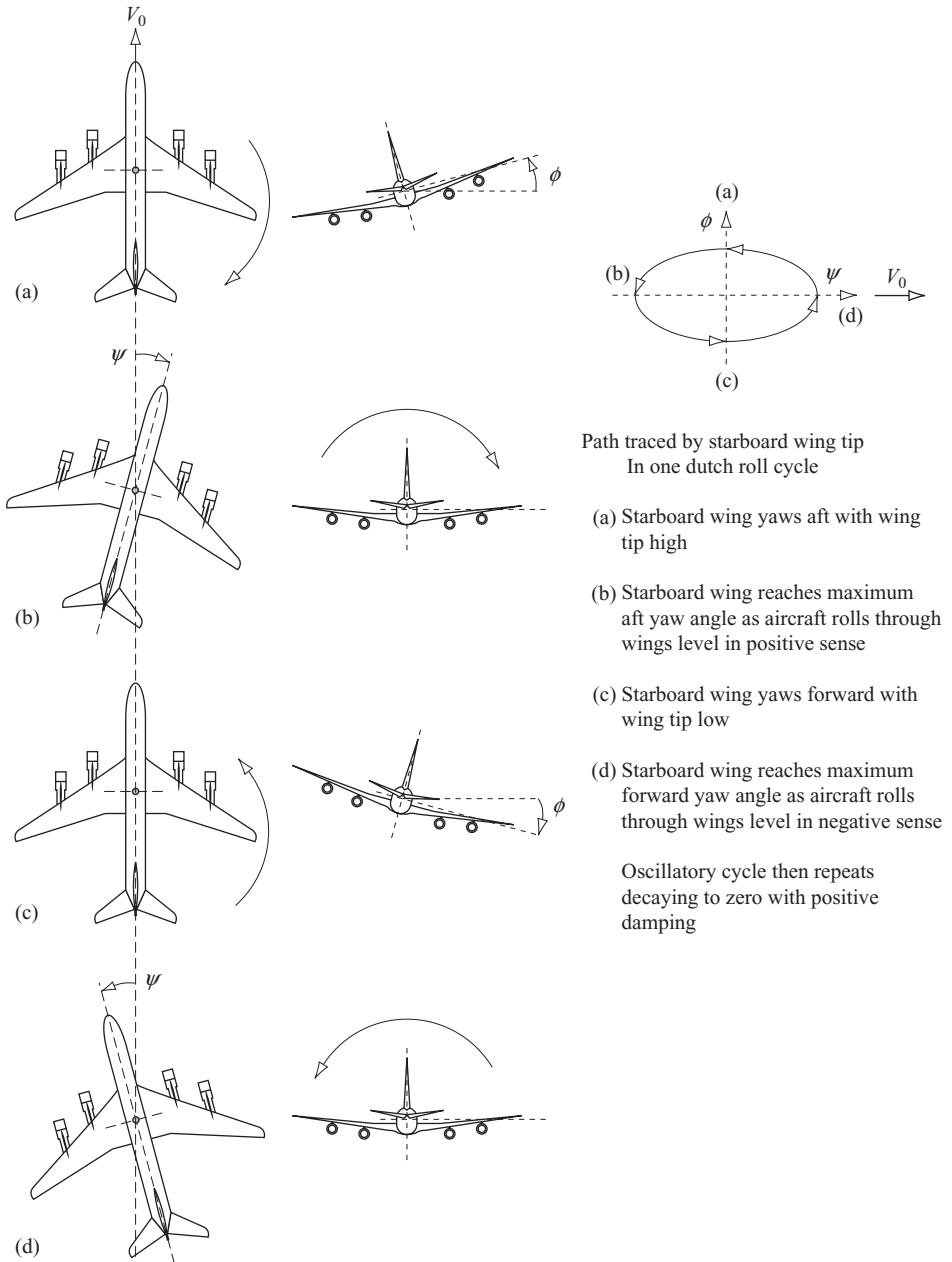
even be neutrally stable, that is, it will be neither convergent or divergent. Since the mode is non-oscillatory it manifests itself as a classical exponential convergence or divergence and, since it is nearly neutral, the time constant is very large, typically 100 s or more. This means that when the mode is stable the wing is slow to recover a level attitude following a disturbance and when it is unstable the rate at which it diverges is also very slow. When it is neutral the aircraft simply flies a turn at constant roll attitude.

Now it is the unstable condition which attracts most attention for obvious reasons. Once the mode is excited the aircraft flies a slowly diverging path in both roll and yaw and since the vertical forces are no longer in equilibrium the aircraft will also lose height. Thus the unstable flight path is a spiral descent which left unchecked will end when the aircraft hits the ground! However, since the rate at which the mode diverges is usually very slow most pilots can cope with it. Consequently, an unstable spiral mode is permitted provided its time constant is sufficiently large. Because the mode is very slow to develop the accelerations in the resulting motion are insignificantly small and the motion cues available to the pilot are almost imperceptible. In a spiral departure the visual cues become the most important cues to the pilot. It is also important to appreciate that a spiral departure is not the same as a spin. Spinning motion is a fully stalled flight condition whereas in a spiral descent the wing continues to fly in the usual sense.

### 7.2.3 The dutch roll mode

The *dutch roll* mode is a classical damped oscillation in yaw, about the  $oz$  axis of the aircraft, which couples into roll and, to a lesser extent, into sideslip. The motion described by the dutch roll mode is therefore a complex interaction between all three lateral-directional degrees of freedom. Its characteristics are described by the pair of complex roots in the characteristic polynomial. Fundamentally, the dutch roll mode is the lateral-directional equivalent of the longitudinal short period mode. Since the moments of inertia in pitch and yaw are of similar magnitude the frequency of the dutch roll mode and the longitudinal short period mode are of similar order. However, the fin is generally less effective than the tailplane as a damper and the damping of the dutch roll mode is often inadequate. The dutch roll mode is so called since the motion of the aeroplane following its excitation is said to resemble the rhythmical flowing motion of a dutch skater on a frozen canal. One cycle of a typical dutch rolling motion is shown in Fig. 7.5.

The physical situation applying can be appreciated by imagining that the aircraft is restrained in yaw by a torsional spring acting about the yaw axis  $oz$ , the spring stiffness being aerodynamic and determined largely by the fin. Thus when in straight, level trimmed equilibrium flight a disturbance in yaw causes the “aerodynamic spring” to produce a restoring yawing moment which results in classical oscillatory motion. However, once the yaw oscillation is established the relative velocity of the air over the port and starboard wing also varies in an oscillatory manner giving rise to oscillatory differential lift and drag perturbations. This aerodynamic coupling gives rise in turn to an oscillation in roll which lags the oscillation in yaw by approximately  $90^\circ$ . This phase difference between yawing and rolling motion means that the forward going wing panel is low and the aft going wing panel is high as indicated in Fig. 7.5.



**Figure 7.5** The oscillatory dutch roll mode.

Consequently, the classical manifestation of the dutch roll mode is given by the path described by the wing tips relative to the horizon and which is usually elliptical, also shown in Fig. 7.5. The peak roll to peak yaw ratio is usually less than one, as indicated, and is usually associated with a stable dutch roll mode. However, when the

peak roll to peak yaw ratio is greater than one an unstable dutch roll mode is more likely.

Whenever the wing is disturbed from level trim, left to its own devices the aeroplane starts to slip sideways in the direction of the low wing. Thus the oscillatory rolling motion leads to some oscillatory sideslipping motion in dutch rolling motion although the sideslip velocity is generally small. Thus it is fairly easy to build up a visual picture of the complex interactions involved in the dutch roll mode. In fact the motion experienced in a dutch rolling aircraft would seem to be analogous to that of a ball bearing dropped into an inclined channel having a semi-circular cross section. The ball bearing rolls down the inclined channel whilst oscillating from side to side on the circular surface.

Both the damping and stiffness in yaw, which determine the characteristics of the mode, are largely determined by the aerodynamic properties of the fin, a large fin being desirable for a well behaved stable dutch roll mode. Unfortunately this contradicts the requirement for a stable spiral mode. The resulting aerodynamic design compromise usually results in aeroplanes with a mildly unstable spiral mode and a poorly damped dutch roll mode. Of course, the complexity of the dynamics associated with the dutch roll mode suggests that there must be other aerodynamic contributions to the mode characteristics in addition to the fin. This is generally the case and it is quite possible for the additional aerodynamic effects to be as significant as the aerodynamic properties of the fin if not more so. However, one thing is quite certain; it is very difficult to quantify all the aerodynamic contributions to the dutch roll mode characteristics with any degree of confidence.

### 7.3 REDUCED ORDER MODELS

Unlike the longitudinal equations of motion it is more difficult to solve the lateral-directional equations of motion approximately. Because of the motion coupling present, to a greater or lesser extent, in all three modes dynamics, the modes are not so distinct and simplifying approximations are less relevant with the consequent loss of accuracy. Response transfer functions derived from reduced order models based on simplified approximate equations of motion are generally insufficiently accurate to be of any real use other than as a means for providing enhanced understanding of the aeromechanics of lateral-directional motion.

The simplest, and most approximate, solution of the characteristic equation provides an initial estimate for the two real roots only. This approximate solution of the lateral-directional characteristic equation (7.18) is based on the observation that conventional aeroplanes give rise to coefficients  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ ,  $D$  and  $E$  that have relative values which do not change very much with flight condition. Typically,  $A$  and  $B$  are relatively large whilst  $D$  and  $E$  are relatively small, in fact  $E$  is very often close to zero. Further, it is observed that  $B \gg A$  and  $E \ll D$  suggesting the following real roots as approximate solutions of the characteristic equation

$$\begin{aligned}(s + (1/T_r)) &\cong (s + (B/A)) \\ (s + (1/T_s)) &\cong (s + (E/D))\end{aligned}\tag{7.21}$$

No such simple approximation for the pair of complex roots describing the dutch roll mode may be determined. Further insight into the aerodynamic drivers governing the characteristics of the roll and spiral modes may be made, with some difficulty, by applying assumptions based on the observed behaviour of the modes to the polynomial expressions for  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $D$  and  $E$  given in Appendix 3. Fortunately, the same information may be deduced by a rather more orderly process involving a reduction in order of the equations of motion. The approximate solutions for the non-oscillatory modes as given by equations (7.21) are only useful for preliminary mode evaluations, or as a check of computer solutions, when the numerical values of the coefficients in the characteristic equation are known.

### 7.3.1 The roll mode approximation

Provided the perturbation is small, the roll subsidence mode is observed to involve almost pure rolling motion with little coupling into sideslip or yaw. Thus a reduced order model of the lateral–directional dynamics retaining only the roll mode follows by removing the side force and yawing moment equations from the lateral–directional state equation (7.1) to give

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{p} \\ \dot{\phi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} l_p & l_\phi \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} p \\ \phi \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} l_\xi & l_\zeta \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \xi \\ \zeta \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.22)$$

Further, if aircraft wind axes are assumed then  $l_\phi = 0$  and equation (7.22) reduces to the single degree of freedom rolling moment equation

$$\dot{p} = l_p p + l_\xi \xi + l_\zeta \zeta \quad (7.23)$$

The roll response to aileron transfer function is easily derived from equation (7.23). Taking the Laplace transform of equation (7.23), assuming zero initial conditions and assuming that the rudder is held fixed,  $\zeta = 0$ , then

$$s p(s) = l_p p(s) + l_\xi \xi(s) \quad (7.24)$$

which on rearranging may be written

$$\frac{p(s)}{\xi(s)} = \frac{l_\xi}{(s - l_p)} \equiv \frac{k_p}{(s + (1/T_r))} \quad (7.25)$$

The transfer function given by equation (7.25) is the approximate reduced order equivalent to the transfer function given by equation (7.3) and is the transfer function of a simple first order lag with time constant  $T_r$ . For small perturbation motion equation (7.25) describes the first second or two of roll response to aileron with a reasonable degree of accuracy and is especially valuable as a means for identifying the dominant physical properties of the airframe which determine the roll mode time constant. With reference to the definitions of the concise aerodynamic stability derivatives in Appendix 2, the roll mode time constant is determined approximately by

$$T_r \cong -\frac{1}{l_p} = -\frac{(I_x I_z - I_{xz}^2)}{\left( I_z \overset{\circ}{L}_p + I_{xz} \overset{\circ}{N}_p \right)} \quad (7.26)$$

Since  $I_x \gg I_{xz}$  and  $I_z \gg I_{xz}$  then equation (7.26) may be further simplified to give the classical approximate expression for the roll mode time constant

$$T_r \cong -\frac{I_x}{\dot{L}_p} \quad (7.27)$$

where  $I_x$  is the moment of inertia in roll and  $\dot{L}_p$  is the dimensional derivative describing the aerodynamic damping in roll.

### 7.3.2 The spiral mode approximation

Since the spiral mode is very slow to develop following a disturbance, it is usual to assume that the motion variables  $v$ ,  $p$  and  $r$  are quasi-steady relative to the time scale of the mode. Whence  $\dot{v} = \dot{p} = \dot{r} = 0$  and the lateral-directional state equation (7.1) may be written

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \dot{\phi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} y_v & y_p & y_r & y_\phi \\ l_v & l_p & l_r & l_\phi \\ n_v & n_p & n_r & n_\phi \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \\ \phi \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} y_\xi & y_\zeta \\ l_\xi & l_\zeta \\ n_\xi & n_\zeta \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \xi \\ \zeta \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.28)$$

Further, if aircraft wind axes are assumed  $l_\phi = n_\phi = 0$  and if the controls are assumed fixed such that unforced motion only is considered  $\xi = \zeta = 0$  then equation (7.28) simplifies to

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \dot{\phi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} y_v & y_p & y_r & y_\phi \\ l_v & l_p & l_r & 0 \\ n_v & n_p & n_r & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \\ \phi \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.29)$$

The first three rows in equation (7.29) may be rearranged to eliminate the variables  $v$  and  $r$  to give a reduced order equation in which the variables are roll rate  $p$  and roll angle  $\phi$  only

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \dot{\phi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} y_v \frac{(l_p n_r - l_r n_p)}{(l_r n_v - l_v n_r)} + y_p + y_r \frac{(l_v n_p - l_p n_v)}{(l_r n_v - l_v n_r)} & y_\phi \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} p \\ \phi \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.30)$$

The first element of the first row of the reduced order state matrix in equation (7.30) may be simplified since the terms involving  $y_v$  and  $y_p$  are assumed to be insignificantly small compared with the term involving  $y_r$ . Thus equation (7.30) may be rewritten

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \dot{\phi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} y_r \frac{(l_v n_p - l_p n_v)}{(l_r n_v - l_v n_r)} & y_\phi \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} p \\ \phi \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.31)$$

Since  $\dot{\phi} = p$ , equation (7.31) may be reduced to the single degree of freedom equation describing, approximately, the unforced rolling motion involved in the spiral mode

$$\dot{\phi} + \left( \frac{y_\phi (l_r n_v - l_v n_r)}{y_r (l_v n_p - l_p n_v)} \right) \phi = 0 \quad (7.32)$$

The Laplace transform of equation (7.32), assuming zero initial conditions, is

$$\phi(s) \left( s + \left( \frac{y_\phi (l_r n_v - l_v n_r)}{y_r (l_v n_p - l_p n_v)} \right) \right) \equiv \phi(s)(s + (1/T_s)) = 0 \quad (7.33)$$

It should be noted that equation (7.33) is the reduced order lateral–directional characteristic equation retaining a very approximate description of the spiral mode characteristics only, whence an approximate expression for the time constant of the spiral mode is defined

$$T_s \cong \frac{y_r (l_v n_p - l_p n_v)}{y_\phi (l_r n_v - l_v n_r)} \quad (7.34)$$

The spiral mode time constant 7.34 may be expressed conveniently in terms of the dimensional or dimensionless aerodynamic stability derivatives to provide a more direct link with the aerodynamic mode drivers. With reference to Appendix 2 and noting that  $\dot{Y}_r \ll m U_e$ , so  $y_r \cong -U_e \equiv -V_0$ , and that  $y_\phi = g$  since aircraft wind axes are assumed, then equation (7.34) may be re-stated

$$T_s \cong - \frac{U_e \left( \overset{\circ}{L}_v \overset{\circ}{N}_p - \overset{\circ}{L}_p \overset{\circ}{N}_v \right)}{g \left( \overset{\circ}{L}_r \overset{\circ}{N}_v - \overset{\circ}{L}_v \overset{\circ}{N}_r \right)} \equiv - \frac{V_0 (L_v N_p - L_p N_v)}{g (L_r N_v - L_v N_r)} \quad (7.35)$$

Now a stable spiral mode requires that the time constant  $T_s$  is positive. Typically for most aeroplanes, especially in sub-sonic flight

$$(L_v N_p - L_p N_v) > 0$$

and the condition for the mode to be stable simplifies to the approximate classical requirement that

$$L_v N_r > L_r N_v \quad (7.36)$$

Further analysis of this requirement is only possible if the derivatives in equation (7.36) are expressed in terms of the aerodynamic properties of the airframe. This means that  $L_v$ , dihedral effect, and  $N_r$ , damping in yaw should be large whilst  $N_v$ , the yaw stiffness, should be small. Rolling moment due to yaw rate,  $L_r$ , is usually

significant in magnitude and positive. In very simple terms aeroplanes with small fins and reasonable dihedral are more likely to have a stable spiral mode.

### 7.3.3 The dutch roll mode approximation

For the purpose of creating a reduced order model to describe the dutch roll mode it is usual to make the rather gross assumption that dutch rolling motion involves no rolling motion at all. Clearly this is contradictory, but it is based on the fact that the mode is firstly a yawing oscillation and aerodynamic coupling causes rolling motion as a secondary effect. It is probably true that for most aeroplanes the roll to yaw ratio in dutch rolling motion is less than one, and in some cases may be much less than one, which gives the assumption some small credibility from which the lateral-directional state equation (7.1) may be simplified by writing

$$\dot{p} = p = \dot{\phi} = \phi = 0$$

As before, if aircraft wind axes are assumed  $l_{\phi} = n_{\phi} = 0$  and if the controls are assumed fixed such that unforced motion only is considered  $\xi = \zeta = 0$  then equation (7.1) simplifies to

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{v} \\ \dot{r} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} y_v & y_r \\ n_v & n_r \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ r \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.37)$$

If equation (7.37) is written

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_d = \mathbf{A}_d \mathbf{x}_d$$

then the reduced order characteristic equation describing the approximate dynamic characteristics of the dutch roll mode is given by

$$\Delta_d(s) = \det[s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}_d] = \begin{vmatrix} s - y_v & -y_r \\ -n_v & s - n_r \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

or

$$\Delta_d(s) = s^2 - (n_r + y_v)s + (n_r y_v - n_v y_r) = 0 \quad (7.38)$$

Therefore the damping and frequency properties of the mode are given approximately by

$$\begin{aligned} 2\zeta_d \omega_d &\cong -(n_r + y_v) \\ \omega_d^2 &\cong (n_r y_v - n_v y_r) \end{aligned} \quad (7.39)$$

With reference to Appendix 2, the expressions given by equations (7.39) can be re-stated in terms of dimensional aerodynamic stability derivatives. Further approximating simplifications are made by assuming  $\dot{Y}_r \ll mU_e$ , so that  $y_r \cong -U_e \equiv -V_0$ ,

and by assuming, quite correctly, that both  $I_x$  and  $I_z$  are usually much greater than  $I_{xz}$ . It then follows that

$$\begin{aligned} 2\zeta_d\omega_d &\cong -\left(\frac{\dot{N}_r}{I_z} + \frac{\dot{Y}_v}{m}\right) \\ \omega_d^2 &\cong \left(\frac{\dot{N}_r}{I_z} \frac{\dot{Y}_v}{m} + V_0 \frac{\dot{N}_v}{I_z}\right) \cong V_0 \frac{\dot{N}_v}{I_z} \end{aligned} \quad (7.40)$$

Comparing the damping and frequency terms in the expressions in equations (7.40) with those of the mass–spring–damper in Appendix 6 it is easy to identify the roles of those aerodynamic stability derivatives which are dominant in determining the characteristics of the dutch roll mode. For example,  $\dot{N}_r$  is referred to as the yaw damping derivative and  $\dot{N}_v$  is referred to as the yaw stiffness derivative, and both are very dependent on the aerodynamic design of the fin and the fin volume ratio.

Although the dutch roll mode approximation gives a rather poor impression of the real thing, it is useful as a means for gaining insight into the physical behaviour of the mode and its governing aerodynamics.

## Example 7.2

It has been stated that the principle use of the lateral–directional reduced order models is for providing insight into the aerodynamic mode drivers. With the exception of the transfer function describing roll rate response to aileron, transfer functions derived from the reduced order models are not commonly used in analytical work as their accuracy is generally poor. However, it is instructive to compare the values of the modes characteristics obtained from reduced order models with those obtained in the solution of the full order equations of motion.

Consider the Douglas DC-8 aircraft of Example 7.1. The equations of motion referred to wind axes are given by equation (7.10) and the solution gives the characteristic equation (7.14). The unfactorised characteristic equation is

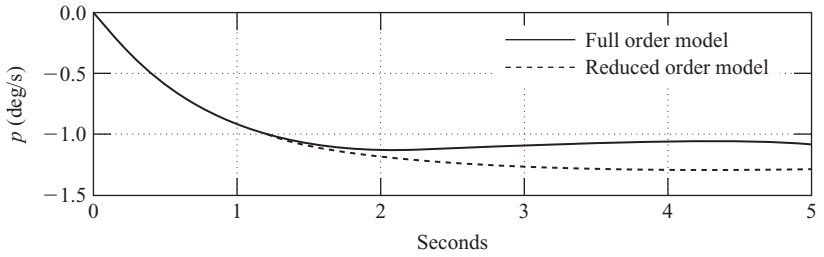
$$\Delta(s) = s^4 + 1.5898s^3 + 1.7820s^2 + 1.9200s + 0.0125 = 0 \quad (7.41)$$

In accordance with the expression given in equations (7.21), approximate values for the roll mode and spiral mode time constants are given by

$$\begin{aligned} T_r &\cong \frac{A}{B} = \frac{1}{1.5898} = 0.629 \text{ s} \\ T_s &\cong \frac{D}{E} = \frac{1.9200}{0.0125} = 153.6 \text{ s} \end{aligned} \quad (7.42)$$

The approximate roll mode time constant does not compare particularly well with the exact value of 0.75 s whereas, the spiral mode time constant compares extremely well with the exact value of 154 s.





**Figure 7.6** Roll rate response to  $1^\circ$  aileron step input.

The approximate roll rate response to aileron transfer function, given by equation (7.25) may be evaluated by obtaining the values for the concise derivatives  $l_p$  and  $l_\xi$  from equation (7.10) whence

$$\frac{p(s)}{\xi(s)} = \frac{-1.62}{(s + 1.232)} \text{ deg/s/deg} \quad (7.43)$$

With reference to equation (7.25), an approximate value for the roll mode time constant is given by

$$T_r \cong \frac{1}{1.232} = 0.812 \text{ s} \quad (7.44)$$

and this value compares rather more favourably with the exact value. The short term roll rate response of the DC-8 to a  $1^\circ$  aileron step input as given by equation (7.43) is shown in Fig. 7.6 where it is compared with the exact response of the full order model as given by equations (7.12).

Clearly, for the first 2 s, or so, the match is extremely good which confirms the assumptions made about the mode to be valid provided the period of observation of roll behaviour is limited to the time scale of the roll mode. The approximate roll mode time constant calculated by substituting the appropriate derivative and roll inertia values, given in the aircraft data, into the expression given by equation (7.27) results in a value almost the same as that given by equation (7.44). This simply serves to confirm the validity of the assumptions made about the roll mode.

With reference to equations (7.34) and (7.35) the approximate spiral mode time constant may be written in terms of concise derivatives as

$$T_s \cong -\frac{U_e(l_v n_p - l_p n_v)}{g(l_r n_v - l_v n_r)} \quad (7.45)$$

Substituting values for the concise derivatives obtained from equation (7.10), the velocity  $U_e$  and  $g$  then

$$T_s \cong -\frac{468.2(0.0002 + 0.00343)}{32.2(0.0011 - 0.00149)} = 135.34 \text{ s} \quad (7.46)$$

Clearly this approximate value of the spiral mode time constant does not compare so well with the exact value of 154 s. However, this is not so important since the mode

is very *slow* in the context of normal piloted manoeuvring activity. The classical requirement for spiral mode stability given by the inequality condition of equation (7.36) is satisfied since

$$0.00149 > 0.0011$$

Notice how close the values of the two numbers are, suggesting the mode to be close to neutrally stable in the time scale of normal transient response. This observation is quite typical of a conventional aeroplane like the DC-8.

Approximate values for the dutch roll mode damping ratio and undamped natural frequency are obtained by substituting the relevant values for the concise derivatives, obtained from equation (7.10), into the expressions given by equations (7.39). Thus, approximately

$$\begin{aligned}\omega_d &\cong 1.152 \text{ rad/s} \\ \zeta_d &\cong 0.135\end{aligned}$$

These approximate values compare reasonably well with the exact values which are, a natural frequency of 1.2 rad/s and a damping ratio of 0.11. Such a good comparison is not always achieved and merely emphasises once more, the validity of the assumptions about the dutch roll mode in this particular application. The implication is that at the flight condition of interest the roll to yaw ratio of the dutch roll mode in the DC-8 is significantly less than one and, indeed, this may be inferred from either Fig. 7.1 or 7.2.

## 7.4 FREQUENCY RESPONSE

It is useful, and sometimes necessary, to investigate the lateral–directional response properties of an aeroplane in the frequency domain. The reasons why such an investigation might be made are much the same as those given for the longitudinal case in Section 6.4. Again, the Bode diagram is the most commonly used graphical tool for lateral–directional frequency response analysis. The method of construction of the Bode diagram and its interpretation follow the general principles described in Section 6.4 and are not repeated here. Since it is difficult to generalise, a typical illustration of lateral–directional frequency response analysis is given in the following example.

### Example 7.3

The lateral–directional frequency response of the Douglas DC-8 aircraft is evaluated for the same flight condition as Examples 7.1 and 7.2. The total number of transfer functions which could be evaluated on a Bode diagram is ten, given by equations (7.12) and (7.13), and to create ten Bode diagrams would be prohibitively lengthy in the present context. Since the essential frequency response information can be obtained from a much smaller number of transfer functions the present example is limited to four transfer functions only. The chosen transfer functions were selected from equations (7.12) and (7.13); all are referred to aircraft wind axes and are repeated here for convenience

$$\frac{\phi(s)}{\xi(s)} = \frac{-1.62(s^2 + 0.362s + 1.359)}{(s + 0.0065)(s + 1.329)(s^2 + 0.254s + 1.433)} \text{ rad/rad (deg/deg)}$$

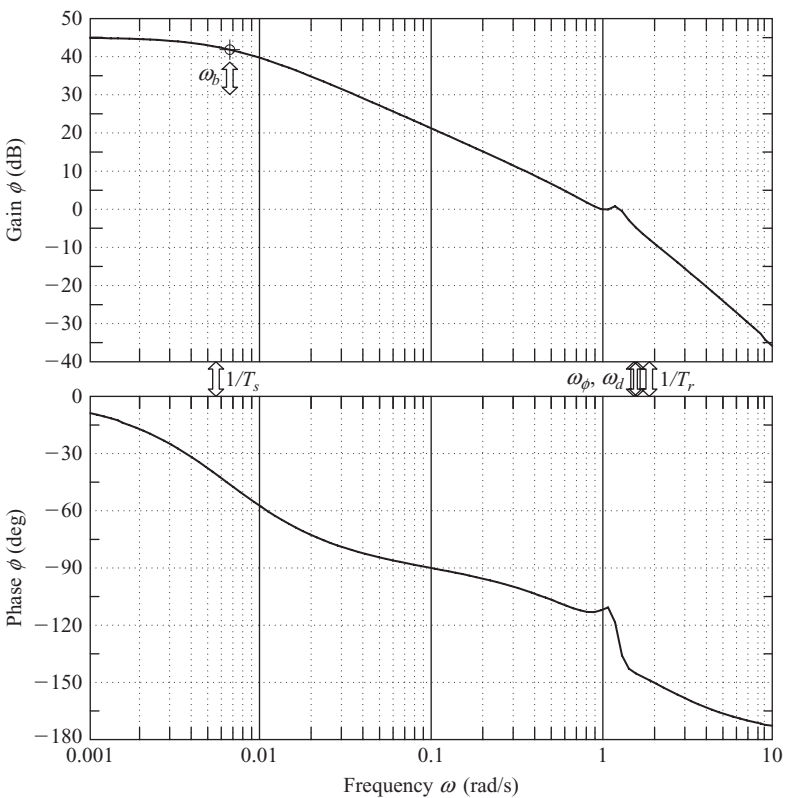
$$\frac{\beta(s)}{\xi(s)} = \frac{0.0188(s + 0.197)(s - 7.896)}{(s + 0.0065)(s + 1.329)(s^2 + 0.254s + 1.433)} \text{ rad/rad (deg/deg)} \quad (7.47)$$

$$\frac{r(s)}{\xi(s)} = \frac{-0.864(s + 1.335)(s^2 - 0.03s + 0.109)}{(s + 0.0065)(s + 1.329)(s^2 + 0.254s + 1.433)} \text{ rad/s/rad (deg/s/deg)}$$

$$\frac{p(s)}{\xi(s)} = \frac{0.392s(s + 1.85)(s - 2.566)}{(s + 0.0065)(s + 1.329)(s^2 + 0.254s + 1.433)} \text{ rad/s/rad (deg/s/deg)}$$

The first two transfer functions (7.47) describe lateral response to the lateral command (aileron) variable, the third transfer function describes directional response to the directional command (rudder) variable, the last transfer function was chosen to illustrate cross-coupling and describes lateral response to the directional command variable. Now consider the frequency response of each transfer function in turn.

The frequency response of roll attitude  $\phi$  to aileron input  $\xi$  is shown in Fig. 7.7. The most obvious features of the Bode diagram are the very high steady state gain, 45 dB, and the very small peak at the dutch roll frequency. The *roll-off* in phase



**Figure 7.7** DC-8 roll attitude frequency response to aileron.

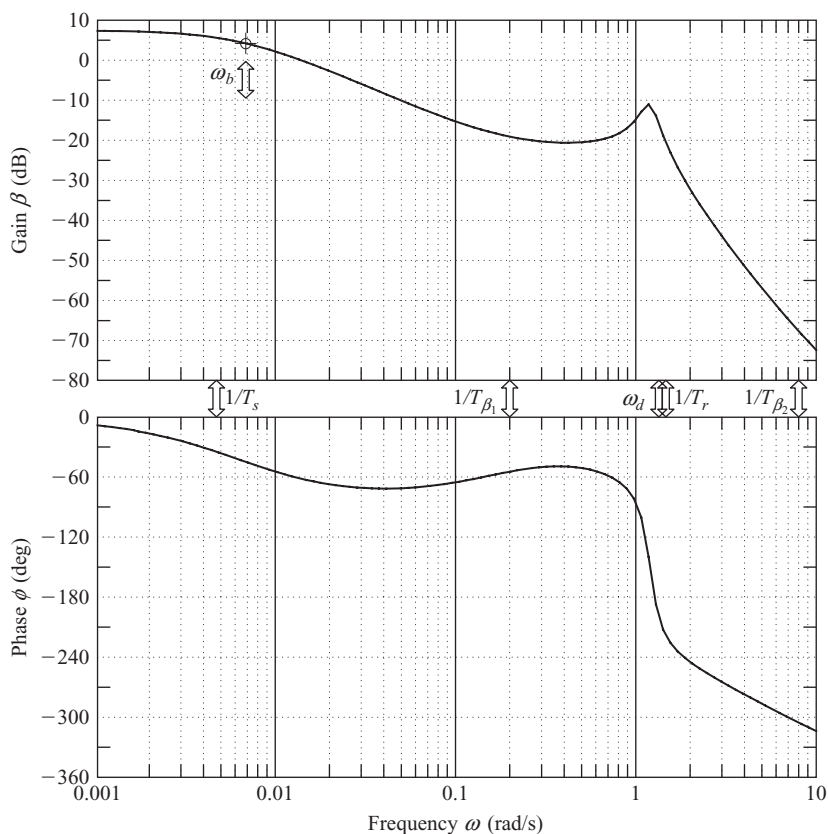
behaves quite conventionally in accordance with the transfer function properties. The high zero frequency gain corresponds with a gain ratio of approximately 180. This means that following a  $1^\circ$  aileron step input the aeroplane will settle at a roll attitude of  $-180^\circ$ , in other words inverted! Clearly, this is most inappropriate for a large civil transport aeroplane and serves as yet another illustration of the limitations of linear system modelling. Such a large amplitude excursion is definitely not a small perturbation and should not be regarded as such. However, the high zero frequency, or steady state, gain provides a good indication of the roll control sensitivity. As the control input frequency is increased the attitude response attenuates steadily with increasing phase lag, the useful bandwidth being a little above the spiral mode break frequency  $1/T_s$ . However, at all frequencies up to that corresponding with the roll subsidence mode break frequency,  $1/T_r$ , the aeroplane will respond to aileron since the gain is always greater than 0 dB; it is the steady reduction in control sensitivity that will be noticed by the pilot. Since the dutch roll damping ratio is relatively low at 0.11, an obvious peak might be expected in the gain plot at the dutch roll frequency. Clearly this is not the case. Inspection of the relevant transfer function in equation (7.47) shows that the second order numerator factor very nearly cancels the dutch roll roots in the denominator. This means that the dutch roll dynamics will not be very obvious in the roll attitude response to aileron in accordance with the observation. This conclusion is also confirmed by the time history response shown in Fig. 7.1. In fact the dutch roll cancellation is sufficiently close that it is permissible to write the transfer function in approximate form

$$\frac{\phi(s)}{\xi(s)} = \frac{-1.62}{(s + 0.0065)(s + 1.329)} \text{ rad/rad (deg/deg)} \quad (7.48)$$

with little loss of meaning. The time response plot and the Bode diagram derived from this approximate transfer function correspond closely with those derived from the full transfer function and may be interpreted to achieve the same conclusions for all practical purposes.

The frequency response of sideslip angle  $\beta$  to aileron input  $\xi$  is shown in Fig. 7.8 and corresponds with the second transfer function given in equation (7.47). Again, there are no real surprises here. The transfer function is non-minimum phase since the numerator term  $1/T_{\beta_2}$  is negative which introduces  $90^\circ$  of phase lag at the corresponding break frequency. In this response variable the dutch roll gain peak is clearly visible although at the dutch roll frequency the gain is attenuated by about  $-20$  dB which means that the pilot would see no significant oscillatory sideslip behaviour. Again, it is established that the usable bandwidth is a little higher than the spiral mode break frequency  $1/T_s$ .

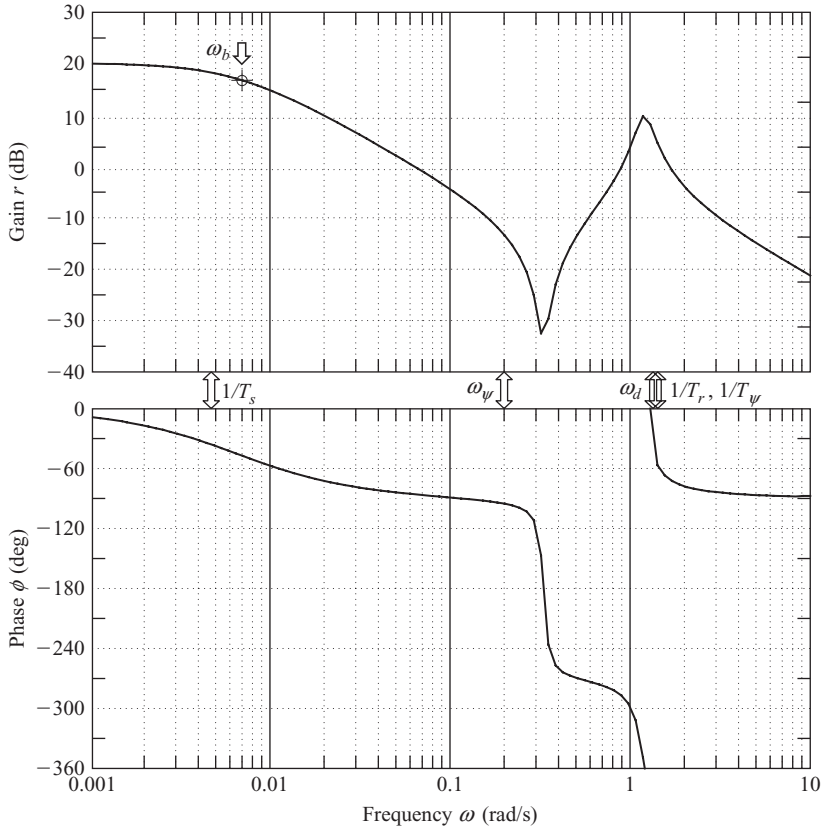
The frequency response of yaw rate  $r$  to rudder input  $\zeta$  is shown in Fig. 7.9. This transfer function describes the typical classical directional response to control and the frequency response, shown in Fig. 7.9, has some interesting features. The gain plot shows a steady but significant attenuation with increasing frequency to reach a minimum of about  $-30$  dB at  $\omega_\psi$ , the resonant frequency of the second order numerator factor. The gain rises rapidly with a further increase in frequency to reach a maximum of 10 dB at the dutch roll frequency only to decrease rapidly thereafter. At very low input frequencies the phase lag increases gently in accordance with the spiral mode dynamics until the effect of the second order numerator term becomes



**Figure 7.8** DC-8 sideslip angle frequency response to aileron.

apparent. The rate of change of phase is then very dramatic since the effective damping ratio of the second order numerator term is very small and negative. At the dutch roll frequency, approximately, the phase reaches  $-360^\circ$  and the response appears to be in phase again only to roll off smartly at higher frequency. Again, the effective bandwidth is a little higher than the spiral mode break frequency  $1/T_s$ . These unusual frequency response characteristics are easily appreciated in a flight demonstration.

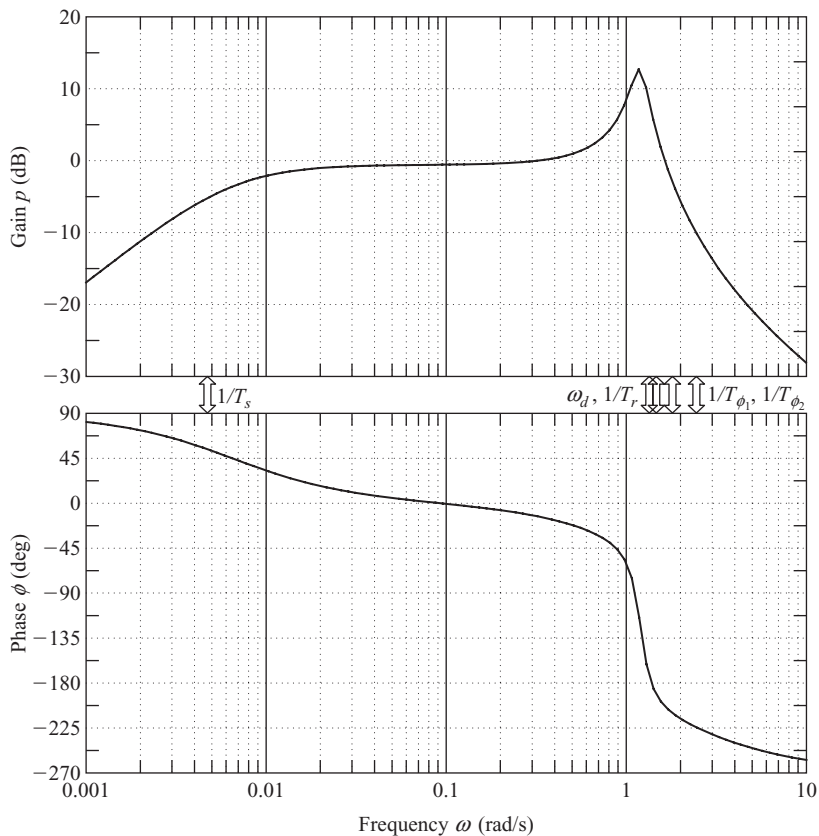
If the pilot approximates a sinusoidal rudder input by pedalling gently on the rudder pedals then, at very low frequencies approaching the steady state the yaw rate response will follow the input easily and obviously, since the gain is approximately 20 dB, and with very little phase lag. As he increases the frequency of his pedalling the response will lag the input and the magnitude of the response will reduce very quickly until there is no significant observable response. If he increases the frequency of his forcing yet further, then the aircraft will spring into life again as the dutch roll frequency (resonance) is reached when the yaw rate response will be approximately in phase with the input. At higher frequencies still the response will rapidly attenuate for good. The substantial dip in both gain and phase response with frequency, caused by the second order numerator factor, effectively isolates the dutch roll mode to a small window in the frequency band. This then makes it very easy for the pilot to identify and



**Figure 7.9** DC-8 yaw rate frequency response to rudder.

excite the dutch roll mode by rudder pedalling. This is very good for flight demonstration but may not be so good for handling if the dutch roll damping is low and the second order numerator factor is not too close in frequency to that of the dutch roll mode.

The frequency response of roll rate  $p$  to rudder input  $\zeta$  is shown in Fig. 7.10. This frequency response example is interesting since it represents a cross-coupling case. In the steady state, or equivalently at zero frequency, roll rate in response to a rudder input would not be expected. This is clearly evident on the gain plot where the gain is  $-\infty$  dB at zero frequency. This observation is driven by the zero in the numerator which also introduces  $90^\circ$  of phase lead at the very lowest frequencies. This zero also very nearly cancels with the spiral mode denominator root such that at input frequencies above the spiral mode break frequency  $1/T_s$  the response in both gain and phase is essentially *flat* until the effects of the remaining numerator and denominator roots come into play, all at frequencies around the dutch roll frequency. The dutch roll resonant peak in gain and the subsequent roll off in both gain and phase is absolutely classical and is easily interpreted. These frequency response observations correspond well with the response time history shown in Fig. 7.2 where the effects of the roll subsidence mode and the dutch roll mode are clearly visible, whilst the longer term convergence associated with the spiral mode is not visible at all. In this



**Figure 7.10** *DC-8 roll rate frequency response to rudder.*

example bandwidth tends to lose its meaning. However, it would not be unrealistic to suggest that the usable bandwidth is a little higher than the dutch roll mode frequency, provided the effects at very low frequency are ignored. This then assumes that the zero numerator factor cancels with the spiral mode denominator factor to give the approximate transfer function

$$\frac{p(s)}{\zeta(s)} = \frac{0.392(s + 1.85)(s - 2.566)}{(s + 1.329)(s^2 + 0.254s + 1.433)} \text{ rad/s/rad (deg/s/deg)} \tag{7.49}$$

As before, this approximate transfer function may be interpreted in both the time domain and in the frequency domain with little loss of meaning over the usable frequency band.

7.5 FLYING AND HANDLING QUALITIES

As with longitudinal stability the lateral–directional stability characteristics of the aeroplane are critically important in the determination of its flying and handling

qualities and there is no doubt that they must be correct. Traditionally the emphasis on lateral–directional flying and handling qualities has been much less than the emphasis on the longitudinal flying and handling qualities. Unlike the longitudinal flying and handling qualities the lateral–directional flying and handling qualities do not usually change significantly with flight condition, especially in the context of small perturbation modelling. So once they have been fixed by the aerodynamic design of the airframe they tend to remain more or less constant irrespective of flight condition. Any major lateral–directional departures from nominally small perturbations about trim are likely to be transient, under full pilot control and, consequently, unlikely to give rise to serious handling problems. However, this is not necessarily a safe assumption to make when considering highly augmented aircraft, a topic which is beyond the scope of the present discussion.

It is a recurrent theme in handling qualities work that short term dynamics are properly controlled by design. The typical frequencies involved in short term dynamics are similar to human pilot frequencies and their inadvertent mismatch is a sure recipe for potential handling problems. So for reasons similar to those discussed in greater detail in Section 6.5 referring to longitudinal dynamics, it is equally important that the lateral–directional short period stability modes be properly controlled. This may be interpreted to mean that the damping of both the roll subsidence mode and the dutch roll mode should be adequate.

The roll subsidence mode appears to the pilot as a lag in the response to control and, clearly, if the time constant should become too large roll response to control would become too sluggish. A large roll mode time constant is the direct result of low roll stability although the mode is usually stable as discussed in Section 7.2.1. Generally, acceptable levels of roll mode stability result in a time constant, or roll response lag which is almost imperceptible to the pilot. However, it is quite common to find aircraft in which the roll mode damping is inadequate but, it is unusual to find over damped aircraft.

The spiral mode, being a long period mode, does not usually influence short term handling significantly. When it is stable and its time constant is sufficiently long it has little, or no impact on flying and handling qualities. However, when it is unstable it manifests itself as a trimming problem since the aeroplane will continually attempt to diverge laterally. When the time constant of the mode is short it is more unstable, the rate of divergence becomes faster with a corresponding increase in pilot workload. Since the mode is generally so slow to develop the motion cues associated with it may well be imperceptible to the pilot. Thus a hazardous situation may easily arise if the external visual cues available to the pilot are poor or absent altogether, such as in IMC flight conditions. It is not unknown for inexperienced pilots to become disorientated in such circumstances with the inevitable outcome! Therefore the general requirement is that, the spiral mode should preferably be stable but, since this is difficult to achieve in many aeroplanes, when it is unstable the time constant should be greater than a defined minimum.

Since the dutch roll mode is a short period mode and is the directional equivalent of the longitudinal short period mode its importance to handling is similarly critical. Generally, it is essential that the dutch roll mode is stable and that its damping is greater than a defined minimum. Similarly tight constraints are placed on the permitted range of combinations of frequency and damping. However, a level of damping lower than that of the longitudinal short period mode is permitted. This is perhaps convenient



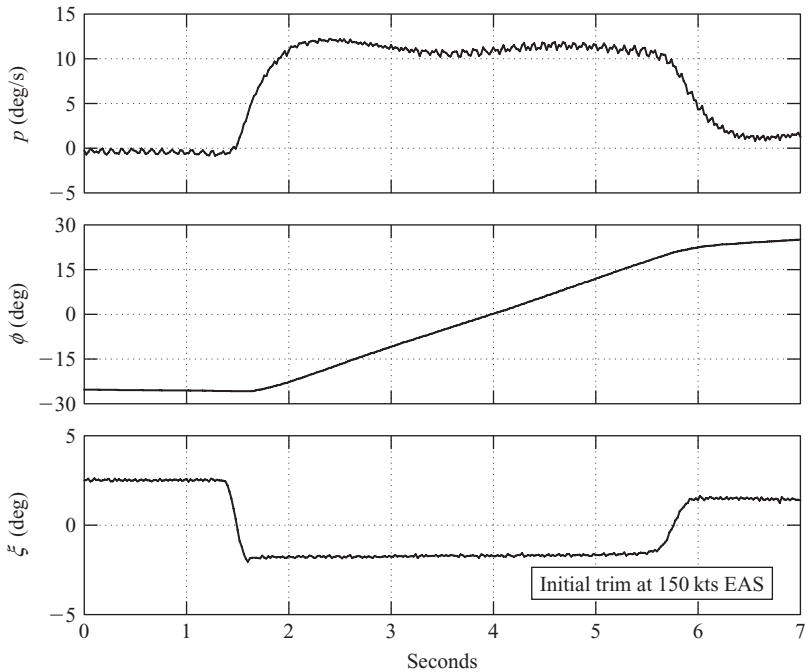
but is more likely to result from the design conflict with the spiral mode which must not have more than a limited degree of instability.

## 7.6 MODE EXCITATION

Unlike the longitudinal stability modes the lateral-directional stability modes usually exhibit a significant level of dynamic coupling and as a result it is more difficult to excite the modes independently for the purposes of demonstration or measurement. However, the lateral-directional stability modes may be excited selectively by the careful application of a sympathetic aileron or rudder input to the trimmed aircraft. Again, the methods developed for in-flight mode excitation reflect an intimate understanding of the dynamics involved and are generally easily adapted to the analytical environment. Because the lateral-directional stability modes usually exhibit a degree of dynamic coupling, the choice and shape of the disturbing input is critical to the mode under investigation. As always, standard experimental procedures have been developed in order to achieve consistency in the flight test or analytical process so that meaningful comparative studies may be made.

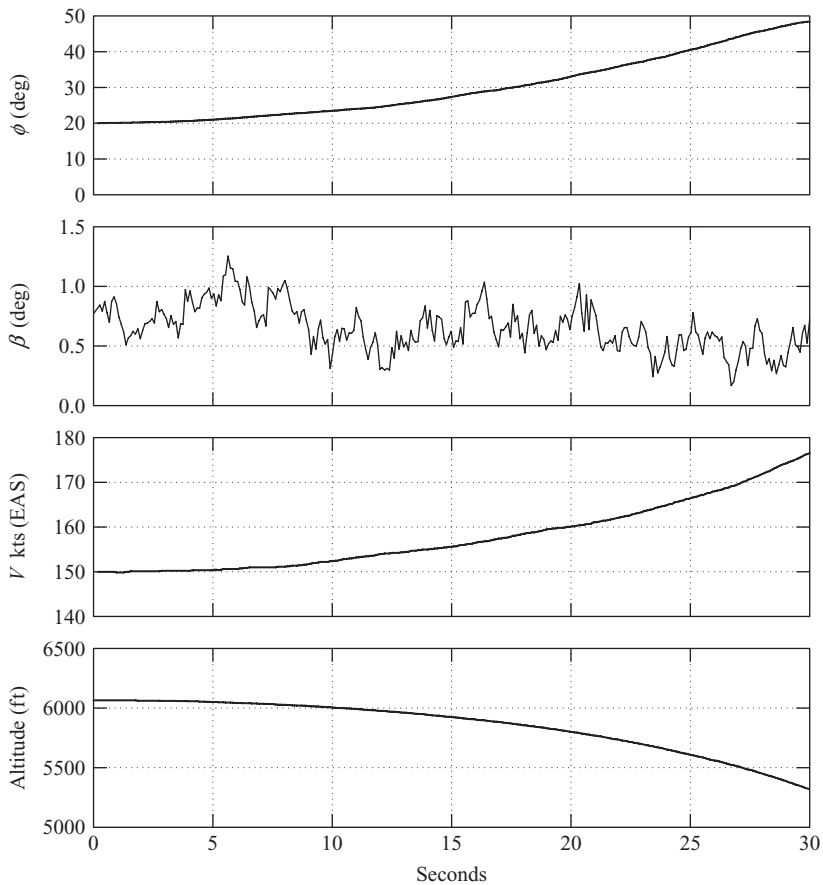
The roll subsidence mode may be excited by applying a short duration square pulse to the aileron, the other controls remaining fixed at their trim settings. The magnitude and duration of the pulse must be carefully chosen if the aeroplane is not to roll too rapidly through a large attitude change and thereby exceed the limit of small perturbation motion. Since the mode involves almost pure rolling motion only no significant motion coupling will be seen in the relatively short time scale of the mode. Therefore, to see the classical characteristics of the roll subsidence mode it is only necessary to observe roll response for a few seconds. An example of a roll response showing the roll subsidence mode recorded during a flight test exercise in a Handley Page Jetstream aircraft is shown in Fig. 7.11. The input aileron pulse is clearly seen and has a magnitude of about  $4^\circ$  and duration of about 4 s. The shape of this input will have been established by the pilot by trial and error since the ideal input is very much aircraft dependent. The effect of the roll mode time constant is clearly visible since it governs the exponential rise in roll rate  $p$  as the response attempts to follow the leading edge of the input  $\xi$ . The same effect is seen again in reverse when the input is returned to its datum at the end of the pulse. The barely perceptible oscillation in roll rate during the “steady part” of the response is, in fact, due to a small degree of coupling with the dutch roll mode.

In order to conduct the flight experiment without large excursions in roll attitude  $\phi$  it is usual to first establish the aircraft in a steady turn with, in this illustration,  $-30^\circ$  of roll attitude. On application of the input pulse the aircraft rolls steadily through to  $+30^\circ$  of roll attitude when the motion is terminated by returning the aileron to datum. This is also clearly visible in Fig. 7.11. The effect of the roll mode time constant on the roll attitude response is to smooth the entry to, and exit from the steady part of the response. Since the roll mode time constant is small, around 0.4 s for the Jetstream, its effect is only just visible in the roll attitude response. It is interesting to observe that the steady part of the roll response is achieved when the moment due to the damping in roll becomes established at a value equal and opposite to the disturbing moment in roll caused by the aileron deflection. Clearly, therefore, the roll subsidence mode governs the transient entry to, and exit from all rolling motion.



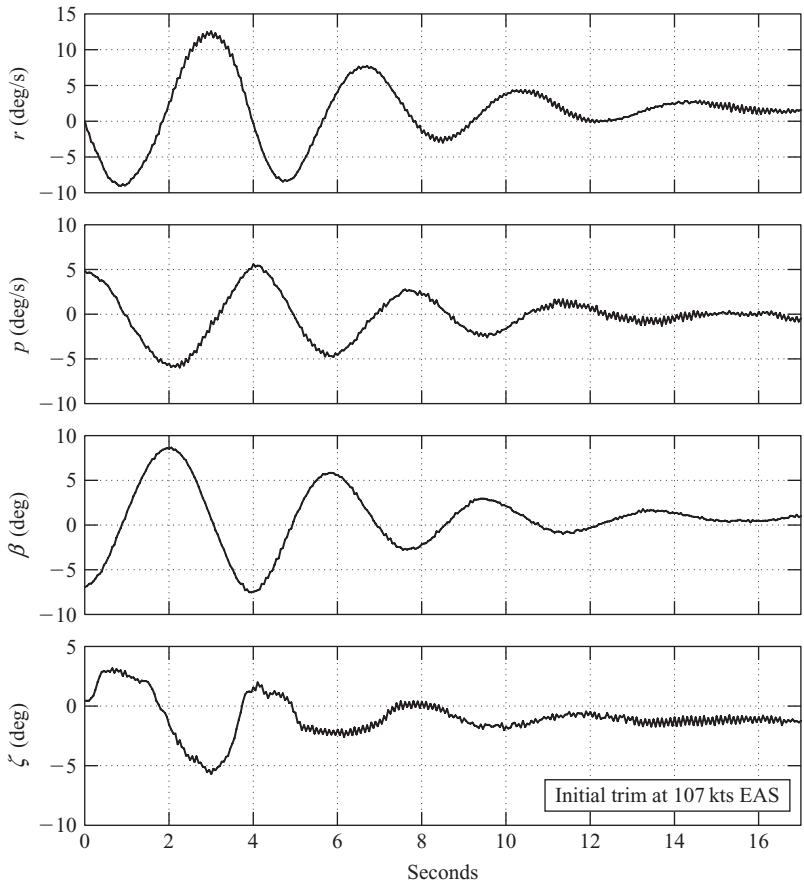
**Figure 7.11** *Flight recording of the roll subsidence mode.*

The spiral mode may be excited by applying a small step input to rudder  $\zeta$ , the remaining controls being held at their trim settings. The aeroplane responds by starting to turn, the wing on the inside of the turn starts to drop and sideslip develops in the direction of the turn. When the roll attitude has reached about  $20^\circ$  the rudder is gently returned to datum and the aeroplane left to its own devices. When the spiral mode is stable the aeroplane will slowly recover wings level flight, the recovery being exponential with spiral mode time constant. When the mode is unstable the coupled roll-yaw-sideslip departure will continue to develop exponentially with spiral mode time constant. An example of an unstable spiral mode, captured from the time the disturbing rudder input is returned gently to datum, and recorded during a flight test exercise in a Handley Page Jetstream aircraft is shown in Fig. 7.12. The slow exponential divergence is clearly visible in all recorded variables, with the possible exception of sideslip angle  $\beta$  which is rather noisy. In any event the magnitude of sideslip would normally be limited to a small value by the weathercock effect of the fin. Although speed and altitude play no part in determining the characteristic of the mode, the exponential departure in these variables is a classical, and very visible, consequence of an unstable spiral mode. Once excited, since the aircraft is no longer in wings level flight, lift is insufficient to maintain altitude and so an accelerating descent follows and the spiral flight path is determined by the aeromechanics of the mode. The first 30 s of the descent is shown in Fig. 7.12. Obviously, the departure must be terminated after a short time if the safety of the aeroplane and its occupants is not to be jeopardised.



**Figure 7.12** *Flight recording of the spiral mode departure.*

Ideally, the dutch roll mode may be excited by applying a doublet to the rudder pedals with a period matched to that of the mode, all other controls remaining at their trim settings. In practice the pilot pedals continuously and cyclically on the rudder pedal and by adjusting the frequency it is easy to find the resonant condition. See the related comments in Example 7.3 and note that the dutch roll frequency is comfortably within the human bandwidth. In this manner a forced oscillation may easily be sustained. On ceasing the forcing input the free transient characteristics of the dutch roll mode may be seen. This free response is shown in the flight recording in Fig. 7.13 which was made in a Handley Page Jetstream aircraft. The rudder input  $\zeta$  shows the final doublet before ceasing the forcing at about 5 s, the obvious oscillatory rudder motion after 5 s is due to the cyclic aerodynamic load on the free rudder. The classical damped oscillatory motion is clearly visible in the variables shown, yaw rate  $r$ , roll rate  $p$  and sideslip angle  $\beta$ . The motion would also be clearly evident in both roll and yaw attitude variables which are not shown. Note the relative magnitudes of, and the phase shift between yaw rate  $r$  and roll rate  $p$ , observations which are consistent with the classical physical explanation of the mode dynamics.



**Figure 7.13** *Flight recording of the dutch roll mode.*

As for the longitudinal modes discussed in Section 6.6 the above flight recordings of the lateral–directional stability modes illustrate the *controls free* dynamic stability characteristics. The same exercise could be repeated with the controls held fixed following the disturbing input. Obviously, in this event the *controls fixed* dynamic stability characteristics would be observed and, in general, the differences between the responses would be small. To re-iterate the important comments made in Section 6.6, controls free dynamic response is only possible in aeroplanes with reversible controls which includes most small classical aeroplanes. Virtually all larger modern aircraft have powered controls, driven by electronic flight control systems, which are effectively irreversible and which means that they are only capable of exhibiting controls fixed dynamic response. Thus, today, most theoretical modelling and analysis is concerned with controls fixed dynamics only, as is the case throughout this book. However, a discussion of the differences between controls fixed and controls free aeroplane dynamics may be found in Hancock (1995).

When it is required to investigate the dynamics of a single mode in isolation analytically, the best approach is to emulate flight test practice as far as that is possible.

It is necessary to choose the most appropriate transfer functions to show the dominant response variables in the mode of interest. For example, the roll subsidence mode may only be observed sensibly in the dominant response variable  $p$  and, to a lesser extent, in  $\phi$ . Similarly for the spiral and dutch roll modes, it is important to observe the motion in those variables which are dominant, and hence most visible in the mode dynamics. It is also essential to apply a control input disturbance sympathetic to the mode dynamics and it is essential to observe the response for an appropriate period of time. Otherwise the dynamics of interest will inevitably be obscured by motion coupling effects. For example, Fig. 7.11 shows both the roll subsidence mode and the dutch roll mode but, the excitation, choice of output variables and time scale were chosen to optimise the recording of the roll subsidence mode. The form of the control input is not usually difficult to arrange in analytical work since most software packages have built-in impulse, step and pulse functions, whilst more esoteric functions can usually be programmed by the user. For the analysis of the lateral-directional mode dynamics especially, this kind of informed approach is critically important if the best possible visualisation of the modes and their associated dynamics are to be obtained.

## REFERENCES

- Hancock, G.J. 1995: *An Introduction to the Flight Dynamics of Rigid Aeroplanes*. Ellis Horwood Ltd., Hemel Hempstead.
- Teper, G.L. 1969: *Aircraft Stability and Control Data*. Systems Technology, Inc., STI Technical Report 176-1. NASA Contractor Report, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington D.C. 20546.

## PROBLEMS

1. Describe the possible modes of lateral-directional motion of an aircraft when disturbed slightly from steady flight.

An aircraft in steady horizontal flight is disturbed slightly in the lateral plane. If the inertia forces associated with the angular accelerations in the resulting motion are neglected, as well as the components of the acceleration and aerodynamic forces along the  $oy$  axis, show that the resulting motion is either a divergence or a subsidence depending in general on the sign of  $(L_v N_r - L_r N_v)$ . Describe how the stability of an aircraft in this mode will change with increase of fin size. (CU 1979)

2. A transport aircraft whose wing span is 35.8 m is flying at 262 kts at an altitude where the lateral relative density parameter  $\mu_2 = 24.4$ . The dimensionless controls fixed lateral-directional characteristic equation is

$$\lambda^4 + 5.8\lambda^3 + 20.3\lambda^2 + 79.0\lambda + 0.37 = 0$$

- (i) What can be deduced about the lateral-directional stability of the aircraft from inspection of the characteristic equation?
- (ii) Solve the characteristic equation approximately; determine estimates for the time constants of the non-oscillatory modes and the frequency and damping ratio of the oscillatory mode.
- (iii) Comment on the acceptability of this aircraft. (CU 1980)

3. (i) What is the lateral–directional weathercock stability of an aircraft?  
 (ii) State the main aerodynamic contributions to weathercock stability.  
 (CU 1982)
4. The Navion is a small light aeroplane of conventional layout and in a low speed level flight condition the coefficients of the dimensionless lateral–directional stability quartic are given by

$$\lambda^4 + B_2\lambda^3 + C_2\lambda^2 + D_2\lambda + E_2 = 0$$

where

$$B_2 = 20.889$$

$$C_2 = 46.714 - k_v$$

$$D_2 = 115.120 - 18.636k_v$$

$$E_2 = 55.570 + 1.994k_v$$

$$\text{and } k_v = -\frac{\mu_2 N_v}{i_z}$$

The lateral relative density parameter  $\mu_2 = 11.937$ , and the dimensionless moment of inertia in yaw  $i_z = 0.037$ . The quartic factorises to

$$(\lambda + B_2) \left( \lambda + \frac{E_2}{D_2} \right) (\lambda^2 + k_1\lambda + k_2) = 0$$

Show that if the fin were made too large the aircraft would become dynamically unstable. What would happen to the aircraft if a critical value were exceeded?

(CU 1983)

5. Describe and explain the physical characteristics of the roll subsidence stability mode.

Assuming the motion associated with the mode comprises pure rolling only write down the equation of motion assuming the rudder to be fixed ( $\zeta = 0$ ). By taking the Laplace transform of this equation show that the roll control transfer function is given by

$$\frac{p(s)}{\xi(s)} = \frac{-k}{(1 + sT_r)}$$

where  $k = \frac{\ddot{L}_\xi}{\ddot{L}_p}$  and  $T_r = -I_x / \dot{L}_p$ . State any assumptions made in obtaining the transfer function.

Obtain the inverse Laplace transform of the transfer function to show that the roll rate response to a unit step of aileron is given by

$$p(t) = -k \left( 1 - e^{\frac{t}{T_r}} \right)$$

The Republic F-105 Thunderchief aircraft has a wing span of 10.4 m and moment of inertia in roll of  $13965 \text{ kg m}^2$ . In a cruise flight condition at Mach 0.9 at an altitude of 35,000 ft, the dimensionless derivatives have the following

values,  $L_p = -0.191$  and  $L_{\xi} = -0.029$ . Sketch the roll rate response to a  $1^\circ$  step of aileron deflection and comment on the roll handling of the aircraft.

(CU 1986)

6. The aircraft described below is flying at a true airspeed of 150 m/s at sea level. At this flight condition the aircraft is required to have a steady roll rate of 60 deg/s, when each aileron is deflected through 10 deg. Assuming that the out-board edges of the ailerons are at the wing tip, calculate the required aileron span. If the ailerons produce 17,500 Nm of adverse yawing moment, calculate the rudder deflection required for trim.

*Aircraft data:*

Rectangular unswept wing		Fin	
	Span = 15 m		Area = 3 m <sup>2</sup>
	Area = 27 m <sup>2</sup>		Moment arm from cg = 6 m
	$L_p = -0.2$	Rudder	Area = 1.2 m <sup>2</sup>
Aileron	$dC_L/d\xi = 2 \text{ 1/rad}$		$dC_L/d\zeta = 2.3 \text{ 1/rad}$

(LU 2001)

7. Using a simple model show that the time to half amplitude of the roll subsidence mode may be approximated by,

$$t_{1/2} = -\frac{I_x}{L_p} \ln(2)$$

Given that the rolling moment due to roll rate derivative may be written,

$$\dot{L}_p = -\rho V_0 \int_0^s \left( C_D + \frac{dC_L}{d\alpha} \right) c_y y^2 dy$$

Determine the time to half amplitude of the roll subsidence mode for an aircraft with the following characteristics, when it is flying at sea level at 100 m/s.

Wing span = 10 m	$dC_L/d\alpha$ at root = 5.7 1/rad
Wing root chord = 1.5 m	$dC_L/d\alpha$ at tip = 5.7 1/rad
Wing tip chord = 0.75 m	$C_D = 0.005$ (constant)
Inertia in roll = 8000 kg m <sup>2</sup>	

Assume  $dC_L/d\alpha$  varies linearly along the span.

(LU 2002)

8. For the aircraft described below, determine the value of wing dihedral required to make the spiral mode neutrally stable. The rolling moment due to sideslip derivative is given by

$$L_v = -\frac{1}{Ss} \int_0^s c_y a_y \Gamma y dy$$

and the time to half (double) amplitude for the spiral mode is given by

$$t_{1/2} = \frac{V_0}{g} \left( \frac{L_v N_p - L_p N_v}{L_v N_r - L_r N_v} \right) \ln(2)$$

*Aircraft data:*


---

Wing area	$S = 52 \text{ m}^2$
Wing span	$B = 14.8 \text{ m}$
Wing root chord	$5.0 \text{ m}$
Wing tip chord	$2.0 \text{ m}$
Fin area	$S_F = 8.4 \text{ m}^2$
Fin roll arm	$h_F = 1.8 \text{ m}$
Wing lift-curve slope	$a_y = 3.84 \text{ 1/rad}$
Fin lift curve slope	$a_{lF} = 2.2 \text{ 1/rad}$
$L_r$	$-0.120$
$N_r$	$-0.120$
$N_v$	$0.158$

---

Discuss how the geometry of the wing and fin influence the stability of the spiral mode. (LU 2003)



---

## Chapter 8

# Manoeuvrability

### 8.1 INTRODUCTION

#### 8.1.1 Manoeuvring flight

What is a manoeuvre? An aeroplane executing aerobatics in a vast blue sky or, aeroplanes engaged in aerial combat are the kind of images associated with manoeuvring flight. By their very nature such manoeuvres are difficult to quantify, especially when it is required to describe manoeuvrability in an analytical framework. In reality most manoeuvres are comparatively mundane and simply involve changing from one trimmed flight condition to another. When a pilot wishes to manoeuvre away from the current flight condition he applies control inputs which upset the equilibrium trim state by producing forces and moments to manoeuvre the aeroplane toward the desired flight condition. The temporary out of trim forces and moments cause the aeroplane to *accelerate* in a sense determined by the combined action of the control inputs. Thus manoeuvring flight is sometimes called *accelerated flight* and is defined as the condition when the airframe is subject to temporary, or transient, out of trim linear and angular accelerations resulting from the displacement of the controls relative to their trim settings. In analytical terms, the manoeuvre is regarded as an increment in steady motion, over and above the initial trim state, in response to an increment in control angle.

The main aerodynamic force producing device in an aeroplane is the wing, and wing lift acts normal to the direction of flight in the plane of symmetry. Normal manoeuvring involves rotating the airframe in roll, pitch and yaw to point the lift vector in the desired direction and the simultaneous adjustment of both angle of attack and speed enables the lift force to generate the acceleration to manoeuvre. For example, in turning flight the aeroplane is rolled to the desired bank angle when the horizontal component of lift causes the aeroplane to turn in the desired direction. Simultaneous aft displacement of the pitch stick is required to generate pitch rate, which in turn generates an increase in angle of attack to produce more lift such that the vertical component is sufficient to balance the weight of the aeroplane, and hence to maintain level flight in the turn. The requirements for simple turning flight are illustrated in Example 2.3. Thus manoeuvrability is mainly concerned with the ability to rotate about aircraft axes, the modulation of the normal or lift force and the modulation of the axial or thrust force. The use of lateral sideforce to manoeuvre is not common in conventional aeroplanes since it is aerodynamically inefficient and it is both unnatural and uncomfortable for the pilot. The principal aerodynamic manoeuvring force is therefore lift, which acts in the plane of symmetry of the aeroplane, and this is controlled by operating the control column in the pitch sense. When the pilot pulls

back on the pitch stick the aeroplane pitches up to generate an increased lift force and since this results in out-of-trim normal acceleration the pilot senses, and is very sensitive to, the change in acceleration. The pilot senses what appears to be an increase in the earth's gravitational acceleration  $g$  and is said to be *pulling g*.

### 8.1.2 Stability

Aircraft stability is generally concerned with the requirement that trimmed equilibrium flight may be achieved and that small transient upsets from equilibrium shall decay to zero. However, in manoeuvring flight the *transient upset* is the deliberate result following a control input, it may not be small and may well be prolonged. In the manoeuvre the aerodynamic forces and moments may be significantly different from the steady trim values and it is essential that the changes do not impair the stability of the aeroplane. In other words, there must be no tendency for the aeroplane to diverge in manoeuvring flight.

The classical theory of manoeuvrability is generally attributed to Gates and Lyon (1944) and various interpretations of that original work may be found in most books on aircraft stability and control. Perhaps one of the most comprehensive and accessible summaries of the theory is included in Babister (1961). In this chapter the subject is introduced at the most basic level in order to provide an understanding of the concepts involved since they are critically important in the broader considerations of flying and handling qualities. The original work makes provision for the effects of compressibility. In the following analysis subsonic flight only is considered in the interests of simplicity and hence in the promotion of understanding.

The traditional analysis of *manoeuvre stability* is based on the concept of the steady manoeuvre in which the aeroplane is subject to a steady normal acceleration in response to a pitch control input. Although rather contrived, this approach does enable the manoeuvre stability of an aeroplane to be explained analytically. The only realistic manoeuvres which can be flown at constant normal acceleration are the inside or outside loop and the steady banked turn. For the purpose of analysis the loop is simplified to a pull-up, or push-over, which is just a small segment of the circular flight path. Whichever manoeuvre is analysed, the resulting conditions for stability are the same.

Since the steady acceleration is constrained to the plane of symmetry the problem simplifies to the analysis of *longitudinal manoeuvre stability*, and since the motion is steady the analysis is a simple extension of that applied to *longitudinal static stability* as described in Chapter 3. Consequently, the analysis leads to the concept of the *longitudinal manoeuvre margin*, the stability margin in manoeuvring flight, which in turn gives rise to the corresponding control parameters *stick displacement per g* and *stick force per g*.

### 8.1.3 Aircraft handling

It is not difficult to appreciate that the manoeuvrability of an airframe is a critical factor in its overall flying and handling qualities. Too much manoeuvre stability means that large control displacements and forces are needed to encourage the development of the normal acceleration vital to effective manoeuvring. On the other hand, too little

manoeuvre stability implies that an enthusiastic pilot could overstress the airframe by the application of excessive levels of normal acceleration. Clearly, the difficult balance between control power, manoeuvre stability, static stability and dynamic stability must be correctly controlled over the entire flight envelope of the aeroplane.

Today, considerations of manoeuvrability in the context of aircraft handling have moved on from the simple analysis of normal acceleration response to controls alone. Important additional considerations concern the accompanying roll, pitch and yaw rates and accelerations that may be achieved from control inputs since these determine how quickly a manoeuvre can become established. Manoeuvre entry is also *coloured* by transients associated with the short term dynamic stability modes. The aggressiveness with which a pilot may fly a manoeuvre and the motion cues available to him also contribute to his perception of the overall handling characteristics of the aeroplane. The “picture” therefore becomes very complex, and it is further complicated by the introduction of flight control systems to the aeroplane. The subject of *aircraft agility* is a relatively new and exciting topic of research which embraces the ideas mentioned above and which is, unfortunately, beyond the scope of the present book.

### 8.1.4 The steady symmetric manoeuvre

The analysis of longitudinal manoeuvre stability is based on steady motion which results in constant additional normal acceleration and, as mentioned above, the simplest such manoeuvre to analyse is the pull-up. In symmetric flight inertial normal acceleration, referred to the *cg*, is given by equation (5.39):

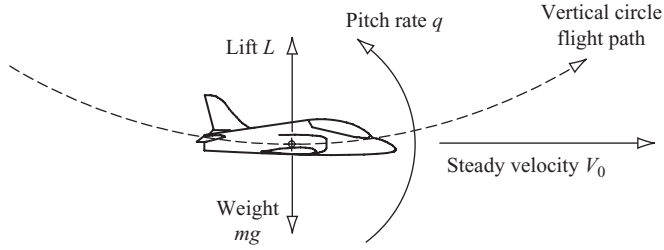
$$a_z = \dot{w} - qU_e \quad (8.1)$$

Since the manoeuvre is steady  $\dot{w} = 0$  and the aeroplane must fly a steady pitch rate in order to generate the normal acceleration required to manoeuvre. A steady turn enables this condition to be maintained *ad infinitum* in flight but is less straightforward to analyse. In symmetric flight, a short duration pull-up can be used to represent the lower segment of a continuous circular flight path in the vertical plane since a continuous loop is not practical for many aeroplanes.

It is worth noting that many modern combat aeroplanes and some advanced civil transport aeroplanes have flight control systems which feature *direct lift control* (DLC). In such aeroplanes pitch rate is not an essential prerequisite to the generation of normal acceleration since the wing is fitted with a system of flaps for producing lift directly. However, in some applications it is common to mix the DLC flap control with conventional elevator control in order to improve manoeuvrability, manoeuvre entry in particular. The manoeuvrability of aeroplanes fitted with DLC control systems may be significantly enhanced although its analysis may become rather more complex.

## 8.2 THE STEADY PULL-UP MANOEUVRE

An aeroplane flying initially in steady level flight at speed  $V_0$  is subject to a small elevator input  $\delta\eta$  which causes it to pull up with steady pitch rate  $q$ . Consider the



**Figure 8.1** A symmetric pull-up manoeuvre.

situation when the aircraft is at the lowest point of the vertical circle flight path as shown in Fig. 8.1.

In order to sustain flight in the vertical circle it is necessary that the lift  $L$  balances not only the weight  $mg$  but the centrifugal force also, thus the lift is greater than the weight and

$$L = nmg \quad (8.2)$$

where  $n$  is the normal load factor. Thus the normal load factor quantifies the total lift necessary to maintain the manoeuvre and in steady level flight  $n = 1$ . The centrifugal force balance is therefore given by

$$L - mg = mV_0q \quad (8.3)$$

and the incremental normal load factor may be derived directly:

$$\delta n = (n - 1) = \frac{V_0q}{g} \quad (8.4)$$

Now as the aircraft is pitching up steadily the tailplane experiences an increase in incidence  $\delta\alpha_T$  due to the pitch manoeuvre as indicated in Fig. 8.2.

Since small perturbation motion is assumed the increase in tailplane incidence is given by

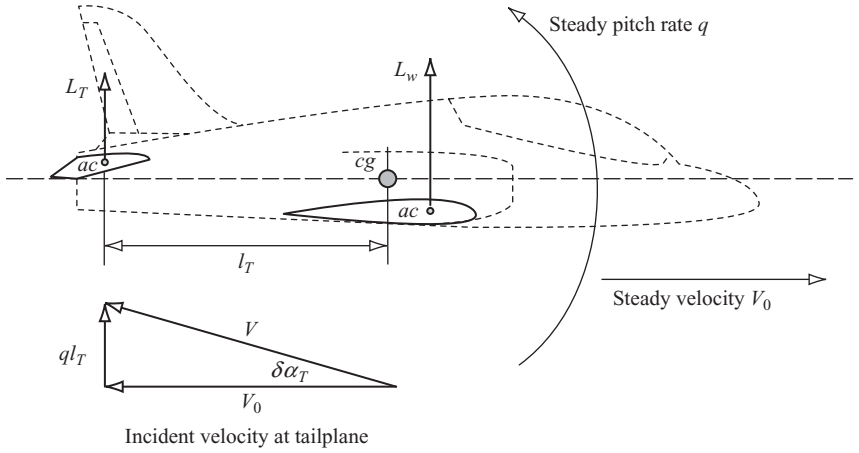
$$\delta\alpha_T \cong \tan \delta\alpha_T = \frac{ql_T}{V_0} \quad (8.5)$$

where  $l_T$  is the moment arm of the aerodynamic centre of the tailplane with respect to the centre of rotation in pitch, the  $cg$ . Eliminating pitch rate  $q$  from equations (8.4) and (8.5),

$$\delta\alpha_T = \frac{(n - 1)gl_T}{V_0^2} \quad (8.6)$$

Now, in the steady level flight condition about which the manoeuvre is executed the lift and weight are equal whence

$$V_0^2 = \frac{2mg}{\rho SC_{L_w}} \quad (8.7)$$



**Figure 8.2** Incremental tailplane incidence in pull-up manoeuvre.

where  $C_{L_w}$  is the steady level flight value of wing-body lift coefficient. Thus from equations (8.6) and (8.7),

$$\delta\alpha_T = \frac{(n-1)\rho S C_{L_w} l_T}{2m} = \frac{(n-1)C_{L_w} l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} \equiv \frac{\delta C_{L_w} l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} \quad (8.8)$$

where  $\mu_1$  is the *longitudinal relative density parameter* and is defined:

$$\mu_1 = \frac{m}{\frac{1}{2}\rho S \bar{c}} \quad (8.9)$$

and the increment in lift coefficient, alternatively referred to as incremental “g”, necessary to sustain the steady manoeuvre is given by

$$\delta C_{L_w} = (n-1)C_{L_w} \quad (8.10)$$

Care should be exercised when using the longitudinal relative density parameter since various definitions are in common use.

### 8.3 THE PITCHING MOMENT EQUATION

Subject to the same assumptions about thrust, drag, speed effects and so on, in the steady symmetric manoeuvre the pitching moment equation in coefficient form given by equation (3.7) applies and may be written:

$$C'_m = C_{m_0} + C'_{L_w}(h - h_0) - C'_{L_T} \bar{V}_T \quad (8.11)$$

where a dash indicates the manoeuvring value of the coefficient and,

$$\begin{aligned} C'_m &= C_m + \delta C_m \\ C'_{L_w} &= C_{L_w} + \delta C_{L_w} \equiv n C_{L_w} \\ C'_{L_T} &= C_{L_T} + \delta C_{L_T} \end{aligned}$$

where,  $C_m$ ,  $C_{L_w}$  and  $C_{L_T}$  denote the steady trim values of the coefficients and  $\delta C_m$ ,  $\delta C_{L_w}$  and  $\delta C_{L_T}$  denote the increments in the coefficients required to manoeuvre.

The corresponding expression for the tailplane lift coefficient is given by equation (3.8) which, for manoeuvring flight, may be written

$$C'_{L_T} = a_1 \alpha'_T + a_2 \eta' + a_3 \beta_\eta \quad (8.12)$$

It is assumed that the tailplane has a symmetric aerofoil section,  $a_0 = 0$ , and that the tab angle  $\beta_\eta$  is held at the constant steady trim value throughout the manoeuvre. In other words, the manoeuvre is the result of elevator input only. Thus, using the above notation,

$$\alpha'_T = \alpha_T + \delta \alpha_T$$

$$\eta' = \eta + \delta \eta$$

Tailplane incidence is given by equation (3.11) and in the manoeuvre this may be written:

$$\alpha_T = \frac{C'_{L_w}}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) + \eta_T \quad (8.13)$$

Total tailplane incidence in the manoeuvre is therefore given by the sum of equations (8.8) and (8.13):

$$\alpha'_T = \frac{C'_{L_w}}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) + \eta_T + \frac{\delta C_{L_w} l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} \quad (8.14)$$

Substituting for  $\alpha'_T$  in equation (8.12) the expression for tailplane lift coefficient in the manoeuvre may be written:

$$C'_{L_T} = \frac{C'_{L_w} a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) + a_1 \eta_T + \frac{\delta C_{L_w} a_1 l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} + a_2 \eta' + a_3 \beta_\eta \quad (8.15)$$

Substitute the expression for tailplane lift coefficient, equation (8.15), into equation (8.11), and after some re-arrangement the pitching moment equation may be written:

$$C'_m = C_{m_0} + C'_{L_w} (h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( \frac{C'_{L_w} a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) + a_1 \eta_T + \frac{\delta C_{L_w} a_1 l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} + a_2 \eta' + a_3 \beta_\eta \right) \quad (8.16)$$

Equation (8.16) describes the total pitching moment in the manoeuvre. To obtain the incremental pitching moment equation which describes the manoeuvre effects only it is first necessary to replace the “dashed” variables and coefficients in equation (8.16)

with their equivalent expressions. Then, after some re-arrangement equation (8.16) may be written:

$$C_m + \delta C_m = \left( C_{m_0} + C_{L_w}(h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( \frac{C_{L_w} a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) + a_1 \eta_T + a_2 \eta + a_3 \beta_\eta \right) \right) + \left( \delta C_{L_w}(h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( \frac{\delta C_{L_w} a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) + \frac{\delta C_{L_w} a_1 l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} + a_2 \delta \eta \right) \right) \quad (8.17)$$

Now in the steady equilibrium flight condition about which the manoeuvre is executed the pitching moment is zero therefore

$$C_m = C_{m_0} + C_{L_w}(h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( \frac{C_{L_w} a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) + a_1 \eta_T + a_2 \eta + a_3 \beta_\eta \right) = 0 \quad (8.18)$$

and equation (8.17) simplifies to that describing the incremental pitching moment coefficient:

$$\delta C_m = \delta C_{L_w}(h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( \frac{\delta C_{L_w} a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) + \frac{\delta C_{L_w} a_1 l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} + a_2 \delta \eta \right) \quad (8.19)$$

## 8.4 LONGITUDINAL MANOEUVRE STABILITY

As for longitudinal static stability, discussed in Chapter 3, in order to achieve a stable manoeuvre the following condition must be satisfied:

$$\frac{dC'_m}{dC'_{L_w}} < 0 \quad (8.20)$$

and for the manoeuvre to remain steady then

$$C'_m = 0 \quad (8.21)$$

Analysis and interpretation of these conditions leads to the definition of *controls fixed manoeuvre stability* and *controls free manoeuvre stability* which correspond with the parallel concepts derived in the analysis of longitudinal static stability.

### 8.4.1 Controls fixed stability

The total pitching moment equation (8.16) may be written:

$$C'_m = C_{m_0} + C'_{L_w}(h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( \frac{C'_{L_w} a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) + a_1 \eta_T + \frac{(C'_{L_w} - C_{L_w}) a_1 l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} + a_2 \eta' + a_3 \beta_\eta \right) \quad (8.22)$$

and since, by definition, the controls are held fixed in the manoeuvre:

$$\frac{d\eta'}{dC'_{L_w}} = 0$$

Applying the condition for stability, equation (8.20), to equation (8.22) and noting that  $C_{L_w}$  and  $\beta_\eta$  are constant at their steady level flight values and that  $\eta_T$  is also a constant of the aircraft configuration then

$$\frac{dC'_m}{dC'_{L_w}} = (h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( \frac{a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) + \frac{a_1 l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} \right) \quad (8.23)$$

Or, writing,

$$H_m = -\frac{dC'_m}{dC'_{L_w}} = h_m - h \quad (8.24)$$

where  $H_m$  is the *controls fixed manoeuvre margin* and the location of the *controls fixed manoeuvre point*  $h_m$  on the mean aerodynamic chord  $\bar{c}$  is given by

$$h_m = h_0 + \bar{V}_T \left( \frac{a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) + \frac{a_1 l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} \right) = h_n + \frac{\bar{V}_T a_1 l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} \quad (8.25)$$

Clearly, for controls fixed manoeuvre stability the manoeuvre margin  $H_m$  must be positive and, with reference to equation (8.24), this implies that the *cg* must be ahead of the manoeuvre point. Equation (8.25) indicates that the controls fixed manoeuvre point is aft of the corresponding neutral point by an amount depending on the aerodynamic properties of the tailplane. It therefore follows that

$$H_m = K_n + \frac{\bar{V}_T a_1 l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} \quad (8.26)$$

which indicates that the controls fixed manoeuvre stability is greater than the controls fixed static stability. With reference to Appendix 8, equation (8.26) may be re-stated in terms of aerodynamic stability derivatives:

$$H_m = -\frac{M_w}{a} - \frac{M_q}{\mu_1} \quad (8.27)$$

A most important conclusion is that additional stability in manoeuvring flight is provided by the aerodynamic pitch damping properties of the tailplane. However, caution is advised since this conclusion may not apply to all aeroplanes in large amplitude manoeuvring or, to manoeuvring in conditions where the assumptions do not apply.

As for controls fixed static stability, the meaning of controls fixed manoeuvre stability is easily interpreted by considering the pilot action required to establish a steady symmetric manoeuvre from an initial trimmed level flight condition. Since the steady (fixed) incremental elevator angle needed to induce the manoeuvre is of interest the incremental pitching moment equation (8.19) is applicable. In a stable



steady, and hence by definition, non-divergent manoeuvre the incremental pitching moment  $\delta C_m$  is zero. Whence, equation (8.19) may be re-arranged to give

$$\frac{\delta \eta}{\delta C_{L_w}} = \frac{1}{\bar{V}_T a_2} \left( (h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( \frac{a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) + \frac{a_1 l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} \right) \right) = \frac{-H_m}{\bar{V}_T a_2} \quad (8.28)$$

Or, in terms of aerodynamic stability derivatives,

$$\frac{\delta \eta}{\delta C_{L_w}} = \frac{-H_m}{M_\eta} = \frac{1}{M_\eta} \left( \frac{M_w}{a} + \frac{M_q}{\mu_1} \right) \quad (8.29)$$

Referring to equation (8.10),

$$\delta C_{L_w} = (n - 1) C_{L_w}$$

which describes the incremental aerodynamic load acting on the aeroplane causing it to execute the manoeuvre, expressed in coefficient form, and measured in units of “g”. Thus, both equations (8.28) and (8.29) express the *elevator displacement per g* capability of the aeroplane which is proportional to the controls fixed manoeuvre margin and inversely proportional to the elevator control power, quantified by the aerodynamic control derivative  $M_\eta$ . Since elevator angle and pitch control stick angle are directly related by the control gearing then the very important *stick displacement per g* control characteristic follows directly and is also proportional to the controls fixed manoeuvre margin. This latter control characteristic is critically important in the determination of longitudinal handling qualities. Measurements of elevator angle and normal acceleration in steady manoeuvres for a range of values of normal load factor provide an effective means for determining controls fixed manoeuvre stability from flight experiments. However, in such experiments it is not always possible to ensure that all of the assumptions can be adhered to.

#### 8.4.2 Controls free stability

The controls free manoeuvre is not a practical way of controlling an aeroplane. It does, of course, imply that the elevator angle required to achieve the manoeuvre is obtained by adjustment of the tab angle. As in the case of controls free static stability, this equates to the control force required to achieve the manoeuvre which is a most significant control characteristic. Control force derives from elevator hinge moment in a conventional aeroplane and the elevator hinge moment coefficient in manoeuvring flight is given by equation (3.21) and may be re-stated as

$$C'_H = C_H + \delta C_H = b_1 \alpha'_T + b_2 \eta' + b_3 \beta_\eta \quad (8.30)$$

Since the elevator angle in a controls free manoeuvre is indeterminate it is convenient to express  $\eta'$  in terms of hinge moment coefficient by re-arranging equation (8.30):

$$\eta' = \frac{1}{b_2} C'_H - \frac{b_1}{b_2} \alpha'_T - \frac{b_3}{b_2} \beta_\eta \quad (8.31)$$

Substitute the expression for  $\alpha'_T$ , equation (8.14), into equation (8.31) to obtain,

$$\eta' = \frac{1}{b_2} C'_H - \frac{b_1}{ab_2} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) C'_{L_w} - \frac{b_1}{b_2} \eta_T - \frac{b_1 l_T}{b_2 \mu_1 \bar{c}} \delta C_{L_w} - \frac{b_3}{b_2} \beta_\eta \quad (8.32)$$

Equation (8.32) may be substituted into the manoeuvring pitching moment equation (8.16) in order to replace the indeterminate elevator angle by hinge moment coefficient. After some algebraic re-arrangement the manoeuvring pitching moment may be expressed in the same format as equation (8.22):

$$\begin{aligned} C'_m = & C_{m0} + C'_{L_w} (h - h_0) \\ & - \bar{V}_T \left( C'_{L_w} \frac{a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) \left( 1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2} \right) + a_1 \eta_T + C'_H \frac{a_2}{b_2} \right. \\ & \left. + (C'_{L_w} - C_{L_w}) \frac{a_1 l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} \left( 1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2} \right) + \beta_\eta \left( 1 - \frac{a_2 b_3}{a_3 b_2} \right) \right) \end{aligned} \quad (8.33)$$

and since, by definition, the controls are free in the manoeuvre then

$$C'_H = 0$$

Applying the condition for stability, equation (8.20), to equation (8.33) and noting that, as before,  $C_{L_w}$  and  $\beta_\eta$  are constant at their steady level flight values and that  $\eta_T$  is also a constant of the aircraft configuration then

$$\frac{dC'_m}{dC'_{L_w}} = (h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( \frac{a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) + \frac{a_1 l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} \right) \left( 1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2} \right) \quad (8.34)$$

Or, writing,

$$H'_m = - \frac{dC'_m}{dC'_{L_w}} = h'_m - h \quad (8.35)$$

where  $H'_m$  is the *controls free manoeuvre margin* and the location of the *controls free manoeuvre point*  $h'_m$  on the mean aerodynamic chord  $\bar{c}$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned} h'_m = & h_0 + \bar{V}_T \left( \frac{a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) + \frac{a_1 l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} \right) \left( 1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2} \right) \\ = & h'_n + \bar{V}_T \frac{a_1 l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} \left( 1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (8.36)$$

Clearly, for controls free manoeuvre stability the manoeuvre margin  $H'_m$  must be positive and, with reference to equation (8.35), this implies that the cg must be ahead

of the manoeuvre point. Equation (8.36) indicates that the controls free manoeuvre point is aft of the corresponding neutral point by an amount again depending on the aerodynamic damping properties of the tailplane. It therefore follows that

$$H'_m = K'_n + \bar{V}_T \frac{a_1 l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} \left( 1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2} \right) \equiv K'_n + \frac{M_q}{\mu_1} \left( 1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2} \right) \quad (8.37)$$

which indicates that the controls free manoeuvre stability is greater than the controls free static stability when

$$\left( 1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2} \right) > 0 \quad (8.38)$$

Since  $a_1$  and  $a_2$  are both positive the degree of controls free manoeuvre stability, over and above the controls free static stability, is controlled by the signs of the hinge moment parameters  $b_1$  and  $b_2$ . This, in turn, depends on the aerodynamic design of the elevator control surface.

As for controls free static stability the meaning of controls free manoeuvre stability is easily interpreted by considering the pilot action required to establish a steady symmetric manoeuvre from an initial trimmed level flight condition. Since the controls are “free” this equates to a steady tab angle increment or, more appropriately, a steady control force increment in order to cause the aeroplane to manoeuvre. Equation (8.33) may be re-written in terms of the steady and incremental contributions to the total controls free manoeuvring pitching moment in the same way as equation (8.17):

$$\begin{aligned} C_m + \delta C_m = & \left( C_{m_0} + C_{L_w}(h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( C_{L_w} \frac{a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) \left( 1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2} \right) \right. \right. \\ & \left. \left. + a_1 \eta_T + C_H \frac{a_2}{b_2} + \beta_\eta \left( 1 - \frac{a_2 b_3}{a_3 b_2} \right) \right) \right) \\ & + \left( \delta C_{L_w}(h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( \delta C_{L_w} \frac{a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) \left( 1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2} \right) \right. \right. \\ & \left. \left. + \delta C_H \frac{a_2}{b_2} + \delta C_{L_w} \frac{a_1 l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} \left( 1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2} \right) \right) \right) \end{aligned} \quad (8.39)$$

Now in the steady equilibrium flight condition about which the manoeuvre is executed the pitching moment is zero thus

$$C_m = C_{m_0} + C_{L_w}(h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( C_{L_w} \frac{a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) \left( 1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2} \right) \right. \\ \left. + a_1 \eta_T + C_H \frac{a_2}{b_2} + \beta_\eta \left( 1 - \frac{a_2 b_3}{a_3 b_2} \right) \right) = 0 \quad (8.40)$$

and equation (8.39) simplifies to that describing the incremental controls free pitching moment coefficient:

$$\delta C_m = \delta C_{L_w}(h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( \delta C_{L_w} \frac{a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) \left( 1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2} \right) + \delta C_H \frac{a_2}{b_2} + \delta C_{L_w} \frac{a_1 l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} \left( 1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2} \right) \right) \quad (8.41)$$

Now in the steady manoeuvre the incremental pitching moment  $\delta C_m$  is zero and equation (8.41) may be re-arranged to give

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\delta C_H}{\delta C_{L_w}} &= \frac{b_2}{a_2 \bar{V}_T} \left( (h - h_0) - \bar{V}_T \left( \frac{a_1}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right) + \frac{a_1 l_T}{\mu_1 \bar{c}} \right) \left( 1 - \frac{a_2 b_1}{a_1 b_2} \right) \right) \\ &= - \frac{b_2 H'_m}{a_2 \bar{V}_T} \end{aligned} \quad (8.42)$$

In a conventional aeroplane the hinge moment coefficient relates directly to the control stick force, see equation (3.32). Equation (8.42) therefore indicates the very important result that the *stick force per g* control characteristic is proportional to the controls free manoeuvre margin. This control characteristic is critically important in the determination of longitudinal handling qualities and it must have the correct value. In other words, the controls free manoeuvre margin must lie between precisely defined upper and lower bounds. As stated above, in an aerodynamically controlled aeroplane this control characteristic can be adjusted independently of the other stability characteristics by selective design of the values of the hinge moment parameters  $b_1$  and  $b_2$ . The controls free manoeuvre stability is critically dependent on the ratio  $b_1/b_2$  which controls the magnitude and sign of expression (8.38). For conventional aeroplanes fitted with a plain flap type elevator control both  $b_1$  and  $b_2$  are usually negative and, see equation (8.37), the controls free manoeuvre stability would be less than the controls free static stability. Adjustment of  $b_1$  and  $b_2$  is normally achieved by aeromechanical means which are designed to modify the elevator hinge moment characteristics. Typically, this involves carefully tailoring the aerodynamic balance of the elevator by means, such as set back hinge line, horn balances, spring tabs, servo tabs and so on. Excellent descriptions of these devices may be found in Dickinson (1968) and in Babister (1961).

The measurement of stick force per  $g$  is easily undertaken in flight. The aeroplane is flown in steady manoeuvring flight, the turn probably being the simplest way of achieving a steady normal acceleration for a period long enough to enable good quality measurements to be made. Measurements of stick force and normal acceleration enable estimates to be made of the controls free manoeuvre margin and the location of the controls free manoeuvre point. With greater experimental difficulty, stick force per  $g$  can also be measured in steady pull-ups and in steady push-overs. However the experiment is done it must be remembered that it is not always possible to ensure that all of the assumptions can be adhered to.

## 8.5 AIRCRAFT DYNAMICS AND MANOEUVRABILITY

The preceding analysis shows how the stability of an aeroplane in manoeuvring flight is dependent on the manoeuvre margins and, further, that the magnitude of the manoeuvre margins determines the critical handling characteristics, stick displacement per  $g$  and stick force per  $g$ . However, the manoeuvre margins of the aeroplane are also instrumental in determining some of the dynamic response characteristics of the aeroplane. This fact further reinforces the statement made elsewhere that the static, manoeuvre and dynamic stability and control characteristics of an aeroplane are really very much inter-related and should not be treated entirely as isolated topics.

In Chapter 6 reduced order models of an aircraft are discussed and from the longitudinal model representing short term dynamic stability and response an approximate expression for the short period mode undamped natural frequency is derived, equation (6.21), in terms of dimensional aerodynamic stability derivatives. With reference to Appendix 2, this expression may be re-stated in terms of dimensionless derivatives:

$$\omega_s^2 = \frac{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S \bar{c}}{I_y} \left( \frac{\frac{1}{2}\rho S \bar{c}}{m} M_q Z_w + M_w \right) = \frac{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S \bar{c}}{I_y} \left( \frac{M_q Z_w}{\mu_1} + M_w \right) \quad (8.43)$$

where  $\mu_1$  is the longitudinal relative density factor defined in equation (8.9).

Now with reference to Appendix 8 an approximate expression for  $Z_w$  is given as

$$Z_w \cong -C_D - \frac{\partial C_L}{\partial \alpha} = -C_D - a \quad (8.44)$$

for small perturbation motion in subsonic flight. Since  $a \gg C_D$  equation (8.44) may be approximated further, and substituting for  $Z_w$  in equation (8.43) to obtain

$$\omega_s^2 = \frac{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S \bar{c} a}{I_y} \left( -\frac{M_q}{\mu_1} - \frac{M_w}{a} \right) = k H_m \equiv k \left( K_n - \frac{M_q}{\mu_1} \right) \quad (8.45)$$

where  $k$  is a constant at the given flight condition. Equation (8.45) therefore shows that the undamped natural frequency of the longitudinal short period mode is directly dependent on the controls fixed manoeuvre margin. Alternatively, this may be interpreted as a dependency on the controls fixed static margin and pitch damping. Clearly, since the controls fixed manoeuvre margin must lie between carefully defined boundaries if satisfactory handling is to be ensured, this implies that the longitudinal short period mode must also be constrained to a corresponding frequency band. Flying qualities requirements have been developed from this kind of understanding and are discussed in Chapter 10.

In many modern aeroplanes the link between the aerodynamic properties of the control surface and the stick force is broken by a servo actuator and other flight control system components. In this case the control forces are provided artificially and may not inter-relate with other stability and control characteristics in the classical way. However, it is obviously important that the pilots perception of the handling qualities of his aeroplane look like those of an aeroplane with acceptable aerodynamic manoeuvre margins. Since many of the subtle aerodynamic inter-relationships do

not exist in aeroplanes employing sophisticated flight control systems it is critically important to be fully aware of the handling qualities implications at all stages of a control system design.

## REFERENCES

- Babister, A.W. 1961: *Aircraft Stability and Control*. Pergamon Press, London.
- Dickinson, B. 1968: *Aircraft Stability and Control for Pilots and Engineers*. Pitman, London.
- Gates, S.B. and Lyon, H.M. 1944: *A Continuation of Longitudinal Stability and Control Analysis; Part I, General Theory*. Aeronautical Research Council, Reports and Memoranda No. 2027. Her Majesty's Stationery Office, London.

---

## Chapter 9

# Stability

### 9.1 INTRODUCTION

Stability is referred to frequently in the foregoing chapters without a formal definition so it is perhaps useful to re-visit the subject in a little more detail in this chapter. Having established the implications of both static and dynamic stability in the context of aircraft response to controls it is convenient to develop some simple analytical and graphical tools to help in the interpretation of aircraft stability.

#### 9.1.1 A definition of stability

There are many different definitions of stability which are dependent on the kind of system to which they are applied. Fortunately, in the present context the aircraft model is linearised by limiting its motion to small perturbations. The definition of the stability of a linear system is the simplest and most commonly encountered, and is adopted here for application to the aeroplane. The definition of the stability of a linear system may be found in many texts in applied mathematics, in system analysis and in control theory. A typical definition of the stability of a linear system with particular reference to the aeroplane may be stated as follows.

A system which is initially in a state of static equilibrium is said to be stable if after a disturbance of finite amplitude and duration the response ultimately becomes vanishingly small.

Stability is therefore concerned with the nature of the free motion of the system following a disturbance. When the system is linear the nature of the response, and hence its stability, is independent of the magnitude of the disturbing input. The small perturbation equations of motion of an aircraft are linear since, by definition, the perturbations are small. Consequently, it is implied that the disturbing input must also be small in order to preserve that linearity. When, as is often the case, input disturbances which are not really small are applied to the linear small perturbation equations of motion of an aircraft, some degradation in the interpretation of stability from the observed response must be anticipated. However, for most applications this does not give rise to major difficulties since the linearity of the aircraft model usually degrades relatively slowly with increasing perturbation amplitude. Thus it is considered reasonable to use linear system stability theory for general aircraft applications.

## 9.1.2 Non-linear systems

Many modern aircraft, especially combat aircraft which depend on flight control systems for their normal flying qualities, can, under certain conditions, demonstrate substantial non-linearity in their behaviour. This may be due, for example, to large amplitude manoeuvring at the extremes of the flight envelope where the aerodynamic properties of the airframe are decidedly non-linear. A rather more common source of non-linearity, often found in an otherwise nominally linear aeroplane and often overlooked, arises from the characteristics of common flight control system components. For example, control surface actuators all demonstrate static friction, hysteresis, amplitude and rate limiting to a greater or lesser extent. The non-linear response associated with these characteristics is not normally intrusive unless the demands on the actuator are limiting, such as might be found in the fly-by-wire control system of a high performance aircraft. The mathematical models describing such non-linear behaviour are much more difficult to create and the applicable stability criteria are rather more sophisticated and, in any event, beyond the scope of the present discussion. Non-linear system theory, more popularly known as *chaotic system theory* today, is developing rapidly to provide the mathematical tools, understanding and stability criteria for dealing with the kind of problems posed by modern highly augmented aircraft.

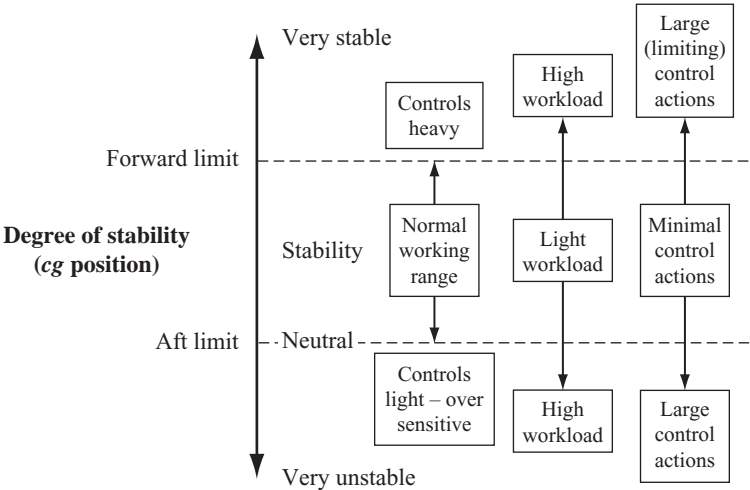
## 9.1.3 Static and dynamic stability

Any discussion of stability must consider the total stability of the aeroplane at the flight condition of interest. However, it is usual and convenient to discuss static stability and dynamic stability separately since the related dependent characteristics can be identified explicitly in aircraft behaviour. In reality static and dynamic stability are inseparable and must be considered as an entity. An introductory discussion of static and dynamic stability is contained in Section 3.1 and their simple definitions are re-iterated here. The static stability of an aeroplane is commonly interpreted to describe its tendency to converge on the initial equilibrium condition following a small disturbance from trim. Dynamic stability describes the transient motion involved in the process of recovering equilibrium following the disturbance. It is very important that an aeroplane possesses both static and dynamic stability in order that they shall be safe. However, the degree of stability is also very important since this determines the effectiveness of the controls of the aeroplane.

## 9.1.4 Control

By definition, a stable aeroplane is resistant to disturbance, in other words it will attempt to remain at its trimmed equilibrium flight condition. The “strength” of the resistance to disturbance is determined by the *degree* of stability possessed by the aeroplane. It follows then, that a stable aeroplane is reluctant to respond when a disturbance is deliberately introduced as the result of pilot control action. Thus the degree of stability is critically important to aircraft handling. An aircraft which is very stable requires a greater pilot control action in order to manoeuvre about the





**Figure 9.1** *Stability and control.*

trim state and clearly, too much stability may limit the controllability, and hence the manoeuvrability, of the aeroplane. On the other hand, too little stability in an otherwise stable aeroplane may give rise to an over responsive aeroplane with the resultant pilot tendency to over control. Therefore, too much stability can be as hazardous as too little stability and it is essential to place upper and lower bounds on the acceptable degree of stability in an aeroplane in order that it shall remain completely controllable at all flight conditions.

As described in Chapter 3, the degree of static stability is governed by *cg* position and this has a significant effect on the controllability of the aeroplane and on the pilot workload. Interpretation of control characteristics as a function of degree of stability, and consequently *cg* position is summarised in Fig. 9.1. In particular, the control action, interpreted as stick displacement and force, becomes larger at the extremes of stability and this has implications for pilot workload. It is also quite possible for very large pilot action to reach the limit of stick displacement or the limit of the pilot's ability to move the control against the force. For this reason, constraints are placed on the permitted *cg* operating range in the aircraft, as discussed in Chapter 3. The control characteristics are also influenced by the dynamic stability properties which are governed by *cg* position and also by certain aerodynamic properties of the airframe. This has implications for pilot workload if the dynamic characteristics of the aircraft are not within acceptable limits. However, the dynamic aspects of control are rather more concerned with the time dependency of the response, but in general the observations shown in Fig. 9.1 remain applicable. By reducing the total stability to static and dynamic components, which are further reduced to the individual dynamic modes, it becomes relatively easy to assign the appropriate degree of stability to each mode in order to achieve a safe controllable aeroplane in total. However, this may require the assistance of a command and stability augmentation system, and it may also require control force shaping by means of an artificial feel system.

## 9.2 THE CHARACTERISTIC EQUATION

It has been shown in previous chapters that the denominator of every aircraft response transfer function defines the characteristic polynomial, the roots of which determine the stability modes of the aeroplane. Equating the characteristic polynomial to zero defines the classical characteristic equation and thus far two such equations have been identified. Since decoupled motion only is considered the solution of the equations of motion of the aeroplane results in two fourth order characteristic equations, one relating to longitudinal symmetric motion and one relating to lateral-directional asymmetric motion. In the event that the decoupled equations of motion provide an inadequate aircraft model, such as is often the case for the helicopter, then a single characteristic equation, typically of eighth order, describes the stability characteristics of the aircraft in total. For aircraft with significant stability augmentation, the flight control system introduces additional dynamics resulting in a higher order characteristic equation. For advanced combat aircraft the longitudinal characteristic equation, for example, can be of order 30 or more! Interpretation of high order characteristic equations can be something of a challenge for the flight dynamicist.

The characteristic equation of a general system of order  $n$  may be expressed in the familiar format as a function of the Laplace operator  $s$

$$\Delta(s) = a_n s^n + a_{n-1} s^{n-1} + a_{n-2} s^{n-2} + a_{n-3} s^{n-3} + \cdots + a_1 s + a_0 = 0 \quad (9.1)$$

and the stability of the system is determined by the  $n$  roots of equation (9.1). Provided that the constant coefficients in equation (9.1) are real then the roots may be real, complex pairs or a combination of the two. Thus the roots may be written in the general form

- (i) Single real roots, for example  $s = -\sigma_1$  with time solution  $k_1 e^{-\sigma_1 t}$
- (ii) Complex pairs of roots, for example  $s = -\sigma_2 \pm j\gamma_2$  with time solution  $k_2 e^{-\sigma_2 t} \sin(\gamma_2 t + \phi_2)$  or, more familiarly,  $s^2 + 2\sigma_2 s + (\sigma_2^2 + \gamma_2^2) = 0$

where  $\sigma$  is the real part,  $\gamma$  is the imaginary part,  $\phi$  is the phase angle and  $k$  is a gain constant. When all the roots have negative real parts the transient component of the response to a disturbance decays to zero as  $t \rightarrow \infty$  and the system is said to be stable. The system is unstable when any root has a positive real part and neutrally stable when any root has a zero real part. Thus the stability and dynamic behaviour of any linear system is governed by the sum of the dynamics associated with each root of its characteristic equation. The interpretation of the stability and dynamics of a linear system is summarised in Appendix 6.

## 9.3 THE ROUTH-HURWITZ STABILITY CRITERION

The development of a criterion for testing the stability of linear systems is generally attributed to Routh. Application of the criterion involves an analysis of the characteristic equation and methods for interpreting and applying the criterion are very widely known and used, especially in control systems analysis. A similar analytical procedure for testing the stability of a system by analysis of the characteristic equation

was developed simultaneously, and quite independently, by Hurwitz. As a result both authors share the credit and the procedure is commonly known as the Routh–Hurwitz criterion to control engineers. The criterion provides an analytical means for testing the stability of a linear system of any order without having to obtain the roots of the characteristic equation.

With reference to the typical characteristic equation (9.1), if any coefficient is zero or, if any coefficient is negative then at least one root has a zero or positive real part indicating the system to be unstable, or at best neutrally stable. However, it is a necessary but not sufficient condition for stability that all coefficients in equation (9.1) are non-zero and of the same sign. When this condition exists the stability of the system described by the characteristic equation may be tested as follows.

An array, commonly known as the Routh Array, is constructed from the coefficients of the characteristic equation arranged in descending powers of  $s$  as follows

$$\begin{array}{c|cccccc}
 s^n & a_n & a_{n-2} & a_{n-4} & a_{n-6} & \cdots & \cdots \\
 s^{n-1} & a_{n-1} & a_{n-3} & a_{n-5} & a_{n-7} & \cdots & \cdots \\
 s^{n-2} & u_1 & u_2 & u_3 & u_4 & & \\
 s^{n-3} & v_1 & v_2 & v_3 & & & \\
 \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & & & \\
 \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & & & & \\
 \cdot & \cdot & & & & & \\
 s^1 & y & & & & & \\
 s^0 & z & & & & & 
 \end{array} \quad (9.2)$$

The first row of the array is written to include alternate coefficients starting with the highest power term and the second row includes the remaining alternate coefficients starting with the second highest power term as indicated. The third row is constructed as follows:

$$u_1 = \frac{a_{n-1}a_{n-2} - a_n a_{n-3}}{a_{n-1}} \quad u_2 = \frac{a_{n-1}a_{n-4} - a_n a_{n-5}}{a_{n-1}} \quad u_3 = \frac{a_{n-1}a_{n-6} - a_n a_{n-7}}{a_{n-1}}$$

and so on until all remaining  $u$  are zero. The fourth row is constructed similarly from coefficients in the two rows immediately above as follows:

$$v_1 = \frac{u_1 a_{n-3} - u_2 a_{n-1}}{u_1} \quad v_2 = \frac{u_1 a_{n-5} - u_3 a_{n-1}}{u_1} \quad v_3 = \frac{u_1 a_{n-7} - u_4 a_{n-1}}{u_1}$$

and so on until all remaining  $v$  are zero. This process is repeated until all remaining rows of the array are completed. The array is triangular as indicated and the last two rows comprise only one term each,  $y$  and  $z$  respectively.

The Routh–Hurwitz criterion states:

The number of roots of the characteristic equation with positive real parts (unstable) is equal to the number of changes of sign of the coefficients in the first column of the array.

Thus for the system to be stable all the coefficients in the first column of the array must have the same sign.

### Example 9.1

The lateral–directional characteristic equation for the Douglas DC-8 aircraft in a low altitude cruise flight condition, obtained from Teper (1969) is

$$\Delta(s) = s^4 + 1.326s^3 + 1.219s^2 + 1.096s - 0.015 = 0 \quad (9.3)$$

Inspection of the characteristic equation (9.3) indicates an unstable aeroplane since the last coefficient has a negative sign. The number of unstable roots may be determined by constructing the array as described above

$$\begin{array}{l|lll} s^4 & 1 & 1.219 & -0.015 \\ s^3 & 1.326 & 1.096 & 0 \\ s^2 & 0.393 & -0.015 & 0 \\ s^1 & 1.045 & 0 & 0 \\ s^0 & -0.015 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \quad (9.4)$$

Working down the first column of the array there is one sign change, from 1.045 to  $-0.015$ , which indicates the characteristic equation to have one unstable root. This is verified by obtaining the exact roots of the characteristic equation (9.3)

$$\begin{aligned} s &= -0.109 \pm 0.99j \\ s &= -1.21 \\ s &= +0.013 \end{aligned} \quad (9.5)$$

The complex pair of roots with negative real parts describe the stable dutch roll, the real root with negative real part describes the stable roll subsidence mode and the real root with positive real part describes the unstable spiral mode. A typical solution for a classical aeroplane.

#### 9.3.1 Special cases

Two special cases which may arise in the application of the Routh–Hurwitz criterion need to be considered although they are unlikely to occur in aircraft applications. The first case occurs when, in the routine calculation of the array, a coefficient in the first column is zero. The second case occurs when, in the routine calculation of the array, all coefficients in a row are zero. In either case no further progress is possible and an alternative procedure is required. The methods for dealing with these cases are best illustrated by example.

### Example 9.2

Consider the arbitrary characteristic equation

$$\Delta(s) = s^4 + s^3 + 6s^2 + 6s + 7 = 0 \quad (9.6)$$

The array for this equation is constructed in the usual way

$$\begin{array}{c} s^4 \\ s^3 \\ s^2 \\ s^1 \\ s^0 \end{array} \left| \begin{array}{ccc} 1 & 6 & 7 \\ 1 & 6 & 0 \\ \varepsilon & 7 & 0 \\ \left( \frac{6\varepsilon - 7}{\varepsilon} \right) & 0 & 0 \\ 7 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right. \quad (9.7)$$

Normal progress can not be made beyond the third row since the first coefficient is zero. In order to proceed the zero is replaced with a small positive number, denoted  $\varepsilon$ . The array can be completed as at (9.7) and as  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$  so the first coefficient in the fourth row tends to a large negative value. The signs of the coefficients in the first column of the array 9.7 are then easily determined

$$\begin{array}{c} s^4 \\ s^3 \\ s^2 \\ s^1 \\ s^0 \end{array} \left| \begin{array}{c} + \\ + \\ + \\ - \\ + \end{array} \right. \quad (9.8)$$

There are two changes of sign, from row three to row four and from row four to row five. Therefore the characteristic equation (9.6) has two roots with positive real parts and this is verified by the exact solution

$$\begin{aligned} s &= -0.6454 \pm 0.9965j \\ s &= +0.1454 \pm 2.224j \end{aligned} \quad (9.9)$$

### Example 9.3

To illustrate the required procedure when all the coefficients in a row of the array are zero consider the arbitrary characteristic equation

$$\Delta(s) = s^5 + 2s^4 + 4s^3 + 8s^2 + 3s + 6 = 0 \quad (9.10)$$

Constructing the array in the usual way

$$\begin{array}{c} s^5 \\ s^4 \\ s^3 \end{array} \left| \begin{array}{ccc} 1 & 4 & 3 \\ 2 & 8 & 6 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right. \quad (9.11)$$

no further progress is possible since the third row comprises all zeros. In order to proceed, the zero row, the third row in this example, is replaced by an auxiliary function derived from the preceding non-zero row. Thus the function is created from the row commencing with the coefficient of  $s$  to the power of four as follows:

$$2s^4 + 8s^2 + 6 = 0 \quad \text{or equivalently} \quad s^4 + 4s^2 + 3 = 0 \quad (9.12)$$

Only terms in alternate powers of  $s$  are included in the auxiliary function (9.12) commencing with the highest power term determined from the row of the array from which it is derived. The auxiliary function is differentiated with respect to  $s$  and the resulting polynomial is used to replace the zero row in the array. Equation (9.12) is differentiated to obtain

$$4s^3 + 8s = 0 \quad \text{or equivalently} \quad s^3 + 2s = 0 \quad (9.13)$$

Substituting equation (9.13) into the third row of the array (9.11), it may then be completed in the usual way:

$$\begin{array}{l|ccc} s^5 & 1 & 4 & 3 \\ s^4 & 2 & 8 & 6 \\ s^3 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ s^2 & 4 & 6 & 0 \\ s^1 & 0.5 & 0 & 0 \\ s^0 & 6 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \quad (9.14)$$

Inspection of the first column of the array (9.14) indicates that all roots of the characteristic equation (9.10) have negative real parts. However, the fact that in the derivation of the array one row comprises zero coefficients suggests that something is different. The exact solution of equation (9.10) confirms this suspicion

$$\begin{aligned} s &= 0 \pm 1.732j \\ s &= 0 \pm 1.0j \\ s &= -2.0 \end{aligned} \quad (9.15)$$

Clearly the system is neutrally stable since the two pairs of complex roots both have zero real parts.

## 9.4 THE STABILITY QUARTIC

Since both the longitudinal and lateral-directional characteristic equations derived from the small perturbation equations of motion of an aircraft are fourth order, considerable emphasis has always been placed on the solution of a fourth order polynomial, sometimes referred to as the *stability quartic*. A general quartic equation applicable to either longitudinal or to lateral-directional motion may be written

$$As^4 + Bs^3 + Cs^2 + Ds + E = 0 \quad (9.16)$$

When all of the coefficients in equation (9.16) are positive, as is often the case, then no conclusions may be drawn concerning stability unless the roots are found or

the Routh–Hurwitz array is constructed. Constructing the Routh–Hurwitz array as described in Section 9.3

$$\begin{array}{c}
 s^4 \\
 s^3 \\
 s^2 \\
 s^1 \\
 s^0
 \end{array}
 \left|
 \begin{array}{cc}
 A & C \quad E \\
 B & D \\
 \left( \frac{BC - AD}{B} \right) & E \\
 \left( \frac{D(BC - AD) - B^2 E}{BC - AD} \right) & \\
 E &
 \end{array}
 \right.
 \quad (9.17)$$

Assuming that all of the coefficients in the characteristic equation (9.16) are positive and that  $B$  and  $C$  are large compared with  $D$  and  $E$ , as is usually the case, then the coefficients in the first column of (9.17) are also positive with the possible exception of the coefficient in the fourth row. Writing

$$R = D(BC - AD) - B^2 E \quad (9.18)$$

$R$  is called *Routh's Discriminant* and since  $(BC - AD)$  is positive, the outstanding condition for stability is

$$R > 0$$

For most classical aircraft operating within the constraints of small perturbation motion, the only coefficient in the characteristic equation (9.16) likely to be negative is  $E$ . Thus typically, the necessary and sufficient conditions for an aeroplane to be stable are

$$R > 0 \quad \text{and} \quad E > 0$$

When an aeroplane is unstable some conclusions about the nature of the instability can be made simply by observing the values of  $R$  and  $E$ .

#### 9.4.1 Interpretation of conditional instability

- (i) When  $R < 0$  and  $E > 0$

Observation of the signs of the coefficients in the first column of the array (9.17) indicates that two roots of the characteristic equation (9.16) have positive real parts. For longitudinal motion this implies a pair of complex roots and in most cases this means an unstable phugoid mode since its stability margin is usually smallest. For lateral–directional motion the implication is that either the two real roots, or the pair of complex roots have positive real parts. This means that either the spiral and roll subsidence modes are unstable or that the dutch roll mode is unstable. Within the limitations of small perturbation modelling an unstable roll subsidence mode is not possible. Therefore the instability must be determined by the pair of complex roots describing the dutch roll mode.

- (ii) When  $R < 0$  and  $E < 0$

For this case, observation of the signs of the coefficients in the first column of the array (9.17) indicates that one root only of the characteristic equation (9.16) has a positive real part. Clearly, the “unstable” root can only be a real root. For longitudinal motion this may be interpreted to mean that the phugoid mode has changed such that it is no longer oscillatory and is therefore described by a pair of real roots, one of which has a positive real part. The “stable” real root typically describes an exponential heave characteristic whereas, the “unstable” root describes an exponentially divergent speed mode. For lateral–directional motion the interpretation is similar and in this case the only “unstable” real root must be that describing the spiral mode. This, of course, is a commonly encountered condition in lateral–directional dynamics.

- (iii) When  $R > 0$  and  $E < 0$

As for the previous case, observation of the signs of the coefficients in the first column of the array (9.17) indicates that one root only of the characteristic equation (9.16) has a positive real part. Again, the “unstable” root can only be a real root. Interpretation of the stability characteristics corresponding with this particular condition is exactly the same as described in (ii) above.

When all the coefficients in the characteristic equation (9.16) are positive and  $R$  is negative the instability can only be described by a pair of complex roots, the interpretation of which is described in (i) above. Since the unstable motion is oscillatory the condition  $R > 0$  is sometimes referred to as the criterion for dynamic stability. Alternatively, the most common unstable condition arises when the coefficients in the characteristic equation (9.16) are positive with the exception of  $E$ . In this case the instability can only be described by a single real root, the interpretation of which is described in (iii) above. Now the instability is clearly identified as a longitudinal speed divergence or, as the divergent lateral–directional spiral mode both of which are dynamic characteristics. However, the aerodynamic contribution to  $E$  is substantially dependent on static stability effects and when  $E < 0$  the cause is usually static instability. Consequently the condition  $E > 0$  is sometimes referred to as the criterion for static stability. This simple analysis emphasises the role of the characteristic equation in describing the *total stability* of the aeroplane and reinforces the reason why, in reality, static and dynamic stability are inseparable, and why one should not be considered without reference to the other.

#### 9.4.2 Interpretation of the coefficient $E$

Assuming the longitudinal equations of motion to be referred to a system of aircraft wind axes then, the coefficient  $E$  in the longitudinal characteristic equation may be obtained directly from Appendix 3

$$E = mg \left( \overset{\circ}{M}_w \overset{\circ}{Z}_u - \overset{\circ}{M}_u \overset{\circ}{Z}_w \right) \quad (9.19)$$

and the longitudinal static stability criterion may be expressed in terms of dimensionless derivatives

$$M_w Z_u > M_u Z_w \quad (9.20)$$



For most aeroplanes the derivatives in equation (9.20) have negative values so that the terms on either side of the inequality are usually both positive.  $M_w$  is a measure of the controls fixed longitudinal static stability margin,  $Z_u$  is largely dependent on lift coefficient,  $Z_w$  is dominated by lift curve slope and  $M_u$  only assumes significant values at high Mach number. Thus provided the aeroplane possesses a sufficient margin of controls fixed longitudinal static stability  $M_w$  will be sufficiently large to ensure that the inequality (9.20) is satisfied. At higher Mach numbers when  $M_u$  becomes larger the inequality is generally maintained since the associated aerodynamic changes also cause  $M_w$  to increase.

Similarly the coefficient  $E$  in the lateral-directional characteristic equation may be obtained directly from Appendix 3

$$E = mg \left( \overset{\circ}{L}_v \overset{\circ}{N}_r - \overset{\circ}{L}_r \overset{\circ}{N}_v \right) \quad (9.21)$$

and the lateral-directional static stability criterion may be expressed in terms of dimensionless derivatives

$$L_v N_r > L_r N_v \quad (9.22)$$

For most aeroplanes the derivatives  $L_v$  and  $N_r$  are both negative, the derivative  $L_r$  is usually positive and the derivative  $N_v$  is always positive. Thus the terms on either side of the inequality (9.22) are usually both positive. Satisfaction of the inequality is usually determined by the relative magnitudes of the derivatives  $L_v$  and  $N_v$ . Now  $L_v$  and  $N_v$  are the derivatives describing the lateral and directional controls fixed static stability of the aeroplane respectively, as discussed in Sections 3.4 and 3.5. The magnitude of the derivative  $L_v$  is determined by the *lateral dihedral effect* and the magnitude of the derivative  $N_v$  is determined by the *directional weathercock effect*. The inequality (9.22) also determines the condition for a stable spiral mode as described in Section 7.3.2 and, once again, the inseparability of static and dynamic stability is illustrated.

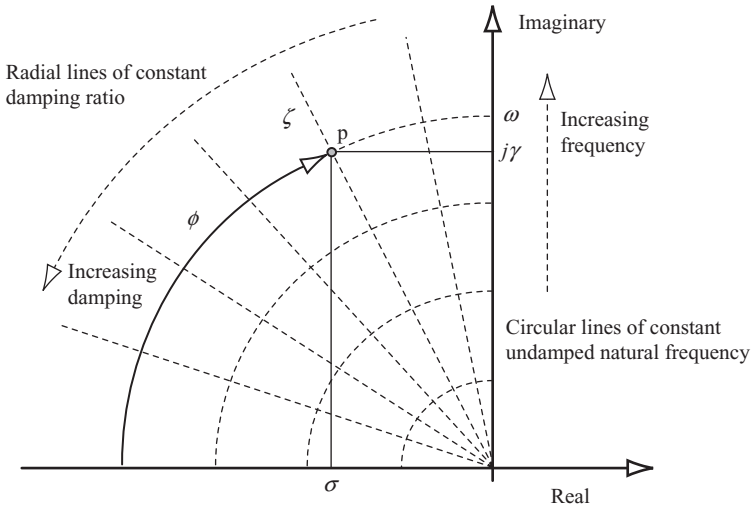
## 9.5 GRAPHICAL INTERPRETATION OF STABILITY

Today, the foregoing analysis of stability is of limited practical value since all of the critical information is normally obtained in the process of solving the equations of motion exactly and directly using suitable computer software tools as described elsewhere. However, its greatest value is in the understanding and interpretation of stability it provides. Of much greater practical value are the graphical tools much favoured by the control engineer for the interpretation of stability on the *s-plane*.

### 9.5.1 Root mapping on the *s-plane*

The roots of the characteristic equation are either real or complex pairs as stated in Section 9.2. The possible forms of the roots may be mapped on to the *s-plane* as shown in Fig. 9.2. Since the roots describe various dynamic and stability characteristics possessed by the system to which they relate the location of the roots on the *s-plane* also conveys the same information in a highly accessible form. “Stable” roots have negative real parts and lie on the left half of the *s-plane*, “unstable” roots have positive





**Figure 9.3** Typical complex roots on the  $s$ -plane.

at  $p$ , the upper half of the  $s$ -plane only being shown since the lower half containing the complex conjugate root is a *mirror image* in the real axis. With reference to equations (9.24) and (9.25), it is evident that undamped natural frequency is given by the magnitude of the line joining the origin and the point  $p$ . Thus lines of constant frequency are circles concentric with the origin provided that both axes have the same scales. Care should be exercised when the scales are dissimilar, which is often the case, as the lines of constant frequency then become ellipses. Thus, clearly, roots indicating low frequency dynamics are near to the origin and *vice versa*. Whenever possible, it is good practice to draw  $s$ -plane plots and *root locus plots* on axes having the same scales to facilitate the easy interpretation of frequency. With reference to equations (9.25), it is evident that radial lines drawn through the origin are lines of constant damping. The imaginary axis then becomes a line of zero damping and the real axis becomes a line of *critical damping* where the damping ratio is unity and the roots become real. The upper left quadrant of the  $s$ -plane shown on Fig. 9.3 contains the stable region of positive damping ratio in the range  $0 \leq \zeta \leq 1$  and is therefore the region of critical interest in most practical applications. Thus roots indicating stable well damped dynamics are seen towards the left of the region and *vice versa*. Thus, information about the dynamic behaviour of a system is instantly available on inspection of the roots of its characteristic equation on the  $s$ -plane. The interpretation of the stability of an aeroplane on the  $s$ -plane becomes especially useful for the assessment of stability augmentation systems on the *root locus plot* as described in Chapter 11.

#### Example 9.4

The Boeing B-747 is typical of a large classical transport aircraft and the following characteristics were obtained from Heffley and Jewell (1972). The flight case chosen

is representative of typical cruising flight at Mach 0.65 at an altitude of 20,000 ft. The longitudinal characteristic equation is

$$\Delta(s)_{long} = s^4 + 1.1955s^3 + 1.5960s^2 + 0.0106s + 0.00676 \quad (9.26)$$

with roots

$$\begin{aligned} s &= -0.001725 \pm 0.0653j \\ s &= -0.596 \pm 1.1101j \end{aligned} \quad (9.27)$$

describing stability mode characteristics

$$\begin{aligned} \omega_p &= 0.065 \text{ rad/s} & \zeta_p &= 0.0264 \\ \omega_s &= 1.260 \text{ rad/s} & \zeta_s &= 0.4730 \end{aligned} \quad (9.28)$$

The corresponding lateral characteristic equation is

$$\Delta(s)_{long} = s^4 + 1.0999s^3 + 1.3175s^2 + 1.0594s + 0.01129 \quad (9.29)$$

with roots

$$\begin{aligned} s &= -0.0108 \\ s &= -0.9130 \\ s &= -0.0881 \pm 1.0664j \end{aligned} \quad (9.30)$$

describing stability mode characteristics

$$\begin{aligned} T_s &= 92.6 \text{ s} \\ T_r &= 1.10 \text{ s} \\ \omega_d &= 1.070 \text{ rad/s} & \zeta_d &= 0.082 \end{aligned} \quad (9.31)$$

The longitudinal roots given by equations (9.27) and the lateral roots given by equations (9.30) are mapped on to the  $s$ -plane as shown in Fig. 9.4. The plot is absolutely typical for a large number of aeroplanes and shows the *stability modes*, represented by their corresponding roots, on regions of the  $s$ -plane normally associated with the modes. For example, the *slow modes*, the phugoid and spiral mode, are clustered around the origin whereas the *faster modes* are further out in the plane. Since the vast majority of aeroplanes have longitudinal and lateral-directional control bandwidths of less than 10 rad/s, then the scales of the  $s$ -plane plot would normally lie in the range  $-10 \text{ rad/s} < \text{real} < 0 \text{ rad/s}$  and  $-10 \text{ rad/s} < \text{imaginary} < 10 \text{ rad/s}$ . Clearly, the control bandwidth of the B-747 at the chosen flight condition is a little over 1 rad/s as might be expected for such a large aeroplane. The important observation to be made from this illustration is the relative locations of the stability mode roots on the  $s$ -plane since they are quite typical of many aeroplanes.

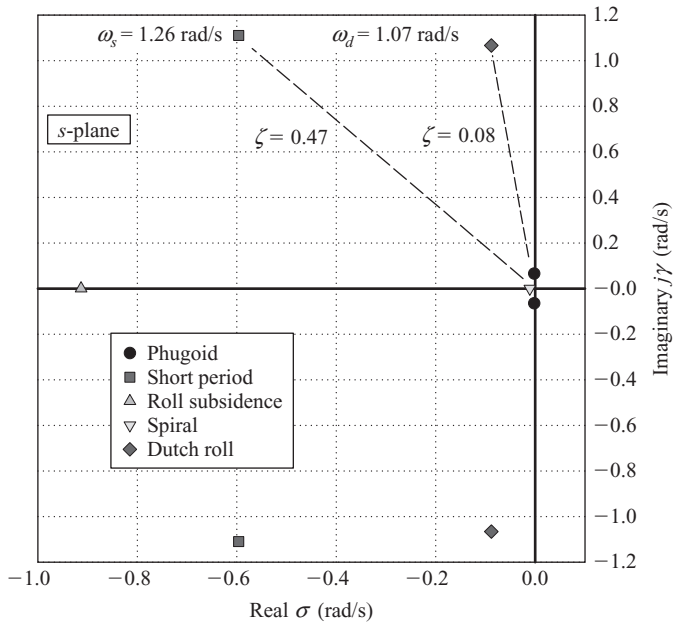


Figure 9.4 Boeing B-747 stability modes on the s-plane.

REFERENCES

Heffley, R.K. and Jewell, W.F. 1972: *Aircraft Handling Qualities Data*. NASA Contractor Report, NASA CR-2144. National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington D.C. 20546.

Teper, G.L. 1969: *Aircraft Stability and Control Data*. Systems Technology, Inc., STI Technical Report 176-1. NASA Contractor Report, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington D.C. 20546.

PROBLEMS

1. By applying the Routh–Hurwitz stability criterion to the longitudinal characteristic equation show that the minimum condition for stability, assuming a conventional aircraft, is  $E > 0$  and  $R > 0$ , where the Routh discriminant  $R$  is given by

$$R = (BC - AD)D - B^2E$$

Using these conditions test the longitudinal stability of the aircraft whose dimensional characteristics equation is

$$s^4 + 5.08s^3 + 13.2s^2 + 0.72s + 0.52 = 0$$

Verify your findings by obtaining the approximate solution of the equation. Describe in detail the characteristic longitudinal modes of the aircraft.

(CU 1982)

2. The Republic F-105B Thunderchief aircraft, data for which is given in Teper (1969), has a wing span of 10.6 m and is flying at a speed of 518 kts at an altitude where the lateral relative density parameter is  $\mu_2 = 221.46$ . The dimensionless controls fixed lateral-directional stability quartic is

$$\lambda^4 + 29.3\lambda^3 + 1052.7\lambda^2 + 14913.5\lambda - 1154.6 = 0$$

Using the Routh–Hurwitz stability criterion, test the lateral-directional stability of the aircraft.

Given that the time constant of the spiral mode is  $T_s = 115$  s and the time constant of the roll subsidence mode is  $T_r = 0.5$  s calculate the characteristics of the remaining mode. Determine the time to half or double amplitude of the non-oscillatory modes and hence, describe the physical characteristics of the lateral-directional modes of motion of the aircraft. (CU 1982)

3. The longitudinal characteristic equation for an aircraft may be written

$$As^4 + Bs^3 + Cs^2 + Ds + E = 0$$

It may be assumed that it describes the usual short-period pitching oscillation and phugoid. State the Routh–Hurwitz stability criterion and hence show that for a conventional aircraft the conditions for stability are,  $B > 0$ ,  $D > 0$ ,  $E > 0$  and  $R > 0$ , where Routh's discriminant  $R$  is given by

$$R = BCD - AD^2 - B^2E$$

Describe the significance of the coefficient  $E$  on the stability of the aircraft by considering the form of the roots of the quartic when  $E$  is positive, negative or zero. (CU 1985)

4. Explain the Routh–Hurwitz stability criterion as it might apply to the following typical aircraft stability quartic

$$As^4 + Bs^3 + Cs^2 + Ds + E = 0$$

What is Routh's discriminant  $R$ ? Explain the special significance of  $R$  and of the coefficient  $E$  in the context of the lateral-directional stability characteristics of an aircraft.

The coefficients of the lateral-directional stability quartic of an aircraft are

$$A = 1 \quad B = 9.42 \quad C = 9.48 + N_v \quad D = 10.29 + 8.4N_v$$

$$E = 2.24 - 0.39N_v$$

Find the range of values of  $N_v$  for which the aircraft will be both statically and dynamically stable. What do the limits on  $N_v$  mean in terms of the dynamic stability characteristics of the aircraft, and on what do they depend?

(CU 1987)

5. An unstable fly-by-wire combat aircraft has longitudinal characteristic equation,

$$s^4 + 36.87s^3 - 4.73s^2 + 1.09s - 0.13 = 0$$

Test its stability using the Routh–Hurwitz criterion.

The roots of the characteristic equation are,  $s = 0.0035 \pm 0.1697j$ ,  $s = 0.122$  and  $s = -37.0$ . Describe the longitudinal stability modes of the aircraft.

(CU 1989)

---

## Chapter 10

# Flying and Handling Qualities

### 10.1 INTRODUCTION

Some general concepts describing the meaning of *flying and handling qualities* of aeroplanes are introduced in Chapter 1 and are not repeated in full here. However, it is useful to recall that the flying and handling qualities of an aeroplane are those properties which govern the ease and precision with which it responds to pilot commands in the execution of the flight task. Although these rather intangible properties are described qualitatively and are formulated in terms of *pilot opinion*, it becomes necessary to find alternative quantitative descriptions for more formal analytical purposes. Now, as described previously, the flying and handling qualities of an aeroplane are, in part, intimately dependent on its stability and control characteristics, including the effects of a flight control system when one is installed. It has been shown in previous chapters how the stability and control parameters of an aeroplane may be quantified, and these are commonly used as indicators and measures of the flying and handling qualities. So, the object here is to introduce, at an introductory level, the way in which stability and control parameters are used to quantify the flying and handling qualities of an aeroplane.

#### 10.1.1 Stability

A stable aeroplane is an aeroplane that can be established in an equilibrium flight condition where it will remain showing no tendency to diverge. Therefore, a stable aeroplane is in general a safe aeroplane. However, it has already been established that too much stability can be as hazardous as too little stability. The degree of stability determines the magnitude of the control action, measured in terms of control displacement and force, required to manoeuvre about a given flight path. Thus *controllability* is concerned with the correct *harmonisation* of control power with the degrees of static, manoeuvre and dynamic stability of the airframe. Because of the interdependence of the various aspects of stability and control, the provision of well harmonised control characteristics by entirely aerodynamic means over the entire flight envelope of an aeroplane may well be difficult, if not impossible, to achieve. This is especially so in many modern aeroplanes which are required to operate over extended flight envelopes and in aerodynamically difficult flight regimes. The solution to this problem is found in the installation of a *control and stability augmentation system* (CSAS) where the object is to restore good flying qualities by *artificial* non-aerodynamic means.

Aircraft handling is generally concerned with two relatively distinct aspects of response to controls, the short term, or transient, response and the rather longer term

response. Short term handling is very much concerned with the short period dynamic modes and their critical influence on manoeuvrability. The ability of a pilot to handle the short term dynamics of an aeroplane satisfactorily is critically dependent on the speed and stability of response. In other words, the bandwidth of the human pilot and the control bandwidth of the aeroplane must be compatible and the stability margins of the dynamic modes must be adequate. An aeroplane with poor, or inadequate short term dynamic stability and control characteristics is simply not acceptable. Thus the provision of good short term handling tends to be the main consideration in flying and handling qualities studies.

Longer term handling is concerned with the establishment and maintenance of a steady flight condition, or trimmed equilibrium, which is determined by static stability in particular and is influenced by the long period dynamic modes. The dynamic modes associated with long term handling tend to be slow and the frequencies involved are relatively low. Thus their control is well within the bandwidth and capabilities of the average human pilot even when the modes are marginally unstable. As a result the requirements for the stability of the low frequency dynamics are more relaxed. However, those aspects of control which are dependent on static and manoeuvre stability parameters are very important and result in well defined boundaries for the static and manoeuvre margins.

## 10.2 SHORT TERM DYNAMIC MODELS

As explained above, the critical aspects of aircraft handling qualities are mainly concerned with the dynamics of the initial, or transient, response to controls. Thus since the short term dynamics are of greatest interest it is common practice to conduct handling qualities studies using reduced order dynamic models derived from the full order equations of motion. The advantage of this approach is that it gives maximum *functional visibility* to the motion drivers of greatest significance. It is therefore easier to interpret and understand the role of the fundamental aerodynamic and dynamic properties of the aeroplane in the determination of its handling qualities. It also goes without saying that the reduced order models are much easier to work with as they are algebraically simpler.

### 10.2.1 Controlled motion and motion cues

Reduced to the simplest interpretation, when a pilot applies a control input to his aeroplane he is simply commanding a change in flight path. The change might be temporary, such as manoeuvring about the flight path to return to the original flight path on completion of the manoeuvre. Alternatively, the change might be permanent, such as manoeuvring to effect a change in trim state involving a change of flight path direction. Whatever the ultimate objective, the method of control is much the same. Normal manoeuvring involves rotating the airframe in roll, pitch and yaw to point the lift vector in the desired direction and by operating the pitch control the angle of attack is adjusted to produce the lift force required to generate the acceleration to manoeuvre. Thus the pilot's perception of the handling qualities of his aeroplane is concerned with the precise way in which it responds to his commands, sensed predominantly as the



change in normal acceleration. Indeed, the human pilot is extremely sensitive to even the smallest changes in acceleration in all three axes. Clearly then, short term normal acceleration dynamics provide a vitally important cue in aircraft handling qualities considerations and are most easily modelled with the reduced order equations of motion. Obviously other motion cues are equally important to the pilot such as, attitude, angular rate and angular acceleration although these variables have not, in the past, been regarded with the same level of importance as normal acceleration. Thus, in the analysis of aircraft handling qualities by far the greatest emphasis is placed on the longitudinal short term dynamic response to controls.

### 10.2.2 The longitudinal reduced order model

The reduced order longitudinal state equation describing short term dynamics only is given by equation (6.1) in terms of concise derivatives and may be written

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{\alpha} \\ \dot{q} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} z_w & 1 \\ m_w & m_q \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ q \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \frac{z_\eta}{U_e} \\ m_\eta \end{bmatrix} \eta \quad (10.1)$$

since  $z_q \cong U_e$  and  $w$  is replaced by  $\alpha$ . Solution of equation (10.1) gives the two short term response transfer functions

$$\frac{\alpha(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{\frac{z_\eta}{U_e} \left( s + U_e \frac{m_\eta}{z_\eta} \right)}{(s^2 - (m_q + z_w)s + (m_q z_w - m_w U_e))} \equiv \frac{k_\alpha(s + (1/T_\alpha))}{(s^2 + 2\zeta_s \omega_s s + \omega_s^2)} \quad (10.2)$$

$$\frac{q(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{m_\eta(s - z_w)}{(s^2 - (m_q + z_w)s + (m_q z_w - m_w U_e))} \equiv \frac{k_q(s + (1/T_{\theta_2}))}{(s^2 + 2\zeta_s \omega_s s + \omega_s^2)} \quad (10.3)$$

Equations (10.2) and (10.3) compare directly with equations (6.17) and (6.18) respectively. The short term response transfer function describing pitch attitude response to elevator follows directly from equation (10.3)

$$\frac{\theta(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{k_q(s + (1/T_{\theta_2}))}{s(s^2 + 2\zeta_s \omega_s s + \omega_s^2)} \quad (10.4)$$

With reference to Section 5.5 the short term response transfer function describing, approximately, the normal acceleration response to elevator may be derived from equations (10.2) and (10.3)

$$\frac{a_z(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{m_\eta z_w U_e}{(s^2 - (m_q + z_w)s + (m_q z_w - m_w U_e))} \equiv \frac{k_{a_z}}{(s^2 + 2\zeta_s \omega_s s + \omega_s^2)} \quad (10.5)$$

In the derivation it is assumed that  $z_\eta/U_e$  is insignificantly small. With reference to Section 5.7.3 the short term response transfer function describing flight path angle response to elevator is also readily derived from equations (10.2) and (10.4)

$$\frac{\gamma(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{-m_\eta z_w}{s(s^2 - (m_q + z_w)s + (m_q z_w - m_w U_e))} \equiv \frac{k_\gamma}{s(s^2 + 2\zeta_s \omega_s s + \omega_s^2)} \quad (10.6)$$

and again, it is assumed that  $z_\eta/U_e$  is insignificantly small. By dividing equation (10.6) by equation (10.4) it may be shown that

$$\frac{\gamma(s)}{\theta(s)} = \frac{1}{(1 + sT_{\theta_2})} \quad (10.7)$$

which gives the important result that, in the short term, flight path angle response lags pitch attitude response by  $T_{\theta_2}$ , sometimes referred to as *incidence lag*.

For the purpose of longitudinal short term handling analysis the responsiveness or manoeuvrability of the aeroplane is quantified by the derivative parameter *normal load factor per unit angle of attack*, denoted  $n_\alpha$ . Since this parameter relates to the aerodynamic lift generated per unit angle of attack at a given flight condition it is proportional to the lift curve slope and the square of the velocity. An expression for  $n_\alpha$  is easily derived from the above short term transfer functions. Assuming a unit step input to the elevator such that  $\eta(s) = 1/s$  then the Laplace transform of the incidence response follows from equation (10.2)

$$\alpha(s) = \frac{\frac{z_\eta}{U_e} \left( s + U_e \frac{m_\eta}{z_\eta} \right)}{(s^2 - (m_q + z_w)s + (m_q z_w - m_w U_e))} \frac{1}{s} \quad (10.8)$$

Applying the final value theorem, equation (5.33), to equation (10.8) the resultant steady value of incidence may be obtained

$$\alpha(t)|_{ss} = \frac{m_\eta}{(m_q z_w - m_w U_e)} \quad (10.9)$$

In a similar way the corresponding resultant steady value of normal acceleration may be derived from equation (10.5)

$$a_z(t)|_{ss} = \frac{m_\eta z_w U_e}{(m_q z_w - m_w U_e)} \quad (10.10)$$

Now the normal load factor per unit angle of attack is given by

$$n_\alpha = \left. \frac{n_z(t)}{\alpha(t)} \right|_{ss} \equiv -\frac{1}{g} \left. \frac{a_z(t)}{\alpha(t)} \right|_{ss} \quad (10.11)$$

Thus, substituting equations (10.9) and (10.10) into equation (10.11) the important result is obtained

$$n_\alpha = -\frac{z_w U_e}{g} \equiv \frac{U_e}{g T_{\theta_2}} \quad (10.12)$$

since, approximately,  $T_{\theta_2} = -1/z_w$ .

The transfer functions given by equations (10.2)–(10.7) above describe the classical longitudinal short term response to elevator and represent the foundation on which most modern handling qualities ideas are based; see, for example, Gibson (1995). For

the classical aeroplane the response characteristics are determined by the aerodynamic properties of the airframe which are usually linear, bounded and predictable. It is also clear that the short term dynamics are those of a linear second order system and aeroplanes which possess similar dynamic behaviour are said to have *second order like* response characteristics. The response properties of all real aeroplanes diverge from these very simple and rather idealised models to some extent. Actual response is coloured by longer term dynamics, non-linear aerodynamic airframe characteristics and, of course, the influence of a stability augmentation system when fitted. However, whatever the degree of complexity of the aeroplane and its operating conditions a sound design objective would be to achieve second order like dynamic response properties.

### Example 10.1

The classical second order like response characteristics are most easily seen in simple light aircraft having a limited subsonic flight envelope and whose flying qualities are determined entirely by aerodynamic design. Such an aeroplane is the Navion Aircraft Corporation, Navion/H and the equations of motion for the aeroplane were obtained from Teper (1969). The flight condition corresponds with a cruising speed of 176 ft/s at sea level. The longitudinal reduced order state equation is

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{\alpha} \\ \dot{q} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -0.0115 & 1 \\ -0.0395 & -2.9857 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ q \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -0.1601 \\ -11.0437 \end{bmatrix} \eta \quad (10.13)$$

And the reduced order longitudinal response transfer functions are

$$\frac{\alpha(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{-0.1601(s + 71.9844)}{(s^2 + 5.0101s + 12.9988)} \quad (10.14)$$

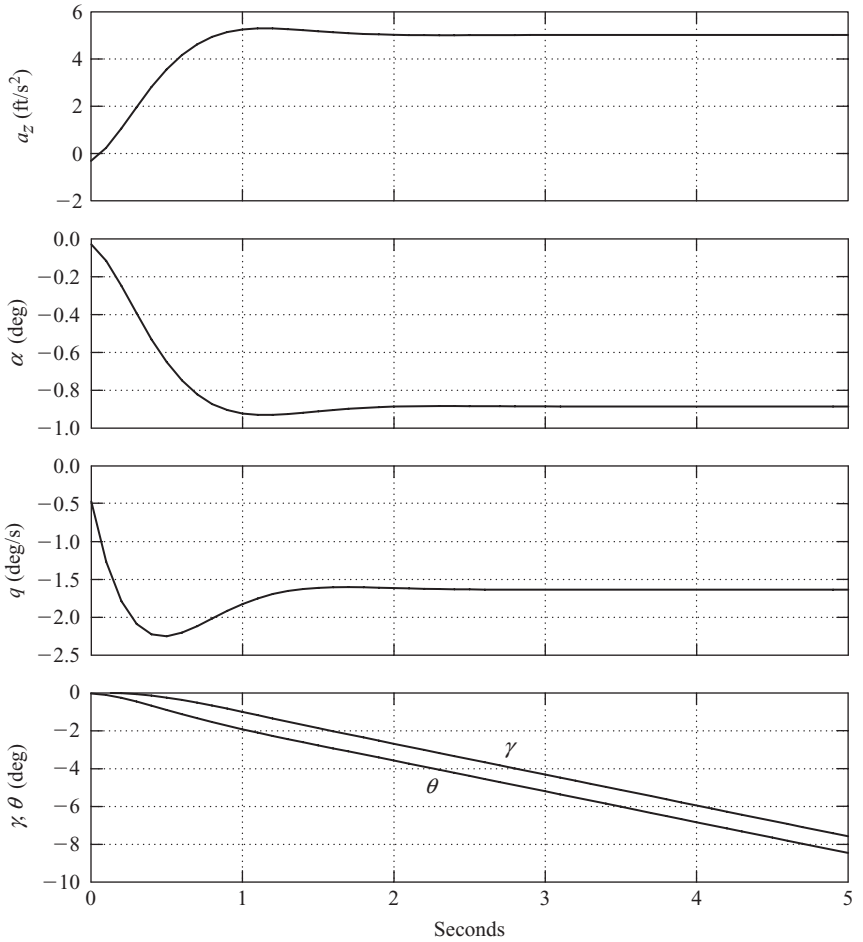
$$\frac{q(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{-11.0437(s + 1.9236)}{(s^2 + 5.0101s + 12.9988)} \text{ 1/s} \quad (10.15)$$

$$\frac{\theta(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{-11.0437(s + 1.9236)}{s(s^2 + 5.0101s + 12.9988)} \quad (10.16)$$

$$\frac{a_z(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{-28.1700(s - 10.1241)(s + 13.1099)}{(s^2 + 5.0101s + 12.9988)} \text{ ft/s}^2/\text{rad} \quad (10.17)$$

$$\frac{\gamma(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{0.1601(s - 10.1241)(s + 13.1099)}{s(s^2 + 5.0101s + 12.9988)} \quad (10.18)$$

The first 5 s of the longitudinal response of the Navion to a one degree elevator step input, as defined by equations (10.14)–(10.18), is shown in Fig. 10.1. The response



**Figure 10.1** Longitudinal short term response to elevator step input.

plots shown are absolutely typical of the second order like characteristics of a classical aeroplane.

The key parameters defining the general response shapes are

Shortperiod undamped natural frequency  $\omega_s = 3.61$  rad/s

Short period damping ratio  $\zeta_s = 0.7$

Incidence lag  $T_{\theta_2} = \frac{1}{1.9236} = 0.52$  s

These parameters may be obtained directly from inspection of the appropriate transfer functions above.

It will be observed that the normal acceleration response transfer functions given by equations (10.5) and (10.17) have different numerators, and similarly for the flight

path angle response transfer functions given by equations (10.6) and (10.18). This is due to the fact that the algebraic forms are based on a number of simplifying approximations, whereas the numerical forms were obtained from an exact solution of the state equation (10.8) without approximation. However, with reference to Fig. 10.1 both equations (10.17) and (10.18) may be approximated by transfer functions having constant numerators in the style of equations (10.5) and (10.6) respectively, and in both cases the response shapes are essentially identical. Equations (10.17) and (10.18) may be approximated by

$$\frac{a_z(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{3738.89}{(s^2 + 5.0101s + 12.9988)} \text{ ft/s}^2/\text{rad} \quad (10.19)$$

$$\frac{\gamma(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{-1.6347}{s(s^2 + 5.0101s + 12.9988)} \quad (10.20)$$

With reference to Fig. 10.1 it is clear that following a steady step elevator input the short term response, after the short period transient has damped out, results in steady normal acceleration  $a_z$ , steady incidence  $\alpha$  and steady pitch rate  $q$ . The corresponding pitch attitude  $\theta$  and flight path angle  $\gamma$  responses increase linearly with time, the aeroplane behaving like a simple integrator in this respect. It is evident from the latter response plots that flight path angle  $\gamma$  lags pitch attitude  $\theta$  by about 0.5 s, see equation (10.7), which corresponds with the exact value of  $T_{\theta_2}$  very well. These response characteristics are quite typical and do not change significantly with flight condition since the Navion has a very limited flight envelope.

Now operation of the elevator causes tailplane camber change which results in instantaneous change in tailplane lift. This in turn generates a pitching moment causing the aeroplane to respond in pitch. Thus, as a result of his control action the pilot sees a change in pitch attitude as the primary response. Or, for a steady step input the response is a steady pitch rate, at least for the first few seconds. For this reason the nature of control is referred to as a *rate command* characteristic, which is typical of all three control axes since the aerodynamic mechanism of control is similar. With reference to Fig. 10.1, the pitch rate response couples with forward speed to produce the incidence response which in turn results in the normal acceleration response. This explains why a steady pitch rate is accompanied by steady incidence and normal acceleration responses. In an actual aeroplane these simple relationships are modified by the influence of the longer term phugoid dynamics. In particular the pitch rate and normal acceleration response tend to decay with the damped phugoid motion. However, incidence tends to remain more nearly constant at its trim value throughout. Thus, viewed more broadly the nature of longitudinal control is sometimes referred to alternatively as an *incidence command* characteristic. These ideas may be more easily appreciated by referring to Examples 6.1 and 6.2.

Since the traditional longitudinal motion cue has always focused on normal acceleration, and since in the short term approximation this is represented by a transfer function with a constant numerator, equation (10.19), the only parameters defining the response shape are short period mode damping ratio and undamped natural frequency. Similarly, it is evident that incidence dynamics are governed by the same parameters. Pitch rate response is similar in shape to both normal acceleration and incidence responses with the exception of the peak overshoot, which is governed by

the value of the numerator term  $1/T_{\theta_2}$ . However,  $T_{\theta_2}$  is determined largely by the value of the wing lift curve slope which, for a simple aeroplane like the Navion, is essentially constant throughout the flight envelope. So for a classical aeroplane with second order like response characteristics it is concluded that the short term dynamics are predictable and that the transient is governed predominantly by short period mode dynamics. It is not surprising therefore, that the main emphasis in the specification of the flying qualities of aeroplanes has been on the correct design of the damping and frequency of the short term stability modes, in particular the longitudinal short period mode.

### 10.2.3 The “thumb print” criterion

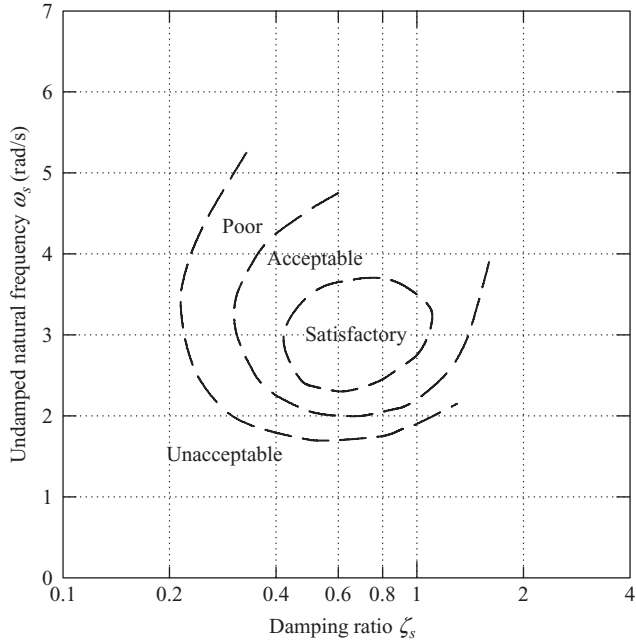
For the reasons outlined above, the traditional indicators of the short term longitudinal handling qualities of an aeroplane were securely linked to the damping ratio and undamped natural frequency of the short period mode. As experience grew over the years of evolutionary development of aeroplanes so the short period dynamics which resulted in good handling characteristics became established fact. A tradition of experimental flight test using variable stability aeroplanes was established in the early years after World War II for the specific purpose of investigating flying and handling qualities. In particular, much of this early experimental work was concerned with longitudinal short term handling qualities. This research has enabled the definition of many *handling qualities criteria* and the production of *flying qualities specification* documents. The tradition of experimental flight test for handling qualities research is still continued today, mainly in the USA.

One of the earliest flying qualities criteria, the so-called longitudinal short period *thumb print* criterion became an established tool in the 1950s; see, for example, Chalk (1958). The thumb print criterion provides guidance for the use of aeroplane designers and evaluators concerning the best combinations of longitudinal short period mode damping and frequency to give good handling qualities. However, it must be remembered that the information provided is empirical and is based entirely on pilot opinion. The common form of presentation of the criterion is shown in Fig. 10.2, and the example shown relates to typical classical aeroplanes in which the undamped short period mode frequency is around 3 rad/s.

Although the criterion is still most applicable to the modern aeroplane, as has been suggested above, the achievement of excellent short period mode dynamics does not necessarily guarantee excellent longitudinal handling qualities. Indeed, many other factors play an important part and some of these are discussed in the following sections.

### 10.2.4 Incidence lag

The incidence lag  $T_{\theta_2}$  plays a critically important part in the determination of the longitudinal handling characteristics of an aeroplane. For classical subsonic aeroplanes  $T_{\theta_2}$  remains near constant over the flight envelope and, consequently, the short term pitch dynamics also remain near constant for a given short period mode damping and frequency. Therefore the overall longitudinal handling qualities tend to remain nicely



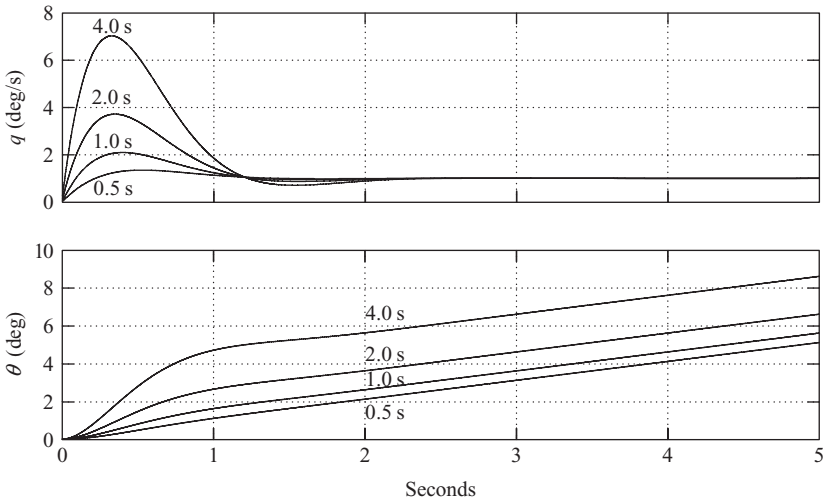
**Figure 10.2** Longitudinal short period pilot opinion contours – the thumb print criterion.

consistent over the flight envelope. For this reason incidence lag has not been accorded a great deal of attention in the past. However, as aeroplanes have become larger and their operating altitude and Mach number envelopes have been greatly extended so the variation in lift curve slope has become significant. The result of this is that the variation in  $T_{\theta_2}$  over the flight envelope of typical modern high performance aeroplanes can no longer be ignored. Incidence lag has therefore become as important as short period mode damping and frequency in the determination of longitudinal short term handling.

Gibson (1995) suggests that typically  $T_{\theta_2}$  may vary from less than 0.5 s at high speed at sea level to greater than 4.0 s at low speed at high altitude. Other significant changes might be introduced by camber control or by direct lift control as frequently found in advanced modern aircraft of all types. To illustrate the effect of incidence lag on short term pitch response consider the following transfer functions which are based nominally on those of Example 10.1.

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{q(s)}{\eta(s)} &= \frac{-13(1 + 0.5s)}{(s^2 + 5s + 13)} 1/s \\ \frac{\theta(s)}{\eta(s)} &= \frac{-13(1 + 0.5s)}{s(s^2 + 5s + 13)}\end{aligned}\tag{10.21}$$

and clearly,  $\omega_s = 3.6 \text{ rad/s}$ ,  $\zeta_s = 0.69$  and  $T_{\theta_2} = 0.5 \text{ s}$ . The response to a stick pull equivalent to a one degree elevator step input is shown in Fig. 10.3. Also shown are



**Figure 10.3** *The effect of variation in incidence lag on pitch response.*

the responses for an incidence lag of 1, 2 and 4 s, the short period mode parameters being held constant throughout. In accordance with the models given by equations (10.2), (10.5) and (10.6) the corresponding incidence, normal acceleration and flight path angle responses would remain unchanged. However, the pitch motion cue to the pilot may well suggest a reduction in damping in view of the significant increase in pitch rate overshoot at larger values of  $T_{\theta_2}$ . This is of course not the case since the short period mode damping is 0.69 throughout. The pilot would also become aware of the increase in lag between the pitch attitude response and acquisition of the desired flight path.

### 10.3 FLYING QUALITIES REQUIREMENTS

Most countries involved in aviation have national agencies to oversee aeronautical activity in their territories. In the UK the Civil Aviation Authority (CAA) regulates all non-military aviation and the Ministry of Defence (MoD) oversees all military aeronautical activity. Additionally, a group of European countries has agreed to cooperate in the development of Joint Aviation Requirements (JAR) and, where relevant, these requirements supersede the British Civil Airworthiness Requirements (BCAR). The Joint Aviation Authority which administers this activity comprises the Aviation Authorities from the participating countries. Thus, for example, in the UK the JAR documents are issued by the CAA. In the USA the corresponding agencies are the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) and the Department of Defense (DoD) respectively. All of these agencies issue extensive documentation specifying the minimum acceptable standards for construction, performance, operation and safety of all air vehicles operated under their jurisdiction. In more recent years the emphasis has been on the adoption of common standards for obvious reasons. In the absence of their own standards many countries adopt those of the American, British or joint European



agencies which is obviously constructively helpful in achieving very high standards of aviation safety worldwide.

All of the above mentioned agencies issue documents which specify the minimum acceptable standard of flying qualities in some detail, more commonly known as *flying qualities requirements*. Some examples of the relevant documents are listed in the references at the end of this chapter. In very general terms the flying qualities requirements for civil aircraft issued by the CAA and FAA are primarily concerned with safety and specific requirements relating to stability, control and handling are relatively relaxed. On the other hand, the flying qualities requirements issued by the MoD and DoD are specified in much greater detail in every respect. It is the responsibility of the aircraft manufacturer, or supplier, to demonstrate that his aircraft *complies* with the appropriate specification prior to acceptance by the operator. Thus *demonstration of compliance* with the specification is the principal interest of the regulating agencies.

Since the military flying qualities requirements in particular are relatively complex their correct interpretation may not always be obvious. To alleviate this difficulty the documents also include advisory information on *acceptable means of compliance* to help the user to apply the requirements to his particular aeroplane. The extensive programme of flight tests which most new aeroplanes undergo prior to entry into service are, in part, used to demonstrate compliance with the flying qualities requirements. However, it is unlikely that an aeroplane will satisfy the flying qualities requirements completely unless it has been designed to do so from the outset. Therefore, the flying qualities requirements documents are also vitally important to the aircraft designer and to the flight control system designer. In this context, the specifications define the *rules* to which stability, control and handling must be designed and evaluated.

The formal specification of flying and handling qualities is intended to “assure flying qualities that provide adequate mission performance and flight safety”. Since the most comprehensive, and hence demanding, requirements are included in the military documents it is on these that the material in the following paragraphs is based. As the military use all kinds of aeroplanes including small light trainers, large transports and high performance combat aircraft, then flying qualities requirements applicable to all types are quantified in the specification documents. Further, an aeroplane designed to meet the military flying and handling qualities requirements would undoubtedly also meet the civil requirements. Since most of the requirements are quantified in terms of stability and control parameters they are most readily applied in the current analytical context.

The object here then, is to provide a summary, or overview, of the flying qualities requirements as set out in the military specification documents. Liberal reference has been made to the British Defence Standard DEF-STAN 00-970 and to the American Military Specification MIL-F-8785C which are very similar in style and which both convey much the same information. This is not surprising since the former was deliberately modelled on the latter in the interests of uniformity. Using an amalgam of material from both sources no attempt is made to reproduce the requirements with great accuracy or in great detail; for a complete appreciation the reader should consult the references. Rather, the emphasis is on a limited review of the material relevant to the fundamental stability and control properties of the aeroplane as described in earlier chapters.

Now it is important to appreciate that the requirements in both DEF-STAN 00-970 and MIL-F-8785C are based on the dynamics of classical aeroplanes whose short term response is essentially second order like. This is simply due to the fact that the requirements are empirical and have evolved to capitalise on many years of accumulated experience and pilot opinion. Although attempts have been made to revise the requirements to allow for aeroplanes with stability augmentation this has only had limited success. Aeroplanes with simple stability augmentation which behave essentially like classical unaugmented aeroplanes are generally adequately catered for. However, in recent years it has become increasingly obvious that the requirements in both DEF-STAN 00-970 and MIL-F-8785C are unable to cope with aeroplanes whose flying qualities are substantially dependent on a flight control system. For example, evidence exists to suggest that some advanced technology aeroplanes have been designed to meet the flying qualities requirements very well only to attract adverse pilot opinion concerning their handling qualities. With the advent of the Fly-By-Wire (FBW) aeroplane it became necessary to seek additional or alternative methods for quantifying and specifying flying qualities requirements.

The obvious deficiencies of the earlier flying qualities requirement documents for dealing with highly augmented aeroplanes spawned a considerable amount of research activity from the late 1960s onward. As a result all kinds of handling qualities criteria have emerged a few of which have enjoyed enduring, but limited, success. Nevertheless understanding has improved considerably and the first serious attempt at producing a flying qualities requirements document suitable for application to highly augmented aeroplanes resulted in the proposal reported by Hoh *et al.* (1982). This report eventually evolved into the formal American Military Standard MIL-STD-1797A, which is not available in the public domain. However, the report by Hoh *et al.* (1982) is a useful alternative and it contains some supporting explanatory material. These newer flying qualities requirements still include much of the classical flying qualities material derived from the earlier specifications but with the addition of material relating to the influence of command and stability augmentation systems on handling. Although Hoh *et al.* (1982) and MIL-STD-1797A provide a very useful progression from DEF-STAN 00-970 and MIL-F-8785C the material relating to highly augmented aeroplanes takes the subject well beyond the scope of the present book. The interested reader will find an excellent overview of the ideas relating to the handling qualities of advanced technology aeroplanes in Gibson (1995).

## 10.4 AIRCRAFT ROLE

It is essential that the characteristics of any dynamic system which is subject to direct human control are bounded and outside these bounds the system would not be capable of human control. However, the human is particularly adaptable such that the variation in acceptable dynamic characteristics within the performance boundary of the system is considerable. In terms of aeroplane dynamics this means that wide variation in stability and control characteristics can be tolerated within the bounds of acceptable flying qualities. However, it is important that the flying qualities are appropriate to the type of aeroplane in question and to the task it is carrying out.

For example, the dynamic handling qualities appropriate to a Fighter aircraft in an air combat situation are quite inappropriate to a large civil transport aircraft on final approach. Thus it is easy to appreciate that the stability and control characteristics which comprise the flying qualities requirements of an aeroplane are bounded by the limitations of the human pilot, but within those bounds the characteristics are defined in a way which is most appropriate to the prevailing flight condition.

Thus flying qualities requirements are formulated to allow for the type, or *class*, of aeroplane and for the flight task, or *flight phase*, in question. Further, the degree of excellence of flying qualities is described as the *level of flying qualities*. Thus prior to referring to the appropriate flying qualities requirements the aeroplane must be classified and its flight phase defined. A designer would then design to achieve the highest level of flying qualities whereas, an evaluator would seek to establish that the aeroplane achieved the highest level of flying qualities in all normal operating states.

#### 10.4.1 Aircraft classification

Aeroplane types are classified broadly according to size and weight as follows:

**Class I** Small light aeroplanes.

**Class II** Medium weight, low to medium manoeuvrability aeroplanes.

**Class III** Large, heavy, low to medium manoeuvrability aeroplanes.

**Class IV** High manoeuvrability aeroplanes.

#### 10.4.2 Flight phase

A sortie or mission may be completely defined as a sequence of piloting tasks. Alternatively, a mission may be described as a succession of flight phases. Flight phases are grouped into three *categories* and each category comprises a variety of tasks requiring similar flying qualities for their successful execution. The tasks are separately defined in terms of *flight envelopes*. The flight phase categories are defined:

**Category A** Non-terminal flight phases that require rapid manoeuvring, precision tracking, or precise flight path control.

**Category B** Non-terminal flight phases that require gradual manoeuvring, less precise tracking and accurate flight path control.

**Category C** Terminal flight phases that require gradual manoeuvring and precision flight path control.

#### 10.4.3 Levels of flying qualities

The levels of flying qualities quantify the degree of acceptability of an aeroplane in terms of its ability to complete the mission for which it is designed. The three levels

of flying qualities seek to indicate the severity of the *pilot workload* in the execution of a mission flight phase and are defined:

**Level 1** Flying qualities clearly adequate for the mission flight phase.

**Level 2** Flying qualities adequate to accomplish the mission flight phase, but with an increase in pilot workload and, or, degradation in mission effectiveness.

**Level 3** Degraded flying qualities, but such that the aeroplane can be controlled, inadequate mission effectiveness and high, or, limiting, pilot workload.

*Level 1 flying qualities* implies a fully functional aeroplane which is 100% capable of achieving its mission with acceptable pilot workload at all times. Therefore, it follows that any fault or failure occurring in airframe, engines or systems may well degrade the level of flying qualities. Consequently the *probability* of such a situation arising during a mission becomes an important issue. Thus the levels of flying qualities are very much dependent on the *aircraft failure state* which, in turn, is dependent on the reliability of the critical functional components of the aeroplane. The development of this aspect of flying qualities assessment is a subject in its own right and is beyond the scope of the present book.

#### 10.4.4 Flight envelopes

The operating boundaries of altitude, Mach number and normal load factor define the *flight envelope* for an aeroplane. Flight envelopes are used to describe the absolute “never exceed” limits of the airframe and also to define the operating limits required for the execution of a particular mission or flight phase.

##### 10.4.4.1 Permissible flight envelope

The permissible flight envelopes are the limiting boundaries of flight conditions to which an aeroplane may be flown and safely recovered without exceptional pilot skill.

##### 10.4.4.2 Service flight envelope

The service flight envelopes define the boundaries of altitude, Mach number and normal load factor which encompass all operational mission requirements. The service flight envelopes denote the limits to which an aeroplane may normally be flown without risk of exceeding the permissible flight envelopes.

##### 10.4.4.3 Operational flight envelope

The operational flight envelopes lie within the service flight envelopes and define the boundaries of altitude, Mach number and normal load factor for each flight phase. It is a requirement that the aeroplane must be capable of operation to the limits of the appropriate operational flight envelopes in the execution of its mission. The operational flight envelopes defined in DEF-STAN 00-970 are listed in Table 10.1.

**Table 10.1** *Operational flight envelopes*

<i>Flight phase category</i>	<i>Flight phase</i>
<b>A</b>	Air-to-air combat
	Ground attack
	Weapon delivery/launch
	Reconnaissance
	In-flight refuel (receiver)
	Terrain following
	Maritime search
	Aerobatics
	Close formation flying
<b>B</b>	Climb
	Cruise
	Loiter
	In-flight refuel (tanker)
	Descent
	Aerial delivery
<b>C</b>	Takeoff
	Approach
	Overshoot
	Landing

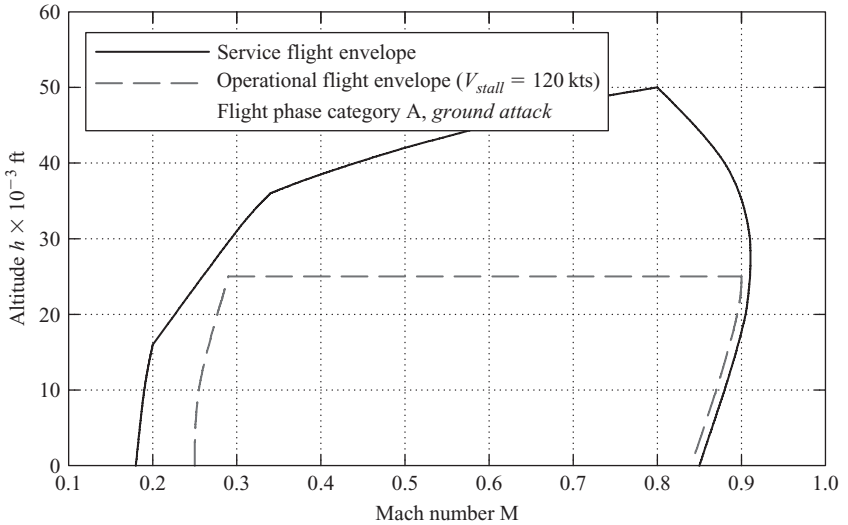
When assessing the flying qualities of an aeroplane Table 10.1 may be used to determine which flight phase category is appropriate for the flight condition in question.

**Example 10.2**

To illustrate the altitude–Mach number flight envelopes consider the McDonnell–Douglas A4-D Skyhawk and its possible deployment in a *ground attack* role. The service flight envelope for the aircraft was obtained from Teper (1969) and is shown in Fig. 10.4. Assuming this aircraft were to be procured by the Royal Air Force then it would have to meet the operational flight envelope requirement for the ground attack role as defined in DEF-STAN 00-970. The altitude–speed requirements for this role are given as follows,

Minimum operational speed	$V_{0min} = 1.4 V_{stall}$
Maximum operational speed	$V_{0max} = V_{MAT}$
Minimum operational altitude	$h_{0min} = \text{Mean sea level (MSL)}$
Maximum operational altitude	$h_{0max} = 25,000 \text{ ft}$

where  $V_{MAT}$  is the maximum speed at *maximum augmented thrust* in level flight. The operational flight envelope for the ground attack role is superimposed on the service flight envelope for the aircraft as shown in Fig. 10.4 and the implications of these limits are self-evident for the role in question.



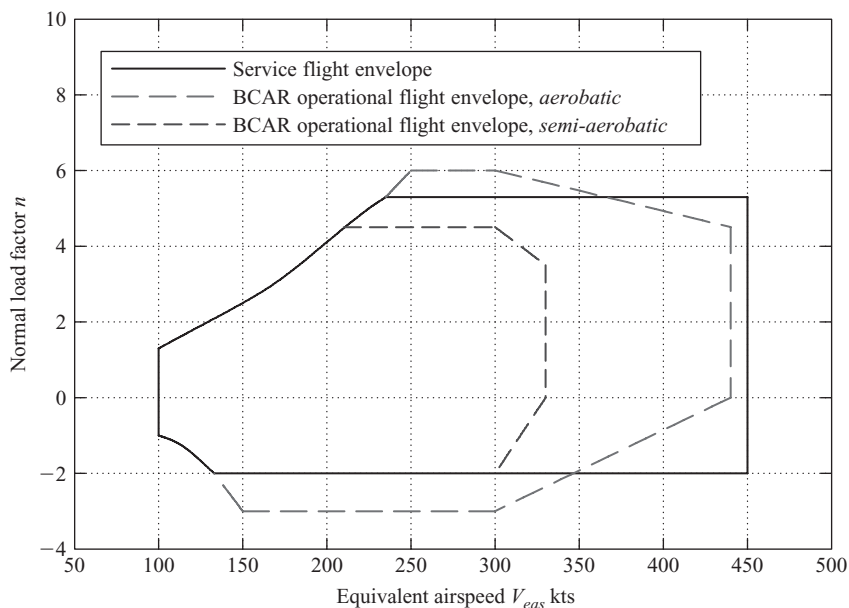
**Figure 10.4** *Flight envelopes for the McDonnell-Douglas A4-D Skyhawk.*

### Example 10.3

To illustrate the normal load factor–speed flight envelopes consider the Morane Saulnier MS-760 Paris aircraft as registered by the CAA for operation in the UK. The Paris is a small four seat twin jet fast liaison aircraft which first flew in the late 1950s. The aircraft is a classical “aerodynamic” machine, it has an unswept wing, a T-tail and is typical of the small jet trainers of the period. The manoeuvring flight envelopes for this aircraft were obtained from *Notes for Technical Observers* (1965) and are reproduced in Fig. 10.5. Clearly the service flight envelope fully embraces the BCAR operational flight envelope for *semi-aerobatic* aircraft, whereas some parts of the BCAR operational flight envelope for fully *aerobatic* aircraft are excluded. Consequently the aircraft is registered in the semi-aerobatic category and certain aerobatic manoeuvres are prohibited. It is clear from this illustration that the Paris was designed with structural normal load factor limits of  $+5.2g$ ,  $-2g$  which are inadequate for fully aerobatic manoeuvring.

## 10.5 PILOT OPINION RATING

Pilot opinion rating scales have been in use for a considerable time and provide a formal procedure for the qualitative assessment of aircraft flying qualities by experimental means. Since qualitative flying qualities assessment is very subjective, the development of a formal method for the interpretation of pilot opinion has turned a rather “imprecise art” into a useful tool which is routinely used in flight test programmes. The current pilot opinion rating scale was developed by Cooper and Harper (1969) and is universally known as the *Cooper–Harper rating scale*.



**Figure 10.5** *Flight envelopes for the Morane-Saulnier MS-760 Paris.*

The Cooper–Harper rating scale is used to assess the flying qualities, or more specifically the handling qualities, of an aeroplane in a given flight phase. The procedure for conducting the flight test evaluation and the method for post flight reduction and interpretation of pilot comments are defined. The result of the assessment is a *pilot rating* between 1 and 10. A rating of 1 suggests excellent handling qualities and low pilot workload whereas a rating of 10 suggests an aircraft with many handling qualities deficiencies. The adoption of a common procedure for rating handling qualities enables pilots to clearly state their assessment without ambiguity or the use of misleading terminology. A summary of the Cooper–Harper handling qualities rating scale is shown in Table 10.2.

It is usual and convenient to define an equivalence between the qualitative Cooper–Harper handling qualities rating scale and the quantitative levels of flying qualities. This permits easy and meaningful interpretation of flying qualities between both the piloting and analytical domains. The equivalence is summarised in Table 10.3.

**10.6 LONGITUDINAL FLYING QUALITIES REQUIREMENTS**

**10.6.1 Longitudinal static stability**

It has been shown in Chapter 3 that longitudinal static stability determines the pitch control displacement and force to trim. Clearly this must be of the correct magnitude if effective control of the aeroplane is to be maintained at all flight conditions. For this to be so the controls fixed and controls free static margins must not be too large or too small.

**Table 10.2** *The Cooper–Harper handling qualities rating scale*

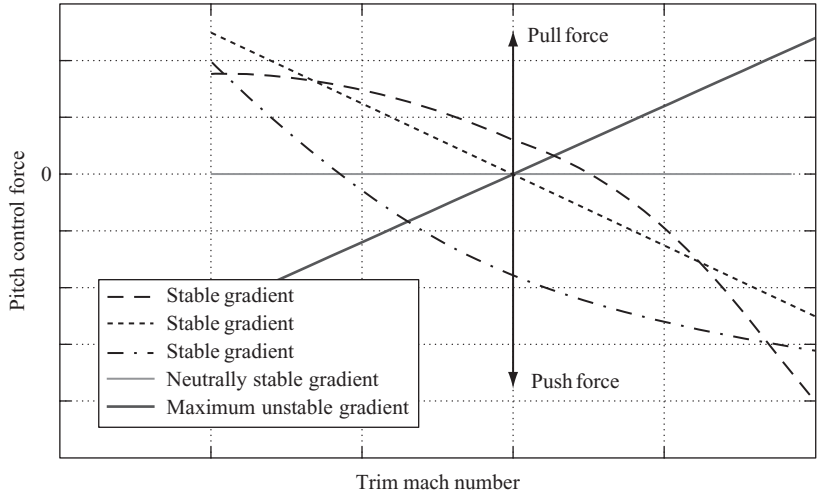
<i>Adequacy for selected task</i>	<i>Aircraft characteristic</i>	<i>Demands on pilot (workload)</i>	<i>Pilot rating</i>
Satisfactory	Excellent	Very low	<b>1</b>
Satisfactory	Good	Low	<b>2</b>
Satisfactory	Fair	Minimal pilot compensation required	<b>3</b>
Unsatisfactory – warrants improvements	Minor deficiencies	Moderate pilot compensation required	<b>4</b>
Unsatisfactory – warrants improvements	Moderate deficiencies	Considerable pilot compensation required	<b>5</b>
Unsatisfactory – warrants improvements	Tolerable deficiencies	Extensive pilot compensation required	<b>6</b>
Unacceptable – requires improvements	Major deficiencies	Adequate performance not attainable	<b>7</b>
Unacceptable – requires improvements	Major deficiencies	Considerable pilot compensation required for control	<b>8</b>
Unacceptable – requires improvements	Major deficiencies	Intense pilot compensation required for control	<b>9</b>
Catastrophic – improvement mandatory	Major deficiencies	Loss of control likely	<b>10</b>

**Table 10.3** *Equivalence of Cooper–Harper rating scale with levels of flying qualities*

Level of flying qualities	Level 1			Level 2			Level 3		Below Level 3		
Cooper–Harper rating scale	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	

In piloting terms a change of trim is seen as a change in airspeed, or Mach number, and involves a forward stick push to increase speed and an aft stick pull to decrease speed when the aeroplane possesses a normal level of static stability. The requirement states that the variation in pitch control position and force with speed is to be smooth and the gradients at the nominal trim speed are to be stable or, at worst, neutrally stable. In other words the static margins are to be greater than or equal to zero. The maximum acceptable degree of static stability is not specified. However, this will be limited by the available control power and the need to be able to lift the nose wheel at rotation for take-off at a reasonable airspeed. Abrupt changes in gradient with airspeed are not acceptable. Typical stable gradients are shown in Fig. 10.6 where it is indicated that the control characteristics do not necessarily have to be linear but the changes in gradient must be smooth. Clearly, the minimum acceptable control characteristics correspond with neutral static stability.





**Figure 10.6** Typical pitch control force gradients.

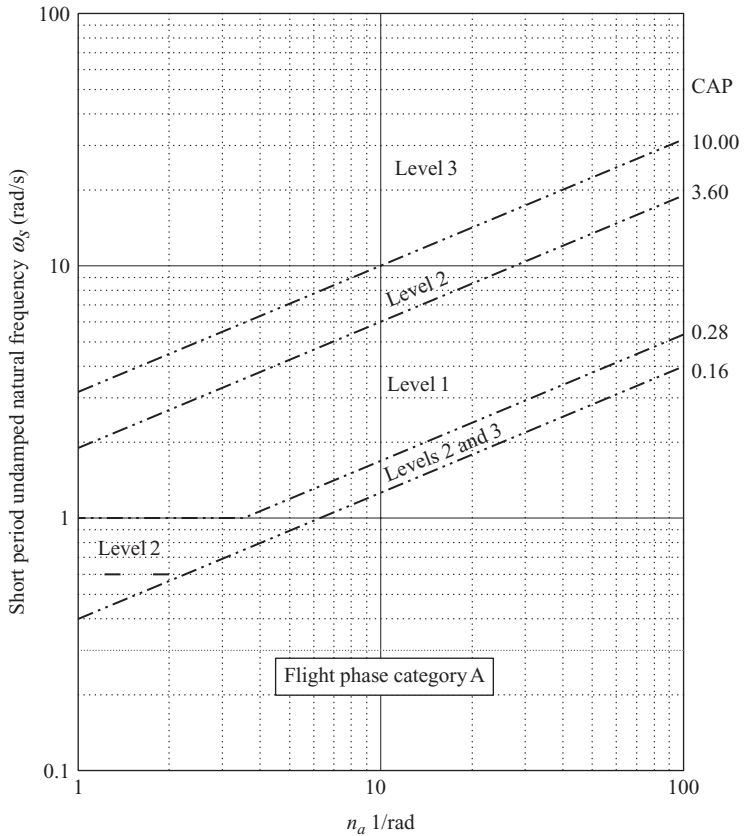
In the transonic flight regime in particular, the static stability margins can change significantly such that the aeroplane may become unstable for some part of its speed envelope. The requirements recognise such conditions and permit mildly unstable pitch control force gradients in transonic flight provided that the flight condition is transitory. Maximum allowable unstable gradients are quantified and a typical boundary is indicated in Fig. 10.6. Aeroplanes which may be required to operate for prolonged periods in transonic flight conditions are not permitted to have unstable control force gradients.

**10.6.2 Longitudinal dynamic stability**

**10.6.2.1 Short period pitching oscillation**

For the reasons explained in Section 10.2 the very important normal acceleration motion cue and the short period dynamics are totally interdependent. The controls fixed manoeuvre margin  $H_m$  and the short period frequency  $\omega_s$  are also interdependent as explained in Section 8.5. Thus the requirements for short period mode frequency reflect these relationships and are relatively complex, a typical illustration is shown in Fig. 10.7.

Three similar charts are given, one for each flight phase category and that for category A is shown in Fig. 10.7. The boundaries shown in Fig. 10.7 are equivalent to lines of constant *Control Anticipation Parameter* (CAP) which is proportional to the controls fixed manoeuvre margin. The boundaries therefore implicitly specify the constraint on manoeuvrability, quantified in terms of short period mode undamped natural frequency. The meaning of CAP is explained in Section 10.7. Now the derivative parameter  $n_\alpha$  quantifies the normal load factor per unit angle of attack, or incidence, as defined by equation (10.11). As its value increases with speed, the lower values of  $n_\alpha$  correlate with the lower speed characteristics of the aeroplane and *vice versa*. Now



**Figure 10.7** Typical short period mode frequency requirements.

as speed increases so the aerodynamic pitch stiffness of the aeroplane also increases which in turn results in an increase in short period mode frequency. This natural phenomenon is reflected in the requirements as the boundaries allow for increasing frequency with increasing  $n_a$ .

Acceptable limits on the stability of the short period mode are quantified in terms of maximum and minimum values of the damping ratio as a function of flight phase category and level of flying qualities as set out in Table 10.4.

The maximum values of short period mode damping ratio obviously imply that a stable non-oscillatory mode is acceptable.

### 10.6.2.2 Phugoid

Upper and lower values for phugoid frequency are not quantified. However, it is recommended that the phugoid and short period mode frequencies are well separated. It is suggested that handling difficulties may become obtrusive if the frequency ratio of the modes  $\omega_p/\omega_s \leq 0.1$ . Generally the phugoid dynamics are acceptable provided the mode is stable and damping ratio limits are quantified as shown in Table 10.5.

**Table 10.4** *Short period mode damping*

<i>Flight phase</i>	<i>Level 1</i>		<i>Level 2</i>		<i>Level 3</i>
	$\zeta_s$ min	$\zeta_s$ max	$\zeta_s$ min	$\zeta_s$ max	$\zeta_s$ min
CAT A	0.35	1.30	0.25	2.00	0.10
CAT B	0.30	2.00	0.20	2.00	0.10
CAT C	0.50	1.30	0.35	2.00	0.25

**Table 10.5** *Phugoid damping ratio*

<i>Level of flying qualities</i>	<i>Minimum <math>\zeta_p</math></i>
1	0.04
2	0
3	Unstable, period $T_p > 55$ s

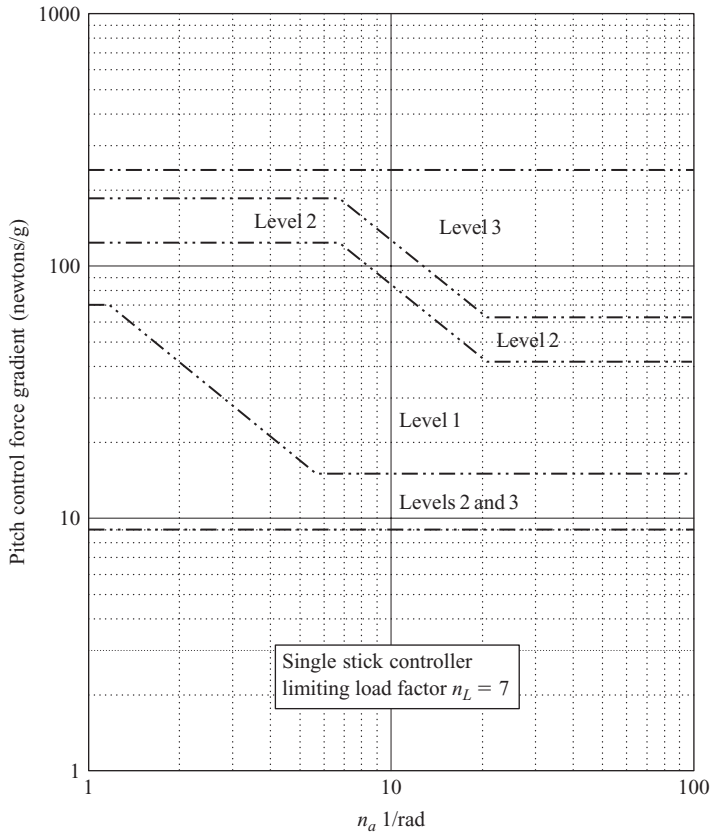
10.6.3 Longitudinal manoeuvrability

The requirements for longitudinal manoeuvrability are largely concerned with manoeuvring control force or, *stick force per g*. It is important that the value of this control characteristic is not too large or too small. In other words, the controls free manoeuvre margin must be constrained to an acceptable and appropriate range. If the control force is too *light* there is a danger that the pilot may inadvertently apply too much normal acceleration to the aircraft with the consequent possibility of structural failure. On the other hand, if the control force is too *heavy* then the pilot may not be strong enough to fully utilise the manoeuvring flight envelope of the aircraft.

Thus the requirements define the permitted upper and lower limits for controls free manoeuvre margin expressed in terms of the pitch control manoeuvring force gradient since this is the quantifiable parameter seen by the pilot. Further, the limits are functions of the type of control inceptor, a single stick or wheel type, and the limiting normal load factor appropriate to the airframe in question. The rather complex requirements are tabulated and their interpretation for an aircraft with a single stick controller and having a limiting normal load factor of  $n_L = 7.0$  is shown in Fig. 10.8. Again, the limits on stick force per g are expressed as a function of the flight condition parameter  $n_\alpha$ .

10.7 CONTROL ANTICIPATION PARAMETER

It has been reported by Bihrlé (1966) that, *in order to make precise adjustments to the flight path, the pilot must be able to anticipate the ultimate response of the airplane and that angular pitching acceleration is used for this purpose*. Now aeroplanes which have good second order like short term longitudinal response properties generally provide the pilot with good anticipatory handling cues. Clearly, this depends on the damping and frequency of the short period pitching mode in particular. However,



**Figure 10.8** Typical pitch control manoeuvring force gradients.

Bihrlé reports pilot observation that, *for airplanes having high inertia or low static stability the angular pitching acceleration accompanying small adjustments to flight path may fall below the threshold of perception*. In other words, the anticipatory nature of the response cues may become insignificant thereby giving rise to poor handling qualities. To deal with such cases he defines a quantifiable measure of the anticipatory nature of the response which he called *Control Anticipation Parameter (CAP)*. The formal definition of CAP is, *the amount of instantaneous angular pitching acceleration per unit of steady state normal acceleration*.

Now the steady normal acceleration response to a pitch control input is determined by the aerodynamic properties of the aeroplane, the wing and tailplane in particular. However, the transient peak magnitude of angular pitching acceleration immediately following the control input is largely determined by the short period dynamics which, in turn are dependent on the longitudinal static stability and moment of inertia in pitch. Thus CAP effectively quantifies acceptable short period mode characteristics appropriate to the aerodynamic properties and operating condition of the aeroplane.

A simple expression for CAP is easily derived from the longitudinal short term transfer functions described in Section 10.2.2.

The angular pitch acceleration transfer function is obtained from equation (10.3)

$$\frac{\dot{q}(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{m_\eta s(s - z_w)}{(s^2 - (m_q + z_w)s + (m_q z_w - m_w U_e))} \quad (10.22)$$

The initial pitch acceleration may be derived by assuming a unit elevator step input and applying the initial value theorem, equation (5.34), to equation (10.22). Whence

$$\dot{q}(0) = \lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} \left( s \frac{m_\eta s(s - z_w)}{(s^2 - (m_q + z_w)s + (m_q z_w - m_w U_e))} \frac{1}{s} \right) = m_\eta \quad (10.23)$$

Similarly the steady state normal acceleration may be derived by assuming a unit elevator input and applying the final value theorem, equation (5.33), to equation (10.5). Whence

$$a_z(\infty) = \lim_{s \rightarrow 0} \left( s \frac{m_\eta z_w U_e}{(s^2 - 2\zeta_s \omega_s s + \omega_s^2)} \frac{1}{s} \right) = \frac{m_\eta z_w U_e}{\omega_s^2} \quad (10.24)$$

The dimensionless normal acceleration, or load factor, is given by

$$n_z(\infty) = -\frac{a_z(\infty)}{g} = -\frac{m_\eta z_w U_e}{g \omega_s^2} \quad (10.25)$$

and CAP is given by

$$\text{CAP} = \frac{\dot{q}(0)}{n_z(\infty)} = -\frac{g \omega_s^2}{z_w U_e} = \frac{g \omega_s^2 T_{\theta_2}}{U_e} \quad (10.26)$$

since, approximately,  $T_{\theta_2} = -1/z_w$ . With reference to equation (10.12) an alternative and more commonly used expression for CAP follows

$$\text{CAP} = \frac{\omega_s^2}{n_\alpha} \quad (10.27)$$

and this is the boundary parameter shown in Fig. 10.7.

Now equation (8.45) states that

$$\omega_s^2 = \frac{1/2 \rho V_0^2 S \bar{c} a}{I_y} H_m \quad (10.28)$$

With reference to Appendix 2 it may be shown that

$$z_w \cong \frac{\dot{Z}_w}{m} = \frac{1/2 \rho V_0 S Z_w}{m} \quad (10.29)$$

assuming, as is usually the case, that  $\dot{Z}_w \ll m$ . With reference to Appendix 8 it may be determined that

$$Z_w \cong -\frac{\partial C_L}{\partial \alpha} \equiv -a \quad (10.30)$$

the lift curve slope. Thus substituting equations (10.28)–(10.30) into equation (10.26) the expression for CAP reduces to the important result

$$\text{CAP} = \frac{mg\bar{c}}{I_y} H_m = \frac{g\bar{c}}{k^2} H_m \quad (10.31)$$

where  $k$  denotes the *longitudinal radius of gyration*. Since aircraft axes are assumed to be wind axes throughout then  $U_e \equiv V_0$ . Thus, it is shown that CAP is directly proportional to the controls fixed manoeuvre margin  $H_m$  and that the constant of proportionality is dependent on aircraft geometry and mass distribution.

## 10.8 LATERAL–DIRECTIONAL FLYING QUALITIES REQUIREMENTS

### 10.8.1 Steady lateral–directional control

Unlike the longitudinal flying qualities requirements the lateral–directional requirements do not address static stability in quite the same way. In general, the lateral–directional static stability is independent of  $cg$  position and flight condition and, once set by the aerodynamic design of the aeroplane, does not change significantly. The main concerns centre on the provision of adequate control power for maintaining control in steady asymmetric flight conditions, or in otherwise potentially limiting conditions in symmetric flight. Further, it is essential that the control forces required to cope with such conditions do not exceed the physical capabilities of the average human pilot.

General normal lateral–directional control requirements specify limits for the roll stick and rudder pedal forces and require that the force gradients have the correct sense and do not exceed the prescribed limits. The control requirement for trim is addressed as is the requirement for roll–yaw control coupling which must be correctly harmonised. In particular, it is important that the pilot can fly properly coordinated turns with similar and acceptable degrees of control effort in both roll and yaw control.

The lateral–directional requirements relating to asymmetric, or otherwise potentially difficult control conditions, are concerned with steady sideslip, flight in crosswind conditions, steep dives and engine out conditions resulting in asymmetric thrust. For each condition the requirements specify the maximum permissible roll and yaw control forces necessary to maintain controlled flight up to relatively severe adverse conditions. Since the specified conditions interrelate and also have to take into account the aircraft class, flight phase and level of flying qualities many tables of quantitative limits are needed to embrace all eventualities. Thus, the flying qualities requirements relating to steady lateral–directional flight are comprehensive and of necessity substantial.

### 10.8.2 Lateral–directional dynamic stability

#### 10.8.2.1 Roll subsidence mode

Since the roll subsidence mode describes short term lateral dynamics it is critically important in the determination of lateral handling qualities. For this reason the limiting acceptable values of its time constant are specified precisely as listed in Table 10.6.

**Table 10.6** Roll subsidence mode time constant

Aircraft class	Flight phase category	Maximum value of $T_r$ (seconds)		
		Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
I, IV	A, C	1.0	1.4	—
II, III	A, C	1.4	3.0	—
I, II, III, IV	B	1.4	3.0	—

**Table 10.7** Spiral mode time to double bank angle

Flight Phase category	Minimum value of $T_2$ (seconds)		
	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
A, C	12	8	5
B	20	8	5

It seems that no common agreement exists as to a suitable maximum value of the time constant for level three flying qualities. It is suggested in DEF-STAN 00-970 that a suitable value would appear to be in the range  $6\text{ s} < T_r < 8\text{ s}$  whereas MIL-F-8785C quotes a value of 10 s.

**10.8.2.2 Spiral mode**

A stable spiral mode is acceptable irrespective of its time constant. However, since its time constant is dependent on lateral static stability (dihedral effect) the maximum level of stability is determined by the maximum acceptable roll control force. Because the mode gives rise to very slow dynamic behaviour it is not too critical to handling unless it is very unstable. For this reason minimum acceptable degrees of instability are quantified in terms of time to double bank angle  $T_2$  in an uncontrolled departure from straight and level flight. The limiting values are shown in Table 10.7.

For analytical work it is sometimes more convenient to express the spiral mode requirement in terms of time constant  $T_s$  rather than time to double bank angle. If it is assumed that the unstable mode characteristic gives rise to a purely exponential divergence in roll then it is easily shown that the time constant and the time to double bank angle are related by the following expression

$$T_s = \frac{T_2}{\log_e 2}$$

(10.32)

Thus, alternatively the requirement may be quantified as listed in Table 10.8.

**10.8.2.3 Dutch roll mode**

Since the dutch roll mode is a short period mode it has an important influence on lateral-directional handling and, as a consequence, its damping and frequency

**Table 10.8** *Spiral mode time constant*

Flight phase category	Minimum value of $T_s$ (seconds)		
	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
A, C	17.3	11.5	7.2
B	28.9	11.5	7.2

**Table 10.9** *Dutch roll frequency and damping*

Aircraft class	Flight phase	Minimum values							
		Level 1			Level 2			Level 3	
		$\zeta_d$	$\zeta_d \omega_d$	$\omega_d$	$\zeta_d$	$\zeta_d \omega_d$	$\omega_d$	$\zeta_d$	$\omega_d$
I, IV	CAT A	0.19	0.35	1.0	0.02	0.05	0.5	0	0.4
II, III	CAT A	0.19	0.35	0.5	0.02	0.05	0.5	0	0.4
All	CAT B	0.08	0.15	0.5	0.02	0.05	0.5	0	0.4
I, IV	CAT C	0.08	0.15	1.0	0.02	0.05	0.5	0	0.4
II, III	CAT C	0.08	0.10	0.5	0.02	0.05	0.5	0	0.4

requirements are specified in some detail. It is approximately the lateral-directional equivalent of the longitudinal short period mode and has frequency of the same order since pitch and yaw inertias are usually similar in magnitude. However, yaw damping is frequently low as a result of the design conflict with the need to constrain spiral mode instability with dihedral. Although the longitudinal short period mode and the dutch roll mode are similar in bandwidth, the latter is not as critical to handling. In fact, a poorly damped dutch roll is seen more as a handling irritation rather than as a serious problem.

The acceptable minima for damping ratio, undamped natural frequency and damping ratio-frequency product are specified for various combinations of aircraft class and flight phase category as shown in Table 10.9.

### 10.8.3 Lateral-directional manoeuvrability and response

The lateral-directional manoeuvrability requirements are largely concerned with limiting roll oscillations, sideslip excursions and roll and yaw control forces to acceptable levels during rolling and turning manoeuvres.

Oscillation in roll response to controls will occur whenever the dutch roll is intrusive and poorly damped. Thus limiting the magnitude and characteristics of oscillation in roll is effectively imposing additional constraints on the dutch roll mode when it is intrusive. Oscillation is also possible in cases when the roll and spiral modes couple to form a second pair of complex roots in the lateral-directional characteristic equation.



However, the influence of this characteristic on handling is not well understood and it is recommended that the condition should be avoided.

Sideslip excursions during lateral-directional manoeuvring are normal and expected, especially in entry and exit to turning manoeuvres. It is required that the rudder control displacement and force increase approximately linearly with increase in sideslip response for sideslip of modest magnitude. It is also required that the effect of dihedral shall not be too great otherwise excessive roll control displacement and force may be needed to manoeuvre. Remember, that too much stability can be as hazardous as too little stability! It would seem that the main emphasis is on the provision of acceptable levels of roll and yaw control displacement with particular concern for entry and exit to turning manoeuvres which, after all, is lateral-directional manoeuvring flight.

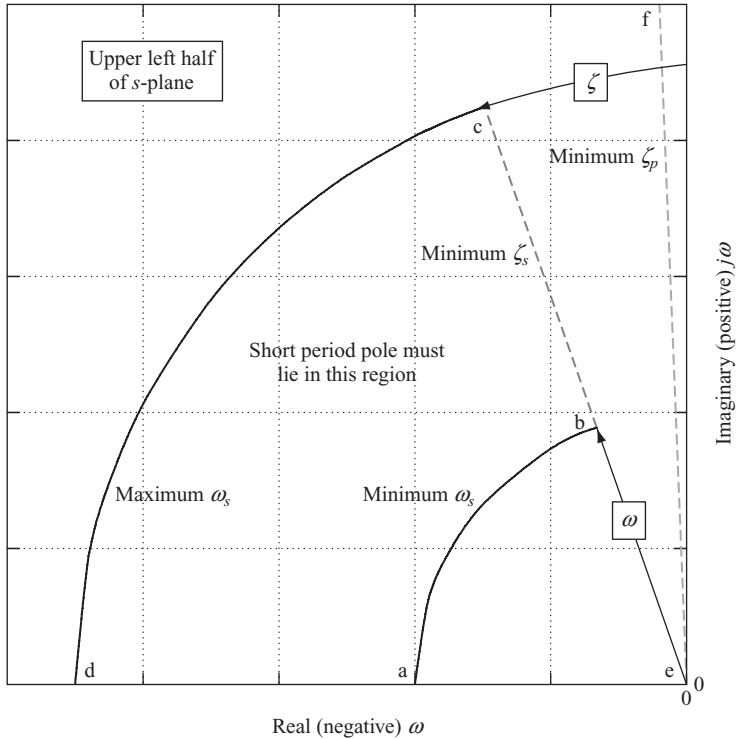
## 10.9 FLYING QUALITIES REQUIREMENTS ON THE $s$ -PLANE

In Chapter 9, the way in which the roots of the characteristic equation may be mapped on to the  $s$ -plane was illustrated in order to facilitate the interpretation of aircraft stability graphically. By superimposing boundaries defined by the appropriate flying qualities requirements on to the same  $s$ -plane plots the stability characteristics of an aeroplane may be assessed directly with respect to those requirements. This graphical approach to the assessment of aircraft flying qualities is particularly useful for analysis and design and is used extensively in flight control system design.

### 10.9.1 Longitudinal modes

Typical boundaries describing the limits on longitudinal mode frequency and damping on the  $s$ -plane are shown in Fig. 10.9. It is not usually necessary to show more than the upper left half of the  $s$ -plane since stable characteristics only are of primary interest and the lower half of the  $s$ -plane is simply the mirror image of the upper half of the  $s$ -plane reflected in the real axis.

The upper and lower short period mode frequency boundaries are described by arcs  $cd$  and  $ab$  respectively. The frequency limits are determined from charts like Fig. 10.7 and depend on the operating flight condition which is determined by  $n_\alpha$ . Alternatively, the boundaries may be determined from a consideration of the limiting CAP values, also given on charts like Fig. 10.7, at the flight condition of interest. Note that when the  $s$ -plane is drawn to the same scale on both the  $x$  and  $y$  axes the frequency boundaries become circular arcs about the origin. When the scales are not the same the arcs become ellipses which can be more difficult to interpret. The minimum short period mode damping ratio is obtained from Table 10.4 and maps into the line  $bc$  radiating from the origin. The maximum permitted damping ratio is greater than one which obviously means that the corresponding roots lie on the real axis. Thus when the short period mode roots, or poles, are mapped on to the  $s$ -plane they must lie within the region bounded by “ $abcd$ ” and its mirror image in the real axis. If the damping ratio is greater than one then the pair of roots must lie on the real axis in locations bounded by the permitted maximum value of damping ratio.



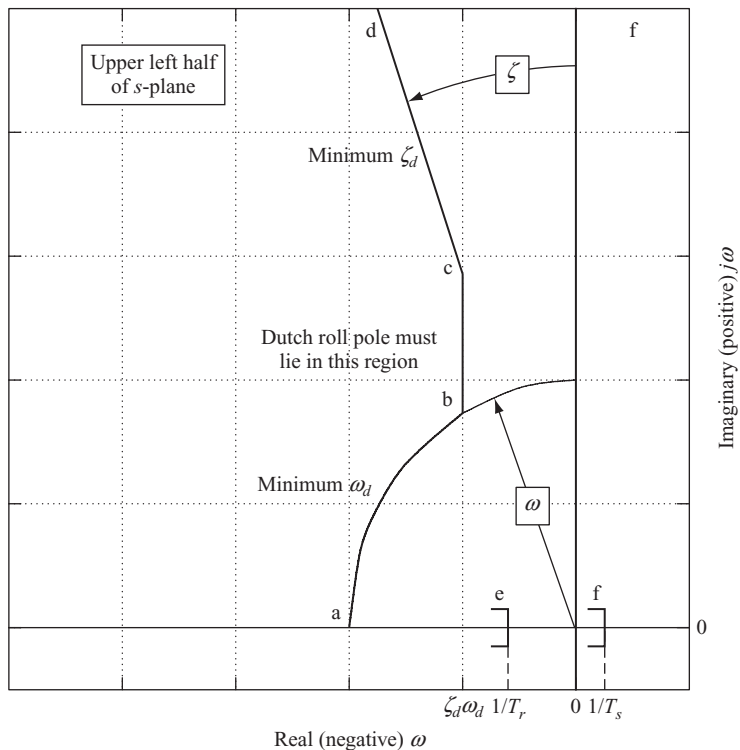
**Figure 10.9** Longitudinal flying qualities requirements on the  $s$ -plane.

The minimum phugoid damping ratio is given in Table 10.5 and, for Level 1 flying qualities maps onto the  $s$ -plane as the boundary “ef”. Thus, when the phugoid roots, or poles, are mapped on to the  $s$ -plane they must lie to the left of the line “ef” to meet level one flying qualities requirements. The Level 3 requirement on phugoid damping obviously allows for the case when the poles become real, one of which may be unstable thereby giving rise to divergent motion. In this case, the limit implicitly defines a minimum acceptable value for the corresponding time constant. This is mapped on to the  $s$ -plane in exactly the same way as the lateral–directional spiral mode boundary as described below.

### 10.9.2 Lateral–directional modes

Typical boundaries describing the limits on lateral–directional mode frequency and damping on the  $s$ -plane are shown in Fig. 10.10. Again, the upper left half of the  $s$ -plane is shown but with a small extension into the upper right half of the  $s$ -plane to include the region appropriate to the unstable spiral mode. As for the longitudinal case, interpretation implicitly includes the lower half of the  $s$ -plane which is the mirror image of the upper half of the  $s$ -plane in the real axis.

The maximum permitted value of the roll subsidence mode time constant is given in Table 10.6 and this maps into the boundary “e” since the corresponding real root is



**Figure 10.10** Lateral-directional flying qualities requirements on the *s*-plane.

given by the inverse of the time constant  $T_r$ . Further, since the mode must always be stable it will always lie on the negative real axis. The precise location of the boundary “e” is determined by the aircraft class, the flight phase category and the required level of flying qualities. However, at the appropriate operating flight condition the pole describing the roll subsidence mode must lie on the real axis to the left of the boundary “e”.

The location of the spiral mode boundary “f” is established in the same way. Since the required limits only apply to the mode when it is unstable then the corresponding boundary lies on the right half of the *s*-plane. The precise location of the boundary may be determined from the minimum acceptable value of the time constant  $T_s$ , given in Table 10.8 and, again, this depends on aircraft class and the required level of flying qualities. Thus, the spiral mode pole must always lie on the real axis to the left of the boundary “f”.

The limiting frequency and damping requirements for the dutch roll mode are given in Table 10.9 and are interpreted in much the same way as the requirements for the longitudinal short period mode. The minimum permitted frequency boundary is described by the arc “ab” and the minimum permitted damping ratio boundary by the line “cd”. The minimum permitted value of  $\zeta_d \omega_d$  maps into the line “bc” to complete the dutch roll mode boundary and, as before, the boundary has its mirror image in the lower half of the *s*-plane. Thus the dutch roll mode roots, or poles, must always lie to

the left of the boundary “abcd” at the flight condition of interest. Clearly, the precise location of the boundary is determined by the appropriate combination of aircraft class, flight phase category and required level of flying qualities.

### Example 10.4

To illustrate the application of the flying qualities requirements consider the McDonnell F-4 Phantom, the following data for which was obtained from Heffley and Jewell (1972). Since the available data are limited to the equations of motion and some supporting material the flying qualities assessment is limited to consideration of basic stability and control characteristics only.

For the case selected the general flight condition parameters given are:

Altitude	$h$	35000 ft
Mach number	$M$	1.2
Weight	$mg$	38925 Lb
Trim airspeed	$V_0$	1167 ft/s
Trim body incidence	$\alpha_e$	1.6 deg
Flight path angle	$\gamma_e$	0
Normal load factor derivative	$n_\alpha$	22.4 g/rad
Control anticipation parameter	CAP	1.31 1/s <sup>2</sup>
“Elevator” angle per g	$\eta/g$	3.64 deg/g

Clearly the Phantom is a high performance combat aircraft thus, for the purposes of flying qualities assessment it is described as a *class IV* aircraft. The flight task to which the data relates is not stated. Therefore it may be assumed that the aircraft is either in steady cruising flight, flight phase category B, or it is manoeuvring about the given condition in which case flight phase category A applies. For this illustration *flight phase category A* is assumed since it determines the most demanding flying qualities requirements. It is interesting to note that the parameter “elevator” angle per g is given which is, of course, a measure of the controls fixed manoeuvre margin.

Considering the longitudinal stability and control characteristics first. Sufficient information about the stability characteristics of the basic airframe is given by the pitch attitude response to “elevator” transfer function, which for the chosen flight condition is

$$\frac{\theta(s)}{\eta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\eta^\theta(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{-20.6(s + 0.0131)(s + 0.618)}{(s^2 + 0.0171s + 0.00203)(s^2 + 1.759s + 29.49)} \quad (10.33)$$

The essential longitudinal stability and control parameters may be obtained on inspection of transfer function 10.33 as follows:

Phugoid damping ratio	$\zeta_p = 0.19$
Phugoid undamped natural frequency	$\omega_p = 0.045 \text{ rad/s}$
Short period damping ratio	$\zeta_s = 0.162$
Short period undamped natural frequency	$\omega_s = 5.43 \text{ rad/s}$
Numerator time constant	$T_{\theta_1} = 1/0.0131 = 76.34 \text{ s}$
Numerator time constant (incidence lag)	$T_{\theta_2} = 1/0.618 = 1.62 \text{ s}$

Since the Phantom is an American aeroplane it would seem appropriate to assess its basic stability characteristics against the requirements of MIL-F-8785C. However, in practice it would be assessed against the requirements document specified by the procuring agency.

With reference to Table 10.5, which is directly applicable, the phugoid damping ratio is greater than 0.04 and since  $\omega_p/\omega_s < 0.1$  the phugoid achieves level one flying qualities and is unlikely to give rise to handling difficulties at this flight condition.

With reference to the short period mode frequency chart for flight phase category A, which is the same as Fig. 10.7, at  $n_\alpha = 22.4$  g/rad and for Level 1 flying qualities it is required that

$$2.6 \text{ rad/s} \leq \omega_s \leq 9.0 \text{ rad/s}$$

or, equivalently

$$0.28 \text{ 1/s}^2 \leq \omega_s^2/n_\alpha(\text{CAP}) \leq 3.6 \text{ 1/s}^2$$

Clearly, the short period undamped natural frequency achieves Level 1 flying qualities.

Unfortunately, the short period mode damping ratio is less than desirable. A table similar to Table 10.4 indicates that the damping only achieves Level 3 flying qualities and to achieve Level 1 it would need to be in the range  $0.35 \leq \zeta_s \leq 1.3$ .

Considering now the lateral-directional stability and control characteristics, sufficient information about the stability characteristics of the basic airframe is given, for example, by the roll rate response to aileron transfer function, which for the chosen flight condition is

$$\frac{p(s)}{\xi(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\xi^p(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{-10.9s(s^2 + 0.572s + 13.177)}{(s + 0.00187)(s + 1.4)(s^2 + 0.519s + 12.745)} \quad (10.34)$$

The essential lateral-directional stability and control parameters may be obtained on inspection of transfer function 10.34 as follows:

Roll mode time constant	$T_r = 1/1.4 = 0.714 \text{ s}$
Spiral mode time constant	$T_s = 1/0.00187 = 535 \text{ s}$
Dutch roll damping ratio	$\zeta_d = 0.0727$
Dutch roll undamped natural frequency	$\omega_d = 3.57 \text{ rad/s}$
Dutch roll damping ratio-frequency product	$\zeta_d \omega_d = 0.26 \text{ rad/s}$

Clearly, at this flight condition the spiral mode is stable with a very long time constant. In fact it is approaching neutral stability for all practical considerations. Since the mode is stable it achieves Level 1 flying qualities and is most unlikely to give rise to handling difficulties.

A table similar to Table 10.6 indicates that the roll subsidence mode damping ratio achieves Level 1 flying qualities since  $T_r < 1.0 \text{ s}$ .

The dutch roll mode characteristics are less than desirable since its damping is very low. A table similar to Table 10.9 indicates that the damping ratio only achieves Level 2 flying qualities. In order to achieve the desirable Level 1 flying qualities the mode characteristics would need to meet:

Dutch roll damping ratio	$\zeta_d \geq 0.19$
Dutch roll undamped natural frequency	$\omega_d \geq 1.0 \text{ rad/s}$
Dutch roll damping ratio-frequency product	$\zeta_d \omega_d \geq 0.35 \text{ rad/s}$

It is therefore concluded that both the longitudinal short-period mode and the lateral-directional dutch roll mode damping ratios are too low at the flight condition evaluated. In all other respects the aeroplane achieves Level 1 flying qualities. The deficient aerodynamic damping of the Phantom, in common with many other aeroplanes, is augmented artificially by the introduction of a feedback control system.

It must be emphasised that this illustration is limited to an assessment of the basic stability properties of the airframe only. This determines the need, or otherwise, for stability augmentation. Once the stability has been satisfactorily augmented by an appropriate control system then, further and more far reaching assessments of the control and handling characteristics of the augmented aeroplane would be made. The scope of this kind of evaluation may be appreciated by reference to the specification documents discussed above. In any event, analytical assessment would need the addition of a simulation model developed from the linearised equations of motion in order to properly investigate some of the dynamic control and response properties.

## REFERENCES

- Anon. 1965: *Morane Saulnier M.S.760 – Notes for Technical Observers*. The College of Aeronautics, Cranfield.
- Anon. 1980: *Military Specification – Flying Qualities of Piloted Airplanes*. MIL-F-8785C. Department of Defense, USA.
- Anon. 1983: *Design and Airworthiness requirements for Service Aircraft*. Defence Standard 00-970/Issue 1, Volume 1, Book 2, Part 6 – *Aerodynamics, Flying Qualities and Performance*. Ministry of Defence, UK.
- Anon. 1987: *Military Standard – Flying Qualities of Piloted Airplanes*. MIL-STD-1797A (USAF). Department of Defense, USA.
- Anon. 1994: *Joint Aviation Requirements-JAR 25-Large Aeroplanes, Section 1-Requirements, Subpart B-Flight*. Civil Aviation Authority, CAA House, Kingsway, London.
- Anon. 2007: *Design and Airworthiness requirements for Service Aircraft*. Defence Standard 00-970, Issue 5, Part 1, section 2, *Flight*. Ministry of Defence, Defence Standardization, Room 1138, Kentigern House, 65 Brown Street, Glasgow. [www.dstan.mod.uk](http://www.dstan.mod.uk).
- Anon: *Federal Aviation Regulations–Part 25, Subpart B-Flight*. Federal Aviation Administration, United States Department of Transportation.
- Anon: *British Civil Airworthiness Requirements-Section K-Light Aeroplanes*. Civil Aviation Authority, CAA House, Kingsway, London.

- Bihrlé, W. 1966: *A Handling Qualities Theory for Precise Flight Path Control*. Air Force Flight Dynamics Laboratory, Technical Report AFFDL-TR-65-198, Wright-Patterson Air Force Base, Ohio.
- Chalk, C.R. 1958: *Additional Flight Evaluations of Various Longitudinal Handling Qualities in a Variable-Stability Jet Fighter*. Wright Air Development Center Technical Report, WADC TR 57-719, Wright-Patterson Air Force Base, Ohio.
- Cooper, G.E. and Harper, R.P. 1969: *The Use of Pilot Rating in the Evaluation of Aircraft Handling Qualities*. AGARD Report 567. Advisory Group for Aerospace Research & Development, 7 Rue Ancelle 92200, Neuilly-sur-Seine, France.
- Gibson, J.C. 1995: *The Definition, Understanding and Design of Aircraft Handling Qualities*. Delft University of Technology, Faculty of Aerospace Engineering, Report LR-756, Delft, The Netherlands.
- Heffley, R.K. and Jewell, W.F. 1972: *Aircraft Handling Qualities Data*. NASA Contractor Report, NASA CR-2144, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington D.C. 20546.
- Hoh, R.H., Mitchell, D.G., Ashkenas, I.L., Klein, R.H., Heffley, R.K. and Hodgkinson, J. 1982: *Proposed MIL Standard and Handbook – Flying Qualities of Air Vehicles, Volume II: Proposed MIL Handbook*. Air Force Wright Aeronautical Laboratory, Technical Report AFWAL-TR-82-3081, Vol. II, Wright-Patterson Air Force Base, Ohio.
- Teper, G.L. 1969: *Aircraft Stability and Control Data*. Systems Technology, Inc., STI Technical Report 176-1. NASA Contractor Report, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington D.C. 20546.

## PROBLEMS

1. What are flying and handling qualities requirements?

In the context of flying and handling qualities requirements explain the following

- Flight envelope
- Aircraft class
- Flight phase category
- Level of flying quality
- The Cooper–Harper rating scale

The pitch rate response to elevator control transfer function for the Northrop F-5 Tiger aircraft in level flight cruise at an altitude of 30,000 ft is given by

$$\frac{q(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{-14.6s(s + 0.0159)(s + 0.474)}{(s^2 + 1.027s + 7.95)(s^2 + 0.0169s + 0.0031)} \quad 1/s$$

Evaluate the flying qualities of the aircraft at this flight condition. Note that  $n_\alpha = 12.9$  1/rad for this flight condition.

With the aid of *MATLAB* or *Program CC*, draw a root locus plot to show the effect of pitch rate feedback to elevator and show both modes clearly. Draw the flying qualities limit boundaries on the plot and hence determine a suitable value for the feedback gain  $k_q$  to ensure the aircraft meets the requirements.

Compare the characteristics of the stability modes at this gain with those of the unaugmented aircraft. (CU 1985)

2. Describe the service and operational flight envelope for an aircraft and explain how they are related.

In the context of flying and handling qualities, what is meant by flight phase category? Why are the stability requirements associated with each flight phase category different? (CU 1986)

3. The Lockheed Jetstar is a small four engined utility transport aircraft. When cruising at Mach 0.5 at an altitude of 40,000 ft, the roll and yaw transfer functions are given by

$$N_{\xi}^p(s) = -0.929(s - 0.0133)(s^2 + 0.133s + 0.79) \text{ 1/s}$$

$$N_{\xi}^p(s) = -0.511(s + 0.36)(s + 0.098)(s + 0.579) \text{ 1/s}$$

$$\Delta(s) = (s - 0.0008)(s + 0.576)(s^2 + 0.009s + 1.26)$$

Evaluate the stability modes characteristics at this flight condition against the flying qualities requirements.

What negative feedback is required to improve the stability characteristics of this aircraft? Illustrate your answer with a *sketch* of the appropriate root locus plot(s) and state the most significant effects of the feedback with reference to the requirements. (CU 1990)

4. Explain why the characteristics of the short term stability modes are critical to good flying qualities. (CU 2001)



---

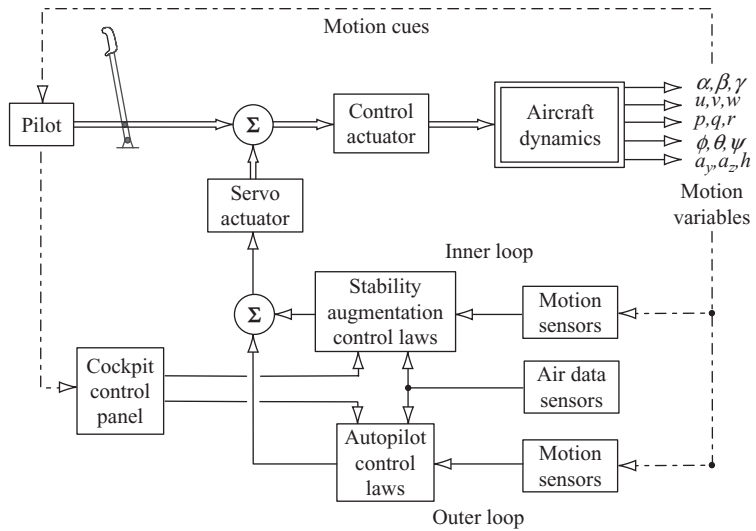
## Chapter 11

# Stability Augmentation

### 11.1 INTRODUCTION

In the previous chapter it is shown how the stability and control characteristics of an aeroplane may be assessed in the context of flying and handling qualities requirements. In the event that the aeroplane fails to meet the requirements in some way, then it is necessary to consider remedial action. For all except perhaps the most trivial of problems it is not usually practical to modify the aerodynamic design of the aeroplane once its design has been finalised. Quite often the deficiencies occur simply as a result of the requirement for the aeroplane to operate over an extended flight envelope and not necessarily as a result of an aerodynamic design oversight. Alternatively, this might be explained as the effects of aerodynamic non-linearity. The preferred solution is, therefore, to artificially modify, or *augment*, the apparent stability characteristics of the airframe. This is most conveniently achieved by the introduction of *negative feedback* in which the output signals from motion sensors are processed in some way and used to drive the appropriate control surfaces via actuators. The resultant *closed loop control system* is similar in many respects to the classical servo mechanism familiar to the control engineer. A significant advantage of this approach is that the analysis of the augmented, or closed loop, aircraft makes full use of the well-established tools of the control engineer. The *systems* approach to flight dynamics analysis has already been introduced in earlier chapters where, for example, control engineering tools have been utilised for solving the equations of motion.

A functional block diagram of a typical *flight control system* (FCS) is shown in Fig. 11.1. It is assumed that the primary flying controls are mechanical such that pilot commands drive the control surfaces via control actuators which augment the available power to levels sufficient to overcome the aerodynamic loads on the surfaces. The *electronic flight control system* (EFCS) comprises two feedback loops both of which derive their control signals from motion sensors appropriate to the requirements of the *control laws*. The outputs from the inner and outer loop controllers are electronically summed and the resultant signal controls the aircraft via a small servo actuator. Typically, the servo actuator is an electro-hydraulic device which converts low power electrical signals to mechanical signals at a power level compatible with those originating at the pilot to which it is mechanically summed. Although only a single control axis is indicated in Fig. 11.1, it is important to appreciate that the FCS will, in general, include closed loop controllers operating on the roll, pitch and yaw control axes of the aircraft simultaneously and may even extend to include closed loop engine control as well. Thus multi-variable feedback involving many separate control loops is implied, which is typical of many modern FCS.



**Figure 11.1** A typical flight control system.

The *inner loop* provides stability augmentation and is usually regarded as essential for continued proper operation of the aircraft. The inner loop control system alone comprises the *stability augmentation system* (SAS), it is usually the first part of the FCS to be designed and together with the airframe comprises the *augmented aircraft*.

The *outer loop* provides the *autopilot* which, as its name suggests, enables the pilot to fly various manoeuvres under automatic control. Although necessary for operational reasons, an autopilot is not essential for the provision of a safe well behaved aircraft. The *autopilot control modes* are designed to function with the augmented aircraft and may be selectively engaged as required to automate the piloting task. Their use is intended to release the pilot from the monotony of flying steady conditions manually and to fly precision manoeuvres in adverse conditions which may be at, or beyond, the limits of human capability. Autopilot control modes vary from the very simple, for example *height hold*, to the very complex, for example *automatic landing*.

Since, typically, for most aircraft the *control law gains* required to effect good stability, control and handling vary with operating condition, it is necessary to make provision for their continuous adjustment. The variations often arise as a result of variations in the aerodynamic properties of the airframe over the flight envelope. For example, at low speed the aerodynamic effectiveness of the control surfaces is generally less than at high speed. This means that higher *control gains* are required at low speeds and *vice versa*. It is, therefore, common practice to vary, or *schedule*, gains as a function of flight condition. Commonly used flight condition variables are dynamic pressure, Mach number, altitude and so on, information which is grouped under the description of *air data*. Generally, air data information would be available to all control laws in a FCS as indicated in Fig. 11.1.

A control panel is provided in the cockpit to enable the pilot to control and monitor the operation of the FCS. SAS controls are usually minimal and enable the pilot to monitor the system for correct, and hence safe, operation. In some cases he may also be

provided with means for selectively isolating parts of the SAS. On the other hand, the autopilot control panel is rather more substantial. Controls are provided to enable the pilot to set up, engage and disengage the various autopilot mode functions. The control panel also enables him to monitor progress during the automated manoeuvre selected.

In piloted phases of flight the autopilot would normally be disengaged and, as indicated in Fig. 11.1 the pilot would derive his perception of flying and handling qualities from the motion cues provided by the augmented aircraft. Thus the inner loop control system provides the means by which all aspects of stability, control and handling may be tailored in order to improve the characteristics of the basic aircraft.

### 11.1.1 The control law

The control law is a mathematical expression which describes the function implemented by an augmentation or autopilot controller. For example, a very simple and very commonly used control law describing an inner loop control system for augmenting yaw damping is

$$\zeta(s) = K_\zeta \delta_\zeta(s) - K_r \left( \frac{s}{1 + sT} \right) r(s) \quad (11.1)$$

Equation (11.1) simply states that the control signal applied to the rudder  $\zeta(s)$  comprises the sum of the pilot command  $\delta_\zeta(s)$  and yaw rate feedback  $r(s)$ . The gain  $K_\zeta$  is the mechanical gearing between rudder pedals and rudder and the gain  $K_r$  is the all important feedback gain chosen by design to optimise the damping in yaw. The second term in equation (11.1) is negative since negative feedback is required to increase stability in yaw. The second term also, typically, includes a *washout*, or *high-pass*, filter with a time constant of around 1 or 2 s. The filter is included to block yaw rate feedback in steady turning flight in order to prevent the feedback loop opposing the pilot command once the rudder pedals are returned to centre after manoeuvre initiation. However, the filter is effectively *transparent* during transient motion thereby enabling the full effect of the feedback loop to quickly damp out the yaw oscillation.

### 11.1.2 Safety

In any aeroplane fitted with a FCS safety is the most critical issue. Since the FCS has direct “access” to the control surfaces considerable care must be exercised in the design of the system to ensure that under no circumstances can a maximum instantaneous uncontrolled command be applied to any control surface. For example, a sensor failure might cause its output to *saturate* at its maximum possible value. This signal, in turn, is *conditioned* by the control law to apply what could well be a demand of magnitude sufficient to cause a maximum control surface displacement. The resulting *failure transient* might well be some kind of hazardous divergent response. Clearly, steps must be taken in the design of the FCS architecture to incorporate mechanisms to protect the aircraft from partial or total system malfunction.

The design of *safety critical* FCS architectures, as opposed to the simpler problem of control law design, is a substantial subject in its own right. However, at an introductory

level, it is sufficient to appreciate that the requirements for safety can sometimes override the requirements for control, especially when relatively large control system gains are necessary. For simple SAS of the kind exemplified by the control law, equation (11.1), the problem may be overcome by limiting the maximum values of the control signals, giving rise to what is referred to as a *limited authority* control system. In more complex FCS where authority limiting is not acceptable for control reasons, it may be necessary to employ control system *redundancy*. Redundant FCS comprise two, or more, systems which are functionally similar and which normally operate in parallel. In the event of a system malfunction, the faulty equipment is isolated leaving the remaining *healthy* system components to continue the augmentation task. In such systems, automatic fault containment can reduce the failure transient to an imperceptible level. It is then necessary to provide the pilot with information enabling him to continuously *monitor* the state of health of the FCS on an appropriate cockpit display.

### 11.1.3 SAS architecture

The architecture of an inner loop SAS is shown in Fig. 11.2. This classical system description assumes an aeroplane with mechanical flying controls to which the EFCS connects via the servo actuator. The system is typical of those applied to many aeroplanes of the 1950s and 1960s. For the purpose of discussion one control axis only is shown in Fig. 11.2 but it applies equally well to the remaining axes.

As above, the essential element of the SAS is the control law, the remaining components of the system are the necessary by-products of its implementation. Noise filtering is often required to remove unwanted information from sensor outputs. At best noise can cause unnecessary actuator activity and, at worst, may even give rise to unwanted aircraft motion. Sometimes, when the sensor is located in a region of significant structural flexibility the “noise” may be due to normal structure distortion, the control demand may then exacerbate the structure bending to result in structural divergence. Thus an unwanted unstable structural feedback loop can be inadvertently

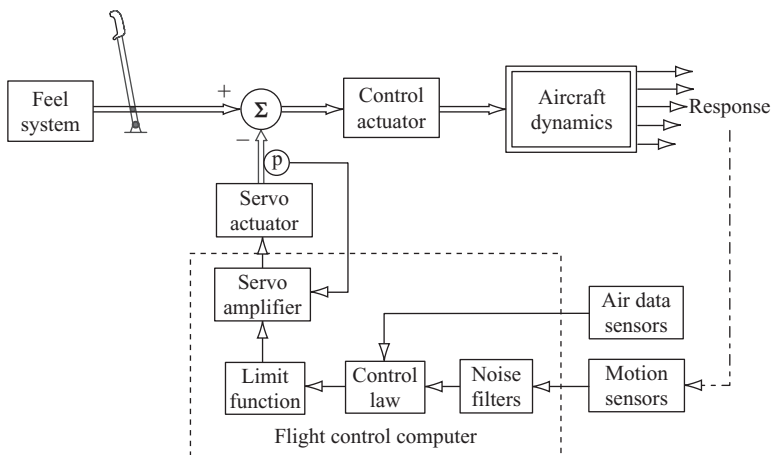


Figure 11.2 A typical SAS.

created. The cure usually involves narrow band filtering to remove information from the sensor output signal at sensitive structural bending mode frequencies.

The fundamental role of the SAS is to minimise response transients following an upset from equilibrium. Therefore, when the system is working correctly in non-maneuvring flight the response variables will have values at, or near, zero since the action of the negative feedback loop is to drive the *error* to zero. Thus a SAS does not normally require large authority control and the limit function would typically limit the amplitude of the control demand to, say,  $\pm 10\%$  of the total surface deflection. The limiter may also incorporate a rate limit function to further contain transient response by imposing a maximum actuator slew rate demand. It is important to realise that whenever the control demand exceeds the limit the system saturates, becomes temporarily open loop and the dynamics of the aircraft revert to those of the unaugmented airframe. This is not usually considered to be a problem as saturation is most likely to occur during manoeuvring flight when the pilot has very “tight” manual control of the aeroplane and effectively replaces the SAS control function.

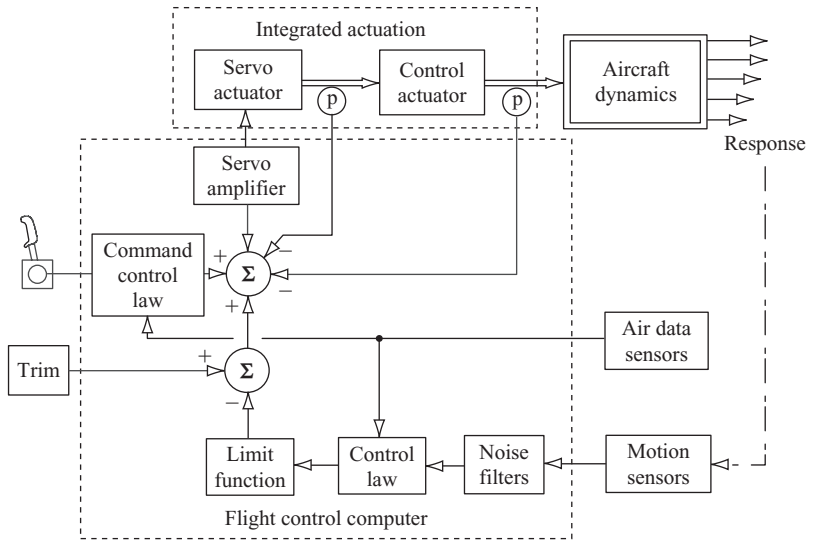
The servo amplifier together with the servo actuator provide the interface between the FCS and the mechanical flying controls. These two elements comprise a classical position servo mechanism as indicated by the electrical feedback from a position sensor on the servo actuator output. Mechanical amplitude limiting may well be applied to the servo actuator as well as, or instead of, the electronic limits programmed into the flight control computer.

Since the main power control actuator, also a classical mechanical servo mechanism, breaks the direct mechanical link between the pilots controller and the control surface, the control feel may bear little resemblance to the aerodynamic surface loads. The feedback loop around the control actuator would normally be mechanical since it may well need to function with the SAS inoperative. It is therefore necessary to augment the controller feel characteristics as well. The feel system may be a simple non-linear spring but, is more commonly an electro-hydraulic device, often referred to as a *Q-feel system* since its characteristics are scheduled with dynamic pressure  $Q$ . Careful design of the feel system enables the apparent controls free manoeuvre margin of the aircraft to be adjusted independently of the other inter-related stability parameters.

When the mechanical flying controls are dispensed with altogether and replaced by an electrical or electronic link the resultant SAS is described as a fly-by-wire (FBW) system. When the FCS shown in Fig. 11.2 is implemented as a FBW system its functional structure is changed to that shown in Fig. 11.3. The SAS inner control loop remains unchanged, the only changes relate to the primary control path and the actuation systems.

Since the only mechanical elements in the FCS are the links between the control actuator and the surfaces it is usual for the servo actuator and the control actuator to be combined into one unit. Its input is then the electrical control demand from the flight control computer and its output is the control surface deflection. An advantage of an integrated actuation system is the facility for mechanical simplification since the feedback loops may be closed electrically rather than by a combination of electrical and mechanical feedbacks. Mechanical feedback is an unnecessary complication since in the event of a flight control computer failure the aeroplane would be uncontrollable. Clearly, this puts a rather more demanding emphasis on the safety of the FCS.

Primary control originates at the pilots control inceptors which, since they are not constrained by mechanical control linkages, may now take alternative forms,



**Figure 11.3** A typical FBW command and stability augmentation system.

for example, a *side-stick controller*. The control command signal is conditioned by a command control law which determines the control and response characteristics of the augmented aircraft. Since the command control law is effectively *shaping* the command signal in order to achieve acceptable response characteristics, its design is a means for augmenting handling qualities independently of stability augmentation. For this reason, a FCS with the addition of command path augmentation is known as a command and stability augmentation system (CSAS).

Provision is shown in Fig. 11.3 for an electrical trim function since not all aircraft with advanced technology FCS employ mechanical trimmers. The role of the trim function is to set the datum control signal value, and hence the control surface angle, to that required to maintain the chosen equilibrium flight condition. The precise trim function utilised would be application dependent and in some cases an entirely automatic trim system might be implemented. In this latter case no pilot trimming facility is required.

Since the pilot must have full authority control over the aircraft at all times it is implied that the actuation system must also have full authority control. The implications for safety following a failure in any component in the primary control path is obviously critical. As for the simple SAS the feedback control signal may be authority limited prior to summing with the primary control commands and this will protect the system against failures within the stability augmentation function. However, this solution cannot be used in the primary control path. Consequently, FBW systems must have reliability of a very high order and this usually means significant levels of redundancy in the control system architecture together with sophisticated mechanisms for identifying and containing the worst effects of system malfunction.

In the above brief description of a FBW system it is assumed that all control signals are electrical and transmitted by normal electrical cables. However, since most modern flight control computers are digital the transmission of control signals

also involves digital technology. Digital signals can also be transmitted optically with some advantage, especially in the demanding environment within aircraft. Today it is common for optical signal transmission to be used in FCS if for no other reason than to maintain electrical isolation between redundant components within the system. There is no reason why optical signalling should not be used for primary flight control and there are a small number of systems currently flying which are optically signalled. Such a control system is referred to as a fly-by-light (FBL) system and the control function is essentially the same as that of the FBW system or simple SAS it replaces. In fact, it is most important to recognise that for a given aeroplane the stability augmentation function required of the FCS is the same irrespective of the architecture adopted for its implementation. In the context of stability augmentation there is nothing special or different in a FBW or FBL system solution.

#### 11.1.4 Scope

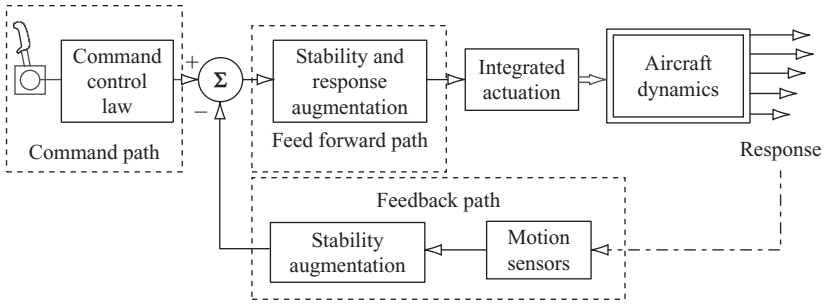
In the preceding paragraphs an attempt has been made to introduce and review some of the important issues concerning FCS design in general. In particular, the role of the SAS or CSAS and the possible limitation of the control function imposed by the broader concerns of system structure has been emphasised. The temptation now is to embark on a discussion of FCS design but, unfortunately, such a vast subject is beyond the scope of the present book.

Rather, the remainder of this chapter is concerned with the very fundamental, and sometimes subtle, way in which feedback may be used to augment the dynamics of the basic aircraft. It is very important that the flight dynamicist understands the way in which his chosen control system design augments the stability and control properties of the airframe. It is not good enough to treat the aircraft like an arbitrary *plant* and to design a *controller* to meet a predefined set of performance requirements, an approach much favoured by control system designers. It is vital that the FCS designer retains a complete understanding of the implications of his design decisions throughout the design process. In the interests of *functional visibility*, and hence of safety, it is important that FCS are made as simple as possible. This is often only achievable when the designer has a complete and intimate understanding of the design process.

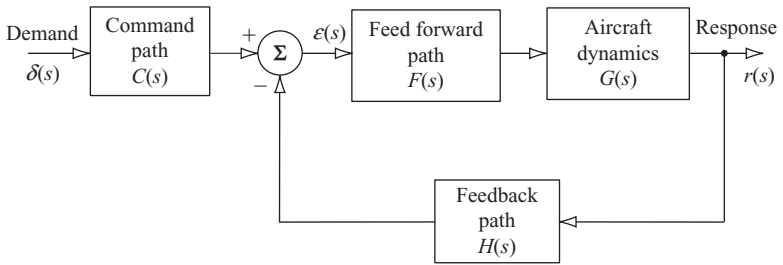
### 11.2 AUGMENTATION SYSTEM DESIGN

The most critical aspect of FCS design is concerned with the design of the inner loop control law. The design objective being to endow the aircraft with good stability, control and handling characteristics throughout its flight envelope. Today, a FBW system gives the designer the greatest freedom of choice as to how he might allocate the control law functions for “optimum” performance. The main CSAS control functions are indicated in the rather over simplified representation shown in Fig. 11.4. The problem confronting the FCS designer is to design suitable functions for the command, feed forward and feedback paths of the CSAS and obviously, it is necessary to appreciate the role of each path in the overall context of aircraft stability augmentation.

The *feedback path* comprises the classical inner loop SAS whose primary role is to augment static and dynamic stability. It generally improves flying and handling



**Figure 11.4** Inner loop control functions.



**Figure 11.5** Inner loop transfer function representation.

qualities but may not necessarily lead to ideal handling qualities since it has insufficient direct control over *response shaping*.

The *feed forward path* is also within the closed loop and its function augments stability in exactly the same way as the feedback path. However, it has a direct influence on command signals as well and by careful design its function may also be used to exercise some degree of response shaping. Its use in this role is limited since the stability augmentation function must take priority.

The *command path* control function provides the principal means for response shaping, it has no influence on stability since it is outside the closed loop. This assumes, of course, that the augmented aircraft may be represented as a *linear* system. The command path indicated in Fig. 11.4 assumes entirely electronic signalling as appropriate to a FBW system. However, there is no reason why the command and feed forward paths should not comprise a combination of parallel electrical and mechanical paths, an architecture commonly employed in aircraft of the 1960s and 1970s. In such systems it is only really practical to incorporate all, other than very simple, signal shaping into the electrical signal paths.

Further analysis of the simple CSAS structure may be made if it is represented by its transfer function equivalent as shown in Fig. 11.5.

With reference to Fig. 11.5 the *control error* signal  $\varepsilon(s)$  is given by

$$\varepsilon(s) = C(s)\delta(s) - H(s)r(s) \quad (11.2)$$



where,  $\delta(s)$  and  $r(s)$  are the command and response signals respectively and,  $C(s)$  and  $H(s)$  are the command path and feedback path transfer functions respectively. The output response  $r(s)$  is given by

$$r(s) = F(s)G(s)\varepsilon(s) \quad (11.3)$$

where,  $F(s)$  is the feed forward path transfer function and  $G(s)$  is the all important transfer function representing the basic airframe. Combining equations (11.2) and (11.3) to eliminate the error signal, the closed loop transfer function is obtained

$$\frac{r(s)}{\delta(s)} = C(s) \left( \frac{F(s)G(s)}{1 + F(s)G(s)H(s)} \right) \quad (11.4)$$

Thus the transfer function given by equation (11.4) is that of the augmented aircraft and replaces that of the unaugmented aircraft  $G(s)$ . Clearly, by appropriate choice of  $C(s)$ ,  $F(s)$  and  $H(s)$  the FCS designer has considerable scope for tailoring the stability, control and handling characteristics of the augmented aircraft. The characteristic equation of the augmented aircraft is given by

$$\Delta(s)_{aug} = 1 + F(s)G(s)H(s) = 0 \quad (11.5)$$

Note that the command path transfer function  $C(s)$  does not appear in the characteristic equation therefore, as noted above, it cannot influence stability in any way.

Let the aircraft transfer function be denoted by its numerator and denominator in the usual way,

$$G(s) = \frac{N(s)}{\Delta(s)} \quad (11.6)$$

Let the feed forward transfer function be a simple proportional gain

$$F(s) = K \quad (11.7)$$

and let the feedback transfer function be represented by a typical lead-lag function,

$$H(s) = \left( \frac{1 + sT_1}{1 + sT_2} \right) \quad (11.8)$$

Then the transfer function of the augmented aircraft, equation (11.4), may be written,

$$\frac{r(s)}{\delta(s)} = C(s) \left( \frac{KN(s)(1 + sT_2)}{\Delta(s)(1 + sT_2) + KN(s)(1 + sT_1)} \right) \quad (11.9)$$

Now let the roles of  $F(s)$  and  $H(s)$  be reversed, whence,

$$F(s) = \left( \frac{1 + sT_1}{1 + sT_2} \right) \quad H(s) = K \quad (11.10)$$

In this case the transfer function of the augmented aircraft, equation (11.4), may be written

$$\frac{r(s)}{\delta(s)} = C(s) \left( \frac{KN(s)(1 + sT_1)}{\Delta(s)(1 + sT_2) + KN(s)(1 + sT_1)} \right) \quad (11.11)$$

Comparing the closed loop transfer functions, equations (11.9) and (11.11), it is clear that the stability of the augmented aircraft is unchanged since the denominators are the same. However, the numerators are different implying a difference in the response to control and this difference can be exploited to some advantage in some FCS applications.

Now if the gains in the control system transfer functions  $F(s)$  and  $H(s)$  are deliberately made large such that at all frequencies over the bandwidth of the aeroplane

$$F(s)G(s)H(s) \gg 1 \quad (11.12)$$

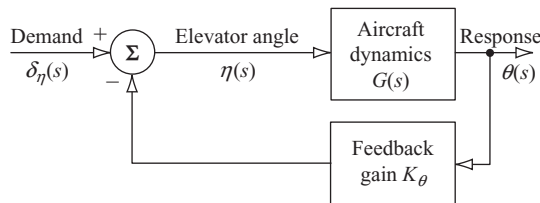
then, the closed loop transfer function, equation (11.4), is given approximately by

$$\frac{r(s)}{\delta(s)} \cong \frac{C(s)}{H(s)} \quad (11.13)$$

This demonstrates the important result that in highly augmented aircraft the stability and control characteristics may become substantially independent of the dynamics of the basic airframe. In other words, the stability, control and handling characteristics are largely determined by the design of the CSAS, in particular the design of the transfer functions  $C(s)$  and  $H(s)$ . In practice, this situation is only likely to be encountered when the basic airframe is significantly unstable. This illustration implies that augmentation would be provided by a FBW system and ignores the often intrusive effects of the dynamics of the FCS components.

### 11.3 CLOSED LOOP SYSTEM ANALYSIS

For the purpose of illustrating how motion feedback augments basic airframe stability consider the very simple example in which pitch attitude is fed back to elevator. The most basic essential features of the control system are shown in Fig. 11.6. In this example the controller comprises a simple gain constant  $K_\theta$  in the feedback path.



**Figure 11.6** A simple pitch attitude feedback system.

The control law is given by

$$\eta(t) = \delta_\eta(t) - K_\theta \theta(t) \quad (11.14)$$

and the appropriate aircraft transfer function is

$$\frac{\theta(s)}{\eta(s)} = G(s) = \frac{N_\eta^\theta(s)}{\Delta(s)} \quad (11.15)$$

Therefore, the closed loop transfer function of the augmented aircraft is

$$\frac{\theta(s)}{\delta_\eta(s)} = \frac{N_\eta^\theta(s)}{\Delta(s) + K_\theta N_\eta^\theta(s)} \quad (11.16)$$

and the augmented characteristic equation is

$$\Delta(s)_{aug} = \Delta(s) + K_\theta N_\eta^\theta(s) = 0 \quad (11.17)$$

Thus, for a given aircraft transfer function its stability may be augmented by selecting a suitable value of feedback gain  $K_\theta$ . Clearly when  $K_\theta$  is zero there is no feedback, the aircraft is said to be *open loop* and its stability characteristics are un-modified. As the value of  $K_\theta$  is increased so the degree of augmentation is increased and the stability modes increasingly diverge from those of the open loop aircraft. Note that the open and closed loop transfer function numerators, equations (11.15) and (11.16), are the same in accordance with the findings of Section 11.2.

Alternatively, the closed loop equations of motion may be obtained by incorporating the control law into the open loop equations of motion. The open loop equations of motion in state space form and referred to a body axis system are given by equation (4.67),

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_u & x_w & x_q & x_\theta \\ z_u & z_w & z_q & z_\theta \\ m_u & m_w & m_q & m_\theta \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} x_\eta & x_\tau \\ z_\eta & z_\tau \\ m_\eta & m_\tau \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \eta \\ \tau \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.18)$$

substitute the control law expression for  $\eta$ , equation (11.14), into equation (11.18) and rearrange to obtain the closed loop state equation,

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_u & x_w & x_q & x_\theta - K_\theta x_\eta \\ z_u & z_w & z_q & z_\theta - K_\theta z_\eta \\ m_u & m_w & m_q & m_\theta - K_\theta m_\eta \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} x_\eta & x_\tau \\ z_\eta & z_\tau \\ m_\eta & m_\tau \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \delta_\eta \\ \tau \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.19)$$

Clearly, the effect of  $\theta$  feedback is to modify, or augment the derivatives  $x_\theta$ ,  $z_\theta$  and  $m_\theta$ . For a given value of the feedback gain  $K_\theta$  equation (11.19) may be solved in the usual way to obtain all of the closed loop longitudinal response transfer functions,

$$\frac{u(s)}{\delta_\eta(s)} = \frac{N_\eta^u(s)}{\Delta(s)_{aug}} \quad \frac{w(s)}{\delta_\eta(s)} = \frac{N_\eta^w(s)}{\Delta(s)_{aug}} \quad \frac{q(s)}{\delta_\eta(s)} = \frac{N_\eta^q(s)}{\Delta(s)_{aug}} \quad \frac{\theta(s)}{\delta_\eta(s)} = \frac{N_\eta^\theta(s)}{\Delta(s)_{aug}}$$

and

$$\frac{u(s)}{\tau(s)} = \frac{N_\tau^u(s)}{\Delta(s)_{aug}} \quad \frac{w(s)}{\tau(s)} = \frac{N_\tau^w(s)}{\Delta(s)_{aug}} \quad \frac{q(s)}{\tau(s)} = \frac{N_\tau^q(s)}{\Delta(s)_{aug}} \quad \frac{\theta(s)}{\tau(s)} = \frac{N_\tau^\theta(s)}{\Delta(s)_{aug}}$$

where,  $\Delta(s)_{aug}$  is given by equation (11.17).

An obvious problem with this analytical approach is the need to solve equation (11.19) repetitively for a range of values of  $K_\theta$  in order to determine the value which gives the desired stability characteristics. Fortunately, the *root locus plot* provides an extremely effective graphical tool for the determination of feedback gain without the need for repetitive computation.

### Example 11.1

The pitch attitude response to elevator transfer function for the Lockheed F-104 Starfighter in a take-off configuration was obtained from Teper (1969) and may be written in factorised form,

$$\frac{\theta(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{-4.66(s + 0.133)(s + 0.269)}{(s^2 + 0.015s + 0.021)(s^2 + 0.911s + 4.884)} \quad (11.20)$$

Inspection of the denominator of equation (11.20) enables the stability mode characteristics to be written down

Phugoid damping ratio  $\zeta_p = 0.0532$

Phugoid undamped natural frequency  $\omega_p = 0.145 \text{ rad/s}$

Short period damping ratio  $\zeta_s = 0.206$

Short period undamped natural frequency  $\omega_s = 2.21 \text{ rad/s}$

The values of these characteristics suggests that the short period mode damping ratio is unacceptably low, the remainder being acceptable. Therefore, stability augmentation is required to increase the short period damping ratio.

In the first instance, assume a SAS in which pitch attitude is fed back to elevator through a constant gain  $K_\theta$  in the feedback path. The SAS is then exactly the same as that shown in Fig. 11.6 and as before, the control law is given by equation (11.14). However, since the aircraft transfer function, equation (11.20), is negative a negative feedback loop effectively results in overall positive feedback which is, of course, destabilising. This situation arises frequently in aircraft control and, whenever a negative open loop transfer function is encountered it is necessary to assume a positive feedback loop, or equivalently a negative value of the feedback gain, in order to obtain a stabilising control system. *Care must always be exercised in this context.* Therefore, in this particular example, when the negative sign of the open loop transfer function is taken into account the closed loop transfer function, equation (11.16), of the augmented aircraft may be written,

$$\frac{\theta(s)}{\delta_\eta(s)} = \frac{N_\eta^\theta(s)}{\Delta(s) - K_\theta N_\eta^\theta(s)} \quad (11.21)$$

Substitute the open loop numerator and denominator polynomials from equation (11.20) into equation (11.21) and rearrange to obtain the closed loop transfer function

$$\frac{\theta(s)}{\delta_\eta(s)} = \frac{-4.66(s + 0.133)(s + 0.269)}{s^4 + 0.926s^3 + (4.919 + 4.66K_\theta)s^2 + (0.095 + 1.873K_\theta)s + (0.103 + 0.167K_\theta)} \quad (11.22)$$

Thus, the augmented characteristic equation is

$$\Delta(s)_{aug} = s^4 + 0.927s^3 + (4.919 + 4.66K_\theta)s^2 + (0.095 + 1.873K_\theta)s + (0.103 + 0.167K_\theta) = 0 \quad (11.23)$$

The effect of the feedback gain  $K_\theta$  on the longitudinal stability modes of the F-104 can only be established by repeatedly solving equation (11.23) for a range of suitable gain values. However, a reasonable appreciation of the effect of  $K_\theta$  on the stability modes can be obtained from the approximate solution of equation (11.23). Writing equation (11.23),

$$As^4 + Bs^3 + Cs^2 + Ds + E = 0 \quad (11.24)$$

then an approximate solution is given by equation (6.13).

Thus the characteristics of the short period mode are given approximately by

$$s^2 + \frac{B}{A}s + \frac{C}{A} = s^2 + 0.927s + (4.919 + 4.66K_\theta) = 0 \quad (11.25)$$

Whence,

$$\begin{aligned} \omega_s &= \sqrt{(4.919 + 4.66K_\theta)} \\ 2\zeta_s\omega_s &= 0.927 \text{ rad/s} \end{aligned} \quad (11.26)$$

It is therefore easy to see how the mode characteristics change as the feedback gain is increased from zero to a large value. Or, more generally, as  $K_\theta \rightarrow \infty$  so

$$\begin{aligned} \omega_s &\rightarrow \infty \\ \zeta_s &\rightarrow 0 \end{aligned} \quad (11.27)$$

Similarly, with reference to equation (6.13), the characteristics of the phugoid mode are given approximately by

$$\begin{aligned} s^2 + \frac{(CD - BE)}{C^2}s + \frac{E}{C} &= s^2 + \left( \frac{8.728K_\theta^2 + 9.499K_\theta + 0.369}{21.716K_\theta^2 + 45.845K_\theta + 24.197} \right)s \\ &\quad + \left( \frac{0.103 + 0.167K_\theta}{4.919 + 4.66K_\theta} \right) = 0 \end{aligned} \quad (11.28)$$

Thus, again, as  $K_\theta \rightarrow \infty$  so

$$\begin{aligned}\omega_p &\rightarrow \sqrt{\frac{0.167}{4.66}} = 0.184 \text{ rad/s} \\ 2\zeta_p\omega_p &\rightarrow \frac{8.728}{21.716} = 0.402 \text{ rad/s}\end{aligned}\quad (11.29)$$

and allowing for rounding errors,

$$\zeta_p \rightarrow 1.0 \quad (11.30)$$

The conclusion is then, that negative pitch attitude feedback to elevator tends to destabilise the short period mode and increase its frequency whereas its effect on the phugoid mode is more beneficial. The phugoid stability is increased whilst its frequency also tends to increase a little but is bounded by an acceptable maximum value. For all practical purposes the frequency is assumed to be approximately constant. This result is, perhaps, not too surprising since pitch attitude is a dominant motion variable in phugoid dynamics and is less significant in short period pitching motion. It is quite clear that pitch attitude feedback to elevator is not the correct way to augment the longitudinal stability of the F-104.

What this approximate analysis does not show is the relative sensitivity of each mode to the feedback gain. This can only be evaluated by solving the characteristic equation repeatedly for a range of values of  $K_\theta$  from zero to a suitably large value. A typical practical range of values might be  $0 \leq K_\theta \leq 2 \text{ rad/rad}$ , for example. This kind of analysis is most conveniently achieved with the aid of a *root locus plot*.

## 11.4 THE ROOT LOCUS PLOT

The *root locus plot* is a relatively simple tool for determining, by graphical means, detailed information about the stability of a closed loop system knowing only the open loop transfer function. The plot shows the roots, or *poles*, of the closed loop system characteristic equation for every value of a single loop variable, typically the feedback gain. It is therefore not necessary to calculate the roots of the closed loop characteristic equation for every single value of the chosen loop variable. As its name implies, the root locus plot shows loci on the  $s$ -plane of all the roots of the closed loop transfer function denominator as a function of the single loop gain variable.

The root locus plot was proposed by Evans (1954) and from its first appearance rapidly gained in importance as an essential control systems design tool. Consequently, it is described in most books concerned with linear control systems theory, for example it is described by Friedland (1987). Because of the relative mathematical complexity of the underlying theory, Evans (1954) main contribution was the development of an approximate asymptotic procedure for manually “sketching” closed loop root loci on the  $s$ -plane without recourse to extensive calculation. This was achieved with the aid of a set of “rules” which resulted in a plot of sufficient accuracy for most design purposes. It was therefore essential that control system designers were familiar with the rules. Today, the root locus plot is universally produced by computational means. It is no longer necessary for the designer to know the rules although

he must still know how to interpret the plot correctly and, of course, he must know its limitations.

In aeronautical applications it is vital to understand the correct interpretation of the root locus plot. This is especially so when it is being used to evaluate augmentation schemes for the precise control of the stability characteristics of an aircraft over the flight envelope. In the opinion of the author, this can only be done from the position of strength which comes with a secure knowledge of the rules for plotting a root locus by hand. For this reason the rules are set out in Appendix 11. However, it is not advocated that root locus plots should be drawn by hand, this is unnecessary when computational tools such as *MATLAB* and *Program CC* are readily available. The processes involved in the construction of a root locus plot are best illustrated by example as follows.

### Example 11.2

Consider the use of the root locus plot to evaluate the effect of pitch attitude feedback to elevator on the F-104 aircraft at the same flight condition as discussed in Example 11.1. The closed loop system block diagram applying is that shown in Fig. 11.6. The open loop system transfer function is, from equation (11.20),

$$\frac{\theta(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{-4.66K_\theta(s + 0.133)(s + 0.269)}{(s^2 + 0.015s + 0.021)(s^2 + 0.911s + 4.884)} \text{ rad/rad} \quad (11.31)$$

with poles and zeros,

$$\begin{aligned} p_1 &= -0.0077 + 0.1448j \\ p_2 &= -0.0077 - 0.1448j \\ p_3 &= -0.4553 + 2.1626j \\ p_4 &= -0.4553 - 2.1626j \\ z_1 &= -0.133 \\ z_2 &= -0.269 \end{aligned} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{whence} \\ \text{Number of poles } n_p = 4 \\ \text{Number of zeros } n_z = 2 \end{array}$$

The open loop poles and zeros are mapped on to the  $s$ -plane as shown in Fig. 11.7. The loci of the closed loop poles are then plotted as the feedback gain  $K_\theta$  is allowed to increase from zero to a large value. In this example the loci were obtained computationally and are discussed in the context of the *rules* set out in Appendix 11.

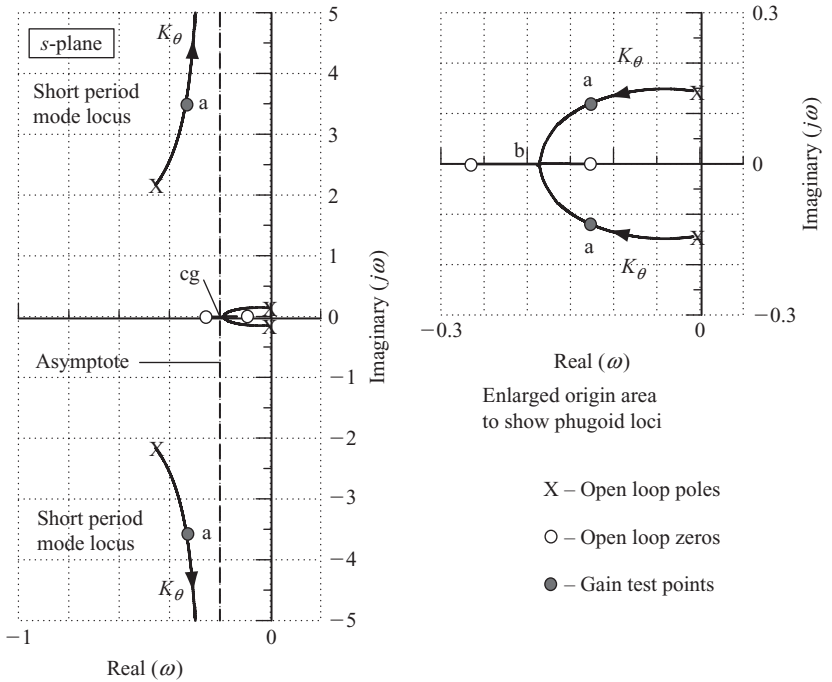
**Rule 1** locates the poles and zeros on the  $s$ -plane and determines that, since there are two more poles than zeros, four loci commence at the poles, two of which terminate at the zeros and two of which go off to infinity as  $K_\theta \rightarrow \infty$ .

**Rule 2** determines that the real axis between the two zeros is part of a locus.

**Rule 3** determines that the two loci which go off to infinity do so asymptotically to lines at  $90^\circ$  and at  $270^\circ$  to the real axis.

**Rule 4** determines that the asymptotes radiate from the cg of the plot located at  $-0.262$  on the real axis.

**Rule 5** determines the point on the real axis at which two loci break-in to the locus between the two zeros. Method 1, the approximate method, determines the break-in



**Figure 11.7** Example of root locus plot construction.

point at  $-0.2$ . Method 2, the exact method, determines the break-in point at  $-0.186$ . Either value is satisfactory for all practical purposes.

**Rule 6** simply states that the two loci branching into the real axis do so at  $\pm 90^\circ$  to the real axis.

**Rule 7** determines the angle of departure of the loci from the poles and the angles of arrival at the zeros. This is rather more difficult to calculate by hand and to do so, the entire  $s$ -plane plot is required. The angles given by the computer program used to plot the loci are as follows:

- angle of departure from  $p_1$ ,  $194^\circ$
- angle of departure from  $p_2$ ,  $-194^\circ$
- angle of departure from  $p_3$ ,  $280^\circ$
- angle of departure from  $p_4$ ,  $-280^\circ$
- angle of arrival at  $z_1$ ,  $180^\circ$
- angle of arrival at  $z_2$ ,  $0^\circ$

Note that these values compare well with those calculated by hand from measurements made on the  $s$ -plane using a protractor.

**Rule 8** enables the total loop gain to be evaluated at any point on the loci. To do this by hand is particularly tedious, it requires a plot showing the entire  $s$ -plane



and it is not always very accurate, especially if the plot is drawn to a small scale. However, since this is the primary reason for plotting root loci in the first instance all computer programs designed to plot root loci provide a means for obtaining values of the feedback gain at test points on the loci. Not all root locus plotting programs provide the information given by rules 4, 5 and 7. In this example the feedback gain at test point a is  $K_\theta = -1.6$  and at test point b, the break-in point,  $K_\theta = -12.2$ . Note that, in this example, the feedback gain has units  $^\circ/\circ$  or, equivalently rad/rad. When all test points of interest have been investigated the root locus plot is complete.

One of the more powerful features of the root locus plot is that it gives explicit information about the relative sensitivity of the stability modes to the feedback in question. In this example, the open loop aircraft stability characteristics are

$$\text{Phugoid damping ratio } \zeta_p = 0.0532$$

$$\text{Phugoid undamped natural frequency } \omega_p = 0.145 \text{ rad/s}$$

$$\text{Short period damping ratio } \zeta_s = 0.206$$

$$\text{Short period undamped natural frequency } \omega_s = 2.21 \text{ rad/s}$$

and at test point a, where  $K_\theta = -1.6$ , the closed loop stability characteristics are

$$\text{Phugoid damping ratio } \zeta_p = 0.72$$

$$\text{Phugoid undamped natural frequency } \omega_p = 0.17 \text{ rad/s}$$

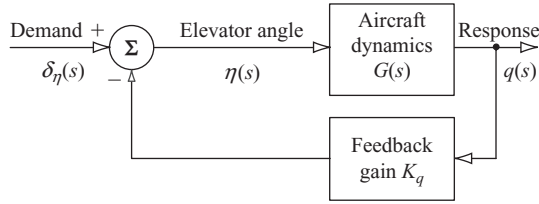
$$\text{Short period damping ratio } \zeta_s = 0.10$$

$$\text{Short period undamped natural frequency } \omega_s = 3.49 \text{ rad/s}$$

Thus the phugoid damping is increased by about 14 times and its frequency remains nearly constant. In fact, the oscillatory phugoid frequency can never exceed 0.186 rad/s. The short period mode damping is approximately halved whilst its frequency is increased by about 50%. Obviously the phugoid damping is the parameter which is most sensitive to the feedback gain by a substantial margin. A modest feedback gain of say,  $K_\theta = -0.1$  rad/rad would result in a very useful increase in phugoid damping whilst causing only very small changes in the other stability parameters. However, the fact remains that pitch attitude feedback to elevator destabilises the short period mode by reducing the damping ratio from its open loop value. This then, is not the cure for the poor short period mode stability exhibited by the open loop F-104 aircraft at this flight condition. All of these conclusions support the findings of Example 11.1 but, clearly, very much greater analytical detail is directly available from inspection of the root locus plot.

Additional important points relating to the application of the root locus plot to aircraft stability augmentation include the following:

- Since the plot is symmetric about the real axis it is not necessary to show the lower half of the  $s$ -plane, unless the plot is constructed by hand. All of the relevant information provided by the plot is available in the upper half of the  $s$ -plane.
- At typical scales it is frequently necessary to obtain a plot of the origin area at enlarged scale in order to resolve the essential detail. This is usually very easy to achieve with most computational tools.



**Figure 11.8** A simple pitch rate feedback system.

- As has been mentioned previously, it is essential to be aware of the sign of the open loop aircraft transfer function. Most root locus plotting computer programs assume the standard positive transfer function with negative feedback. A negative transfer function will result in an incorrect locus. The easy solution to this problem is to enter the transfer function with a positive sign and to change the sign of the feedback gains given by the program. However, it is important to remember the changes made when assessing the result of the investigation.

### Example 11.3

In Examples 11.1 and 11.2 it is shown that pitch attitude feedback to elevator is not the most appropriate means for augmenting the deficient short period mode damping of the F-104. The correct solution is to augment pitch damping by implementing pitch rate feedback to elevator, velocity feedback in servo mechanism terms. The control system functional block diagram is shown in Fig. 11.8.

For the same flight condition, a take-off configuration, as in the previous examples, the pitch rate response to elevator transfer function for the Lockheed F-104 Starfighter was obtained from Teper (1969) and may be written in factorised form,

$$\frac{q(s)}{\eta(s)} = \frac{-4.66s(s + 0.133)(s + 0.269)}{(s^2 + 0.015s + 0.021)(s^2 + 0.911s + 4.884)} \text{ rad/s/rad} \quad (11.32)$$

As before, the stability modes of the open loop aircraft are,

$$\text{Phugoid damping ratio } \zeta_p = 0.0532$$

$$\text{Phugoid undamped natural frequency } \omega_p = 0.145 \text{ rad/s}$$

$$\text{Short period damping ratio } \zeta_s = 0.206$$

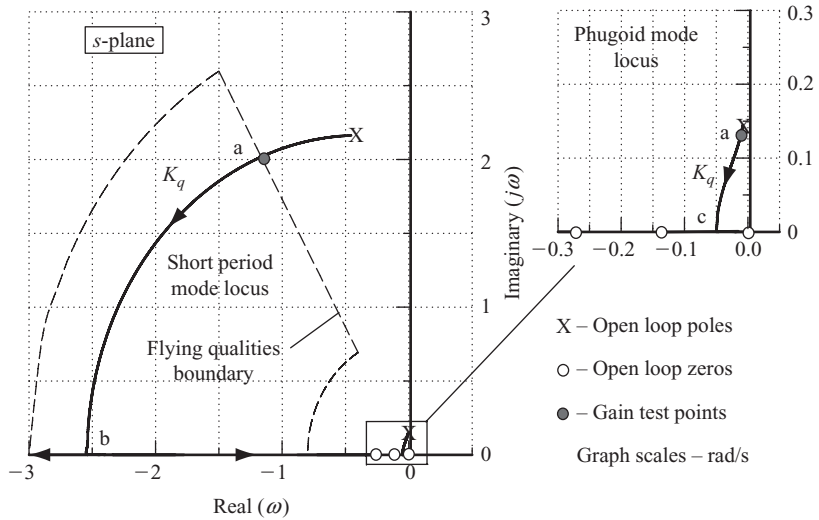
$$\text{Short period undamped natural frequency } \omega_s = 2.21 \text{ rad/s}$$

With reference to MIL-F-8785C (1980), defining the F-104 as a class IV aircraft, operating in flight phase category C and assuming Level 1 flying qualities are desired then, the following constraints on the stability modes may be determined:

$$\text{Phugoid damping ratio } \zeta_p \geq 0.04$$

$$\text{Short period damping ratio } \zeta_s \geq 0.5$$

$$\text{Short period undamped natural frequency } 0.8 \leq \omega_s \leq 3.0 \text{ rad/s}$$



**Figure 11.9** Root locus plot showing pitch rate feedback to elevator.

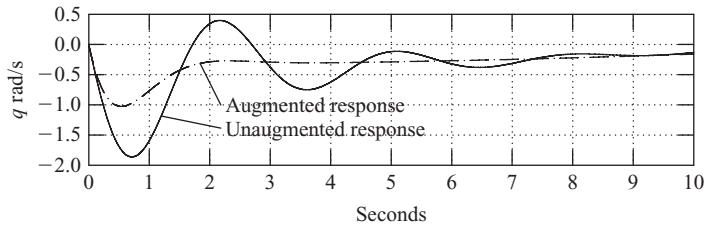
The upper limit on short period mode damping ratio is ignored since it is greater than one. Additionally, the closed loop phugoid frequency should ideally conform to  $\omega_p \leq 0.1 \omega_s$  where, here  $\omega_s$  is the closed loop short period mode frequency. Clearly, the unaugmented aircraft meets these flying qualities requirements with the exception of the short period mode damping ratio which is much too low.

The root locus plot constructed from the transfer function, equation (11.32), is shown in Fig. 11.9. Also shown on the same  $s$ -plane plot are the flying qualities short period mode boundaries according to the limits determined from MIL-F-8785C and quoted above.

Clearly, pitch rate feedback to elevator is ideal since it causes the damping of both the phugoid and short period modes to be increased although the short period mode is most sensitive to feedback gain. Further, the frequency of the short period mode remains more-or-less constant through the usable range of values of feedback gain  $K_q$ . For the same range of feedback gains the frequency of the phugoid mode is reduced thereby increasing the separation between the frequencies of the two modes. At test point a  $K_q = -0.3$  rad/rad/s which is the smallest feedback gain required to bring the closed loop short period mode into agreement with the flying qualities boundaries. Allowing for a reasonable margin of error and uncertainty a practical choice of feedback gain might be  $K_q = -0.5$  rad/rad/s. The stability augmentation control law would then be

$$\eta = \delta_\eta + 0.5q \tag{11.33}$$

This augmentation system is the classical *pitch damper* used on many aeroplanes from the same period as the Lockheed F-104 and typical feedback gains would be in the range  $-0.1 \leq K_q \leq -1.0$  rad/rad/s. It is not known what value of feedback gain is used in the F-104 at this flight condition but the published description of the longitudinal augmentation system structure is the same as that shown in Fig. 11.8.



**Figure 11.10** Pitch rate response to a unit elevator step input.

Substituting the control law, equation (11.33), into the open loop longitudinal equations of motion as described in Section 11.3 enables the closed loop equations of motion to be derived. Solution of the equations in the usual way gives the response transfer functions for the augmented aircraft. Solution of the closed loop characteristic equation determines that at  $K_q = -0.5 \text{ rad/rad/s}$  the longitudinal modes have the following characteristics:

$$\text{Phugoid damping ratio } \zeta_p = 0.079$$

$$\text{Phugoid undamped natural frequency } \omega_p = 0.133 \text{ rad/s}$$

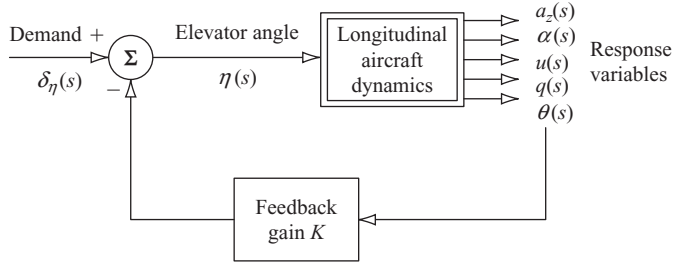
$$\text{Short period damping ratio } \zeta_s = 0.68$$

$$\text{Short period undamped natural frequency } \omega_s = 2.41 \text{ rad/s}$$

Clearly, at this value of feedback gain the flying qualities requirements are met completely with margins sufficient to allow for uncertainty. The closed loop system thus defined provides the basis for further analytical studies concerning the implementation architecture and safety issues. The pitch rate response of the aircraft before and after the addition of the augmentation loop is illustrated in Fig. 11.10. The first 10 s of the response to a unit elevator step input is shown to emphasise the considerable improvement in short period mode stability. The longer term response is not shown since this is not changed significantly by the augmentation and, in any event, the phugoid dynamics are acceptable.

## 11.5 LONGITUDINAL STABILITY AUGMENTATION

In Examples 11.2 and 11.3 it has been shown how negative feedback using a single variable can be used to selectively augment the stability characteristics of an aeroplane. It has also been shown how the effect of single variable feedback may readily be evaluated with the aid of a root locus plot. Now clearly, the choice of feedback variable is important in determining the nature of the change in the stability characteristics of the aeroplane since each variable results in a unique combination of changes. Provided that the aircraft is equipped with the appropriate motion sensors various feedback control schemes are possible and it then becomes necessary to choose the feedback variable(s) best suited to augment the deficiencies of the basic airframe. It is also useful to appreciate what effect each feedback variable has on the stability modes



**Figure 11.11** Longitudinal feedback options.

when assessing a FCS design. However complex the functional structure of the system the basic augmentation effect of each feedback variable does not change. Feedback is also used for reasons other than stability augmentation, for example, in autopilot functions. In such cases augmentation will also occur and it may not be desirable, in which case a thorough understanding of the effects of the most commonly used feedback variables is invaluable.

In order to evaluate the effect of feedback utilising a particular response variable it is instructive to conduct a survey of all the single loop feedback options. In every case the feedback loop is reduced to a simple gain component only. By this means the possible intrusive effects of other loop components, such as noise filters, phase compensation filters, sensor and actuator dynamics, are prevented from masking the true augmentation effects. The longitudinal stability augmentation options are summarised in Fig. 11.11 in which it is implied that a negative feedback loop may be closed between any of the motion variables and the elevator. Other loops could of course be closed between the motion variables and alternative longitudinal control motivators, or engine thrust control, for example, but these are not considered here.

The survey is conducted by taking each motion variable in turn and evaluating its influence on the closed loop stability characteristics as a function of the loop gain  $K$ . The root locus plot is an especially useful tool for this purpose since it enables the relative influence on, and the relative sensitivity of, each of the stability modes to be assessed simultaneously. As the detailed effect of feedback depends on the aircraft and flight condition of interest it is not easy to generalise and is best illustrated by example. Consequently the following survey, Example 11.4, is based on a typical aircraft operating at a typical flight condition and the observations may be applied loosely to the longitudinal stability augmentation of most aircraft.

**Example 11.4**

Transfer function data for the McDonnell Douglas A-4D Skyhawk aircraft was obtained from Teper (1969). The flight condition chosen corresponds with an all up weight of 17,578 lb at an altitude of 35,000 ft at Mach 0.6. In factorised form the longitudinal characteristic equation is

$$\Delta(s) = (s^2 + 0.014s + 0.0068)(s^2 + 1.009s + 5.56) = 0 \tag{11.34}$$

and the longitudinal stability mode characteristics are

$$\text{Phugoid damping ratio } \zeta_p = 0.086$$

$$\text{Phugoid undamped natural frequency } \omega_p = 0.082 \text{ rad/s}$$

$$\text{Short period damping ratio } \zeta_s = 0.214$$

$$\text{Short period undamped natural frequency } \omega_s = 2.358 \text{ rad/s}$$

These stability mode characteristics would normally be considered acceptable with the exception of the short period mode damping ratio which is too low. The Skyhawk is typical of combat aeroplanes of the 1960s in which modest degrees of augmentation only are required to rectify the stability deficiencies of the basic airframe. This, in turn, implies that modest feedback gains only are required in the range say, typically,  $0 \leq K \leq 2.0$ . In modern FBW aircraft having unstable airframes rather larger gain values would be required to achieve the same levels of augmentation. In general, the greater the required change in the stability characteristics the greater the feedback gains needed to effect the change. In the following catalogue of root locus plots each plot illustrates the effect of a single feedback loop closure as a function of increasing feedback gain  $K$ .

(i) *Pitch attitude feedback to elevator*

The open loop aircraft transfer function is

$$\frac{\theta(s)}{\eta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\eta^\theta(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{-8.096(s - 0.0006)(s + 0.3591)}{(s^2 + 0.014s + 0.0068)(s^2 + 1.009s + 5.56)} \text{ rad/rad} \quad (11.35)$$

and the corresponding root locus plot is shown in Fig. 11.12.

As  $K_\theta$  is increased the phugoid damping increases rapidly whilst the frequency remains nearly constant. Whereas, as  $K_\theta$  is increased the short period mode frequency increases whilst the damping decreases, both characteristics changing relatively slowly. Thus, as might be expected since pitch attitude is a dominant variable in the phugoid mode, this mode is considerably more sensitive to the loop gain than the short period mode. Since this feedback option further destabilises the short period mode its usefulness in a SAS is very limited indeed. However, it does improve phugoid stability, the mode becoming critically damped at a gain of  $K_\theta = -0.37 \text{ rad/rad}$ . A practical gain value might be  $K_\theta = -0.1 \text{ rad/rad}$  which would result in a good level of closed loop phugoid stability without reducing the short period mode stability too much. These observations are, of course, in good agreement with the findings of Example 11.2.

(ii) *Pitch rate feedback to elevator*

The open loop aircraft transfer function is

$$\frac{q(s)}{\eta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\eta^q(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{-8.096s(s - 0.0006)(s + 0.3591)}{(s^2 + 0.014s + 0.0068)(s^2 + 1.009s + 5.56)} \text{ rad/s/rad} \quad (11.36)$$

and the corresponding root locus plot is shown in Fig. 11.13.

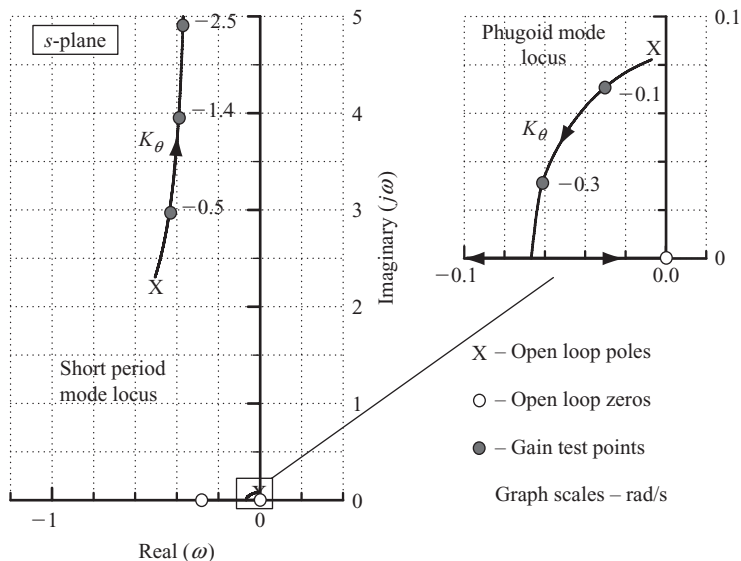


Figure 11.12 Root locus plot – pitch attitude feedback to elevator.

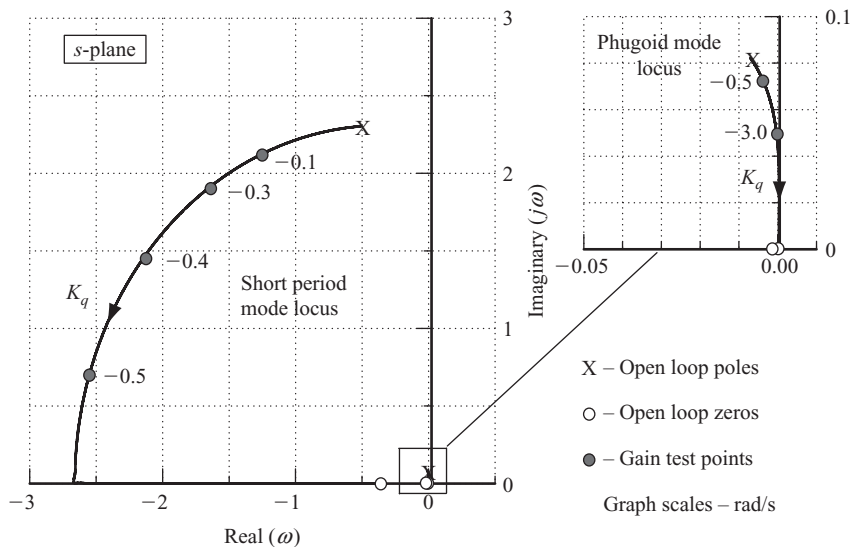
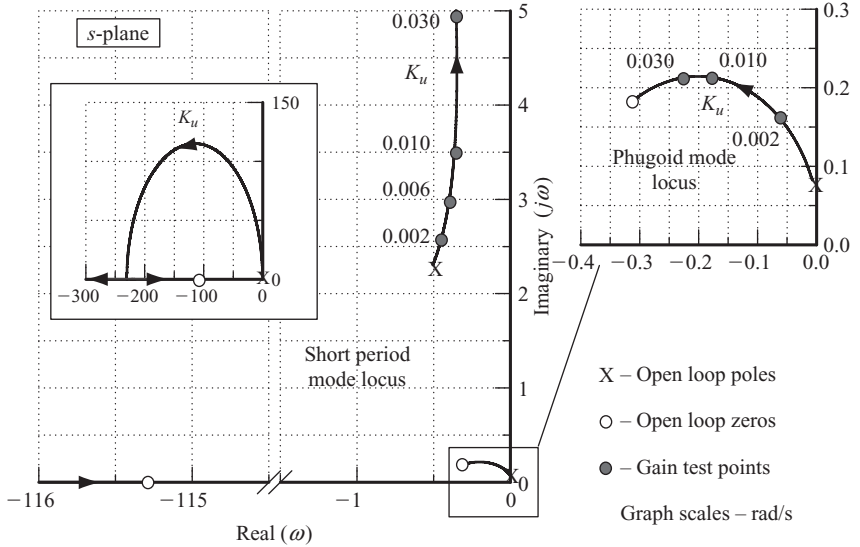


Figure 11.13 Root locus plot – pitch rate feedback to elevator.

As  $K_q$  is increased the short period mode damping increases rapidly whilst the frequency remains nearly constant. Whereas, as  $K_q$  is increased the phugoid frequency and damping decrease relatively slowly. More typically, a slow increase in phugoid damping would be seen. Thus, as might be expected since pitch rate is a dominant variable in the short period mode, this mode is considerably



**Figure 11.14** Root locus plot – velocity feedback to elevator.

more sensitive to the loop gain than the phugoid mode. As discussed in Example 11.3 this feedback option describes the classical pitch damper and is found on many aeroplanes. It also exactly describes the longitudinal stability augmentation solution used on the Skyhawk. Its dominant effect is to artificially increase the magnitude of the derivative  $m_q$ , it also increases the magnitude of the derivatives  $x_q$  and  $z_q$  but to a lesser degree. The short period mode becomes critically damped at a gain of  $K_q = -0.53$  rad/rad/s. A practical gain value might be  $K_q = -0.3$  rad/rad/s which would result in an adequate level of closed loop short period mode stability whilst simultaneously increasing the frequency separation between the two modes. However, at this value of feedback gain the changes in the phugoid characteristics would be almost insignificant. As before, these observations are in good agreement with the findings of Example 11.3.

(iii) *Velocity feedback to elevator*

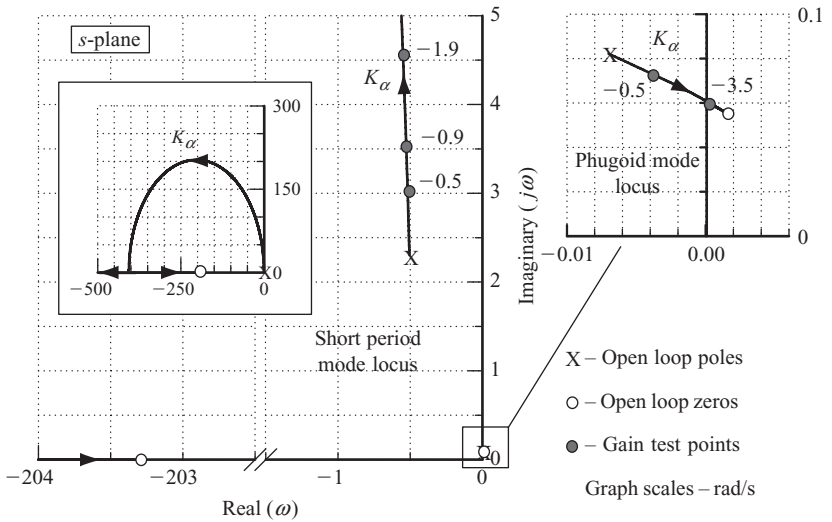
The open loop aircraft transfer function is

$$\frac{u(s)}{\eta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\eta^u(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{6.293(s^2 + 0.615s + 0.129)(s + 115.28)}{(s^2 + 0.014s + 0.0068)(s^2 + 1.009s + 5.56)} \text{ ft/s/rad} \quad (11.37)$$

and the corresponding root locus plot is shown in Fig. 11.14.

As  $K_u$  is increased the short period mode frequency increases quite rapidly whilst, initially, the damping decreases. However, at very large gain values the damping commences to increase again to eventually become critical. Whereas, as  $K_u$  is increased both the frequency and damping of the phugoid mode increase relatively rapidly. Thus, at this flight condition both modes appear to have similar sensitivity to feedback gain. The stabilising influence on the phugoid mode





**Figure 11.15** Root locus plot – incidence feedback to elevator.

is much as might be expected since velocity is the dominant variable in the mode dynamics. The dominant effect of the feedback is therefore to artificially increase the magnitude of the derivative  $m_u$  and since  $m_u$  is usually small it is not surprising that even modest values of feedback gain have a significant effect on phugoid stability. It also increases the magnitude of the derivatives  $x_u$  and  $z_u$  but to a lesser degree. A practical gain value might be  $K_u = 0.001$  rad/ft/s which would result in a significant improvement in closed loop phugoid mode stability whilst simultaneously decreasing the stability of the short period mode by a small amount. However, such values of feedback gain are quite impractically small and in any event this feedback option would not find much useful application in a conventional longitudinal SAS.

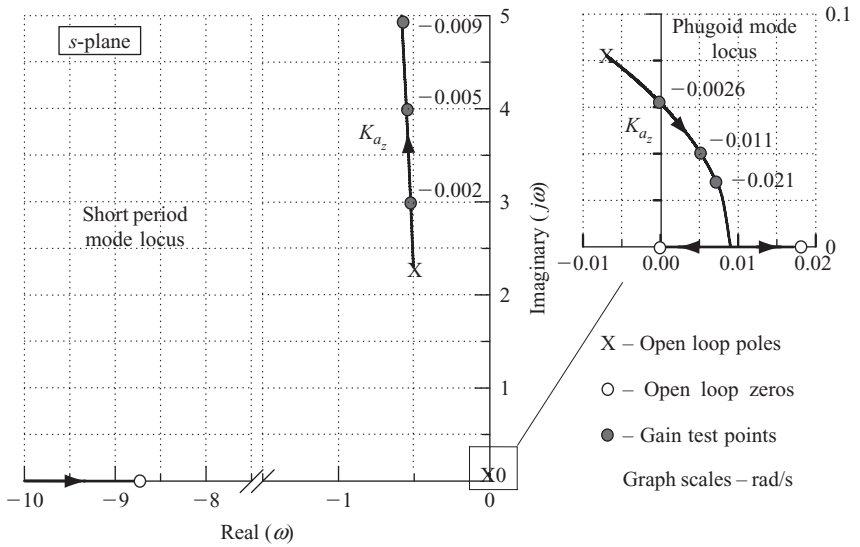
(iv) *Incidence angle feedback to elevator*

The open loop aircraft transfer function is

$$\frac{\alpha(s)}{\eta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\eta^\alpha(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{-0.04(s^2 - 0.0027s + 0.0031)(s + 203.34)}{(s^2 + 0.014s + 0.0068)(s^2 + 1.009s + 5.56)} \text{ rad/rad} \quad (11.38)$$

and the corresponding root locus plot is shown in Fig. 11.15.

As  $K_\alpha$  is increased the short period mode frequency increases very rapidly whilst, initially, the damping decreases slowly. However, as the gain increases further the damping slowly starts to increase to eventually become critical at an impractically large value of feedback gain. At all practical gain values the damping remains more-or-less constant. As  $K_\alpha$  is increased both the frequency and damping of the phugoid are reduced, the mode becoming unstable at a gain of  $K_\alpha = -3.5$  rad/rad in this example. Incidence feedback to elevator is a powerful method for augmenting the longitudinal static stability of an aeroplane and



**Figure 11.16** Root locus plot – normal acceleration feedback to elevator.

finds extensive application in unstable FBW aircraft. The effect of the feedback is equivalent to increasing the pitch stiffness of the aircraft which artificially increases the magnitude of the derivative  $m_w$  ( $\partial C_m / \partial \alpha$ ) and to a lesser degree it also increases the magnitude of the derivatives  $x_w$  and  $z_w$ . Thus the increase in short period mode frequency together with the less significant influence on damping is entirely consistent with the augmentation option. Since phugoid dynamics are typically very nearly incidence constant, the expected effect of the feedback on the mode is negligible. This is not the case in this example, probably due to aerodynamic effects at the relatively high subsonic Mach number. This is confirmed by the fact that the phugoid roots do not even approximately cancel with the complex pair of numerator roots, which might normally be expected. It would therefore be expected to see some incidence variation in the phugoid dynamics.

(v) *Normal acceleration feedback to elevator*

The open loop aircraft transfer function is

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{a_z(s)}{\eta(s)} &\equiv \frac{N_\eta^{a_z(s)}}{\Delta(s)} \\ &= \frac{-23.037(s - 0.018)(s - 0.0003)(s + 8.717)(s - 8.203)}{(s^2 + 0.014s + 0.0068)(s^2 + 1.009s + 5.56)} \text{ ft/s}^2/\text{rad} \end{aligned} \quad (11.39)$$

and the corresponding root locus plot is shown in Fig. 11.16. Since the transfer function is *not proper* care must be exercised in the production of the root locus plot and in its interpretation. However, at typically small values of feedback gain its interpretation seems quite straightforward.

Since an accelerometer is rather more robust than an incidence sensor, normal acceleration feedback to elevator is commonly used instead of, or to complement, incidence feedback. Both feedback variables have a similar effect on the phugoid and short period stability mode at practical values of feedback gain. However, both modes are rather more sensitive to feedback gain since very small values result in significant changes to the mode characteristics. As  $K_{a_z}$  is increased the short period mode frequency increases very rapidly whilst, initially, the damping decreases slowly. However, as the gain increases further the damping slowly starts to increase to eventually become critical at an impractically large value of feedback gain. At all practical gain values the damping remains more-or-less constant. The full short period mode branch of the locus is not shown in Fig. 11.16 since the gain range required exceeded the capability of the computational software used to produce the plots. As  $K_{a_z}$  is increased both the frequency and damping of the phugoid are reduced, the mode becoming unstable at a gain of  $K_{a_z} = 0.0026 \text{ rad/ft/sec}^2$  in this example. Since the normal acceleration variable comprises a mix of incidence, velocity and pitch rate (see Section 5.5) then the augmentation it provides in a feedback control system may be regarded as equivalent to the sum of the effects of feedback of the separate variables. Thus at moderate gains the increase in pitch stiffness is significant and results in a rapid increase in short period mode frequency. The corresponding increase in short period mode damping is rather greater than that achieved with incidence feedback alone due to the effect of implicit pitch rate feedback. Since the incidence dependent term dominates the determination of normal acceleration it is not surprising that normal acceleration feedback behaves like incidence feedback. It is approximately equivalent to artificially increasing the magnitude of the derivative  $m_w$  and to a lesser degree it also increases the magnitude of the derivatives  $x_w$  and  $z_w$ .

## 11.6 LATERAL-DIRECTIONAL STABILITY AUGMENTATION

As for the longitudinal stability augmentation options described in Section 11.5, it is also instructive to conduct a survey of all the lateral-directional single loop feedback options. The lateral-directional stability augmentation options are summarised in Fig. 11.17 in which it is implied that a negative feedback loop may be closed between any of the motion variables and either the ailerons or rudder. Other loops could be closed between the motion variables and alternative lateral-directional control motivators but, again, these are not considered here.

As before, the survey is conducted by taking each motion variable in turn and evaluating its influence on the closed loop stability characteristics as a function of the loop gain  $K$ . The detailed effects of the lateral-directional feedback options are much more dependent on the aircraft and flight condition than the longitudinal feedback options. Therefore, it is more difficult, and probably less appropriate, to generalise and the effects are also best illustrated by example. The following survey, Example 11.5, is based on a typical aircraft operating at a typical flight condition and the observations may be interpreted as being applicable to the lateral-directional stability augmentation of most aircraft. However, care must be exercised when applying the observations to other aircraft and every new application should be evaluated in its own right.

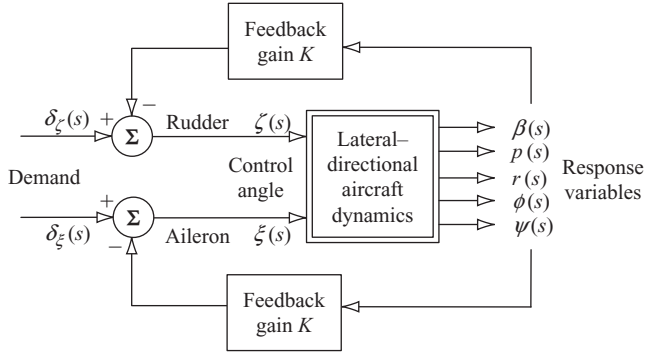


Figure 11.17 Lateral-directional feedback options.

### Example 11.5

Transfer function data for the Northrop T-38 Talon aircraft was also obtained from Teper (1969). The flight condition chosen corresponds with an all up weight of 10,000 lb at Mach 0.8 at sea level. In factorised form the lateral-directional characteristic equation is

$$\Delta(s) = (s - 0.0014)(s + 4.145)(s^2 + 1.649s + 38.44) = 0 \quad (11.40)$$

and the lateral-directional stability mode characteristics are

$$\text{Spiral mode time constant } T_s = -714 \text{ s}$$

$$\text{Roll mode time constant } T_r = 0.24 \text{ s}$$

$$\text{Dutch roll damping ratio } \zeta_d = 0.133$$

$$\text{Dutch roll undamped natural frequency } \omega_d = 6.2 \text{ rad/s}$$

Clearly, the spiral mode is unstable, which is quite typical, and the time constant is sufficiently large that it is most unlikely to give rise to handling problems. In fact, all of the stability characteristics are better than the minimum acceptable for Level 1 flying qualities. However, the aircraft is fitted with a simple yaw damper to improve the lateral-directional flying and handling qualities at all flight conditions, including some where the minimum standards are not met. In the following catalogue of root locus plots each plot illustrates the effect of a single feedback loop closure as a function of increasing feedback gain  $K$ . It should be noted that in the original data source the sign convention for aileron angle is opposite to that adopted in this book. In the following illustrations the aileron sign convention is changed to be consistent with the British notation.

(i) *Sideslip angle feedback to aileron*

The open loop transfer function is

$$\frac{\beta(s)}{\xi(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\xi^\beta(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{1.3235(s - 0.0832)(s + 7.43)}{(s - 0.0014)(s + 4.145)(s^2 + 1.649s + 38.44)} \text{ rad/rad} \quad (11.41)$$

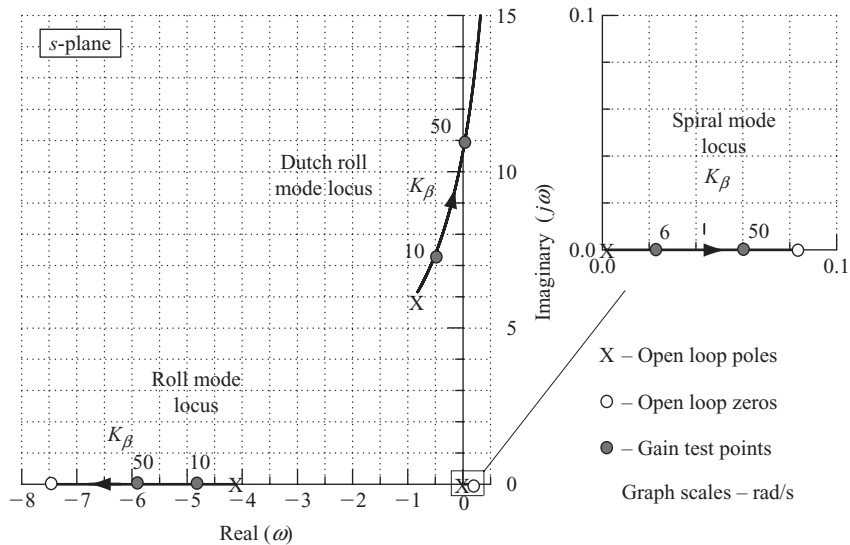


Figure 11.18 Root locus plot – sideslip angle feedback to aileron.

and the corresponding root locus plot is shown in Fig. 11.18.

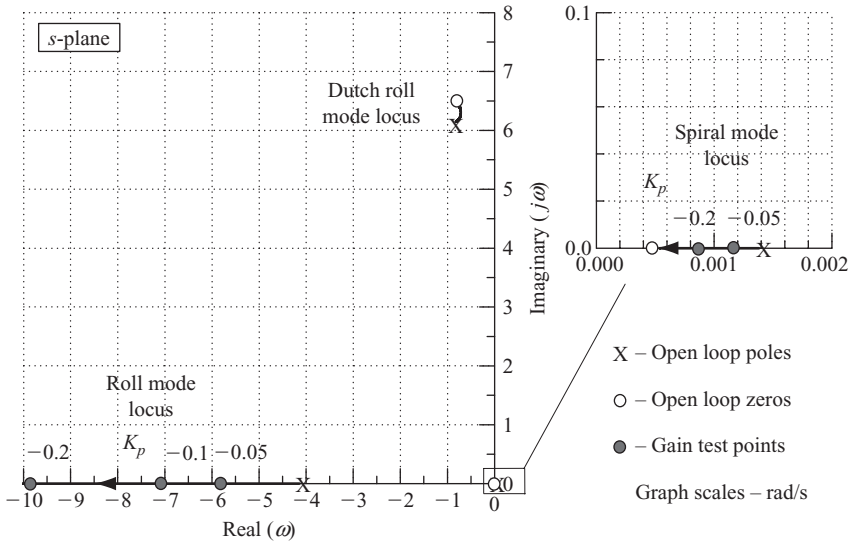
As  $K_\beta$  is increased so the spiral mode pole moves further to the right on the  $s$ -plane and its instability is worsened as its time constant is reduced. The roll mode stability is increased as the gain  $K_\beta$  is increased since its pole moves to the left on the  $s$ -plane. As  $K_\beta$  is increased the dutch roll frequency is increased whilst its damping is decreased and it eventually becomes unstable at a gain of approximately  $K_\beta = 50$  rad/rad. All three modes are relatively insensitive to the feedback since large gains are required to achieve modest changes in the mode characteristics although the spiral mode is the most sensitive. Negative feedback of sideslip angle to aileron is equivalent to an increase in dihedral effect. In particular, for this example, it augments the magnitude of the stability derivatives  $l_v$  and  $n_v$  and the degree of augmentation of each derivative depends on the value of  $K_\beta$  and the aileron control derivatives  $l_\xi$  and  $n_\xi$  respectively. Clearly, the effect is to artificially increase the lateral stiffness of the aeroplane resulting in an increase in dutch roll frequency and a corresponding increase in roll damping. It is unlikely that sideslip angle feedback to aileron alone would find much use in a SAS.

(ii) Roll rate feedback to aileron

The open loop transfer function is

$$\frac{p(s)}{\xi(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\xi^p(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{-27.75(s - 0.0005)(s^2 + 1.55s + 41.91)}{(s - 0.0014)(s + 4.145)(s^2 + 1.649s + 38.44)} \text{ rad/s/rad} \tag{11.42}$$

and the corresponding root locus plot is shown in Fig. 11.19. Note that both the spiral mode pole and the dutch roll poles are approximately cancelled



**Figure 11.19** Root locus plot – roll rate feedback to aileron.

by the numerator zeros. This means that both modes are insensitive to this feedback option.

As  $K_p$  is increased so the spiral mode pole moves to the left on the  $s$ -plane and its instability is reduced as its time constant is increased. However, the spiral mode remains unstable at all values of  $K_p$  although roll rate feedback to aileron generally improves the handling qualities associated with the spiral mode. The roll mode stability increases rapidly as the gain  $K_p$  is increased since its pole moves to the left on the  $s$ -plane. The roll mode is most sensitive to this feedback option and, in fact, roll rate feedback to aileron describes the classical roll damper and is used in many aeroplanes. Whatever the value of  $K_p$  the effect on the stability characteristics of the dutch roll mode is insignificant as stated above. At all levels of feedback gain the dutch roll mode poles remain in a very small localised area on the  $s$ -plane. Negative roll rate feedback to aileron is equivalent to an increase in the roll damping properties of the wing. In particular it augments the magnitude of the stability derivative  $l_p$  and, to a lesser extent,  $n_p$ . As before, the degree of augmentation of each derivative depends on the value of  $K_p$  and the aileron control derivatives  $l_\xi$  and  $n_\xi$  respectively.

(iii) *Yaw rate feedback to aileron*

The open loop transfer function is

$$\frac{r(s)}{\xi(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\xi^r(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{-1.712(s + 5.405)(s^2 + 1.788s + 4.465)}{(s - 0.0014)(s + 4.145)(s^2 + 1.649s + 38.44)} \text{ rad/s/rad} \quad (11.43)$$

and the corresponding root locus plot is shown in Fig. 11.20.

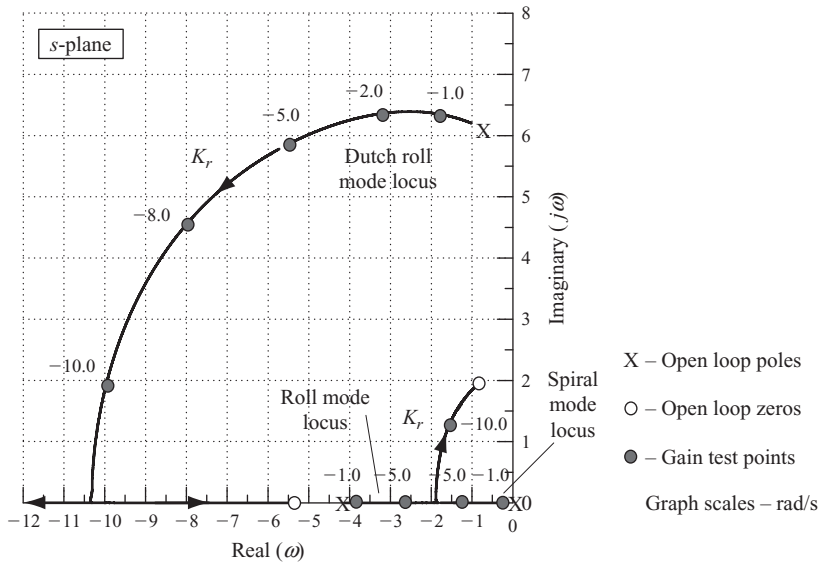


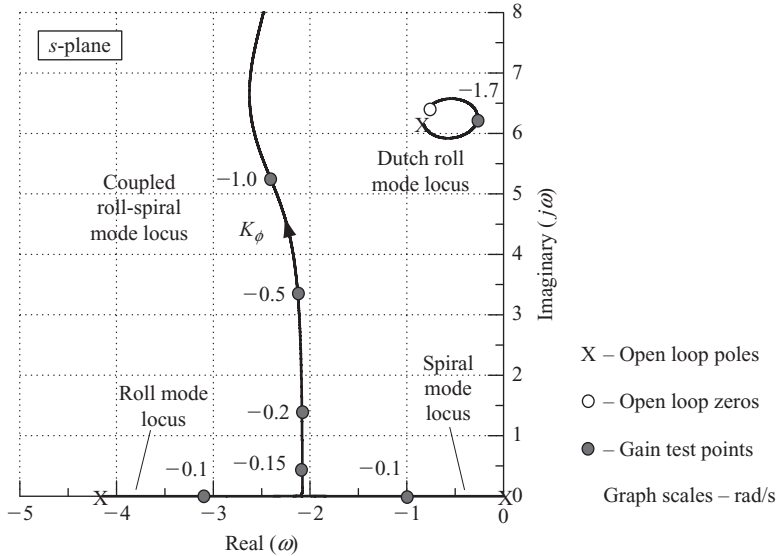
Figure 11.20 Root locus plot – yaw rate feedback to aileron.

As  $K_r$  is increased so the spiral mode pole moves to the left on the  $s$ -plane to become stable at a small value of gain. At a gain of approximately  $K_r = 6.0$  rad/rad/s, which is somewhat greater than a practical value, the spiral and roll modes couple to form a stable low frequency oscillatory characteristic. The roll mode stability decreases as the gain  $K_r$  is increased since its pole moves to the right on the  $s$ -plane before coupling with the spiral mode. The dutch roll mode is the most sensitive mode and as  $K_r$  is increased the damping increases rapidly whilst the frequency increases rather more slowly. At practical levels of feedback gain the most useful improvements would be to stabilise the spiral mode and to improve dutch roll damping whilst degrading roll mode stability only slightly. However, yaw rate feedback to aileron cross couples both the roll and yaw control axes of the aeroplane and is not so desirable for safety reasons. The feedback is equivalent to an increase in the yaw damping properties of the wing. In particular it augments the magnitude of the stability derivatives  $l_r$  and  $n_r$ .

- (iv) Roll attitude feedback to aileron  
The open loop transfer function is

$$\frac{\phi(s)}{\xi(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\xi^\phi(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{-27.75(s^2 + 1.55s + 41.91)}{(s - 0.0014)(s + 4.145)(s^2 + 1.649s + 38.44)} \text{ rad/rad} \tag{11.44}$$

and the corresponding root locus plot is shown in Fig. 11.21. Note that the dutch roll poles are approximately cancelled by the numerator zeros which implies that the mode is insensitive to this feedback option.



**Figure 11.21** Root locus plot – roll attitude feedback to aileron.

As  $K_\phi$  is increased the spiral mode pole moves to the left on the  $s$ -plane and its stability increases very rapidly, a very small value of gain being sufficient to place the pole on the left half of the  $s$ -plane. At a slightly larger value of gain,  $K_\phi = -0.14$  rad/rad, the spiral and roll modes couple to form a low frequency oscillatory characteristic as in the previous illustration. Therefore, roll mode stability decreases rapidly as the gain  $K_\phi$  is increased until its pole couples with that of the spiral mode. Clearly, both the roll and spiral modes are most sensitive to this feedback option. As expected, for all values of  $K_\phi$  the effect on the stability characteristics of the dutch roll mode is insignificant. At all levels of feedback gain the dutch roll mode poles remain in a very small localised area on the  $s$ -plane and the minimum damping corresponds with a feedback gain of  $K_\phi = -1.7$  rad/rad. Negative roll attitude feedback to aileron is, very approximately, equivalent to an increase in roll stiffness and at quite small feedback gain values manifests itself as the coupled roll–spiral oscillatory mode which may be regarded as a kind of lateral pendulum mode.

(v) *Yaw attitude feedback to aileron*

The open loop transfer function is

$$\frac{\psi(s)}{\xi(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\xi^\psi(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{-1.712(s + 5.405)(s^2 + 1.788s + 4.465)}{s(s - 0.0014)(s + 4.145)(s^2 + 1.649s + 38.44)} \text{ rad/rad} \quad (11.45)$$

and the corresponding root locus plot is shown in Fig. 11.22.

As  $K_\psi$  is increased the spiral mode pole moves to the left on the  $s$ -plane, towards the pole at the origin, to which it couples at a very small value of gain



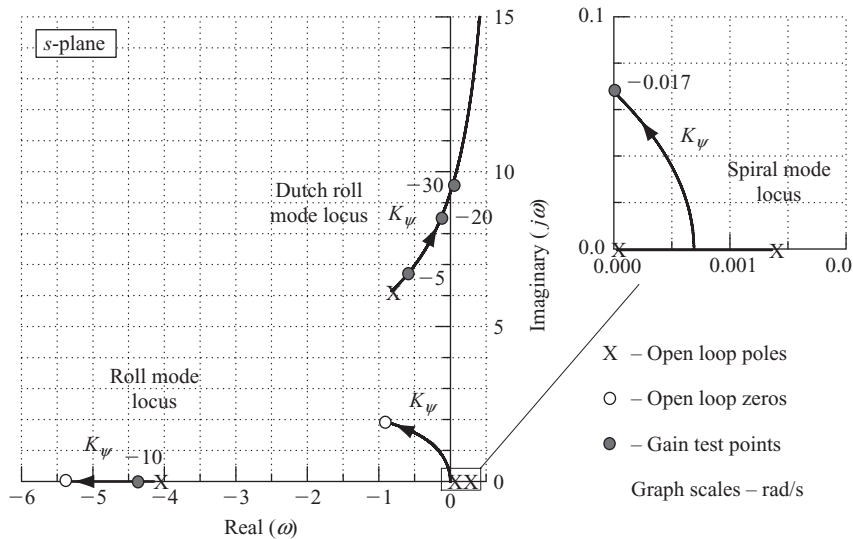


Figure 11.22 Root locus plot – yaw attitude feedback to aileron.

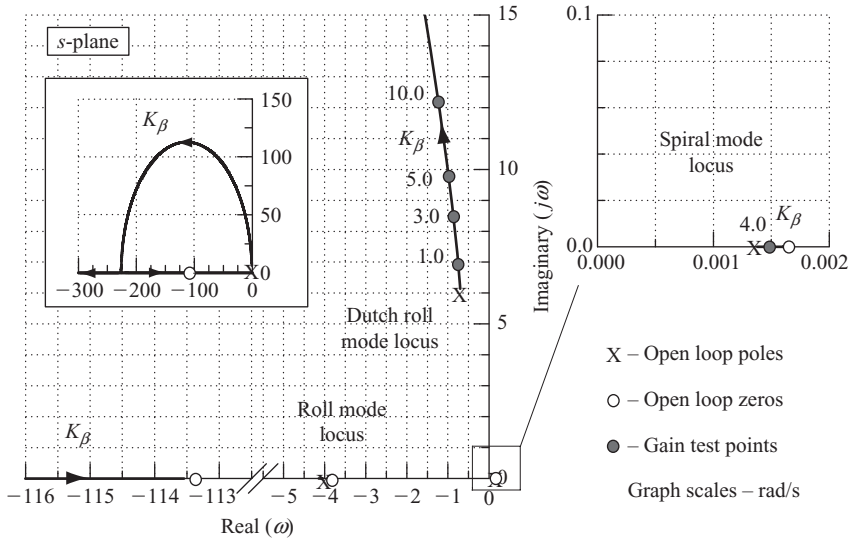
indeed to form a low frequency unstable oscillatory characteristic. At a gain of approximately  $K_\psi = -0.017$  rad/rad the low frequency oscillatory characteristic becomes stable. The roll mode stability increases very slowly as the gain  $K_\psi$  is increased since its pole moves to the left on the  $s$ -plane towards the zero at  $-5.404$ . As  $K_\psi$  is increased the dutch roll mode frequency increases whilst the damping decreases, both characteristics changing rather slowly. The dutch roll mode eventually becomes unstable at a gain of approximately  $K_\psi = -30.0$  rad/rad. At practical levels of feedback gain the effect on the roll and dutch roll modes is almost insignificant. On the other hand the effect of the feedback on the spiral mode is most significant, even at very low values of gain. As in (iii), yaw attitude feedback to aileron cross couples both the roll and yaw control axes of the aeroplane and is not so desirable for safety reasons. The feedback is equivalent to an increase in the yaw stiffness properties of the wing.

- (vi) *Sideslip angle feedback to rudder*  
The open loop transfer function is

$$\frac{\beta(s)}{\zeta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\zeta^\beta(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{0.10(s - 0.0015)(s + 4.07)(s + 113.4)}{(s - 0.0014)(s + 4.145)(s^2 + 1.649s + 38.44)} \text{ rad/rad} \tag{11.46}$$

and the corresponding root locus plot is shown in Fig. 11.23. Note that both the spiral and roll mode poles are very nearly cancelled by numerator zeros. It may therefore be expected that negative sideslip angle feedback to rudder will only significantly augment the dutch roll mode.

As expected, as  $K_\beta$  is increased both the spiral mode pole and the roll mode pole move to the right on the  $s$ -plane but the reduction in stability



**Figure 11.23** Root locus plot – sideslip angle feedback to rudder.

really is insignificant. As  $K_\beta$  is increased both the dutch roll frequency and damping are increased, the mode eventually becoming critically damped at the absurdly high frequency of  $\omega_d = 226$  rad/s at a gain of approximately  $K_\beta = 4500$  rad/rad! Negative feedback of sideslip angle to rudder is equivalent to an increase in the weathercock effect of the fin, or yaw stiffness. In particular, for this example, it very effectively augments the magnitude of the stability derivative  $n_v$  and to lesser extent  $l_v$ . The degree of augmentation of each derivative depends on the value of  $K_\beta$  and the rudder control derivatives  $n_\zeta$  and  $l_\zeta$  respectively. Clearly, the effect is to artificially increase the directional stiffness of the aeroplane resulting in an increase in dutch roll frequency and a corresponding, but much slower, increase in roll damping. At all practical values of feedback gain the dutch roll damping remains more-or-less constant at its open loop value.

(vii) *Roll rate feedback to rudder*

The open loop transfer function is

$$\frac{p(s)}{\zeta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\zeta^p(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{16.65(s - 0.0006)(s - 0.79)(s + 1.09)}{(s - 0.0014)(s + 4.145)(s^2 + 1.649s + 38.44)} \text{ rad/s/rad} \quad (11.47)$$

and the corresponding root locus plot is shown in Fig. 11.24. Note that the spiral mode pole is very approximately cancelled by a numerator zero. It is therefore expected that the spiral mode will be insensitive to this feedback option.

As expected the effect on the spiral mode of this feedback option is insignificant. The roll mode stability increases rapidly as the gain  $K_p$  is increased since its pole moves to the left on the  $s$ -plane. The roll mode is quite sensitive to this feedback option, which is not surprising since roll rate is the dominant

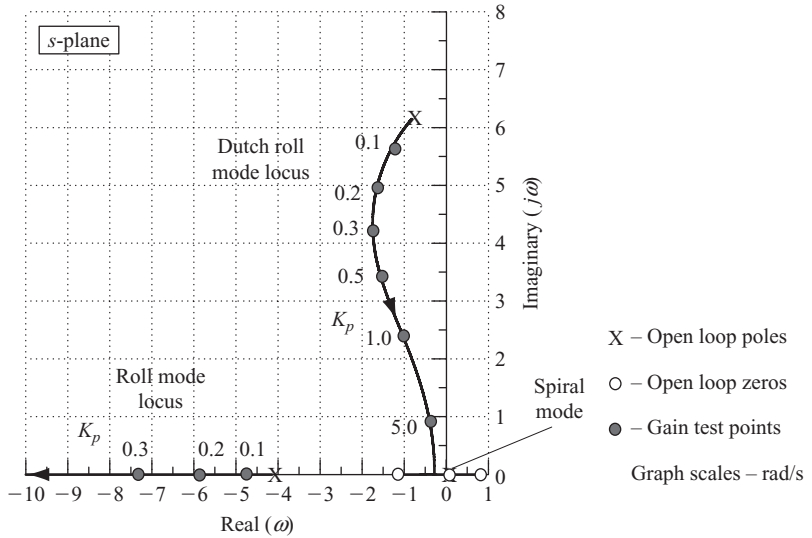


Figure 11.24 Root locus plot – roll rate feedback to rudder.

motion variable in the aircraft dynamics associated with the mode. The dutch roll mode is also very sensitive to this feedback option. As  $K_p$  is increased the dutch roll damping increases rapidly whilst the frequency is reduced. For values of the feedback gain  $K_p \geq 8.9$  rad/rad/s the dutch roll mode is critically damped and is therefore non-oscillatory. Negative roll rate feedback to rudder is equivalent to an increase in the yaw damping properties of the wing. In particular it augments the magnitude of the stability derivative  $n_p$  and, to a lesser extent,  $l_p$ . As before, the degree of augmentation of each derivative depends on the value of  $K_p$  and the rudder control derivatives  $n_\zeta$  and  $l_\zeta$  respectively.

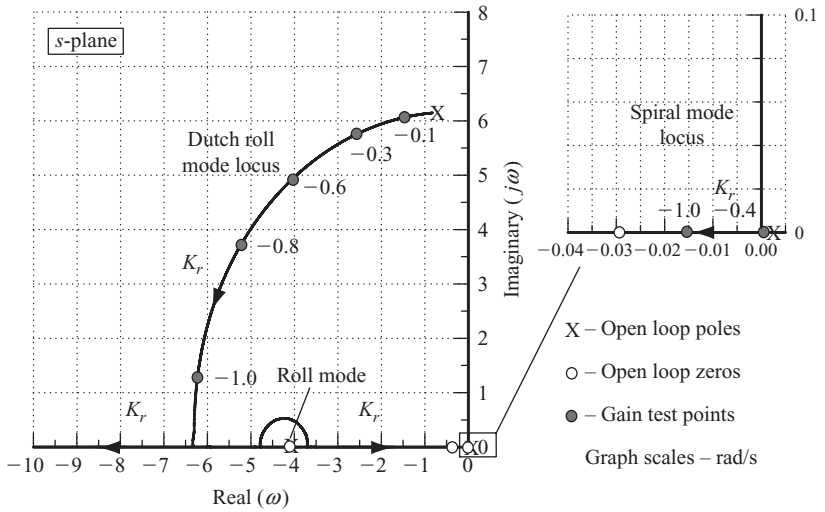
(viii) *Yaw rate feedback to rudder*

The open loop transfer function is

$$\frac{r(s)}{\zeta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\zeta^r(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{-11.01(s + 0.302)(s + 0.366)(s + 4.11)}{(s - 0.0014)(s + 4.145)(s^2 + 1.649s + 38.44)} \text{ rad/s/rad} \quad (11.48)$$

and the corresponding root locus plot is shown in Fig. 11.25. Note that the roll mode pole is almost exactly cancelled by a numerator zero. It is therefore expected that the roll mode will be insensitive to this feedback option.

The spiral mode stability increases rapidly as the gain  $K_r$  is increased since its pole moves to the left on the s-plane. The spiral mode is very sensitive to this feedback option and becomes stable at a gain of  $K_r = -0.4$  rad/rad/s. As expected the effect of this feedback option on the roll mode is insignificant. The branching of the loci around the roll mode simply indicates that the pole-zero cancellation is not exact. The dutch roll mode is also very sensitive to this feedback option. As  $K_r$  is increased the dutch roll damping



**Figure 11.25** Root locus plot – yaw rate feedback to rudder.

increases rapidly whilst the frequency remains almost constant. For values of the feedback gain  $K_r \leq -1.2$  rad/rad/s the dutch roll mode becomes critically damped. Practical values of feedback gain would, typically, be in the range  $0 \geq K_r \geq -0.7$  rad/rad/s. The dutch roll mode damping is most sensitive to this feedback option and yaw rate feedback to rudder describes the classical yaw damper, which is probably the most common augmentation system. However, its use brings a bonus since it also improves the spiral mode stability significantly. Negative yaw rate feedback to rudder is equivalent to an increase in the yaw damping properties of the aeroplane or, to an increase in the effectiveness of the fin as a damper. In particular it augments the magnitude of the stability derivative  $n_r$  and, to a lesser extent,  $l_r$ .

(ix) *Roll attitude feedback to rudder*

The open loop transfer function is

$$\frac{\phi(s)}{\zeta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_\zeta^\phi(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{16.5(s - 0.825)(s + 1.08)}{(s - 0.0014)(s + 4.145)(s^2 + 1.649s + 38.44)} \text{ rad/rad} \quad (11.49)$$

and the corresponding root locus plot is shown in Fig. 11.26.

As  $K_\phi$  is increased the spiral mode pole moves to the right on the  $s$ -plane and its stability decreases slowly. The roll mode stability also decreases slowly as the gain  $K_\phi$  is increased, a gain of  $K_\phi \cong 4.0$  rad/rad being required to double the time constant, for example. As  $K_\phi$  is increased the dutch roll mode frequency increases relatively quickly. The damping ratio also increases a little initially but, as the gain is increased further the damping decreases steadily to zero at infinite feedback gain. Negative roll attitude feedback to rudder is, very approximately, equivalent to an increase in directional stiffness

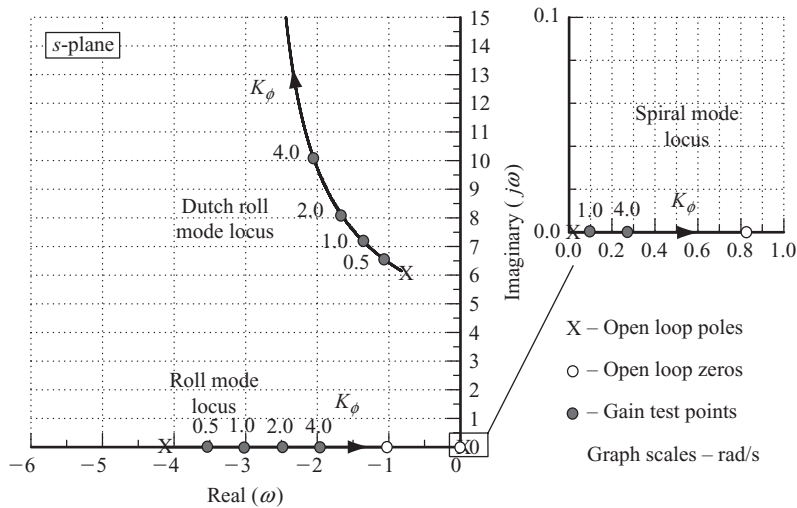


Figure 11.26 Root locus plot – roll attitude feedback to rudder.

and is not commonly used in autostabilisation systems since it introduces cross-coupling between the roll and yaw control axes.

(x) Yaw attitude feedback to rudder

The open loop transfer function is

$$\frac{\psi(s)}{\zeta(s)} \equiv \frac{N_{\zeta}^{\psi}(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{-11.01(s + 0.0302)(s + 0.367)(s + 4.11)}{s(s - 0.0014)(s + 4.145)(s^2 + 1.649s + 38.44)} \text{ rad/rad} \tag{11.50}$$

and the corresponding root locus plot is shown in Fig. 11.27. Note that the roll mode pole is almost exactly cancelled by a numerator zero indicating that the mode is not sensitive to this feedback option.

As  $K_{\psi}$  is increased the spiral mode pole moves to the left on the  $s$ -plane, towards the pole at the origin, to which it couples at a very small value of gain to form a stable low frequency oscillatory characteristic at all practical small values of gain. At a gain of approximately  $K_{\psi} = -1.5$  rad/rad the low frequency oscillatory characteristic becomes critically damped. Since the frequency of this mode is so low, and when stable it is reasonably well damped, it is unlikely to give rise to handling problems. As expected the roll mode stability remains effectively unchanged by this feedback option. As  $K_{\psi}$  is increased the dutch roll mode frequency increases whilst the damping decreases, both characteristics changing relatively slowly. The dutch roll mode eventually becomes neutrally stable at infinite feedback gain. At practical levels of feedback gain the effect on the dutch roll mode is to increase the frequency with only a very small reduction in damping. Negative yaw attitude feedback to rudder is equivalent to an increase in directional stiffness and is not commonly used in autostabilisation systems.

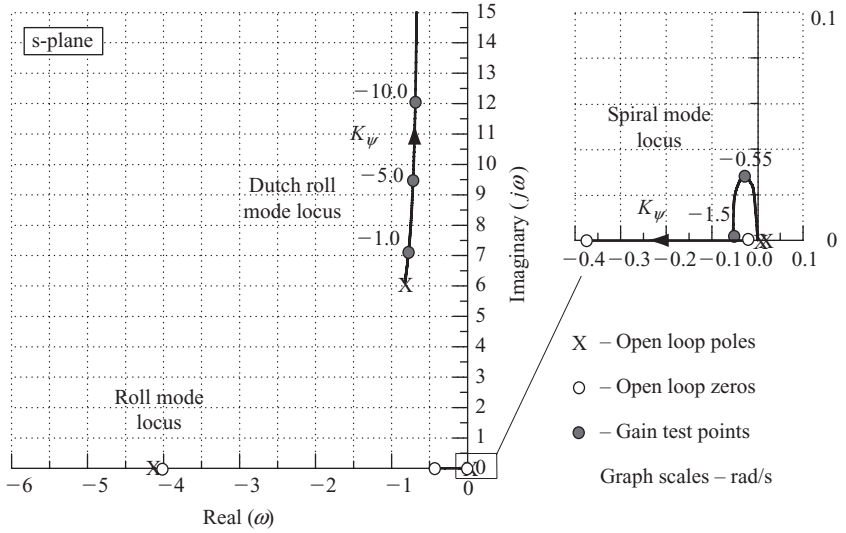


Figure 11.27 Root locus plot – yaw attitude feedback to rudder.

## 11.7 THE POLE PLACEMENT METHOD

An alternative and very powerful method for designing feedback gains for autostabilisation systems is the *pole placement method*. The method is based on the manipulation of the equations of motion in state space form and makes full use of the appropriate computational tools in the analytical process. Practical application of the method to aeroplanes is limited since it assumes that all state, or motion, variables are available for use in an augmentation system, which is not usually the case. However, regardless of the limitations of the method, it can be very useful to the FCS designer in the initial stages of assessment of augmentation system structure.

The state and output matrix equations describing the unaugmented, or open loop, aircraft, equations (5.48), are written

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) &= \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(t) \\ \mathbf{y}(t) &= \mathbf{C}\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{u}(t)\end{aligned}\quad (11.51)$$

Assuming that augmentation is achieved by negative feedback of the state vector  $\mathbf{x}(t)$  to the input vector  $\mathbf{u}(t)$  then the control law may be written

$$\mathbf{u}(t) = \mathbf{v}(t) - \mathbf{K}\mathbf{x}(t) \quad (11.52)$$

where,  $\mathbf{v}(t)$  is a vector of input demand variables and  $\mathbf{K}$  is a matrix of feedback gains. Note that equation (11.52) is the general multi-variable equivalent of equation (11.14). The closed loop state and output equations describing the augmented aircraft are obtained by substituting equation (11.52) into equations (11.51)

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) &= [\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{BK}]\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{v}(t) \\ \mathbf{y}(t) &= [\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{DK}]\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{v}(t)\end{aligned}\quad (11.53)$$

or, more simply,

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) &= \mathbf{A}_{aug}\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{v}(t) \\ \mathbf{y}(t) &= \mathbf{C}_{aug}\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{v}(t)\end{aligned}\quad (11.54)$$

Equations (11.54) are solved in exactly the same way as those of the open loop aircraft, equations (11.51), to obtain the response transfer functions for the augmented aircraft. Note that (as discussed in Section 5.6) for typical aircraft applications the direct matrix  $\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{0}$ , the output matrix  $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{I}$ , the identity matrix, and equations (11.51) to (11.54) simplify accordingly.

Now the characteristic equation of the augmented aircraft is given by

$$\Delta_{aug}(s) = |s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}_{aug}| \equiv |s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{BK}| = 0 \quad (11.55)$$

and the roots of equation (11.55), or equivalently the eigenvalues of  $\mathbf{A}_{aug}$ , describe the stability characteristics of the augmented aircraft.

Subject to the constraint that the open loop state equations (11.51) describes a *controllable system*, which an aircraft is, then a feedback matrix  $\mathbf{K}$  exists such that the eigenvalues of the closed loop system may be completely specified. Thus if the required stability and control characteristics of the augmented aircraft are specified, the roots of equation (11.55) may be calculated and knowing the open loop state and input matrices,  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$ , respectively, then equation (11.55) may be solved to find  $\mathbf{K}$ . Thus this method enables the stability characteristics of the augmented aircraft to be designed completely and exactly as required. Equivalently, this therefore means that the poles of the closed loop aircraft may be *placed* on the  $s$ -plane exactly as required. However, full state feedback is essential if all of the closed loop poles are to be placed on the  $s$ -plane as required.

When the controlled system is *single input* then the feedback matrix  $\mathbf{K}$  is unique and only one set of feedback gains will provide the required stability characteristics. When the controlled system is *multi-input* then an infinite number of gain matrices  $\mathbf{K}$  may be found which will provide the required stability characteristics. Consequently, most control system design problems involving the use of the pole placement method are solved by arranging the open loop system as a single input system. This is most easily done when dealing with aircraft stability augmentation since the inputs naturally separate into elevator, ailerons, rudder and thrust at the most basic level. It is a simple matter to arrange the state equation to include only one input variable and then to apply the pole placement method to design an augmentation system feedback structure.

### Example 11.6

The longitudinal equations of motion for the McDonnell Douglas F-4C Phantom aircraft were obtained from Heffley and Jewell (1972). At the chosen flight condition the weight is 38,925 lb and the aircraft is flying at Mach 1.1 at sea level. The state equations (11.51) were derived for the unaugmented aircraft from the data provided to give,

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix} -0.068 & -0.011 & 0 & -9.81 \\ 0.023 & -2.10 & 375 & 0 \\ 0.011 & -0.160 & -2.20 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \mathbf{B} = \begin{bmatrix} -0.41 & 1.00 \\ -77.0 & -0.09 \\ -61.0 & -0.11 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

with state vector,  $\mathbf{x}^T = [u \ w \ q \ \theta]$  and input vector,  $\mathbf{u}^T = [\eta \ \tau]$ . Note that two input variables are given in the model, elevator angle  $\eta$  and thrust  $\tau$ . Using *Program CC* the equations of motion were solved and the open loop characteristic polynomial was found,

$$\Delta(s) = (s^2 + 4.3s + 64.6)(s^2 + 0.07s + 0.003) \quad (11.56)$$

and the corresponding longitudinal stability mode characteristics are

$$\text{Phugoid damping ratio } \zeta_p = 0.646$$

$$\text{Phugoid undamped natural frequency } \omega_p = 0.054 \text{ rad/s}$$

$$\text{Short period damping ratio } \zeta_s = 0.267$$

$$\text{Short period undamped natural frequency } \omega_s = 8.038 \text{ rad/s}$$

Referring to the flying qualities requirements in MIL-F-8785C (1980) it was found that for a class IV aeroplane in the most demanding category A flight phase the Phantom comfortably meets Level 1 requirements with the exception of short period mode damping, which is too low. Clearly, some augmentation is required to improve the pitch damping in particular.

The design decision was made to increase the short period mode damping ratio to 0.7 whilst retaining the remaining stability characteristics at the nominal values of the basic unaugmented airframe. A short period mode damping ratio of 0.7 was chosen since this gives a good margin of stability and results in the shortest mode settling time after a disturbance. However, the exact value chosen is not important provided that the margin of stability is adequate to allow for uncertainty in the modelling. Therefore, the pole placement method is to be used to give the augmented aircraft the following longitudinal stability characteristics

$$\text{Phugoid damping ratio } \zeta_p = 0.65$$

$$\text{Phugoid undamped natural frequency } \omega_p = 0.054 \text{ rad/s}$$

$$\text{Short period damping ratio } \zeta_s = 0.7$$

$$\text{Short period undamped natural frequency } \omega_s = 8.0 \text{ rad/s}$$

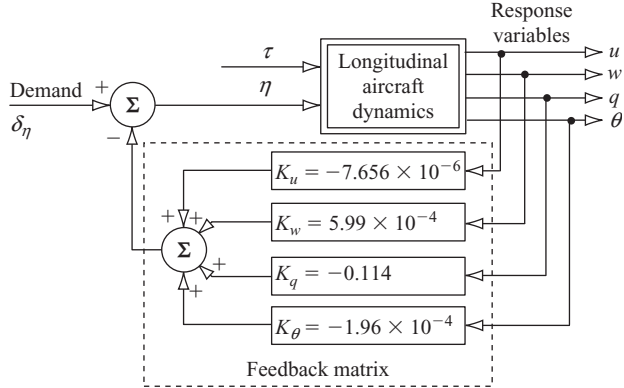
Thus the required closed loop characteristic polynomial is

$$\Delta_{aug}(s) = (s^2 + 11.2s + 64.0)(s^2 + 0.07s + 0.003) \quad (11.57)$$

Since a single input control system is required, the input being elevator angle, the open loop state equation is modified accordingly, simply by removing the thrust terms. The open loop state equation may then be written,

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -0.068 & -0.011 & 0 & -9.81 \\ 0.023 & -2.10 & 375 & 0 \\ 0.011 & -0.160 & -2.20 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -0.41 \\ -77.0 \\ -61.0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \eta \quad (11.58)$$





**Figure 11.28** Longitudinal full state feedback to elevator.

With the aid of the pole placement tool in *Program CC* the feedback gain matrix required to give the augmented aircraft the characteristic polynomial (equation (11.57)) was determined,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{K} &= [K_u \quad K_w \quad K_q \quad K_\theta] \\ &= [-7.7 \times 10^{-6} \quad 5.99 \times 10^{-4} \quad -0.114 \quad -1.96 \times 10^{-4}] \end{aligned} \quad (11.59)$$

Care is required in order to maintain the correct units of the elements in the feedback matrix. The SAS control law is obtained by substituting for  $\mathbf{K}$  in equation (11.52) whence,

$$\eta = \delta_\eta - K_u u - K_w w - K_q q - K_\theta \theta \quad (11.60)$$

The corresponding closed loop control system structure follows and is shown in Fig. 11.28.

Now clearly, the choice of closed loop stability characteristics has resulted in a gain matrix in which the gains  $K_u$ ,  $K_w$  and  $K_\theta$  are impractically and insignificantly small. This is simply due to the fact that the only significant change between the open and closed loop stability characteristics is the increase in short period mode damping and, as has already been established in Examples 11.3 and 11.4, the pole placement method confirms that this can be achieved with pitch rate feedback to elevator alone. If additional changes in the stability characteristics were required then the gains  $K_u$ ,  $K_w$  and  $K_\theta$  would, of course, not necessarily be insignificant. Let the feedback gain matrix be simplified to include only practical gain values and equation (11.59) may be written,

$$\mathbf{K} = [0 \quad 0 \quad -0.12 \quad 0] \quad (11.61)$$

The closed loop state equation (11.53), may then be calculated by writing,

$$\mathbf{K} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & -0.12 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.62)$$

where the second row describes the feedback to the second, thrust, input, which is not used in this example for the reason given above.  $[\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{BK}]$  is easily calculated with the aid of *Program CC* for example and the closed loop state equation, written to include both input variables, is

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -0.068 & -0.011 & -0.049 & -9.81 \\ 0.023 & -2.10 & 366 & 0 \\ 0.011 & -0.160 & -9.52 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -0.41 & 1.00 \\ -77.0 & -0.09 \\ -61.0 & -0.11 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \eta \\ \tau \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.63)$$

Comparison of the open loop equation (11.58) and the closed loop equation (11.63) indicates, as expected, that the only changes occur in the third column of the state matrix, the column associated with the variable  $q$ . The augmented state equation (11.63) is readily solved to obtain the closed loop transfer function matrix,

$$\begin{bmatrix} u(s) \\ w(s) \\ q(s) \\ \theta(s) \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{G}(s) \begin{bmatrix} \eta(s) \\ \tau(s) \end{bmatrix} = \frac{\mathbf{N}(s)}{\Delta_{aug}(s)} \begin{bmatrix} \eta(s) \\ \tau(s) \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.64)$$

where the numerator matrix is given by

$$\mathbf{N}(s) = \begin{bmatrix} -0.41(s + 1.36)(s - 44.45)(s + 45.31) & 1.0(s + 0.027)(s^2 + 11.60s + 79.75) \\ -77.0(s - 0.003)(s + 0.071)(s + 299.3) & -0.09(s + 0.008)(s - 0.044)(s + 456.4) \\ -61.0s(s + 0.068)(s + 1.90) & -0.11s(s - 0.022)(s + 1.96) \\ -61.0(s + 0.068)(s + 1.90) & -0.11(s - 0.022)(s + 1.96) \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.65)$$

and the closed loop characteristic polynomial is

$$\Delta_{aug}(s) = (s^2 + 11.62s + 78.49)(s^2 + 0.07s + 0.002) \quad (11.66)$$

The corresponding longitudinal stability mode characteristics are

$$\text{Phugoid damping ratio } \zeta_p = 0.71$$

$$\text{Phugoid undamped natural frequency } \omega_p = 0.049 \text{ rad/s}$$

$$\text{Short period damping ratio } \zeta_s = 0.656$$

$$\text{Short period undamped natural frequency } \omega_s = 8.86 \text{ rad/s}$$

Thus by simplifying the feedback gain matrix to an approximate equivalent it is not surprising that the specified stability characteristics (defined by equation (11.57)) have also only been achieved approximately. However, the differences are small and

are quite acceptable. The main objective, to increase the short period mode damping to a reasonable level has been achieved comfortably. The changes in the stability characteristics caused by the feedback are in complete agreement with the observations made in Examples 11.3 and 11.4.

Note that the numerators of the closed loop transfer functions describing response to elevator, given in the first column of the numerator matrix in equation (11.65), are unchanged by the feedback which is also in accordance with earlier findings concerning the effect of feedback. However, the numerators of the closed loop transfer functions describing response to thrust, given in the second column of the numerator matrix in equation (11.65), include some changes. The numerators  $N_\tau^u(s)$  and  $N_\tau^w(s)$  are both changed a little by the effect of feedback whereas, the numerators  $N_\tau^q(s)$  and  $N_\tau^\theta(s)$  remain unchanged.

It will be noted that the longitudinal stability augmentation for the F-4A could just as easily have been “designed” with the aid of a single input–single output root locus plot as described in Example 11.3. However, the subsequent calculation of the closed loop response transfer functions would have been rather more laborious. The pole placement method is undoubtedly a very powerful design tool, especially for the preliminary assessment of the feedback gains needed to achieve a specified level of closed loop stability. Once the gains required to achieve a given set of augmented stability characteristics have been determined their values will not be significantly changed by subsequent increases in FCS complexity. The main disadvantage of the method, especially in aircraft applications, is that it assumes all motion variables are sensed and are available for use in a control system. This is not often the case. Then it is necessary to simplify the feedback structure, making use of the understanding provided by Examples 11.4 and 11.5, to achieve a reasonable performance compromise – much as illustrated by this example. It is also good practice to minimise the demands on the augmentation system by limiting the required changes to the stability characteristics. Remember that small changes result in small feedback gains, again, much as illustrated by this example.

## REFERENCES

- Anon. 1980: *Military Specification – Flying Qualities of Piloted Airplanes*. MIL-F-8785C. Department of Defense, USA.
- Evans, W.R. 1954: *Control-System Dynamics*. McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York.
- Friedland, B. 1987: *Control System Design*. McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York.
- Heffley, R.K. and Jewell, W.F. 1972: *Aircraft Handling Qualities Data*. NASA Contractor Report, NASA CR-2144, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington D.C. 20546.
- Teper, G.L. 1969: *Aircraft Stability and Control Data*. Systems Technology, Inc., STI Technical Report 176-1. NASA Contractor Report, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington D.C. 20546.

## PROBLEMS

1. Discuss and illustrate why, in a simple SAS it is sometimes necessary to vary the feedback gain with flight condition. (CU 1986)

2. The damping of the longitudinal short period mode may be augmented with pitch rate feedback to elevator. Write the reduced order longitudinal equations of motion in matrix form to include the feedback term. It may be assumed that the derivative  $Z_q$  is negligibly small. From the closed loop equations of motion obtain an expression for the characteristic equation. Hence, show that when the derivative  $M_{\dot{w}}$  is assumed to be negligibly small, the value of feedback gain  $K_q$  required to double the damping ratio of the short period mode is given by

$$K_q = - \left( \frac{I_y}{m} \frac{Z_w}{M_{\dot{\eta}}} + \frac{\dot{M}_q}{\dot{M}_{\eta}} \right)$$

Using the following aerodynamic data for the Republic F-105 Thunderchief aircraft, calculate a value of  $K_q$  and comment on the practicality of using such a value. (CU 1986)

Flight condition			Dimensionless derivatives			
Altitude	$h$	35,000 ft	$X_u$	-0.0599	$M_u$	0
Flight path angle	$\gamma$	0°	$X_w$	0.0714	$M_w$	-0.8021
Body incidence	$\alpha_e$	0°	$X_q$	0	$M_{\dot{w}}$	-0.8718
Airspeed	$V_0$	270 m/s	$X_{\eta}$	0	$M_q$	-4.1303
Mass	$m$	18,680 kg	$Z_u$	-0.1427	$M_{\eta}$	-1.365
Pitch inertia	$I_y$	189,812 kgm <sup>2</sup>	$Z_w$	-4.1188		
Air density	$\rho$	0.3798 kg/m <sup>3</sup>	$Z_q$	0		
Wing area	$S$	36.45 m <sup>2</sup>	$Z_{\eta}$	-0.7672		
$mac$	$\bar{c}$	3.54 m				

3. The open loop yaw rate response to rudder transfer function for the Republic F-105 Thunderchief aircraft flying at Mach 0.9 at an altitude of 35,000 ft is given by

$$\frac{r(s)}{\zeta(s)} = \frac{-4.71(s + 1.848)(s^2 + 0.053s + 0.067)}{(s - 0.0087)(s + 2.13)(s^2 + 1.211s + 10.82)} 1/s$$

Draw a root locus plot to show the effect of yaw rate feedback to rudder with feedback gain  $K_r$ .

- With the aid of the root locus plot, explain how it may be used to evaluate the effect of feedback on the characteristics modes of motion.
  - How does yaw rate feedback to rudder improve lateral-directional flying qualities?
  - What value of gain  $K_r$  is required to increase the dutch roll mode damping ratio to 0.25? For this value of  $K_r$  obtain values for the roots of the closed loop characteristic equation and compare the characteristics of the three modes with those of the unaugmented aircraft. (CU 1986)
4. Assuming the lateral response to aileron control comprises pure rolling motion only, derive the reduced order roll rate response to aileron control transfer

function for an aircraft. When the lateral stability of the aircraft is augmented by feeding back roll rate to aileron via the gain  $K_p$ , show that the augmented roll damping derivative is given by

$$\overset{\circ}{L}_{p_{aug}} = \overset{\circ}{L}_p - K_p \overset{\circ}{L}_\xi$$

where,  $\overset{\circ}{L}_p$  is the rolling moment due to roll rate and  $\overset{\circ}{L}_\xi$  is the rolling moment due to aileron for the unaugmented aircraft.

Using the simple lateral model, assess the roll subsidence mode of the Northrop T-38 Talon aircraft. Data for the aircraft are tabulated below. What is the minimum value of  $K_p$  for which the aircraft will meet the flying qualities requirements?

Flight condition			Dimensionless derivatives			
Altitude	$h$	25,000 ft	$Y_v$	-1.260	$N_v$	0.240
Flight path angle	$\gamma$	0°	$Y_p$	0	$N_p$	0.0430
Body incidence	$\alpha_e$	0°	$Y_r$	0	$N_r$	-0.170
Airspeed	$V_0$	123.7 m/s	$Y_\xi$	0	$N_\xi$	0.007
Mass	$m$	4540 kg	$Y_\zeta$	0.160	$N_\zeta$	-0.103
Roll inertia	$I_x$	5965 kgm <sup>2</sup>				
Yaw inertia	$I_z$	46097 kgm <sup>2</sup>	$L_v$	-0.097		
Inertia product	$I_{xz}$	0 kgm <sup>2</sup>	$L_p$	-0.110		
Air density	$\rho$	0.549 kg/m <sup>3</sup>	$L_r$	0.078		
Wing area	$S$	15.79 m <sup>2</sup>	$L_\xi$	0.040		
Wing span	$b$	7.69 m	$L_\zeta$	0.017		

(CU 1987)

5. Longitudinal flight condition and aerodynamic derivative data are given in the following table for a canard configured FBW combat aircraft.

Flight condition			Dimensionless derivatives			
Altitude	$h$	Sea level	$X_u$	0.050	$M_u$	0.003
Flight path angle	$\gamma$	0°	$X_w$	0.260	$M_w$	0.280
Body incidence	$\alpha_e$	0°	$X_q$	0	$M_{\dot{w}}$	0.380
Airspeed	$V_0$	100 m/s	$X_\eta$	0	$M_q$	-0.500
Mass	$m$	12,500 kg	$Z_u$	-1.200	$M_\eta$	0.160
Pitch inertia	$I_y$	105,592 kgm <sup>2</sup>	$Z_w$	-2.800		
Air density	$\rho$	1.225 kg/m <sup>3</sup>	$Z_{\dot{w}}$	-0.700		
Wing area	$S$	50.0 m <sup>2</sup>	$Z_q$	-1.200		
$mac$	$\bar{c}$	5.7 m	$Z_\eta$	-0.040		

- (i) Write down the reduced order longitudinal equations of motion appropriate to the aircraft. Hence, show that the short period mode characteristic equation is given approximately in terms of concise derivatives by

$$s^2 - (z_w + m_q + m_{\dot{w}}U_e)s - (m_wU_e - z_w m_q) = 0$$

State all assumptions made.

- (ii) Since the aircraft is unstable it is augmented with a control law of form,

$$\eta = \delta_\eta - K_q q - K_\alpha \alpha$$

What values of the feedback gains  $K_q$  and  $K_\alpha$  are required to produce an augmented short period mode with natural frequency 5 rad/s and damping ratio 0.5? (CU 1989)

6. Explain why the dutch roll mode characteristics are often unacceptable in large civil transport aircraft.

The yaw control transfer function for a large civil transport aircraft cruising at 33,000 ft is given by

$$\frac{N'_\zeta(s)}{\Delta(s)} = \frac{-1.17(s + 1.28)(s^2 - 0.04s + 0.10)}{(s + 0.004)(s + 1.25)(s^2 + 0.20s + 2.25)} 1/s$$

Evaluate the stability modes characteristics and assess these for Level 1 flying qualities.

The aircraft is fitted with a yaw damper to improve the dutch roll characteristics. Draw a root locus plot showing the effect of yaw rate feedback to rudder via gain  $K_r$ . Draw mode limit boundaries on the root locus plot corresponding with Level 1 flying qualities and suggest a suitable value for  $K_r$ . Evaluate all three modes for the chosen value of feedback gain and comment on the comparison with those of the unaugmented aircraft. (CU 1989)

7. Explain why the stability characteristics of the short term stability modes are critical to good flying qualities. Explain and illustrate how they may be augmented when those of the basic airframe are inadequate. (CU 2001)

---

## Chapter 12

# Aerodynamic Modelling

### 12.1 INTRODUCTION

Probably the most difficult task confronting the flight dynamicist is the identification and quantification of the aerodynamic description of the aeroplane for use in the equations of motion. *Aerodynamic modelling* is concerned with the development of mathematical models to describe the aerodynamic forces and moments acting on the airframe. As the flow conditions around the airframe are generally complex any attempt to describe the aerodynamic phenomena mathematically must result in compromise. Obviously, the most desirable objective is to devise the most accurate mathematical description of the airframe aerodynamics as can possibly be achieved. Unfortunately, even if accurate mathematical models can be devised they are often difficult to handle in an analytical context and do not, in general, lend themselves to application to the linearised equations of motion. Therefore, the solution to the problem is to seek simpler approximate aerodynamic models which can be used in the equations of motion and which represent the aerodynamic properties of the airframe with an acceptable degree of accuracy. A consequence of this is that the aerodynamic models are only valid for a small range of operating conditions and, therefore, the solution of the equations of motion is also only valid for the same limited range of conditions. By repeating this procedure at many points within the flight envelope of the aeroplane an acceptable “picture” of its dynamic properties can be built up, subject of course to the limitations of the modelling techniques used.

In the present context *aerodynamic stability and control derivatives* are used to model the aerodynamic properties of the aeroplane. The concept of the aerodynamic derivative as a means for describing aerodynamic force and moment characteristics is introduced and described in Chapter 4, Section 4.2. The use of the aerodynamic derivative as a means for explaining the dependence of the more important dynamic characteristics of the aeroplane on its dominant aerodynamic properties is discussed in Chapters 6 and 7. In the illustrations only those derivatives associated with the dominant aerodynamic effects have been discussed. Clearly, if the most important aerodynamic properties ascribed to every derivative are known then a more subtle and expansive interpretation of aircraft dynamics may be made in the analysis of the response transfer functions. Thus a good understanding of the origin, meaning and limitation of the aerodynamic derivatives provides the means by which the flight dynamicist may achieve very considerable insight into the subtleties of aircraft dynamics and into its flying and handling qualities. In the author’s opinion this knowledge is also essential for the designer of stability augmentation systems for the reasons illustrated in Chapter 11.

Thus, this chapter is concerned with a preliminary review of, and introduction to aerodynamic stability and control derivatives at the simplest level consistent with the

foregoing material. However, it must be remembered that alternative methods for aerodynamic modelling are commonly in use when rather greater detail is required in the equations of motion. For example, in continuous simulation models, the equations of motion may well be non-linear and the aerodynamic models are correspondingly rather more complex. Or, today, it is common practice to investigate analytically the dynamic behaviour of combat aircraft at very high angles of incidence, conditions which may be grossly non-linear and for which the aerodynamic derivative would be incapable of providing an adequate description of the aerodynamics. For such applications experimental or semi-empirical sources of aerodynamic information would be more appropriate. Whatever, the source of the aerodynamic models, simple or complex, the best that can be achieved is an *estimate* of the aerodynamic properties. This immediately prompts the question, *how good is the estimate?* This question is not easy to answer and depends ultimately on the confidence in the aerodynamic modelling process and the fidelity of the aircraft dynamics derived from the aerodynamic model.

## 12.2 QUASI-STATIC DERIVATIVES

In order to appreciate the “meaning” of the aerodynamic derivative consider, for example, the derivative which quantifies *normal force due to rate of pitch* denoted

$$\dot{Z}_q = \frac{\partial Z}{\partial q} \quad (12.1)$$

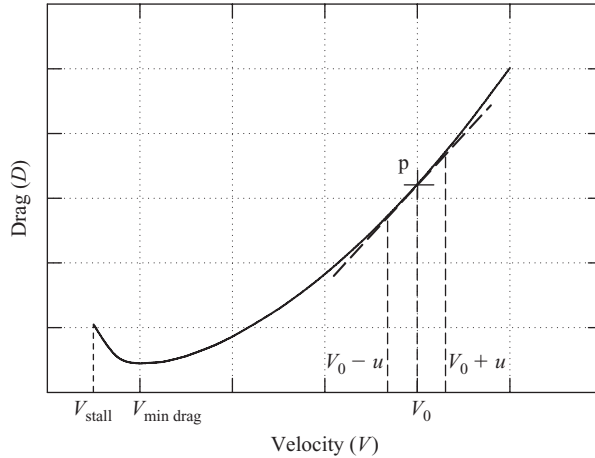
The component of normal force experienced by the aircraft resulting from a pitch velocity perturbation is therefore given by

$$Z = \dot{Z}_q q \quad (12.2)$$

Now, in general, the disturbance giving rise to the pitch rate perturbation will also include perturbations in the other motion variables which will give rise to additional components of normal force as indicated by the appropriate terms in the aerodynamic normal force model included in equations (4.37). However, when considering the derivative  $\dot{Z}_q$  it is usual to consider its effect in isolation, as if the perturbation comprised only pitch rate. Similarly, the effects of all the other derivatives are also considered in isolation by assuming the perturbation to comprise only the motion appropriate to the derivative in question.

By definition, the equations of motion, equations (4.37), in which the derivatives appear, describe small perturbation motion about a steady trimmed equilibrium flight condition. Thus, for example, in the undisturbed state the component of normal force  $Z$  given by equation (12.2) will be zero since the perturbation variable  $q$  is zero. Similarly, all the aerodynamic force and moment components in all of the small perturbation equations of motion will be zero at the trim condition. The point of this perhaps obvious statement is to emphasise that, in the present context, the aerodynamic derivatives only play a part in determining the motion of the aeroplane when it is in a state of “dynamic upset” with respect to its initial trim condition. As described in earlier chapters, the state of dynamic upset is referred to equivalently as a perturbation about the equilibrium condition and is usually transient in nature.





**Figure 12.1** A typical aerodynamic drag-velocity characteristic.

Thus to be strictly applicable to the dynamic conditions they describe, the derivatives should be expressed in terms of the non-steady aerodynamic conditions they attempt to quantify – clearly a difficult demand!

Since the motion of interest is limited, by definition, to small perturbations about equilibrium then, in the limit the perturbations tend to zero and the dynamic condition becomes coincident with the equilibrium flight condition. It is therefore common practice to evaluate the aerodynamic derivatives at the steady equilibrium condition and to assume that they are applicable to the small perturbation motion about that equilibrium. This procedure gives rise to the so called *quasi-static aerodynamic derivatives*, quantities based on, and derived from, static aerodynamic conditions but which are used in the description of dynamically varying aerodynamic conditions. Aerodynamic derivatives obtained by this means seem to be quite adequate for studies of small perturbation dynamics but, not surprisingly, become increasingly inappropriate as the magnitude of the perturbation is increased. As suggested above, studies of large amplitude dynamics require rather more sophisticated methods of aerodynamic modelling.

To illustrate the concept of the quasi-static derivative consider the contribution of aerodynamic drag  $D$  to the axial force  $X$  acting on the aircraft in a disturbance. Assuming that the aircraft axes are wind axes then,

$$X = -D \quad (12.3)$$

A typical aerodynamic drag-velocity plot is shown in Fig. 12.1. Let the steady equilibrium velocity be  $V_0$  at the flight condition of interest which defines the operating point  $p$  on the plot. Now let the aeroplane be subjected to a disturbance giving rise to a small velocity perturbation  $\pm u$  about the operating point as indicated. The derivative *axial force due to velocity* is defined

$$\overset{\circ}{X}_u = \frac{\partial X}{\partial U} \equiv \frac{\partial X}{\partial V} \quad (12.4)$$

where the total perturbation velocity component along the  $x$  axis is given by

$$U = U_e + u \equiv V_0 + u \equiv V \quad (12.5)$$

Whence,

$$\overset{\circ}{X}_u = -\frac{\partial D}{\partial V} \quad (12.6)$$

and the slope of the drag–velocity plot at  $p$  gives the quasi-static value of the derivative  $\overset{\circ}{X}_u$  at the flight condition corresponding with the trimmed velocity  $V_0$ . Some further simple analysis is possible since the drag is given by

$$D = \frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 S C_D \quad (12.7)$$

and assuming the air density  $\rho$  remains constant, since the perturbation is small, then,

$$\frac{\partial D}{\partial V} = \frac{1}{2}\rho V S \left( 2C_D + V \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial V} \right) \quad (12.8)$$

To define the derivative  $\overset{\circ}{X}_u$  at the flight condition of interest, let the perturbation become vanishingly small such that  $u \rightarrow 0$  and hence  $V \rightarrow V_0$ . Then, from equations (12.6) and (12.8),

$$\overset{\circ}{X}_u = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S \left( 2C_D + V_0 \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial V} \right) \quad (12.9)$$

where  $C_D$  and  $\partial C_D/\partial V$  are evaluated at velocity  $V_0$ . Thus in order to evaluate the derivative the governing aerodynamic properties are *linearised about the operating point* of interest, which is a direct consequence of the assumption that the perturbation is small. A similar procedure enables all of the aerodynamic stability and control derivatives to be evaluated although the governing aerodynamic properties may not always lend themselves to such simple interpretation.

It is important to note that in the above illustration the derivative  $\overset{\circ}{X}_u$  varies with velocity. In general most derivatives vary with velocity, or Mach number, altitude and incidence. In fact many derivatives demonstrate significant and sometimes abrupt changes over the flight envelope, especially in the transonic region.

## 12.3 DERIVATIVE ESTIMATION

A number of methods are used to evaluate the aerodynamic derivatives. However, whichever method is used the resulting evaluations can, at best, only be regarded as *estimates* of the exact values. The degree of confidence associated with the derivative estimates is dependent on the quality of the aerodynamic source material and the method of evaluation used. It is generally possible to obtain estimates of the longitudinal aerodynamic derivatives with a greater degree of confidence than can usually be ascribed to estimates of the lateral–directional aerodynamic derivatives.

### 12.3.1 Calculation

The calculation of derivatives from first principles using approximate mathematical models of the aerodynamic properties of the airframe is probably the simplest and least accurate method of estimation. In particular, it can provide estimates of questionable validity, especially for the lateral-directional derivatives. However, since the approximate aerodynamic models used are based on an understanding of the physical phenomena involved, simple calculation confers significant advantage as a means for gaining insight into the dominant aerodynamic properties driving the airframe dynamics. Whence, an appreciation of the theoretical methods of estimating aerodynamic derivatives provides a sound foundation on which to build most analytical flight dynamics studies.

In order to improve on the often poor derivative estimates obtained by calculation, *semi-empirical* methods of estimation have evolved in the light of experience gained from the earliest days of aviation to the present. Semi-empirical methods are based on simple theoretical calculation modified with the addition of generalised aerodynamic data obtained from experimental sources and accumulated over many years. Semi-empirical methods are generally made available in various series of reference documents and, today, many are also available as interactive computer programs. In the UK the Engineering Sciences Data Unit (ESDU) publishes a number of volumes on aerodynamics of which some are specifically concerned with aerodynamic derivative estimation. Similar source material is also published in the USA (DATCOM) and elsewhere.

Use of the semi-empirical data items requires some limited information about the geometry and aerodynamics of the subject aeroplane at the outset. The investigator then works through the estimation process, which involves calculation and frequent reference to graphical data and nomograms, to arrive at an estimate of the value of the derivative at the flight condition of interest. Such is the state of development of these methods that it is now possible to obtain derivative estimates of good accuracy, at least for aeroplanes having conventional configurations.

Because of the recurring need to estimate aircraft stability and control derivatives a number of authors have written computer programs to calculate derivatives with varying degrees of success. Indeed, a number of the ESDU data items are now available as computer software. The program by Mitchell (1973) and its subsequent modification by Ross and Bengler (1975) has enjoyed some popularity, especially for preliminary estimates of the stability and control characteristics of new aircraft configurations. The text by Smetana (1984) also includes listings for a number of useful computer programs concerned with aircraft performance and stability.

### 12.3.2 Wind tunnel measurement

The classical wind tunnel test is one in which a reduced scale model of the aircraft is attached to a balance and the six components of force and moment are measured for various combinations of wind velocity, incidence angle, sideslip angle and control surface angle. The essential feature of such tests is that the conditions are *static* when the measurements are made. Provided the experiments are carefully designed and executed wind tunnel tests can give good estimates of the force-velocity and

moment–velocity derivatives in particular. Scale effects can give rise to accuracy problems, especially when difficult full scale flight conditions are simulated, and although some derivatives can be estimated with good accuracy it may be very difficult to devise experiments to measure other derivatives adequately. However, despite the limitations of the experimental methods, measurements are made for real aerodynamic flow conditions and in principle it is possible to obtain derivative estimates of greater fidelity than is likely by calculation.

Dynamic, or non-stationary, experiments can be conducted from which estimates for the force–rotary and moment–rotary derivatives can be made. The simplest of these requires a special rig in which to mount the model and which enables the model to undergo a single degree of freedom free or forced oscillation in either roll, pitch or yaw. Analysis of the oscillatory time response obtained in such an experiment enables estimates to be made of the relevant damping and stiffness derivatives. For example, an oscillatory pitch experiment enables estimates to be made of  $\dot{M}_q$  and  $\dot{M}_w$ . More complex multi-degree of freedom test rigs become necessary when it is intended to measure the motion coupling derivatives, for example, derivatives like yawing moment due to roll rate  $\dot{N}_p$ . As the experimental complexity is increased so the complexity of the analysis required to calculate the derivative estimates from the measurements is also increased and, consequently, it becomes more difficult to guarantee the accuracy of the derivatives thus obtained.

### 12.3.3 Flight test measurement

The estimation of aerodynamic derivatives from flight test measurements is an established and well developed experimental process. However, derivative estimates are usually obtained indirectly since it is not possible to measure the aerodynamic components of force and moment acting on the airframe directly. Also, since the aircraft has six degrees of freedom it is not always possible to perturb the single motion variable of interest without perturbing some, or all, of the others as well. However, as in wind tunnel testing, some derivatives are easily estimated from flight test experiment with a good degree of confidence, whereas others can be notoriously difficult to estimate.

Although it is relatively easy to set up approximately steady conditions in flight from which direct estimates of some derivatives can be made, for example a steady sideslip for the estimation of  $\dot{Y}_v$ ,  $\dot{L}_v$  and  $\dot{N}_v$ , the technique often produces results of indifferent accuracy and has limited usefulness. Today *parameter identification* techniques are commonly used in which measurements are made following the deliberate excitation of multi-variable dynamic conditions. Complex multi-variable response analysis then follows from which it is possible to derive a complete estimate of the mathematical model of the aircraft corresponding with the flight condition at which the measurements were made. Parameter identification is an analytical process in which full use is made of state space computational tools in order to estimate the aircraft state description that best matches the input–output response measured in flight. It is essentially a multi-variable curve fitting procedure and the computational output is the coefficients in the aircraft state equation from which estimates of the aerodynamic stability and control derivatives may be obtained. The method is complex and

success depends, to a considerable extent, on the correct choice of computational algorithm appropriate to the experiment.

A simple diagram containing the essential functions of the parameter identification procedure is shown in Fig. 12.2. A flight test exercise is flown in the fully instrumented subject aircraft and the pilot applies control inputs designed to excite the dynamic response of interest. The control inputs and the full complement of dynamic response variables are recorded *in situ* or, may be telemetered directly to a ground station for on-line analysis. The parameter identification process is entirely computational and is based on a mathematical model of the aeroplane which is deliberately structured to include the terms appropriate to the flight experiment. The object then is to identify the coefficients in the aircraft model which give the best match with the dynamics of the experimental response. The recorded control inputs are applied to the model of the aircraft and its multi-variable response is compared with the recorded response made in the flight experiment. Response matching errors are then used to adjust the coefficients in the aircraft model according to the parameter identification algorithm and the process is repeated iteratively until the response matching errors are minimised.

All of the recorded signals contain noise, measurement errors and uncertainties of various kinds to a greater or lesser extent. The complexity of the identification process is therefore magnified considerably since statistical analysis methods play an essential part in all modern algorithms. For example, Kalman filtering techniques are frequently used to first obtain consistent, and essentially error free, estimates of the state variables for subsequent use in the identification process. Typical commonly encountered parameter identification algorithms include the *Equation Error* method, the *Maximum Likelihood* method and various methods based on *Statistical Regression* techniques. The development of parameter identification methods for application to aeronautical problems has been the subject of considerable research over the last

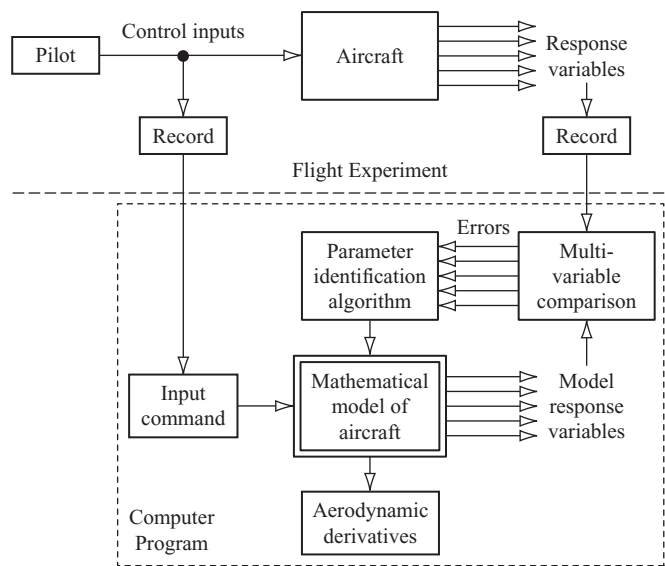


Figure 12.2 The parameter identification process.

25 years or so and a vast wealth of published material is available. A more detailed discussion of the subject is well beyond the scope of this book.

Until recently few books have been published which are concerned with aircraft parameter identification, see Klein and Morelli (2006), for example. Most of the available material appears to be contained in research papers. However, the interested reader will find a useful collection of aircraft related papers in AGARD (1979). It is rare to find published listings of parameter identification computer programs which makes the work by Ross and Foster (1976) especially useful, if somewhat dated. Probably two of the more useful sources of information on current developments in aircraft parameter identification are the proceedings of the AIAA annual Flight Mechanics and bi-annual Flight Test conferences.

The main disadvantages of parameter identification methods includes the requirement for substantial computational “power” and the essential need for recorded flight data of the very highest quality. Despite these constraints, the process is now used routinely by many of the leading flight test organisations. Given adequate resources the advantages of parameter identification methods are significant. All of the aerodynamic stability and control derivatives can be estimated in one pass and the dynamic conditions to which they relate do not necessarily have to be linear. For example, it is now routinely possible to identify aircraft models in extreme manoeuvring conditions such as the stall, the spin and at very high angles of attack when the aerodynamics are substantially non-linear. It is interesting to note that the method can also be used for estimating aerodynamic derivatives from “dynamic” wind tunnel experiments.

## 12.4 THE EFFECTS OF COMPRESSIBILITY

The onset of compressible flow conditions gives rise to changes in the aerodynamic properties of the aeroplane which, in general, leads to corresponding changes in the stability and control characteristics. Clearly this means a change in the flying and handling qualities of the aeroplane as the Mach number envelope is traversed. Typically, compressibility effects begin to become apparent at a Mach number of approximately 0.3 although changes in the stability and control characteristics may not become significant until the Mach number reaches 0.6 or more. As Mach number is increased the changes due to compressibility are continuous and gradual. However, in the transonic flow regime changes can be dramatic and abrupt. When appropriate, it is therefore important that the aerodynamic changes arising from the effects of compressibility are allowed for in even the simplest and most approximate aerodynamic derivative estimation procedure.

An interesting chapter on the effects of compressibility on aircraft stability, control and handling may be found in Hilton (1952). However, it must be remembered that at the time the book was written the problems were very clearly recognised but the mathematical models used to describe the phenomena were, in most cases, at an early stage of development. Today, sophisticated computational tools are commonly used to deal with the problems of modelling compressible aerodynamics. However, the simpler models described by Hilton (1952) are still applicable, as will be shown in the following pages, provided their limitations are appreciated.

### 12.4.1 Some useful definitions

*Mach number*  $M$  is defined as the ratio of the local flow velocity  $V$  to the local speed of sound  $a$  whence,

$$M = \frac{V}{a} \quad (12.10)$$

*Subsonic flight* commonly refers to local aerodynamic flow conditions where  $M < 1.0$ . Practically, this means that the free stream Mach number is less than approximately 0.8.

*Transonic flight* usually refers to generally subsonic flight but where the local flow Mach number  $M \geq 1.0$ . Practically, transonic flight conditions are assumed when the free stream Mach number lies in the range  $0.8 < M_0 < 1.2$ . The greatest degree of aerodynamic unpredictability is associated with this Mach number range.

*Supersonic flight* commonly refers to aerodynamic flow conditions when  $M > 1.0$  everywhere in the local flow field. Practically, supersonic flow conditions are assumed when the free stream Mach number is greater than approximately 1.2.

The *critical Mach number*  $M_{crit}$  is the free stream Mach number at which the local flow Mach number just reaches unity at some point on the airframe. In general,  $M_{crit} \leq 1.0$  and is typically in the order of 0.9.

A *shock wave* is a compression wave front which occurs in the supersonic flow field around an airframe. A shock wave originating at a point on the airframe, such as the nose of the aeroplane, is initially a plane wave front normal to the direction of the flow. As the flow Mach number is increased so the shock wave becomes a conical wave front, or *Mach cone*, the apex angle of which decreases with increasing Mach number. As the air flow traverses the shock wave it experiences an abrupt increase in pressure, density and temperature and the energy associated with these changes is extracted from the total flow energy to result in reduced velocity behind the wave front. Collectively, these changes are seen as an abrupt increase in drag in particular and may be accompanied by significant changes in trim and in the stability and control characteristics of the aeroplane.

The *shock stall* is sometimes used to describe the abrupt aerodynamic changes experienced when an aeroplane accelerating through the transonic flight regime first reaches the critical Mach number. At the critical Mach number shock waves begin to form at various places on the airframe and are accompanied by abrupt reduction in local lift, abrupt increase in local drag and some associated change in pitching moment. Since the effect of these aerodynamic changes is not unlike that of the classical low speed stall it is referred to as the shock stall. However, unlike the classical low speed stall, the aeroplane continues to fly through the condition.

### 12.4.2 Aerodynamic models

Because of the aerodynamic complexity of the conditions applying to an aeroplane in a compressible flow field it is difficult to derive other than the very simplest mathematical models to describe those conditions. Thus for analytical application, as required in aerodynamic derivative estimation, mathematical modelling is usually limited to

an approximate description of the effects of compressibility on the lifting surfaces of the aeroplane only. In particular, the ease with which the aerodynamic properties of a wing in compressible flow can be estimated is dependent, to a large extent, on the leading edge flow conditions.

As flow Mach number is increased to unity a shock wave forms a small distance ahead of the leading edge of a typical wing and the shock wave is said to be *detached*. As the Mach number is increased further so the shock wave moves nearer to the leading edge of the wing and eventually moves on to the wing when it is said to be *attached*. Since the flow velocity behind the shock wave is lower than the free stream value, when the shock wave is detached the leading edge of the wing would typically be in subsonic flow. In this condition the pressure distribution on the wing, in particular the leading edge suction peak, would be subsonic in nature and the aerodynamic characteristics of the wing would be quite straightforward to estimate. However, when the shock wave is attached the leading edge of the wing would typically be in supersonic flow conditions and the aerodynamic properties, in particular the drag rise, would be much less straightforward to estimate. Since the incident flow velocity direction is always considered perpendicular to the leading edge of the wing, it will always be lower on a swept wing as it is equivalent to the free stream velocity resolved through the leading edge sweep angle. Further, since wing sweep will bring more, or more likely all, of the wing within the Mach cone the high drag associated with a supersonic leading edge will be reduced or avoided altogether for a larger range of supersonic Mach number.

### 12.4.3 Subsonic lift, drag and pitching moment

The theoretical maximum value of lift curve slope for a rectangular flat plate wing of infinite span in incompressible flow is given by

$$a_{\infty} = 2\pi \cos \Lambda_{le} \text{ 1/rad} \quad (12.11)$$

where,  $\Lambda_{le}$  is the leading edge sweep angle. For a wing of finite thickness this value of lift curve slope is reduced and Houghton and Carpenter (1993) give an approximate empirical expression which is a function of geometric thickness to chord ratio  $t/c$  such that equation (2.11) becomes

$$a_{\infty} = 1.8\pi \left( 1 + 0.8 \frac{t}{c} \right) \cos \Lambda_{le} \text{ 1/rad} \quad (12.12)$$

For a wing of finite span the lift curve slope is reduced further as a function of aspect ratio  $A$  and is given by the expression,

$$a = \frac{a_{\infty}}{\left( 1 + \frac{a_{\infty}}{\pi A} \right)} \quad (12.13)$$

For Mach numbers below  $M_{crit}$ , but when the effects of compressibility are evident the *Prandtl–Glauert rule* provides a means for estimating the lifting properties of a



wing. For an infinite span wing with leading edge sweep angle  $\Lambda_{le}$  the lift curve slope  $a_{\infty_c}$  in the presence of compressibility effects is given by,

$$a_{\infty_c} = \frac{a_{\infty_i}}{\sqrt{1 - M^2 \cos^2 \Lambda_{le}}} \quad (12.14)$$

where,  $a_{\infty_i}$  is the corresponding incompressible lift curve slope given, for example, by equation (2.12). An equivalent expression for a wing of finite span and having an aspect ratio  $A$  is quoted in Babister (1961) and is given by,

$$a_c = \frac{(A + 2 \cos \Lambda_{le})a_{\infty_i}}{2 \cos \Lambda_{le} + A\sqrt{1 - M^2 \cos^2 \Lambda_{le}}} \quad (12.15)$$

For Mach numbers below  $M_{crit}$  the zero lift drag coefficient  $C_{D_0}$  remains at its nominal incompressible value and the changes in drag due to the effects of compressibility are due mainly to the induced drag contribution. Thus the classical expression for the drag coefficient applies,

$$C_{D_c} = C_{D_0} + kC_{L_c}^2 = C_{D_0} + ka_c^2 \alpha^2 \quad (12.16)$$

In general the effect of compressibility on pitching moment coefficient in subsonic flight is small and is often disregarded. However, in common with lift and drag coefficient, such changes in pitching moment coefficient as may be evident increase as the Mach number approaches unity. Further, the changes in pitching moment coefficient are more pronounced in aircraft with a large wing sweep angle and result from a progressive aft shift in aerodynamic centre. Since the effect is dependent on the inverse of  $\sqrt{1 - M^2 \cos^2 \Lambda_{le}}$ , or its equivalent for a wing of finite span, it does not become significant until, approximately,  $M \geq 0.6$ .

It is important to appreciate that the Prandtl–Glauert rule only applies to subsonic flight in the presence of the effects of compressibility. The models given above become increasingly inaccurate at Mach numbers approaching and exceeding unity. In other words, the Prandtl–Glauert rule is not applicable to transonic flight conditions.

#### 12.4.4 Supersonic lift, drag and pitching moment

The derivation of simple approximate aerodynamic models to describe lift, drag and pitching moment characteristics in supersonic flow conditions is very much more difficult. Such models as are available are dependent on the location of the shocks on the principal lifting surfaces and in particular, on whether the leading edge of the wing is subsonic or supersonic. In every case the aerodynamic models require a reasonable knowledge of the geometry of the wing including the aerofoil section. The three commonly used theoretical tools are, in order of increasing complexity, the linearised *Ackeret theory*, the second order *Busemann theory* and the *shock expansion* method. A full discussion of the theories is not appropriate here and only the simplest linear models are summarised below. The material is included in most aerodynamics texts for example, in Bertin and Smith (1989) and in Houghton and Carpenter (1993).

The lift curve slope of an infinite span swept wing in supersonic flow, which implies a supersonic leading edge condition, is given by,

$$a_{\infty_c} = \frac{4 \cos \Lambda_{le}}{\sqrt{M^2 \cos^2 \Lambda_{le} - 1}} \quad (12.17)$$

Clearly, the expression given by equation (12.17) is only valid for Mach numbers  $M > \sec \Lambda_{le}$ , at lower Mach numbers the leading edge is subsonic since it is within the Mach cone. For a wing of finite span the expression given by equation (12.17) is “corrected” for aspect ratio,

$$a_c = a_{\infty_c} \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2A\sqrt{M^2 \cos^2 \Lambda_{le} - 1}} \right) \quad (12.18)$$

and the parameter  $A\sqrt{M^2 \cos^2 \Lambda_{le} - 1}$  is termed the *effective aspect ratio* by Liepmann and Roshko (1957).

The drag of an aeroplane in supersonic flight is probably one of the most difficult aerodynamic parameters to estimate with any degree of accuracy. The drag of a wing with a supersonic leading edge comprises three components, the *drag due to lift*, *wave drag* and *skin friction drag*. The drag due to lift, sometimes known as *wave drag due to lift*, is equivalent to the induced drag in subsonic flight. Wave drag, also known as *form drag* or *pressure drag*, only occurs in compressible flow conditions and is a function of aerofoil section geometry. Skin friction drag is the same as the familiar zero lift drag in subsonic flight which is a function of wetted surface area.

A simple approximate expression for the drag coefficient of an infinite span swept wing in supersonic flight is given by,

$$C_{D_\infty} = \frac{4\alpha^2 \cos \Lambda_{le}}{\sqrt{M^2 \cos^2 \Lambda_{le} - 1}} + \frac{k \left(\frac{t}{c}\right)^2 \cos^3 \Lambda_{le}}{\sqrt{M^2 \cos^2 \Lambda_{le} - 1}} + C_{D_0} \quad (12.19)$$

where the first term is the drag coefficient due to lift, the second term is the wave drag coefficient and the third term is the zero lift drag coefficient. Here, in the interests of simplicity, the wave drag is shown to be dependent on the aerofoil section thickness to chord ratio  $t/c$  only, which implies that the section is symmetrical. When the section has camber the wave drag includes a second term which is dependent on the square of the local angle of attack with respect to the mean camber line. The camber term is not included in equation (12.19) since many practical supersonic aerofoils are symmetric or near symmetric. The constant  $k$  is also a function of the aerofoil section geometry and is  $2/3$  for bi-convex or typical modified double wedge sections, both of which are symmetric.

For a finite span wing with aspect ratio  $A$  the drag coefficient is given very approximately by

$$C_{D_\infty} = \left( \frac{4\alpha^2 \cos \Lambda_{le}}{\sqrt{M^2 \cos^2 \Lambda_{le} - 1}} + \frac{k \left(\frac{t}{c}\right)^2 \cos^3 \Lambda_{le}}{\sqrt{M^2 \cos^2 \Lambda_{le} - 1}} \right) \times \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2A\sqrt{M^2 \cos^2 \Lambda_{le} - 1}} \right) + C_{D_0} \quad (12.20)$$

It is assumed that the wing to which equation (12.20) relates is of constant thickness with span and that it has a rectangular planform, which is most unlikely for a real practical wing. Alternative and rather more complex expressions can be derived which are specifically dependent on wing geometry to a much greater extent. However, there is no guarantee that the estimated drag coefficient will be more accurate since it remains necessary to make significant assumptions about the aerodynamic operating conditions of the wing.

It is also difficult to obtain a simple and meaningful expression for pitching moment coefficient in supersonic flight conditions. However, it is relatively straightforward to show that for an infinite span flat plate wing the aerodynamic centre moves aft to the half chord point in supersonic flow. This results in an increase in nose down pitching moment together with an increase in the longitudinal static stability margins with corresponding changes in the longitudinal trim, stability and control characteristics of the aeroplane. An increase in thickness and a reduction in aspect ratio of the wing causes the aerodynamic centre to move forward from the half chord point with a corresponding reduction in stability margins. Theoretical prediction of these changes for anything other than a simple rectangular wing is not generally practical.

### 12.4.5 Summary

It is most important to realise that the aerodynamic models outlined in Sections 12.4.3 and 12.4.4 describe, approximately, the properties of the main lifting wing of the aeroplane only. Since the wing provides most of the lift, with perhaps smaller contributions from the fuselage and tailplane, or fore plane, then it is expected that equations (12.15) and (12.18) would give a reasonable indication of the lift curve slope of a complete aeroplane. However, this would not necessarily be expected of the drag estimates given by equations (12.16) and (12.20). The drag contributions from the fuselage and tailplane, or fore plane, may well be a large fraction of the total. Therefore, estimates obtained with equations (12.16) and (12.20) should be treated accordingly. It is suggested that the main usefulness of the material given in Sections 12.4.3 and 12.4.4 is to provide an appreciation of the main aerodynamic effects of compressibility as they relate to stability and control and to provide a means for checking the plausibility of estimates obtained by other means, especially computational means. Little mention has been made of the transonic flight regime for the simple reason that analytical models suitable for the estimation of aerodynamic stability and control properties at the present level of interest are just not available. Considerable research has been undertaken in recent years into transonic aerodynamics but the analysis remains complex and has found greatest use in computational methods for flow prediction. When estimates of the aerodynamic properties of a complete aeroplane configuration in compressible flow conditions are required it is preferable to refer to source material such as the ESDU data items.

Today increasing use is made of computational methods for the estimation of the aerodynamic properties of complete aeroplane configurations and at all flight conditions. Provided the geometry of the airframe can be described in sufficient detail then computational methods, such as the *vortex lattice method* or the *panel method*, can be used to obtain estimates of aerodynamic characteristics at acceptable levels of accuracy. By such means aerodynamic information can be obtained for conditions which would otherwise be impossible using analytical methods.

### Example 12.1

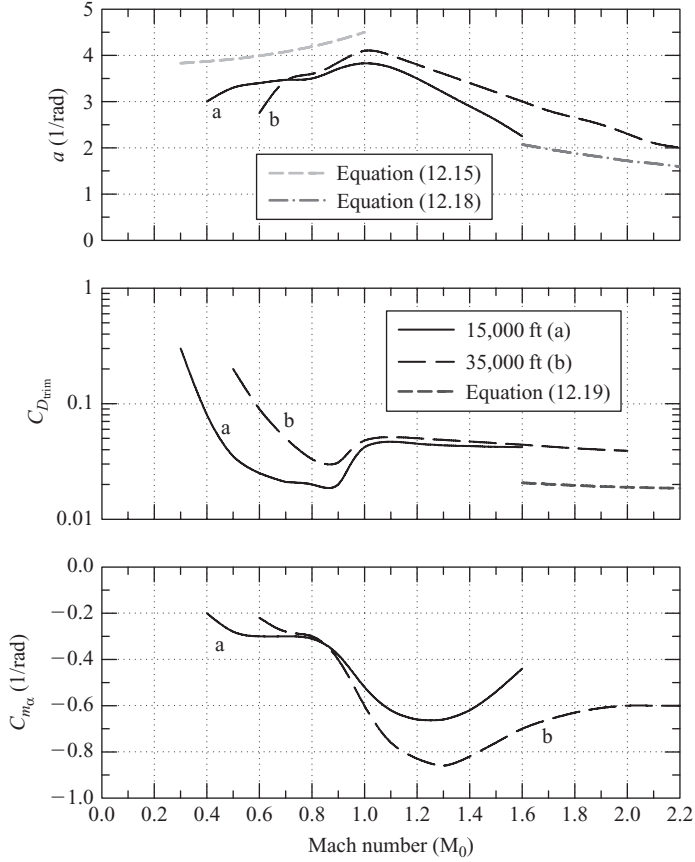
A substantial data base comprising aerodynamic, stability and control parameters for the McDonnell–Douglas F-4C Phantom aircraft is given in Heffley and Jewell (1972). Data are given for altitudes from sea level to 55,000 ft and for Mach numbers from 0.2 to 2.2 and the aircraft shows most of the classical effects of transition from subsonic to supersonic flight. Some limited additional information was obtained from Jane's (1969–1970). The main geometric parameters of the aircraft used in the example are,

Wing area (reference area)	$S = 530 \text{ ft}^2$
Wing span	$b = 38.67 \text{ ft}$
Mean geometric chord (reference chord)	$\bar{c} = 16.04 \text{ ft}$
Average thickness–chord ratio	$t/c = 0.051$
Aspect ratio	$A = 2.82$
Leading edge sweep angle	$\Lambda_{le} = 50^\circ$
Centre of gravity position	$h = 0.289$

The lift, drag and pitching moment characteristics are summarised in Fig. 12.3 as a function of Mach number for two altitudes, 15,000 ft and 35,000 ft, since the data for these two altitudes extends over the entire Mach number envelope.

Lifting properties are represented by the plot of lift curve slope  $a$  as a function of Mach number. The effect of compressibility becomes obvious at Mach 0.8 at the onset of the transonic flow regime. The lift curve slope reaches a maximum at Mach 1.0 and its gentle reduction thereafter is almost linear with Mach number. The Prandtl–Glauert rule approximation, as given by equation (12.15) is shown for comparison in the subsonic Mach number range. The approximation assumes a 2D lift curve slope calculated according to equation (2.12) and shows the correct trend but gives an overestimate of total lift curve slope. The linear supersonic approximation for lift curve slope, as given by equation (12.18) is also shown for completeness. In this case the 2D lift curve slope was calculated using equation (12.17). Again, the trend matches reasonably well but the model gives a significant underestimate. It is prudent to recall at this juncture that both models describe the lift curve slope of a finite wing only whereas, the F-4C data describes the entire airframe characteristic.

The drag properties are represented by the trim drag coefficient, plotted on a logarithmic scale, as a function of Mach number. The use of a logarithmic scale helps to emphasise the abrupt drag rise at Mach 1.0. In the subsonic Mach number range the drag coefficient reduces with increasing Mach number, the classical characteristic, which implies that it is dominated by the induced drag contribution as might be expected. However, in supersonic flight the drag coefficient remains almost constant, the contribution due to lift will be small as both  $C_L$  and  $\alpha$  are both small and the main contributions will be due to wave drag and skin friction. Shown on the same plot is the supersonic drag coefficient calculated according to equation (12.19) and clearly, the match is poor. The trend is correct but the magnitude is about half the actual airframe value. Once again, it should be remembered that equation (12.19) relates to a finite wing and not to a complete airframe. It is reasonably easy to appreciate that the fuselage and tail surfaces will make a significant contribution to the overall drag of the aeroplane. Careful scrutiny of the aerodynamic data for 35,000 ft



**Figure 12.3** Lift, drag and pitching moment variation with Mach number.

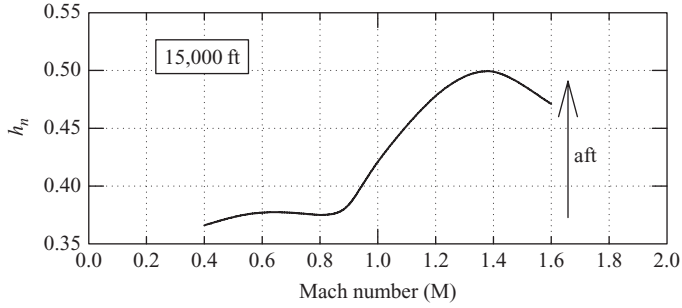
enabled the expression for the subsonic drag coefficient, equation (12.16), to be estimated as,

$$C_D = C_{D_0} + kC_L^2 = 0.017 + 0.216C_L^2 \quad (12.21)$$

This expression gave a good fit to the actual data and the value of  $C_{D_0}$  was used in the evaluation of the supersonic drag coefficient, equation (12.19).

The final plot in Fig. 12.3 represents the effect of Mach number on pitching moment and shows the variation in the slope, denoted  $C_{m_\alpha}$ , of the  $C_m$ - $\alpha$  curve as a function of Mach number. Since  $C_{m_\alpha}$  is proportional to the controls fixed static margin it becomes more negative as the aerodynamic centre moves aft. This is clearly seen in the plot and the increase in stability margin commences at a Mach number of 0.8. Now, the relationship between controls fixed stability margin, neutral point and centre of gravity locations is given by equation (3.17),

$$K_n = h_n - h \quad (12.22)$$



**Figure 12.4** Variation of controls fixed neutral point position with Mach number.

With reference to Appendix 8 the expression for the derivative  $M_w$  is given by,

$$M_w = \frac{\partial C_m}{\partial \alpha} = -aK_n \quad (12.23)$$

Thus from equations (12.22) and (12.23) an expression for the location of the controls fixed neutral point is easily calculated,

$$h_n = h - \frac{1}{a} \frac{\partial C_m}{\partial \alpha} \equiv h - \frac{1}{a} C_{m_\alpha} \quad (12.24)$$

Using equation (12.24) with the F-4C data for an altitude of 15,000 ft the variation in neutral point position as a function of Mach number was calculated and the result is shown in Fig. 12.4.

Since the neutral point corresponds with the centre of pressure for the whole aeroplane its aft shift with Mach number agrees well with the predictions given by “simple” aerofoil theory. Over the transonic Mach number range the neutral point moves back to the midpoint of the mean aerodynamic chord and then moves forward a little at higher Mach numbers. It is interesting to note that at subsonic Mach numbers the neutral point remains more-or-less stationary at around  $0.37\bar{c}$  which is quite typical for many aeroplanes.

## 12.5 LIMITATIONS OF AERODYNAMIC MODELLING

Simple expressions for the aerodynamic stability and control derivatives may be developed from first principles based on the analysis of the aerodynamic conditions following an upset from equilibrium. The cause of the upset may be external, as the result of a gust for example, or internal as the result of a pilot control action. It is important to appreciate that in either event the disturbance is of short duration and that the controls remain fixed at their initial settings for the duration of the response. As explained in Section 12.2, the derivatives are then evaluated by linearizing the aerodynamics about the nominal operating, or trim, condition. The aerodynamic models thus derived are limited in their application to small perturbation motion about the trim condition only. The simplest possible analytical models for the aerodynamic

stability and control derivatives are developed, subject to the limitations outlined in this chapter, and described in Chapter 13.

## REFERENCES

- AGARD. 1979: *Parameter Identification*. Lecture Series, AGARD-LS-104. Advisory Group for Aerospace Research & Development, 7 Rue Ancelle 92200, Neuilly-sur-Seine, France.
- Anon. 1960: *USAF Stability and Control Handbook (DATCOM)*. McDonnell-Douglas Corp.
- Babister, A.W. 1961: *Aircraft Stability and Control*. Pergamon Press, Oxford.
- Bertin, J.J. and Smith, M.L. 1989: *Aerodynamics for Engineers*, Second Edition. Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey.
- ESDU *Aerodynamics Series*. 2006. Engineering Sciences Data, ESDU International Ltd., 27 Corsham Street, London. [www.esdu.com](http://www.esdu.com).
- Heffley, R.K. and Jewell, W.F. 1972: *Aircraft Handling Qualities Data*. NASA Contractor Report, NASA CR-2144, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington D.C. 20546.
- Hilton, W.F. 1952: *High Speed Aerodynamics*. Longmans, Green and Co., London
- Houghton, E.L. and Carpenter, P.W. 1993: *Aerodynamics for Engineering Students*, Fourth Edition. Edward Arnold, London.
- Klein, V. and Morelli, E.A. 2006: *Aircraft System Identification – Theory and Practice*. AIAA Education Series, American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics Inc., 1801 Alexander Bell Drive, Reston, VA.
- Liepmann, H.W. and Roshko, A. 1957: *Elements of Gas Dynamics*. John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York.
- Mitchell, C.G.B. 1973: *A Computer Programme to Predict the Stability and Control Characteristics of Subsonic Aircraft*. Royal Aircraft Establishment Technical Report, RAE TR-73079, Royal Aircraft Establishment, Farnborough.
- Ross, A.J. and Bengier, N.J. 1975: *Modifications to a Computer Program for Predicting the Stability and Control Characteristics of Subsonic Aircraft (RAE Technical Report TR-73079)*. Royal Aircraft Establishment Technical Memorandum, RAE Tech Memo FS 40. Royal Aircraft Establishment, Farnborough.
- Ross, A.J. and Foster, G.W. 1976: *FORTTRAN Programs for the Determination of Aerodynamic Derivatives from Transient Longitudinal or Lateral Responses of Aircraft*. Aeronautical Research Council, Current Papers, ARC-CP 1344, Her Majesty's Stationery Office, London.
- Smetana, F.O. 1984: *Computer Assisted Analysis of Aircraft Performance Stability and Control*. McGraw Hill Book Co., New York.
- Taylor, J.W.R. (Ed.): *Jane's All The World's Aircraft 1969–1970*. Jane's Yearbooks, Haymarket Publishing, London.

---

## Chapter 13

# Aerodynamic Stability and Control Derivatives

### 13.1 INTRODUCTION

As is usual in aerodynamic analysis, for the purpose of obtaining simple expressions for the stability and control derivatives a wind axis reference system is assumed throughout. The choice of wind axes is convenient since it reduces the derivatives to their simplest possible description by retaining only the essential contributions and hence, maximises the *visibility* of the physical phenomena involved. It is therefore very important to remember that if the derivatives thus obtained are required for use in equations of motion referred to an alternative axis system then the appropriate axis transformation must be applied to the derivatives. Some useful transformations are given in Appendices 9 and 10. In all cases analytical expressions are obtained for the derivatives assuming subsonic flight conditions, it is then relatively straight forward to develop the expressions further to allow for the effects of Mach number as suggested in Section 12.4.

It has already been established that simple analytical expressions for the derivatives rarely give accurate estimates. Their usefulness is significantly more important as a means for explaining their physical origins, thereby providing the essential link between aircraft dynamics and airframe aerodynamics. The analytical procedure for obtaining simple derivative expressions has been well established for very many years and the approach commonly encountered in the UK today is comprehensively described by Babister (1961), and in less detail in Babister (1980). The following paragraphs owe much to that work since it is unlikely that the treatment can be bettered. For the calculation of more reliable estimates of derivative values reference to the Engineering Sciences Data Unit (ESDU) data items is advised. The reader requiring a more detailed aerodynamic analysis of stability and control derivatives will find much useful material in Hancock (1995).

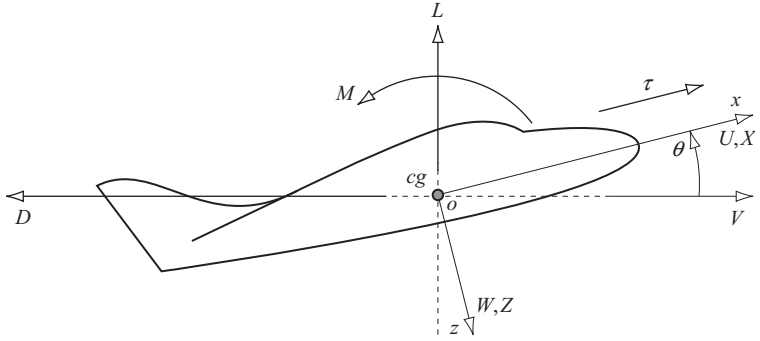
### 13.2 LONGITUDINAL AERODYNAMIC STABILITY DERIVATIVES

For convenience, a summary of the derivative expressions derived in this paragraph is included in Table A8.1.

#### 13.2.1 Preliminary considerations

A number of expressions are required repeatedly in the derivative analysis so, it is convenient to assemble these expressions prior to embarking on the analysis. A





**Figure 13.1** *Perturbed wind axes.*

longitudinal small perturbation is shown in Fig. 13.1 in which the aircraft axes are wind axes and the initial condition assumes steady symmetric level flight at velocity  $V_0$ . Although not strictly an aerodynamic force the thrust  $\tau$  is shown since it may behave like an aerodynamic variable in a perturbation. As indicated the thrust force is tied to the aircraft  $x$  axis and moves with it.

In the perturbation the total velocity becomes  $V$  with components  $U$  and  $W$  along the  $ox$  and  $oz$  axes respectively. Whence

$$V^2 = U^2 + W^2 \quad (13.1)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} U &= U_e + u = V \cos \theta \\ W &= W_e + w = V \sin \theta \end{aligned} \quad (13.2)$$

Since wind axes are assumed the pitch attitude perturbation  $\theta$  and the incidence perturbation  $\alpha$  are the same and are given by

$$\tan \theta \equiv \tan \alpha = \frac{W}{U} \quad (13.3)$$

Differentiate equation (13.1) with respect to  $U$  and  $W$  in turn to obtain the following partial derivatives

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial U} = \frac{U}{V} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial V}{\partial W} = \frac{W}{V} \quad (13.4)$$

and substitute for  $U$  and  $W$  from equations (13.2) to obtain

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial U} = \cos \theta \cong 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial V}{\partial W} = \sin \theta \cong 0 \quad (13.5)$$

since, by definition,  $\theta$  is a small angle.

In a similar way, differentiate equation (13.3) with respect to  $U$  and  $W$  in turn and substitute for  $U$  and  $W$  from equations (13.2) to obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial \theta}{\partial U} &\equiv \frac{\partial \alpha}{\partial U} = \frac{-\sin \theta}{V} \cong 0 \\ \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial W} &\equiv \frac{\partial \alpha}{\partial W} = \frac{\cos \theta}{V} \cong \frac{1}{V}\end{aligned}\quad (13.6)$$

since again, by definition,  $\theta$  is a small angle.

From equation (12.10)

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial V} = \frac{1}{a} \frac{\partial}{\partial M} \quad (13.7)$$

which is useful for transforming from a velocity dependency to a Mach number dependency and where, here,  $a$  is the local speed of sound.

### 13.2.2 Aerodynamic force and moment components

With reference to Fig. 13.1 the lift and drag forces may be resolved into the disturbed aircraft axes to give the following components of aerodynamic force. The perturbed axial force is

$$X = L \sin \theta - D \cos \theta + \tau = \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S (C_L \sin \theta - C_D \cos \theta) + \tau \quad (13.8)$$

and the perturbed normal force is

$$Z = -L \cos \theta - D \sin \theta = -\frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S (C_L \cos \theta + C_D \sin \theta) \quad (13.9)$$

In the initial steady trim condition, by definition the pitching moment  $M$  is zero. However, in the perturbation the transient pitching moment is non-zero and is given by

$$M = \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S \bar{c} C_m \quad (13.10)$$

Note that considerable care is needed in order not to confuse pitching moment  $M$  and Mach number  $M$ .

### 13.2.3 Force derivatives due to velocity perturbations

$$\dot{X}_u = \frac{\partial X}{\partial U} \quad \text{Axial force due to axial velocity}$$

Differentiating equation (13.8) to obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial X}{\partial U} &= \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S \left( \frac{\partial C_L}{\partial U} \sin \theta + C_L \cos \theta \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial U} - \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial U} \cos \theta + C_D \sin \theta \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial U} \right) \\ &\quad + \rho V S \frac{\partial V}{\partial U} (C_L \sin \theta - C_D \cos \theta) + \frac{\partial \tau}{\partial U}\end{aligned}\quad (13.11)$$

Substitute for  $\partial V/\partial U$  from equation (13.5) and for  $\partial\theta/\partial U$  from equation (13.6). As  $\theta$  is a small angle, in the limit,  $\cos\theta \cong 1$  and  $\sin\theta \cong 0$  and equation (13.11) simplifies to

$$\frac{\partial X}{\partial U} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 S \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial U} - \rho V S C_D + \frac{\partial \tau}{\partial U} \quad (13.12)$$

Now

$$\frac{\partial C_D}{\partial U} = \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial V} \frac{\partial V}{\partial U} = \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial V} \quad (13.13)$$

and similarly

$$\frac{\partial \tau}{\partial U} = \frac{\partial \tau}{\partial V} \quad (13.14)$$

In the limit the total perturbation velocity tends to the equilibrium value and  $V \cong V_0$ . Whence equation (13.12) may be written

$$\dot{X}_u = \frac{\partial X}{\partial U} = -\rho V_0 S C_D - \frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial V} + \frac{\partial \tau}{\partial V} \quad (13.15)$$

With reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$X_u = \frac{\dot{X}_u}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S} = -2C_D - V_0 \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial V} + \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S} \frac{\partial \tau}{\partial V} \quad (13.16)$$

Alternatively, using equation (13.7), the dimensionless derivative may be expressed in terms of Mach number rather than velocity

$$X_u = -2C_D - M_0 \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial M} + \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}\rho M_0 S a^2} \frac{\partial \tau}{\partial M} \quad (13.17)$$

Expressions for the remaining force-velocity derivatives are obtained in a similar way as follows:

$$\dot{Z}_u = \frac{\partial Z}{\partial U} \quad \text{Normal force due to axial velocity}$$

Thus, by differentiating equation (13.9) with respect to  $U$  it is easily shown that

$$\dot{Z}_u = \frac{\partial Z}{\partial U} = -\rho V S C_L - \frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 S \frac{\partial C_L}{\partial U} \quad (13.18)$$

Now, in the manner of equation (13.13)

$$\frac{\partial C_L}{\partial U} = \frac{\partial C_L}{\partial V} \frac{\partial V}{\partial U} = \frac{\partial C_L}{\partial V} \quad (13.19)$$

Thus in the limit  $V \cong V_0$  and equation (13.18) may be written

$$\dot{Z}_u = -\rho V_0 S C_L - \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 S \frac{\partial C_L}{\partial V} \quad (13.20)$$

With reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$Z_u = \frac{\dot{Z}_u}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S} = -2C_L - V_0 \frac{\partial C_L}{\partial V} \quad (13.21)$$

Or, alternatively, expressed in terms of Mach number rather than velocity

$$Z_u = -2C_L - M_0 \frac{\partial C_L}{\partial M} \quad (13.22)$$

$$\dot{X}_w = \frac{\partial X}{\partial W} \quad \text{Axial force due to normal velocity}$$

As before, it may be shown that by differentiating equation (13.8) with respect to  $W$

$$\dot{X}_w = \frac{\partial X}{\partial W} = \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S \left( \frac{1}{V} C_L - \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial W} \right) + \frac{\partial \tau}{\partial W} \quad (13.23)$$

Now, with reference to equations (13.6) and noting that  $\alpha = \theta$

$$\frac{\partial C_D}{\partial W} = \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial \theta} \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial W} \equiv \frac{1}{V} \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial \alpha} \quad (13.24)$$

Similarly, it may be shown that

$$\frac{\partial \tau}{\partial W} \equiv \frac{1}{V} \frac{\partial \tau}{\partial \alpha} = 0 \quad (13.25)$$

since it is assumed that thrust variation resulting from small incidence perturbations is negligible. Thus, in the limit equation (13.23) may be written

$$\dot{X}_w = \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S \left( C_L - \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial \alpha} \right) \quad (13.26)$$

With reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$X_w = \frac{\dot{X}_w}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S} = \left( C_L - \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial \alpha} \right) \quad (13.27)$$

$$\dot{Z}_w = \frac{\partial Z}{\partial W} \quad \text{Normal force due to normal velocity}$$

As before, by differentiating equation (13.9) with respect to  $W$  and with reference to equation (13.24) it may be shown that

$$\dot{Z}_w = \frac{\partial Z}{\partial W} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 S \left( \frac{\partial C_L}{\partial W} + \frac{1}{V} C_D \right) = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V S \left( \frac{\partial C_L}{\partial \alpha} + C_D \right) \quad (13.28)$$

In the limit equation (13.28) may be rewritten

$$\dot{Z}_w = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S \left( \frac{\partial C_L}{\partial \alpha} + C_D \right) \quad (13.29)$$

With reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$Z_w = \frac{\dot{Z}_w}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S} = - \left( \frac{\partial C_L}{\partial \alpha} + C_D \right) \quad (13.30)$$

### 13.2.4 Moment derivatives due to velocity perturbations

$$\dot{M}_u = \frac{\partial M}{\partial U} \quad \text{Pitching moment due to axial velocity}$$

In a perturbation the pitching moment becomes non-zero and is given by equation (13.10). Differentiating equation (13.10) with respect to  $U$

$$\frac{\partial M}{\partial U} = \frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 S \bar{c} \frac{\partial C_m}{\partial U} + \rho V S \bar{c} C_m \quad (13.31)$$

and with reference to equations (13.5)

$$\frac{\partial C_m}{\partial U} = \frac{\partial C_m}{\partial V} \frac{\partial V}{\partial U} = \frac{\partial C_m}{\partial V} \quad (13.32)$$

Now, in the limit, as the perturbation tends to zero so the pitching moment coefficient  $C_m$  in the second term in equation (13.31) tends to the steady equilibrium value which is, of course, zero. Therefore, in the limit equation (13.31) simplifies to

$$\dot{M}_u = \frac{\partial M}{\partial U} = \frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S \bar{c} \frac{\partial C_m}{\partial V} \quad (13.33)$$

With reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$M_u = \frac{\dot{M}_u}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S \bar{c}} = V_0 \frac{\partial C_m}{\partial V} \quad (13.34)$$

Alternatively, using equation (13.7), the dimensionless derivative may be expressed in terms of Mach number rather than velocity

$$M_u = M_0 \frac{\partial C_m}{\partial M} \quad (13.35)$$

In subsonic flight the pitching moment coefficient  $C_m$  is very nearly independent of velocity, or Mach number, whence, the derivative  $M_u$  is often assumed to be negligibly small for those flight conditions.

$$\overset{\circ}{M}_w = \frac{\partial M}{\partial W} \quad \text{Pitching moment due to normal velocity}$$

As previously, differentiating equation (13.10) with respect to  $W$  and with reference to equation (13.24) it may be shown that

$$\overset{\circ}{M}_w = \frac{\partial M}{\partial W} = \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S \bar{c} \frac{\partial C_m}{\partial W} = \frac{1}{2} \rho V S \bar{c} \frac{\partial C_m}{\partial \alpha} \quad (13.36)$$

In the limit  $V \cong V_0$  and equation (13.36) may be written

$$\overset{\circ}{M}_w = \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S \bar{c} \frac{\partial C_m}{\partial \alpha} \quad (13.37)$$

and with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$M_w = \frac{\overset{\circ}{M}_w}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S \bar{c}} = \frac{\partial C_m}{\partial \alpha} \quad (13.38)$$

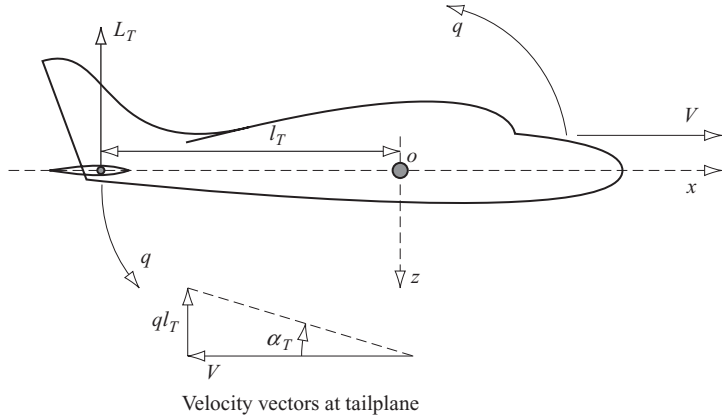
Further, assuming that linear aerodynamic conditions apply, such as are typical of subsonic flight then with reference to equation (3.17),

$$M_w = \frac{dC_m}{d\alpha} = \frac{dC_L}{d\alpha} \frac{dC_m}{dC_L} = -aK_n \quad (13.39)$$

where, here,  $a$  denotes the lift curve slope and  $K_n$  is the controls fixed static margin. As shown in Chapter 6 the derivative  $M_w$  is a measure of the *pitch stiffness* of the aeroplane and plays an important part in the determination of the longitudinal short term dynamics.

### 13.2.5 Derivatives due to a pitch velocity perturbation

It is usually assumed that the longitudinal aerodynamic properties of an aeroplane are dominated by those of the wing and tailplane. However, when the disturbance is a small perturbation in pitch rate  $q$  it is assumed that the dominating aerodynamic properties are those of the tailplane. Thus, in the first instance the resulting aerodynamic changes contributing to the stability derivatives are assumed to arise entirely from tailplane effects. By so doing it is acknowledged that the wing contribution may not necessarily be small and that its omission will reduce the accuracy of the derivative estimates. However, experience has shown that the error incurred by adopting this assumption is usually acceptably small.



**Figure 13.2** Tailplane incidence due to pitch rate.

An aeroplane pitching through its equilibrium attitude with pitch rate perturbation  $q$  is shown in Fig. 13.2. Since the effect of the pitch rate is to cause the tailplane to experience a normal velocity component due to rotation about the  $cg$  the resultant effect is a change in the local incidence  $\alpha_T$  of the tailplane. The total perturbation velocity is  $V$  and the tailplane incidence perturbation is given by

$$\alpha_T \cong \tan \alpha_T = \frac{ql_T}{V} \quad (13.40)$$

since, by definition  $\alpha_T$  is a small angle. It is important to appreciate that  $\alpha_T$  is the change, or increment in tailplane incidence relative to its equilibrium value and, like the pitch rate perturbation, is transient in nature. From equation (13.40) it follows that

$$\frac{\partial \alpha_T}{\partial q} = \frac{l_T}{V} \quad (13.41)$$

$$\dot{X}_q = \frac{\partial X}{\partial q} \quad \text{Axial force due to pitch rate}$$

In this instance, for the reasons given above, it is assumed that the axial force perturbation arises from the tailplane drag perturbation only thus

$$X = -D_T = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 S_T C_{DT} \quad (13.42)$$

Assuming  $V$  to be independent of pitch rate  $q$ , differentiate equation (13.42) with respect to the perturbation variable  $q$

$$\frac{\partial X}{\partial q} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 S_T \frac{\partial C_{DT}}{\partial q} \quad (13.43)$$

Now, with reference to equation (13.41) write

$$\frac{\partial C_{DT}}{\partial q} = \frac{\partial C_{DT}}{\partial \alpha_T} \frac{\partial \alpha_T}{\partial q} = \frac{l_T}{V} \frac{\partial C_{DT}}{\partial \alpha_T} \quad (13.44)$$

Substitute equation (13.44) into equation (13.43) then, in the limit  $V \cong V_0$  and equation (13.43) may be written

$$\dot{X}_q = \frac{\partial X}{\partial q} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S_T l_T \frac{\partial C_{DT}}{\partial \alpha_T} \quad (13.45)$$

and with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$X_q = \frac{\dot{X}_q}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S \bar{c}} = -\bar{V}_T \frac{\partial C_{DT}}{\partial \alpha_T} \quad (13.46)$$

where the *tail volume ratio* is given by

$$\bar{V}_T = \frac{S_T l_T}{S \bar{c}} \quad (13.47)$$

Since the rate of change of tailplane drag with incidence is usually small it is customary to assume that the derivative  $X_q$  is insignificantly small and it is frequently ignored in aircraft stability and control analysis.

$$\dot{Z}_q = \frac{\partial Z}{\partial q} \quad \text{Normal force due to pitch rate}$$

Similarly, it is assumed that in a pitch rate perturbation the change in normal force arises from tailplane lift only thus

$$Z = -L_T = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 S_T C_{LT} \quad (13.48)$$

Differentiate equation (13.48) with respect to  $q$  and with reference to equation (13.44) then

$$\frac{\partial Z}{\partial q} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V S_T l_T \frac{\partial C_{LT}}{\partial \alpha_T} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V S_T l_T a_1 \quad (13.49)$$

where, again, it is assumed that  $V$  is independent of pitch rate  $q$  and that, additionally, the tailplane lift coefficient is a function of incidence only with lift curve slope denoted  $a_1$ . Whence, in the limit  $V \cong V_0$  and equation (13.49) may be written

$$\dot{Z}_q = \frac{\partial Z}{\partial q} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S_T l_T a_1 \quad (13.50)$$

and with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$Z_q = \frac{\dot{Z}_q}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S \bar{c}} = -\bar{V}_T a_1 \quad (13.51)$$



$$\dot{M}_q = \frac{\partial M}{\partial q} \quad \text{Pitching moment due to pitch rate}$$

Again, in a pitch rate perturbation  $q$ , the pitching moment is assumed to arise entirely from the moment of the tailplane normal force perturbation, given by equation (13.48), about the cg. Thus, in the perturbation

$$M = Zl_T = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 S_T l_T C_{L_T} \quad (13.52)$$

Differentiate equation (13.52) with respect to  $q$  to obtain the relationship

$$\dot{M}_q = \frac{\partial M}{\partial q} = l_T \frac{\partial Z}{\partial q} = l_T \dot{Z}_q \quad (13.53)$$

It therefore follows that

$$\dot{M}_q = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S_T l_T^2 a_1 \quad (13.54)$$

and with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$M_q = \frac{\dot{M}_q}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S \bar{c}^2} = -\bar{V}_T \frac{l_T}{\bar{c}} a_1 \equiv \frac{l_T}{\bar{c}} Z_q \quad (13.55)$$

It is shown in Chapter 6 that  $M_q$  is the all important pitch damping derivative. Although this simple model illustrates the importance of the tailplane in determining the pitch damping characteristics of the aeroplane, wing and body contributions may also be significant. Equation (13.55) should therefore be regarded as the first estimate rather than the definitive estimate of the derivative. However, it is often good enough for preliminary analysis of stability and control.

### 13.2.6 Derivatives due to acceleration perturbations

The derivatives due to the acceleration perturbations  $\dot{u}$ ,  $\dot{w}$  and  $\dot{q}$  are not commonly encountered in the longitudinal equations of motion since their numerical values are usually insignificantly small. Their meaning is perhaps easier to appreciate when the longitudinal equations of motion are written in matrix form, equation (4.65), to include all of the acceleration derivatives. To recap, the state equation is given by

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}'\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{B}'\mathbf{u} \quad (13.56)$$

with state vector,  $\mathbf{x}^T = [u \ w \ q \ \theta]$  and input vector  $\mathbf{u}^T = [\eta \ \tau]$ . The state matrix  $\mathbf{A}'$  and input matrix  $\mathbf{B}'$  remain unchanged whereas the mass matrix  $\mathbf{M}$  is modified to include all the additional acceleration derivatives

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} (m - \dot{X}_{\dot{u}}) & -\dot{X}_{\dot{w}} & -\dot{X}_{\dot{q}} & 0 \\ -\dot{Z}_{\dot{u}} & (m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}}) & -\dot{Z}_{\dot{q}} & 0 \\ -\dot{M}_{\dot{u}} & -\dot{M}_{\dot{w}} & (I_y - \dot{M}_{\dot{q}}) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.57)$$

Since all of the acceleration derivatives appear in the mass matrix alongside the normal mass and inertia terms, their effect is to change (increase) the apparent mass and inertia properties of the aircraft. For this reason they are sometimes referred to as *apparent* or *virtual* mass and inertia terms. Whenever the aeroplane moves some of the surrounding displaced air mass is entrained and moves with the aircraft, and it is the mass and inertia of this air which modifies the apparent mass and inertia of the aeroplane. The acceleration derivatives quantify this effect. For most aircraft, since the mass of the displaced air is a small fraction of the mass of the aircraft, the acceleration derivatives are insignificantly small. An exception to this is the airship for which the apparent mass and inertia can be as much as 50% larger than the actual physical value. Other vehicles in which these effects may be non-negligible include balloons, parachutes and underwater vehicles which operate in a much denser fluid medium.

For many modern high performance aeroplanes the derivatives due to a rate of change of normal velocity perturbation  $\dot{w}$  ( $\dot{\alpha}$ ) may not be negligible. A rate of change of normal velocity perturbation causes a transient disturbance in the downwash field behind the wing which passes over the tailplane a short time later. The disturbance to the moving air mass in the vicinity of the wing is, in itself, insignificant for the reason given above. However, since the tailplane sees this as a transient in incidence a short time later it responds accordingly and the effect on the airframe is not necessarily insignificant. This particular characteristic is known as the *downwash lag* effect.

An expression for the total incidence of the tailplane is given by equation (3.9) which, for the present application may be written

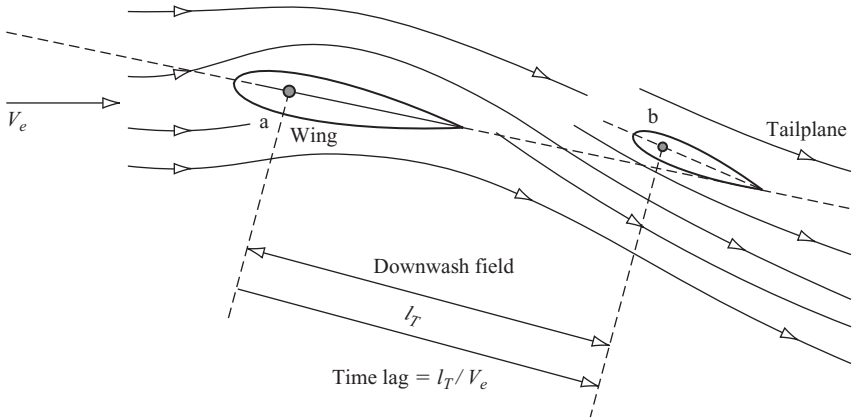
$$\alpha_T(t) = \alpha_e + \eta_T - \varepsilon(t) \quad (13.58)$$

where  $\alpha_e$  is the steady equilibrium incidence of the wing,  $\eta_T$  is the tailplane setting angle and  $\varepsilon(t)$  is the downwash flow angle at the tailplane. Thus, any change in downwash angle at the tailplane in otherwise steady conditions gives rise to a change in tailplane incidence of equal magnitude and opposite sign. It is important to appreciate that the perturbation at the tailplane is observed at time  $t$  and is due to an event on the wing which took place some time earlier. For this reason the flow conditions on the wing at time  $t$  are assumed to have recovered their steady equilibrium state.

With reference to Fig. 13.3, the point a in the flow field around the wing arrives at point b in the flow field around the tailplane at a time  $l_T/V_0$  later, referred to as the *downwash lag* and where, for convenience, the mean distance travelled is assumed to be equal to the tail moment arm  $l_T$ . Thus a perturbation in  $\dot{w}$  ( $\dot{\alpha}$ ) causes a perturbation in the wing downwash field which arrives at the tailplane after the downwash lag time interval. Therefore there is a short delay between cause and effect.

The downwash angle  $\varepsilon(t)$  at the tailplane at time  $t$  is therefore a function of the incidence of the wing at time  $t = t - l_T/V_0$  and may be expressed

$$\begin{aligned} \varepsilon(t) &= \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \alpha(t) = \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \frac{d\alpha}{dt} \left( t - \frac{l_T}{V_0} \right) \\ &= \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \alpha_e - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \frac{\dot{w} l_T}{V_0^2} = \varepsilon_e - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \frac{\dot{w} l_T}{V_0^2} \end{aligned} \quad (13.59)$$



**Figure 13.3** A typical downwash field.

since

$$\frac{d\alpha}{dt}t = \alpha(t) \equiv \alpha_e \quad (13.60)$$

and

$$\alpha \cong \tan \alpha = \frac{w}{V_0} \quad (13.61)$$

whence

$$\frac{d\alpha}{dt} = \frac{\dot{w}}{V_0} \quad (13.62)$$

Thus, with reference to equations (13.58) and (13.59) the total tailplane incidence during a downwash perturbation may be written

$$\alpha_{T_e} + \alpha_T(t) = \alpha_e + \eta_T - \varepsilon_e + \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \frac{\dot{w}l_T}{V_0^2} \quad (13.63)$$

The perturbation in tailplane incidence due to the downwash lag effect is therefore given by

$$\alpha_T(t) = \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \frac{\dot{w}l_T}{V_0^2} \quad (13.64)$$

$$\overset{\circ}{X}_{\dot{w}} = \frac{\partial X}{\partial \dot{w}} \quad \text{Axial force due to rate of change of normal velocity}$$

In this instance, it is assumed that the axial force perturbation arises from the perturbation in tailplane drag due solely to the perturbation in incidence, whence

$$X = -D_T = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 S_T C_{D_T} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 S_T \frac{\partial C_{D_T}}{\partial \alpha_T} \alpha_T \quad (13.65)$$

Now, by definition

$$X = \dot{X}_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} \quad (13.66)$$

and in the limit  $V \cong V_0$ . Thus substitute equation (13.64) into (13.65) and apply equation (13.66) to obtain

$$\dot{X}_{\dot{w}} = -\frac{1}{2} \rho S_T l_T \frac{\partial C_{D_T}}{\partial \alpha_T} \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \quad (13.67)$$

and with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$X_{\dot{w}} = \frac{\dot{X}_{\dot{w}}}{\frac{1}{2} \rho S \bar{c}} = -\bar{V}_T \frac{\partial C_{D_T}}{\partial \alpha_T} \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \equiv X_q \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \quad (13.68)$$

Since  $X_q$  is usually very small and  $d\varepsilon/d\alpha < 1$  the derivative  $X_{\dot{w}}$  is insignificantly small and is usually omitted from the equations of motion.

$$\dot{Z}_{\dot{w}} = \frac{\partial Z}{\partial \dot{w}} \quad \text{Normal force due to rate of change of normal velocity}$$

Again, it is assumed that the normal force perturbation arises from the perturbation in tailplane lift due solely to the perturbation in incidence, whence,

$$Z = -L_T = -\frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S_T C_{L_T} = -\frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S_T \frac{\partial C_{L_T}}{\partial \alpha_T} \alpha_T \quad (13.69)$$

Again, by definition

$$Z = \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} \quad (13.70)$$

and in the limit  $V \cong V_0$ . Thus substitute equation (13.64) into (13.69) and apply equation (13.70) to obtain

$$\dot{Z}_{\dot{w}} = -\frac{1}{2} \rho S_T l_T a_1 \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \quad (13.71)$$

As in Section 13.2.4, it is assumed that the tailplane lift coefficient is a function of incidence only with lift curve slope denoted  $a_1$ . With reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$Z_{\dot{w}} = \frac{\dot{Z}_{\dot{w}}}{\frac{1}{2} \rho S \bar{c}} = -\bar{V}_T a_1 \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \equiv Z_q \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \quad (13.72)$$

Care should be exercised since  $Z_{\dot{w}}$  is not always insignificant.

$$\overset{\circ}{M}_{\dot{w}} = \frac{\partial M}{\partial \dot{w}} \quad \text{Pitching moment due to rate of change of normal velocity}$$

In this instance the pitching moment is assumed to arise entirely from the moment of the tailplane normal force perturbation about the *cg* resulting from the perturbation in incidence, given by equation (13.64). Thus, in the perturbation

$$M = Zl_T = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 S_T l_T \frac{\partial C_{L_T}}{\partial \alpha_T} \alpha_T \quad (13.73)$$

Again, by definition

$$M = \overset{\circ}{M}_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} \quad (13.74)$$

and in the limit  $V \cong V_0$ . Thus substitute equation (13.64) into (13.73) and apply equation (13.74) to obtain

$$\overset{\circ}{M}_{\dot{w}} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho S_T l_T^2 a_1 \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \quad (13.75)$$

and with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$M_{\dot{w}} = \frac{\overset{\circ}{M}_{\dot{w}}}{\frac{1}{2}\rho S \bar{c}^2} = -\bar{V}_T \frac{l_T}{\bar{c}} a_1 \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \equiv M_q \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \quad (13.76)$$

The derivative  $M_{\dot{w}}$  is nearly always significant and makes an important contribution to the damping of the short period pitching oscillation (see equation (6.21)).

### 13.3 LATERAL-DIRECTIONAL AERODYNAMIC STABILITY DERIVATIVES

For convenience, a summary of the derivative expressions derived in this paragraph is also included in Table A8.2.

#### 13.3.1 Preliminary considerations

Unlike the longitudinal aerodynamic stability derivatives the lateral-directional derivatives are much more difficult to estimate with any degree of confidence. The problem arises from the mutual aerodynamic interference between the lifting surfaces, fuselage, power plant, undercarriage, etc. in asymmetric flow conditions, which makes it difficult to identify the most significant contributions to a particular derivative with any degree of certainty. When a derivative cannot be estimated by the simplest analysis of the often complex aerodynamics then, the use of *strip theory* is resorted to which is a method of analysis which also tends to over-simplify the aerodynamic conditions in order that progress can be made. Either way, analytical estimates of the lateral-directional derivatives are often of poor accuracy and, for more reliable estimates, use of the ESDU data items is preferable. However, the simple theories used for the purpose do give a useful insight into the physical phenomena involved and, consequently, are a considerable asset to the proper understanding of aeroplane dynamics.

### 13.3.2 Derivatives due to sideslip

As seen by the pilot (and consistent with the notation), a positive sideslip is to the right (starboard) and is defined by the small perturbation lateral velocity transient denoted  $v$ . The nature of a free positive sideslip disturbance is such that the right wing tends to drop and the nose tends to swing to the left of the incident *wind vector* as the aeroplane slips to the right. The reaction to the disturbance is stabilising if the aerodynamic forces and moments produced in response to the sideslip velocity tend to restore the aeroplane to a wings level equilibrium state. The motions involved are discussed in greater detail in the context of lateral static stability in Section 3.4, in the context of directional static stability in Section 3.5 and in the context of dynamic stability in Section 7.2.

$$\overset{\circ}{Y}_v = \frac{\partial Y}{\partial V} \quad \text{Side force due to sideslip}$$

Side force due to sideslip arises mainly from the fuselage, the fin, the wing, especially a wing with dihedral, and engine nacelles in aircraft with external engines. The derivative is notoriously difficult to estimate with any degree of confidence and simple analysis assumes the dominant contributions arise from the fuselage and fin only.

With reference to Fig. 13.4, the fuselage creates a side force  $Y_B$  in a sideslip, which may be regarded as *lateral drag* and which is given by

$$Y_B = \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 S_B \beta y_B \quad (13.77)$$

where  $S_B$  is the projected fuselage side area and  $y_B$  is a dimensionless coefficient. Note that the product  $\beta y_B$  is equivalent to a *lateral drag coefficient* for the fuselage. Further, since the disturbance is small the sideslip angle  $\beta$  is given by

$$\beta \cong \tan \beta = \frac{v}{V_0} \quad (13.78)$$

In a sideslip the fin is at incidence  $\beta$  and produces lift as indicated in Fig. 13.4. The fin lift resolves into a side force  $Y_F$  given by

$$Y_F = -\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 S_F a_{1_F} \beta \cos \beta \cong -\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 S_F a_{1_F} \beta \quad (13.79)$$

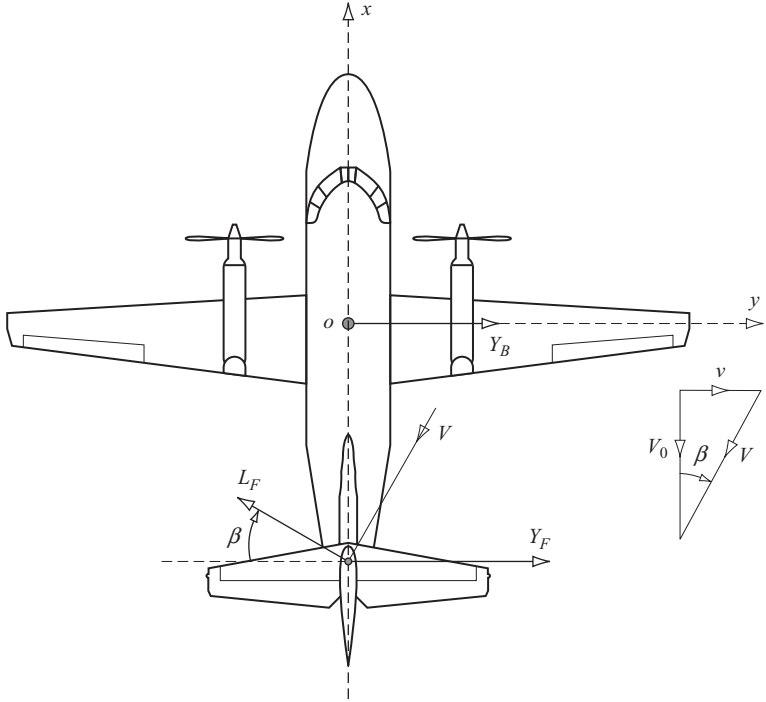
and since the sideslip angle  $\beta$  is small,  $\cos \beta \cong 1$ .

Let the total side force due to sideslip be denoted  $Y$  then, by definition,

$$v \overset{\circ}{Y}_v = Y = Y_B + Y_F = \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 (S_B y_B - S_F a_{1_F}) \beta \quad (13.80)$$

Substitute the expression for  $\beta$  given by equation (13.78) into equation (13.80) to obtain an expression for the dimensional derivative

$$\overset{\circ}{Y}_v = \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 (S_B y_B - S_F a_{1_F}) \quad (13.81)$$



**Figure 13.4** Side force generation in a sideslip.

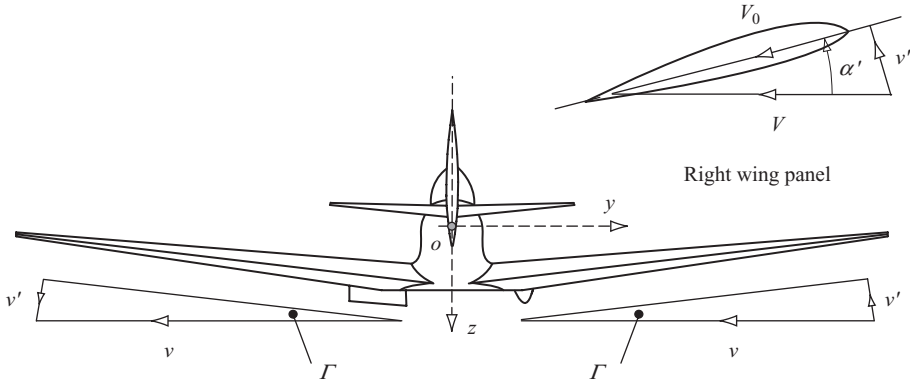
and with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$Y_v = \frac{\dot{Y}_v}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S} = \left( \frac{S_B}{S} y_B - \frac{S_F}{S} a_{1_F} \right) \quad (13.82)$$

$$\overset{\circ}{L}_v = \frac{\partial L}{\partial V} \quad \text{Rolling moment due to sideslip}$$

Rolling moment due to sideslip is one of the most important lateral stability derivatives since it quantifies the *lateral static stability* of the aeroplane, discussed in Section 3.4. It is one of the most difficult derivatives to estimate with any degree of confidence since it is numerically small and has many identifiable contributions. Preliminary estimates are based on the most significant contributions which are usually assumed to arise from wing dihedral, wing sweep, wing-fuselage geometry and the fin.

In many classical aeroplanes the wing dihedral makes the most significant contribution to the overall value of the derivative. Indeed, dihedral is one of the most important variables available to the aircraft designer with which to tailor the lateral static stability of the aeroplane. The derivative is therefore frequently referred to as *dihedral effect* irrespective of the magnitude of the other contributions. Since the tendency is for the right wing to drop in a positive sideslip disturbance the associated disturbing rolling moment is also positive. A stabilising aerodynamic reaction is one



**Figure 13.5** Incidence due to sideslip on a wing with dihedral.

in which the rolling moment due to sideslip is negative since this will tend to oppose the disturbing rolling moment. Dihedral effect is particularly beneficial in this respect.

In a positive sideslip disturbance to the right, the effect of dihedral is to increase the incidence of the right wing panel indicated in Fig. 13.5. The left wing panel “sees” a corresponding reduction in incidence. Thus the rolling moment is generated by the differential lift across the wing span.

Referring to Fig. 13.5, the component of sideslip velocity perpendicular to the plane of the wing panel is given by

$$v' = v \sin \Gamma \cong v \Gamma \quad (13.83)$$

since the dihedral angle  $\Gamma$  is usually small. The velocity component  $v'$  gives rise to a small increment in incidence  $\alpha'$  as shown where

$$\alpha' \cong \tan \alpha' = \frac{v'}{V_0} = \frac{v \Gamma}{V_0} \quad (13.84)$$

Consider the lift due to the increment in incidence on the chordwise strip element on the right wing panel as shown in Fig. 13.6. The strip is at spanwise coordinate  $y$  measured from the  $ox$  axis, has elemental width  $dy$  and local chord  $c_y$ . The lift increment on the strip resolves into a normal force increment  $\delta Z$  given by

$$\delta Z_{right} = -\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 c_y dy a_y \alpha' \cos \Gamma \cong -\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 c_y a_y v \Gamma dy \quad (13.85)$$

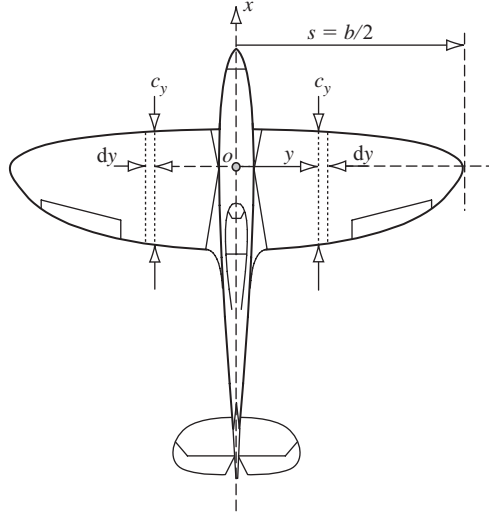
where  $a_y$  is the local lift curve slope. The corresponding increment in rolling moment  $\delta L$  is given by

$$\delta L_{right} = \delta Z_{right} y = -\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 c_y a_y v \Gamma y dy \quad (13.86)$$

The total rolling moment due to the right wing panel may be obtained by integrating equation (13.86) from the root to the tip, whence

$$L_{right} = -\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 v \int_0^s c_y a_y \Gamma y dy \quad (13.87)$$





**Figure 13.6** A chordwise strip element on the right wing panel.

Similarly for the left hand wing panel

$$\delta L_{left} = -\delta Z_{left} y = -y \left( \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 c_y a_y v \Gamma dy \right) \quad (13.88)$$

Note that the sign of the normal force increment is reversed on the left wing panel since the incidence is in fact a decrement and that the sign of the moment arm is also reversed. Thus

$$L_{left} = -\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 v \int_0^s c_y a_y \Gamma y dy \quad (13.89)$$

By definition the total rolling moment in the sideslip disturbance is given by

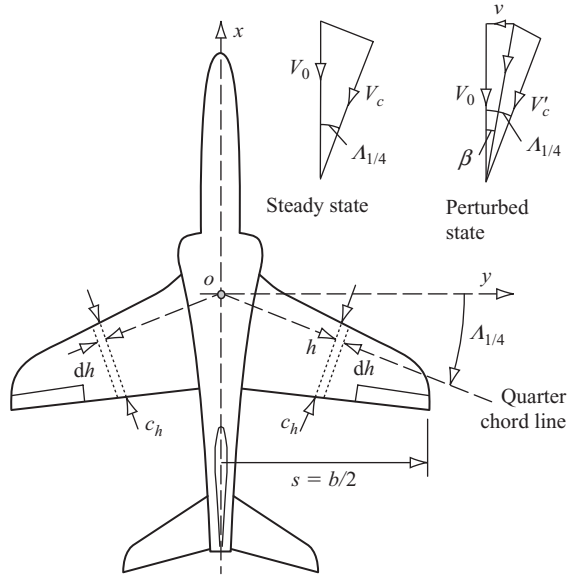
$$v \dot{L}_v = L_{right} + L_{left} = L_{total} = -\rho V_0 v \int_0^s c_y a_y \Gamma y dy \quad (13.90)$$

Whence, the contribution to the dimensional derivative due to dihedral is

$$\dot{L}_{v(dihedral)} = -\rho V_0 \int_0^s c_y a_y \Gamma y dy \quad (13.91)$$

and with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the contribution is given by

$$L_{v(dihedral)} = \frac{\dot{L}_{v(dihedral)}}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S b} = -\frac{1}{S s} \int_0^s c_y a_y \Gamma y dy \quad (13.92)$$



**Figure 13.7** A swept wing in sideslip.

where  $b = 2s$  is the wing span. It is clear that for a wing with dihedral the expression given by equation (13.92) will always be negative and hence stabilising. On the other hand, a wing with anhedral will be destabilising.

Wing sweep also makes a significant contribution to  $L_v$ . The lift on a yawed wing is determined by the component of velocity normal to the quarter chord line in subsonic flight and normal to the leading edge in supersonic flight. A swept wing is therefore treated as a yawed wing. With reference to Fig. 13.7, consider an elemental chordwise strip on the right wing panel which is perpendicular to the quarter chord line. Subsonic flow conditions are therefore assumed and the flow direction is parallel to the chord line. The strip element is at spanwise distance  $h$  from the  $ox$  axis, measured along the quarter chord line, the local chord is  $c_h$  and the width of the strip is  $dh$ . In the steady equilibrium flight condition the chordwise component of velocity is given by,

$$V_c = V_0 \cos \Lambda_{1/4} \quad (13.93)$$

and in the presence of a positive sideslip disturbance this becomes

$$V'_c = \frac{V_0}{\cos \beta} \cos (\Lambda_{1/4} - \beta) \cong V_0 \cos (\Lambda_{1/4} - \beta) \quad (13.94)$$

where  $\beta$  is the sideslip angle which is small by definition. The increment in normal force  $\delta Z$  on the chordwise strip due to the sideslip disturbance arises from the difference in lift between the steady flight condition and the perturbed condition and is given by

$$\delta Z_{right} = - \left( \frac{1}{2} \rho V_c'^2 c_h dh a_h \alpha - \frac{1}{2} \rho V_c^2 c_h dh a_h \alpha \right) = - \frac{1}{2} \rho (V_c'^2 - V_c^2) c_h dh a_h \alpha \quad (13.95)$$

Substitute the velocity expressions, equations (13.93) and (13.94) into equation (13.95), rearrange and make small angle approximations where appropriate to obtain

$$\delta Z_{right} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 (\beta^2 \sin^2 \Lambda_{1/4} + 2\beta \sin \Lambda_{1/4} \cos \Lambda_{1/4}) a_h \alpha c_h dh \quad (13.96)$$

Thus, the resulting increment in rolling moment is

$$\begin{aligned} \delta L_{right} &= h \cos \Lambda_{1/4} \delta Z_{right} \\ &= -\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 \cos \Lambda_{1/4} (\beta^2 \sin^2 \Lambda_{1/4} + 2\beta \sin \Lambda_{1/4} \cos \Lambda_{1/4}) a_h \alpha c_h h dh \end{aligned} \quad (13.97)$$

On the corresponding strip element on the left hand wing panel the chordwise velocity in the sideslip disturbance is given by

$$V'_c = \frac{V_0}{\cos \beta} \cos (\Lambda_{1/4} + \beta) \cong V_0 \cos (\Lambda_{1/4} + \beta) \quad (13.98)$$

It therefore follows that the resulting increment in rolling moment arising from the left wing panel is

$$\begin{aligned} \delta L_{left} &= -h \cos \Lambda_{1/4} \delta Z_{left} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 \cos \Lambda_{1/4} (\beta^2 \sin^2 \Lambda_{1/4} - 2\beta \sin \Lambda_{1/4} \cos \Lambda_{1/4}) a_h \alpha c_h h dh \end{aligned} \quad (13.99)$$

The total increment in rolling moment is given by the sum of the right and left wing panel contributions, equations (13.97) and (13.99), and substituting for  $\beta$  from equation (13.78) then

$$\delta L_{total} = \delta L_{right} + \delta L_{left} = -2\rho V_0 v \sin \Lambda_{1/4} \cos^2 \Lambda_{1/4} a_h \alpha c_h h dh \quad (13.100)$$

Thus the total rolling moment due to the sideslip disturbance is given by integrating equation (13.100) along the quarter chord line from the root to the wing tip. By definition the total rolling moment due to sweep is given by

$$v \overset{\circ}{L}_{v(sweep)} = \int \delta L_{total} = -2\rho V_0 v \sin \Lambda_{1/4} \cos^2 \Lambda_{1/4} \int_0^{s \sec \Lambda_{1/4}} a_h \alpha c_h h dh \quad (13.101)$$

or

$$\overset{\circ}{L}_{v(sweep)} = -2\rho V_0 \sin \Lambda_{1/4} \cos^2 \Lambda_{1/4} \int_0^{s \sec \Lambda_{1/4}} a_h \alpha c_h h dh \quad (13.102)$$

Now it is more convenient to express the geometric variables in equation (13.102) in terms of spanwise and chordwise parameters measured parallel to the  $oy$  and  $ox$  axes respectively. The geometry of the wing determines that  $c_y = c_h \cos \Lambda_{1/4}$ ,

$dy = dh \cos \Lambda_{1/4}$ ,  $y = h \cos \Lambda_{1/4}$  and the integral limit  $s \sec \Lambda_{1/4}$  becomes  $s$ . Equation (13.102) may then be written

$$\overset{\circ}{L}_{v(sweep)} = -2\rho V_0 \tan \Lambda_{1/4} \int_0^s C_{L_y} c_y y dy \quad (13.103)$$

where  $C_{L_y} = a_h \alpha$  is the local lift coefficient. However, in the interests of practicality the constant mean lift coefficient for the wing is often assumed and equation (13.103) then simplifies to

$$\overset{\circ}{L}_{v(sweep)} = -2\rho V_0 C_L \tan \Lambda_{1/4} \int_0^s c_y y dy \quad (13.104)$$

and with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the contribution is given by

$$L_{v(sweep)} = \frac{\overset{\circ}{L}_{v(sweep)}}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S b} = -\frac{2C_L \tan \Lambda_{1/4}}{S s} \int_0^s c_y y dy \quad (13.105)$$

where  $b = 2s$  is the wing span. Again, it is clear that for a wing with aft sweep the expression given by equation (13.105) will always be negative and hence stabilising. Thus wing sweep is equivalent to dihedral as a mechanism for improving lateral stability. On the other hand, a wing with forward sweep will be laterally destabilising.

The geometry of the wing and fuselage in combination may also make a significant contribution to dihedral effect since in a sideslip condition the lateral cross flow in the vicinity of the wing root gives rise to differential lift which, in turn, gives rise to rolling moment.

As shown in Fig. 13.8 in a positive sideslip perturbation the aeroplane “sees” the lateral sideslip velocity component approaching from the right, it being implied that the right wing starts to drop at the onset of the disturbance. The lateral flow around the fuselage is approximately as indicated thereby giving rise to small perturbations in upwash and downwash in the vicinity of the wing root. As a consequence of the flow condition the high wing configuration experiences a transient increase in incidence at the right wing root and a corresponding decrease in incidence at the left wing root. The differential lift thus created causes a negative rolling moment and since this will tend to “pick up” the right wing the effect is stabilising. Clearly, as indicated, a low wing configuration behaves in the opposite manner and the rolling moment due to sideslip is very definitely destabilising. Thus a high wing configuration enjoys an additional stabilising contribution to dihedral effect whereas a low wing configuration makes a destabilising contribution.

It is not generally possible to develop simple aerodynamic expressions to quantify the wing–fuselage geometry contribution to rolling moment due to sideslip. The aerodynamic phenomena involved are rather too complex to be modelled simply. It is known, for example, that the magnitude of the contribution is increased with an increase in fuselage width or depth and with an increase in aspect ratio. Reliable values for the contribution are best obtained by measurement or by reference to source documents such as ESDU data items.

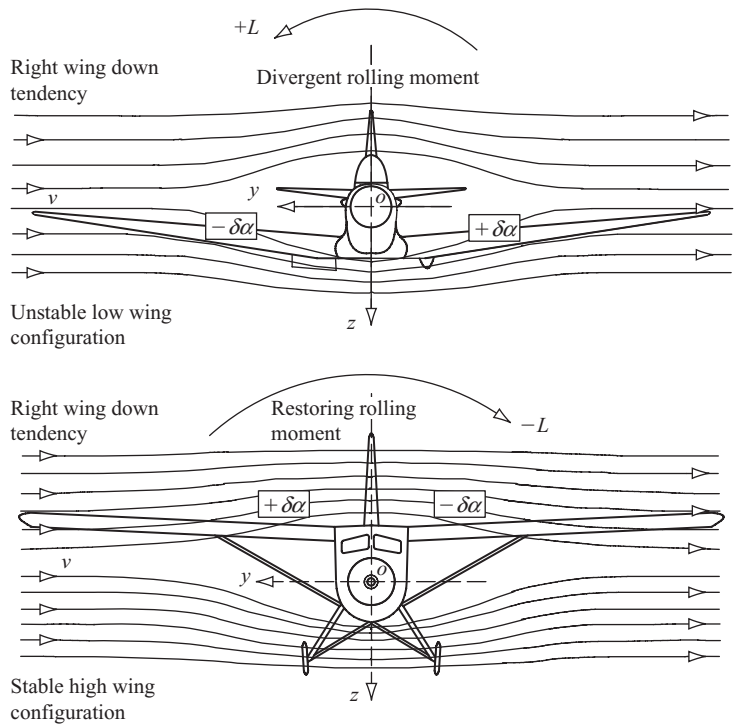


Figure 13.8 Lateral cross flow in a sideslip.

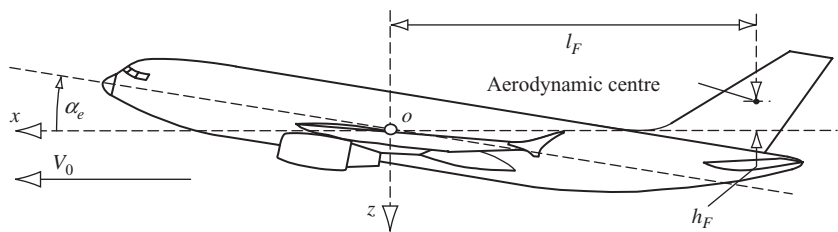


Figure 13.9 Rolling moment due to fin lift in sideslip.

The fin contribution to rolling moment due to sideslip arises from the way in which the lift developed on the fin in a sideslip perturbation acts on the airframe. The lift acts at the aerodynamic centre of the fin which may be above or below the roll axis thereby giving rise to a rolling moment. A typical situation is shown in Fig. 13.9.

The side force  $Y_F$  resulting from the lift developed by the fin in a sideslip perturbation is given by equation (13.79) and if the moment arm of the aerodynamic centre about the roll axis ( $ox$  axis) is denoted  $h_F$  then, in the perturbation by definition

$$\overset{\circ}{v}L_{v(fin)} = L = Y_F h_F = -\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 S_F a_{1F} \beta h_F \quad (13.106)$$

Substitute for  $\beta$  from equation (13.78) to obtain the following expression for the dimensional contribution to the derivative

$$\overset{\circ}{L}_{v(fin)} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S_F a_{1F} h_F \quad (13.107)$$

and with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the contribution is given by

$$L_{v(fin)} = \frac{\overset{\circ}{L}_{v(fin)}}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S b} = -\frac{S_F h_F}{S b} a_{1F} = -\bar{V}_F \frac{h_F}{l_F} a_{1F} \quad (13.108)$$

where the *fin volume ratio* is given by

$$\bar{V}_F = \frac{S_F l_F}{S b} \quad (13.109)$$

When the aerodynamic centre of the fin is above the roll axis  $h_F$  is positive and the expression given by equation (13.108) will be negative and hence stabilising. However, it is evident that, depending on aircraft geometry,  $h_F$  may be small and may even change sign at extreme aircraft attitude. Thus at certain flight conditions the contribution to rolling moment due to sideslip arising from the fin may become positive and hence laterally destabilising.

An estimate of the total value of the derivative  $L_v$  is obtained by summing the estimates of all the contributions for which a value can be obtained. Since the value of the derivative is usually small and negative, and hence stabilising, even small inaccuracies in the estimated values of the contributions can lead to a very misleading conclusion. Since the derivative is so important in the determination of the lateral stability and control characteristics of an aeroplane the ESDU data items include a comprehensive procedure for estimating meaningful values of the significant contributions. Although, collectively, all the contributions probably embrace the most complex aerodynamics of all the derivatives it is, fortunately, relatively easy to measure in both a wind tunnel test and in a flight test.

$$\overset{\circ}{N}_v = \frac{\partial N}{\partial V} \quad \text{Yawing moment due to sideslip}$$

The *weathercock* or, directional static stability of an aircraft is determined by the yawing moment due to sideslip derivative. It quantifies the tendency of the aeroplane to turn *into wind* in the presence of a sideslip disturbance. Directional static stability is also discussed in greater detail in Section 3.5. In a sideslip disturbance the resulting lift increments arising from wing dihedral, wing sweep, wing-fuselage geometry, etc., as described previously, also give rise to associated increments in induced drag. The differential drag effects across the wing span give rise in turn to contributions to yawing moment due to sideslip. However, these contributions are often regarded as insignificant compared with that due to the fin, at least for preliminary estimates. Note that in practice the additional contributions may well be significant and that by ignoring them a degree of inaccuracy is implied in the derivative estimate.

With reference to Figs. 13.4 and 13.9 consider only the fin contribution which arises from the turning moment in yaw caused by the fin side force resulting from the sideslip. By definition this may be quantified as follows

$$v\dot{N}_{v(fin)} = -l_F Y_F = \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 S_F a_{1_F} \beta l_F \quad (13.110)$$

where the fin side force due to sideslip is given by equation (13.79). Substitute for  $\beta$  from equation (13.78) to obtain the expression for the dimensional derivative

$$\dot{N}_{v(fin)} = \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S_F a_{1_F} l_F \quad (13.111)$$

and with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$N_{v(fin)} = \frac{\dot{N}_{v(fin)}}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S b} = \bar{V}_F a_{1_F} \quad (13.112)$$

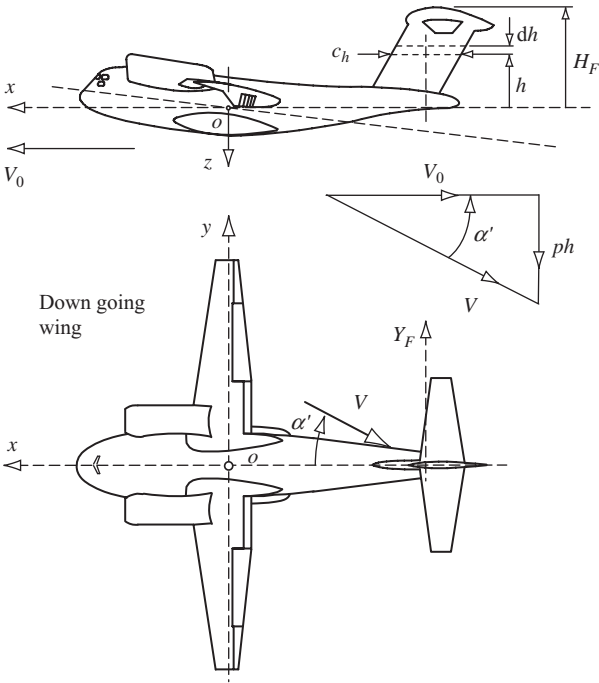
Note that the sign of  $N_v$  is positive which indicates that it is stabilising in effect. In a positive sideslip the incident wind vector is offset to the right of the nose, see Fig. 13.4, and the stabilising yawing moment due to sideslip results in a positive yaw response to turn the aircraft to the right until the aircraft aligns directionally with the wind vector. The yawing effect of the sideslip is thus nullified. The contribution from the wing due to differential drag effects is also usually stabilising and may well become the most significant contribution at high angles of attack since a large part of the fin may become immersed in the forebody wake, with the consequent reduction in its aerodynamic effectiveness. The contribution from the *lateral drag* effects on the gross side area ahead of and behind the *cg* may also be significant. However, it is commonly found that the yawing moment due to sideslip arising from the side area is often negative, and hence destabilising. For certain classes of aircraft, such as large transport aeroplanes, this destabilising contribution can be very significant and requires a very large fin to ensure a reasonable degree of aerodynamic directional stability.

### 13.3.3 Derivatives due to rate of roll

As seen by the pilot, positive roll is to the right, is consistent with a down going right wing and the small perturbation roll rate transient is denoted  $p$ . The nature of a free positive roll rate disturbance is such that as the right wing tends to drop it is accompanied by a tendency for the nose to turn to the right and for the aeroplane to sideslip to the right. The reaction to the roll rate disturbance is stabilising if the aerodynamic forces and moments produced in response tend to restore the aeroplane to a wings level zero sideslip equilibrium state.

$$Y_p = \frac{\partial Y}{\partial p} \quad \text{Side force due to roll rate}$$

The side force due to roll rate is usually considered to be negligible except for aircraft with a large high aspect ratio fin. Even then, the effect may well be small. Thus the fin



**Figure 13.10** *Fin side force generation in rolling flight.*

contribution is assumed to be the only significant contribution to the derivative and may be estimated as follows.

With reference to Fig. 13.10, consider the chordwise strip element on the fin of width  $dh$  and at coordinate  $h$  measured upwards from the  $ox$  axis. When the aeroplane experiences a positive roll rate disturbance  $p$  the strip element on the fin experiences a lateral velocity component  $ph$ . The resultant total velocity transient  $V$  is at incidence  $\alpha'$  to the fin and, since the incidence transient is small by definition

$$\alpha' \cong \tan \alpha' = \frac{ph}{V_0} \quad (13.113)$$

The incidence transient causes a fin lift transient, which resolves into a lateral force increment  $\delta Y$  on the chordwise strip element and is given by

$$\delta Y = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 c_h dh a_h \alpha' = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 p a_h c_h h dh \quad (13.114)$$

where  $a_h$  is the local lift curve slope and  $c_h$  is the local chord. The total side force transient acting on the fin in the roll rate disturbance is given by integrating equation (13.114) from the root to the tip of the fin and by definition

$$p\overset{\circ}{Y}_{p(fin)} = Y_F = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 p \int_0^{H_F} a_h c_h h \, dh \quad (13.115)$$



where  $H_F$  is the fin span measured from the  $ox$  axis. The expression for the fin contribution to the dimensional derivative is therefore given by

$$\dot{Y}_{p(fin)} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 \int_0^{H_F} a_h c_h h \, dh \quad (13.116)$$

and with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$Y_{p(fin)} = \frac{\dot{Y}_{p(fin)}}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S b} = -\frac{1}{S b} \int_0^{H_F} a_h c_h h \, dh \quad (13.117)$$

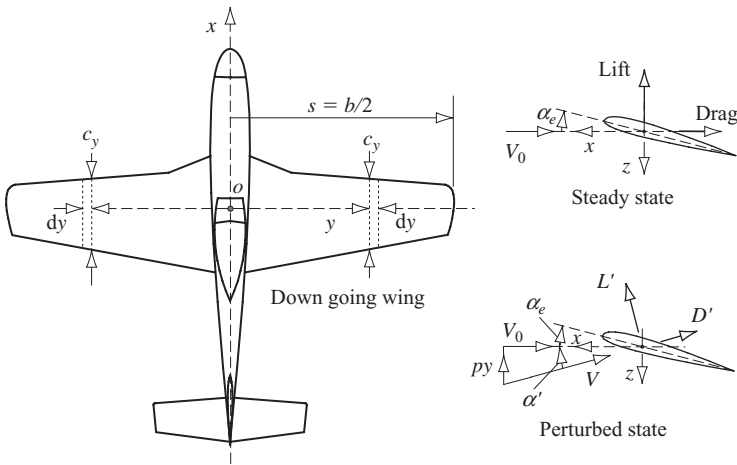
$$\dot{\bar{L}}_p = \frac{\partial L}{\partial p} \quad \text{Rolling moment due to roll rate}$$

Rolling moment due to roll rate arises largely from the wing with smaller contributions from the fuselage, tailplane and fin. This derivative is most important since it quantifies the damping in roll and is therefore significant in determining the dynamic characteristics of the roll subsidence mode, discussed in some detail in Section 7.2. The following analysis considers the wing contribution only.

With reference to Fig. 13.11, when the right wing panel experiences a positive perturbation in roll rate  $p$ , assuming the aircraft rolls about the  $ox$  axis, then the small increase in incidence  $\alpha'$  at the chordwise strip element is given by

$$\alpha' \cong \tan \alpha' = \frac{py}{V_0} \quad (13.118)$$

There is, of course, a reduction in incidence on the corresponding chordwise strip element on the left wing panel. Denoting the total lift and drag increments in



**Figure 13.11** Wing incidence in rolling flight.

the disturbance on the chordwise strip element on the right wing panel  $L'$  and  $D'$  respectively then

$$L' = \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 c_y dy a_y (\alpha_e + \alpha') \quad (13.119)$$

and

$$D' = \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 c_y dy C_{D_y} \quad (13.120)$$

The normal force increment  $\delta Z_{(right)}$  acting at the chordwise strip element in the roll rate perturbation is given by

$$\delta Z_{(right)} = -L' \cos \alpha' - D' \sin \alpha' \cong -L' - D' \alpha' \quad (13.121)$$

since  $\alpha'$  is a small angle. Substitute for  $L'$ ,  $D'$  and  $\alpha'$  from equations (13.119), (13.120) and (13.118) respectively to obtain

$$\delta Z_{(right)} = -\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 \left( a_y \alpha_e + (a_y + C_{D_y}) \frac{py}{V_0} \right) c_y dy \quad (13.122)$$

The resulting increment in rolling moment is then given by

$$\delta L_{(right)} = y \delta Z_{(right)} = -\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 \left( a_y \alpha_e + (a_y + C_{D_y}) \frac{py}{V_0} \right) c_y y dy \quad (13.123)$$

and the corresponding increment in rolling moment arising from the left wing panel, where the incidence is reduced by  $\alpha'$  since the panel is rising with respect to the incident air flow, is given by

$$\delta L_{(left)} = -y \delta Z_{(left)} = \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 \left( a_y \alpha_e - (a_y + C_{D_y}) \frac{py}{V_0} \right) c_y y dy \quad (13.124)$$

The total rolling moment due to roll rate is obtained by summing the increments from the right and left chordwise strips, given by equations (13.123) and (13.124) respectively, and integrating from the root to the tip of the wing

$$L_{total} = \int_{span} (\delta L_{(left)} + \delta L_{(right)}) = -\rho V_0 p \int_0^s (a_y + C_{D_y}) c_y y^2 dy \quad (13.125)$$

and by definition,

$$p \overset{\circ}{L}_p = L_{total} = -\rho V_0 p \int_0^s (a_y + C_{D_y}) c_y y^2 dy \quad (13.126)$$

Whence, the dimensional derivative expression is given by

$$\overset{\circ}{L}_p = -\rho V_0 \int_0^s (a_y + C_{D_y}) c_y y^2 dy \quad (13.127)$$

and with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$L_p = \frac{\dot{L}_p}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S b^2} = -\frac{1}{2Ss^2} \int_0^s (a_y + C_{D_y}) c_y y^2 dy \quad (13.128)$$

where  $b = 2s$  is the wing span.

$$\dot{N}_p = \frac{\partial N}{\partial p} \quad \text{Yawing moment due to roll rate}$$

Yawing moment due to roll rate is almost entirely determined by the wing contribution, although in some aircraft a large fin may give rise to a significant additional contribution. Only the wing contribution is considered here.

It is shown in Fig. 13.11 that in a roll rate perturbation the chordwise strip element on the right (down going) wing experiences an incremental increase in lift and induced drag, given by equations (13.119) and (13.120), whilst there is an equal decrease in lift and induced drag on the corresponding strip on the left (up going) wing. The differential drag thereby produced gives rise to the yawing moment perturbation.

With reference to Fig. 13.11, the longitudinal axial force increment acting on the chordwise strip element on the right wing panel is given by

$$\delta X_{(right)} = L' \sin \alpha' - D' \cos \alpha' \cong L' \alpha' - D' \quad (13.129)$$

Substitute for  $L'$  and  $D'$  from equations (13.119) and (13.120) respectively and write

$$C_{D_y} = \frac{dC_D}{d\alpha_y} (\alpha_e + \alpha') \quad (13.130)$$

to obtain

$$\delta X_{(right)} = \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 \left( a_y \alpha' - \frac{dC_D}{d\alpha_y} \right) (\alpha_e + \alpha') c_y dy \quad (13.131)$$

The incremental axial force gives rise to a negative increment in yawing moment given by

$$\delta N_{(right)} = -y \delta X_{(right)} = -\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 \left( a_y \alpha' - \frac{dC_D}{d\alpha_y} \right) (\alpha_e + \alpha') c_y y dy \quad (13.132)$$

The reduction in incidence due to roll rate on the corresponding chordwise strip element on the left wing panel gives rise to a positive increment in yawing moment and, in a similar way, it may be shown that

$$\delta N_{(left)} = y \delta X_{(left)} = -\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 \left( a_y \alpha' + \frac{dC_D}{d\alpha_y} \right) (\alpha_e - \alpha') c_y y dy \quad (13.133)$$

The total yawing moment increment due to roll rate is given by summing equations (13.132) and (13.135) and substituting for  $\alpha'$  from equation (13.118)

$$\delta N_{total} = \delta N_{(left)} + \delta N_{(right)} = -\rho V_0 p \left( a_y \alpha_e - \frac{dC_D}{d\alpha_y} \right) c_y y^2 dy \quad (13.134)$$

By definition the total yawing moment due to roll rate is given by

$$p\dot{N}_p = N_{total} = \int_{\text{semi span}} \delta N_{total} = -\rho V_0 p \int_0^s \left( a_y \alpha_e - \frac{dC_D}{d\alpha_y} \right) c_y y^2 dy \quad (13.135)$$

Whence, the expression for the dimensional derivative

$$\dot{N}_p = -\rho V_0 \int_0^s \left( C_{L_y} - \frac{dC_D}{d\alpha_y} \right) c_y y^2 dy \quad (13.136)$$

where  $C_{L_y} = a_y \alpha_e$  is the equilibrium local lift coefficient. With reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$N_p = \frac{\dot{N}_p}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S b^2} = -\frac{1}{2 S s^2} \int_0^s \left( C_{L_y} - \frac{dC_D}{d\alpha_y} \right) c_y y^2 dy \quad (13.137)$$

### 13.3.4 Derivatives due to rate of yaw

As seen by the pilot, a positive yaw rate is such that the nose of the aeroplane swings to the right and the small perturbation yaw rate transient is denoted  $r$ . The nature of a free positive yaw rate disturbance is such that as the nose swings to the right, the right wing tends to drop and the aeroplane sideslips to the right. The reaction to the yaw rate disturbance is stabilising if the aerodynamic forces and moments produced in response tend to restore the aeroplane to a symmetric wings level equilibrium flight condition.

$$\dot{Y}_r = \frac{\partial Y}{\partial r} \quad \text{Side force due to yaw rate}$$

For most conventional aeroplanes the side force due to yaw rate is insignificant unless the fin is relatively large. In such cases the fin lift generated by the yawing motion gives rise to a side force of significant magnitude.

Referring to Fig. 13.12, in a yaw rate perturbation the transient incidence of the fin may be written

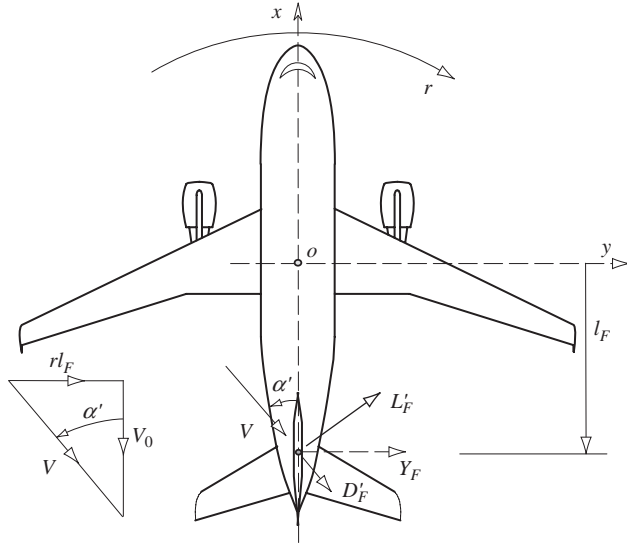
$$\alpha' \cong \tan \alpha' = \frac{r l_F}{V_0} \quad (13.138)$$

where  $l_F$  is the moment arm of the fin aerodynamic centre about the centre of rotation in yaw, the  $cg$ , and by definition, the incidence transient is a small angle. The resultant transient fin lift  $L'_F$  gives rise to a side force  $Y_F$

$$Y_F = L'_F \cos \alpha' \cong \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 S_F a_{1_F} \alpha' = \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S_F l_F a_{1_F} r \quad (13.139)$$

By definition, the side force arising in a yaw rate disturbance is given by

$$r\dot{Y}_r = Y_F = \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S_F l_F a_{1_F} r \quad (13.140)$$



**Figure 13.12** *Fin incidence due to yaw rate.*

Whence, the expression for the dimensional side force due to yaw rate derivative is given by

$$\dot{Y}_r = \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S_F l_F a_{1F} \quad (13.141)$$

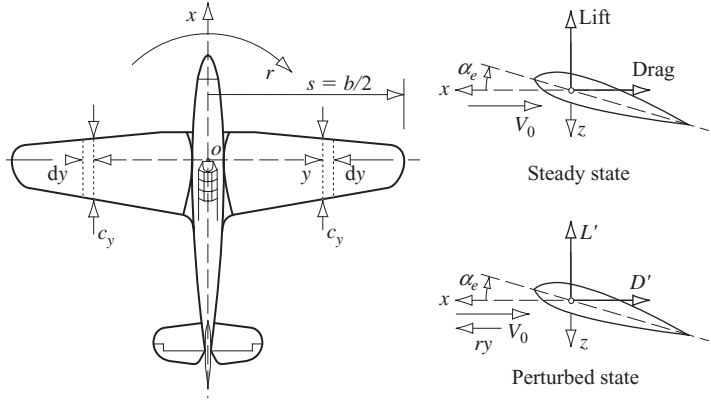
and with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$Y_r = \frac{\dot{Y}_r}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S b} = \bar{V}_F a_{1F} \quad (13.142)$$

where the *fin volume ratio*  $\bar{V}_F$  is given by equation (13.109). Clearly, the resolved component of the induced drag transient on the fin  $D'_F$  will also make a contribution to the total side force transient. However, this is usually considered to be insignificantly small compared with the lift contribution.

$$\dot{L}_r = \frac{\partial L}{\partial r} \quad \text{Rolling moment due to yaw rate}$$

In positive yawing motion the relative velocity of the air flowing over the right wing panel is decreased whilst the velocity over the left wing panel is increased. This gives rise to an increase in lift and induced drag on the port wing with a corresponding decrease in lift and drag on the starboard wing. The force increments thus produced result in a rolling moment and a yawing moment about the *cg*. A contribution to rolling moment also arises due to the side force generated by the fin in yawing motion although it is generally smaller than the wing contribution.



**Figure 13.13** Wing forces due to yaw rate.

With reference to Fig. 13.13, the velocity at the chordwise strip element on the right wing during a yaw rate perturbation is given by

$$V = V_0 - ry \quad (13.143)$$

and the total lift on the chordwise strip element during the perturbation is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \delta L'_{(right)} &= \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 c_y dy C_{L_y} = \frac{1}{2} \rho (V_0 - ry)^2 c_y dy C_{L_y} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \rho (V_0^2 - 2ryV_0) c_y dy C_{L_y} \end{aligned} \quad (13.144)$$

when products of small quantities are neglected. The rolling moment due to the lift on the chordwise strip element on the right wing is therefore given by

$$\delta L_{(right)} = -\delta L'_{(right)} y = -\frac{1}{2} \rho (V_0^2 - 2ryV_0) c_y y dy C_{L_y} \quad (13.145)$$

Similarly, the rolling moment due to the lift on the chordwise strip element on the left wing is given by

$$\delta L_{(left)} = \delta L'_{(left)} y = \frac{1}{2} \rho (V_0^2 + 2ryV_0) c_y y dy C_{L_y} \quad (13.146)$$

Thus the total rolling moment due to yaw rate arising from the wing is given by integrating the sum of the components due to the chordwise strip elements, equations (13.145) and (13.146), over the semi-span

$$L_{wing} = \int_{\text{semi span}} (\delta L_{(left)} + \delta L_{(right)}) = 2\rho V_0 r \int_0^s C_{L_y} c_y y^2 dy \quad (13.147)$$

By definition, the rolling moment due to wing lift in a yaw rate disturbance is given by

$$r \dot{L}_{r(wing)} = L_{wing} = 2\rho V_0 r \int_0^s C_{L_y} c_y y^2 dy \quad (13.148)$$

Whence, the expression for the wing contribution to the dimensional rolling moment due to yaw rate derivative is

$$\dot{L}_{r(wing)} = 2\rho V_0 \int_0^s C_{L_y} c_y y^2 dy \quad (13.149)$$

and with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$L_{r(wing)} = \frac{\dot{L}_{r(wing)}}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S b^2} = \frac{1}{S s^2} \int_0^s C_{L_y} c_y y^2 dy \quad (13.150)$$

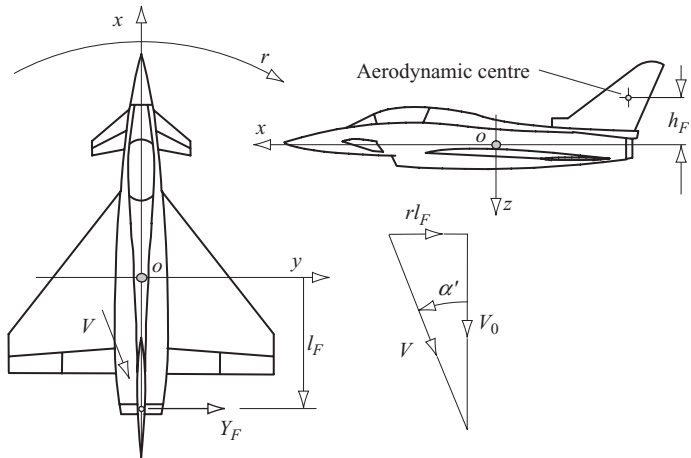
where  $b = 2s$  is the wing span.

Note that for a large aspect ratio rectangular wing it may be assumed that  $C_{L_y} = C_L$  the lift coefficient for the whole wing and that  $c_y = c$  the constant geometric chord of the wing. For this special case it is easily shown, from equation (13.150), that

$$L_r = \frac{1}{6} C_L \quad (13.151)$$

However, it should be appreciated that the assumption relating to constant lift coefficient across the span is rather crude and consequently, the result given by equation (3.151) is very approximate although it can be useful as a guide for checking estimated values of the derivative.

The fin contribution to the rolling moment due to yaw rate derivative arises from the moment about the roll axis of the side force generated by the fin in yaw. The side force is generated by the mechanism illustrated in Fig. 13.12 and acts at the aerodynamic centre of the fin, which is usually above the roll axis, and hence, gives rise to a positive rolling moment. The situation prevailing is illustrated in Fig. 13.14.



**Figure 13.14** Rolling moment due to yaw rate arising from the fin.

With reference to Fig. 13.14, a rolling moment is developed by the fin side force due to yaw rate  $Y_F$ , which is given by equation (13.139), acting at the aerodynamic centre which is located  $h_F$  above the roll axis. Whence, the rolling moment is given by

$$L_{fin} = Y_F h_F = \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S_F l_F a_{1F} r h_F \quad (13.152)$$

By definition, the rolling moment due to fin side force in a yaw rate disturbance is given by

$$r \overset{\circ}{L}_{r(fin)} = L_{fin} = \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S_F l_F a_{1F} r h_F \quad (13.153)$$

Whence, the fin contribution to the dimensional derivative is given by

$$\overset{\circ}{L}_{r(fin)} = \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S_F l_F a_{1F} h_F \quad (13.154)$$

As before, and with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$L_{r(fin)} = \frac{\overset{\circ}{L}_{r(fin)}}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S b^2} = a_{1F} \bar{V}_F \frac{h_F}{b} \equiv -L_{v(fin)} \frac{l_F}{b} \quad (13.155)$$

The total value of the rolling moment due to yaw rate derivative is then given by the sum of all the significant contributions.

$$\overset{\circ}{N}_r = \frac{\partial N}{\partial r} \quad \text{Yawing moment due to yaw rate}$$

The yawing moment due to yaw rate derivative is an important parameter in the determination of aircraft directional stability. In particular it is a measure of the damping in yaw and is therefore dominant in determining the stability of the oscillatory dutch roll mode. This significance of this derivative to lateral-directional dynamics is discussed in detail in Section 7.2. The most easily identified contributions to yaw damping arise from the fin and from the wing. However, it is generally accepted that the most significant contribution arises from the fin, although in some aircraft the fin contribution may become significantly reduced at high angles of attack in which case the wing contribution becomes more important.

Considering the wing contribution first. This arises as a result of the differential drag effect in yawing motion as illustrated in Fig. 13.13. Referring to Fig. 13.13, the total drag on the chordwise strip element on the right wing subject to a steady yaw rate  $r$  is reduced for the same reason as the lift, given by equation (13.144), and may be written

$$\delta D'_{(right)} = \frac{1}{2} \rho (V_0^2 - 2ryV_0) c_y dy C_{D_y} \quad (13.156)$$

The yawing moment about the  $cg$  generated by the drag on the chordwise strip element is

$$\delta N_{(right)} = \delta D'_{(right)} y = \frac{1}{2} \rho (V_0^2 - 2ryV_0) c_y y dy C_{D_y} \quad (13.157)$$



and similarly for the yawing moment arising at the corresponding chordwise strip on the left wing

$$\delta N_{(left)} = -\delta D'_{(left)} y = -\frac{1}{2} \rho (V_0^2 + 2ryV_0) c_y y dy C_{D_y} \quad (13.158)$$

Thus, the total yawing moment due to yaw rate arising from the wing is given by integrating the sum of the components due to the chordwise strip elements, equations (13.157) and (13.158), over the semi-span

$$N_{wing} = \int_{semi\ span} (\delta N_{(right)} - \delta N_{(left)}) = -2\rho V_0 r \int_0^s C_{D_y} c_y y^2 dy \quad (13.159)$$

By definition, the yawing moment due to differential wing drag in a yaw rate perturbation is given by

$$r \overset{\circ}{N}_{r(wing)} = N_{wing} = -2\rho V_0 r \int_0^s C_{D_y} c_y y^2 dy \quad (13.160)$$

Whence, the expression for the wing contribution to the dimensional yawing moment due to yaw rate derivative is

$$\overset{\circ}{N}_{r(wing)} = -2\rho V_0 \int_0^s C_{D_y} c_y y^2 dy \quad (13.161)$$

and with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$N_{r(wing)} = \frac{\overset{\circ}{N}_{r(wing)}}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S b^2} = -\frac{1}{S s^2} \int_0^s C_{D_y} c_y y^2 dy \quad (13.162)$$

where  $b = 2s$  is the wing span.

As for the derivative  $L_r$ , for a large aspect ratio rectangular wing it may be assumed that  $C_{D_y} = C_D$  the drag coefficient for the whole wing and that  $c_y = c$  the constant geometric chord of the wing. For this special case it is easily shown, from equation (13.162), that

$$N_{r(wing)} = \frac{1}{6} C_D \quad (13.163)$$

Although the result given by equation (13.163) is rather approximate and subject to the assumptions made, it is useful as a guide for checking the value of an estimated contribution to the derivative.

The fin contribution to yawing moment due to yaw rate is generated by the yawing moment of the fin side force due to yaw rate. The mechanism for the generation of fin side force is illustrated in Fig. 13.12 and with reference to that figure and to equation (13.139), the yawing moment thereby generated is given by

$$N_{fin} = -Y_F l_F = -\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S_F l_F^2 a_{1_F} r \quad (13.164)$$

By definition, the yawing moment due to the fin in a yaw rate perturbation is given by

$$r\dot{N}_{r(fin)} = N_{fin} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S_F l_F^2 a_{1F} r \quad (13.165)$$

Whence, the expression for the fin contribution to the dimensional yawing moment due to yaw rate derivative is

$$\dot{N}_{r(fin)} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S_F l_F^2 a_{1F} \quad (13.166)$$

As before, and with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$N_{r(fin)} = \frac{\dot{N}_{r(fin)}}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S b^2} = -a_{1F} \bar{V}_F \frac{l_F}{b} = -\frac{l_F}{b} N_{v(fin)} \quad (13.167)$$

The fin volume ratio  $\bar{V}_F$  is given by equation (13.109). The total value of the yawing moment due to yaw rate derivative is therefore given by the sum of all the significant contributions.

## 13.4 AERODYNAMIC CONTROL DERIVATIVES

Estimates may be made for the aerodynamic control derivatives provided that the controller in question is a simple flap like device and provided that its aerodynamic properties can be modelled with a reasonable degree of confidence. However, estimates of the aileron and rudder control derivatives obtained from simple models are unlikely to be accurate since it is very difficult to describe the aerodynamic conditions applying in sufficient detail. Estimates for the lateral-directional aerodynamic control derivatives are best obtained from the appropriate ESDU data items or, preferably, by experimental measurement. However, simple models for the aileron and rudder control derivatives are given here for completeness and in order to illustrate the principles of lateral-directional control.

For convenience, a summary of the derivative expressions derived in the following paragraphs are included in Tables A8.3 and A8.4.

### 13.4.1 Derivatives due to elevator

Typically, the lift coefficient for a tailplane with elevator control is given by

$$C_{LT} = a_0 + a_1 \alpha_T + a_2 \eta \quad (13.168)$$

where  $a_1$  is the lift curve slope of the tailplane and  $a_2$  is the lift curve slope with respect to elevator angle  $\eta$ . The corresponding drag coefficient may be expressed

$$C_{DT} = C_{D_{0T}} + k_T C_{LT}^2 \quad (13.169)$$

where all of the parameters in equation (13.169) are tailplane dependent.

$$\dot{X}_\eta = \frac{\partial X}{\partial \eta} \quad \text{Axial force due to elevator}$$

It is assumed that for a small elevator deflection, consistent with a small perturbation, the resulting axial force perturbation arises from the drag change associated with the tailplane only. Whence

$$X \equiv X_T = -D_T = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 S_T C_{D_T} \quad (13.170)$$

Thus

$$\dot{X}_\eta = \frac{\partial X_T}{\partial \eta} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 S_T \frac{\partial C_{D_T}}{\partial \eta} \quad (13.171)$$

Substitute for  $C_{D_T}$ , from equation (13.169), into equation (13.171) to obtain

$$\dot{X}_\eta = \frac{\partial X_T}{\partial \eta} = -\rho V^2 S_T k_T C_{L_T} \frac{\partial C_{L_T}}{\partial \eta} \quad (13.172)$$

For a small perturbation, in the limit  $V \cong V_0$ , from equation (13.168)  $\partial C_{L_T} / \partial \eta \cong a_2$  and equation (13.172) may be written

$$\dot{X}_\eta = -\rho V_0^2 S_T k_T C_{L_T} a_2 \quad (13.173)$$

With reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$X_\eta = \frac{\dot{X}_\eta}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S} = -2 \frac{S_T}{S} k_T C_{L_T} a_2 \quad (13.174)$$

$$\dot{Z}_\eta = \frac{\partial Z}{\partial \eta} \quad \text{Normal force due to elevator}$$

As before, it is assumed that for a small elevator deflection the resulting normal force perturbation arises from the lift change associated with the tailplane only. Whence

$$Z \equiv Z_T = -L_T = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 S_T C_{L_T} \quad (13.175)$$

Thus

$$\dot{Z}_\eta = \frac{\partial Z_T}{\partial \eta} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 S_T \frac{\partial C_{L_T}}{\partial \eta} \quad (13.176)$$

Substitute for  $C_{L_T}$ , from equation (13.168) to obtain

$$\dot{Z}_\eta = \frac{\partial Z_T}{\partial \eta} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 S_T a_2 \quad (13.177)$$

For a small perturbation, in the limit  $V \cong V_0$  and with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$Z_\eta = \frac{\dot{Z}_\eta}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S} = -\frac{S_T}{S} a_2 \quad (13.178)$$

$$\dot{M}_\eta = \frac{\partial M}{\partial \eta} \quad \text{Pitching moment due to elevator}$$

It is assumed that the pitching moment resulting from elevator deflection is due entirely to the moment of the tailplane lift about the *cg*. Whence

$$M \equiv M_T = -L_T l_T = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 S_T l_T C_{L_T} \quad (13.179)$$

Thus, it follows that

$$\dot{M}_\eta = \frac{\partial M_T}{\partial \eta} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 S_T l_T \frac{\partial C_{L_T}}{\partial \eta} = \dot{Z}_\eta l_T \quad (13.180)$$

With reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless form of the derivative is given by

$$M_\eta = \frac{\dot{M}_\eta}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S \bar{c}} = -\frac{S_T l_T}{S \bar{c}} a_2 = -\bar{V}_T a_2 \quad (13.181)$$

where  $\bar{V}_T$  is the tail volume ratio.

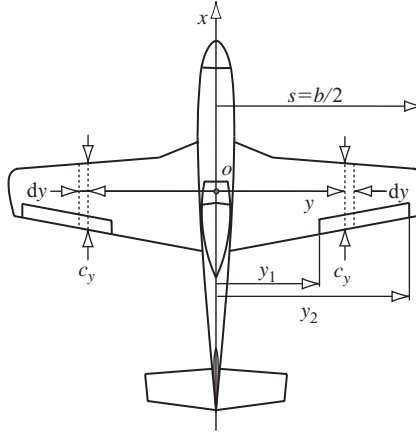
### 13.4.2 Derivatives due to aileron

Typical aileron geometry is shown in Fig. 13.15 and comprises a part span flap in the outboard sections of both port and starboard wings. Differential deflection of the flaps creates the desired control in roll. As described in Section 2.6, a positive aileron deflection results in the starboard (right) surface deflecting trailing edge down and the port (left) surface trailing edge up and aileron angle  $\xi$  is taken to be the mean of the two surface angles. Thus, referring to equation (13.168), the local lift coefficient at spanwise coordinate  $y$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned} C_{L_y}|_{right} &= a_0 + a_y \alpha + a_{2A} \xi \\ C_{L_y}|_{left} &= a_0 + a_y \alpha - a_{2A} \xi \end{aligned} \quad (13.182)$$

Since it is not practical to define a simple model for the increment in local drag coefficient due to aileron deflection, let it be defined more generally as

$$\begin{aligned} C_{D_y}|_{right} &= \frac{\partial C_{D_y}}{\partial \xi} \xi \\ C_{D_y}|_{left} &= -\frac{\partial C_{D_y}}{\partial \xi} \xi \end{aligned} \quad (13.183)$$



**Figure 13.15** *Aileron control geometry.*

where it is assumed that for small aileron angles, the change in drag  $\partial C_{D_y}/\partial \xi$  is dominated by induced drag effects and may vary over the aileron span.

$$\overset{\circ}{Y}_\xi = \frac{\partial Y}{\partial \xi} \quad \text{Side force due to aileron}$$

For aeroplanes of conventional layout the side force due to aileron is zero or insignificantly small. However, for aeroplanes of unconventional layout, with highly swept wings or that utilise differential canard surfaces for roll control, this may not be the case. In such cases, simple analytical models would not be the most appropriate means for obtaining an estimate of the derivative value.

$$\overset{\circ}{L}_\xi = \frac{\partial L}{\partial \xi} \quad \text{Rolling moment due to aileron}$$

This derivative describes the roll control property of the aeroplane and an accurate estimate of its value is important to flight dynamics analysis. With reference to equations (13.182) and Fig. 13.15, the application of simple strip theory enables the rolling moment due to starboard aileron deflection to be written

$$L_{right} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 \int_{y_1}^{y_2} C_{L_y}|_{right} c_y y \, dy = -\frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 \int_{y_1}^{y_2} (a_0 + a_y \alpha + a_{2_A} \xi) c_y y \, dy \quad (13.184)$$

where  $a_{2_A}$  is the aileron lift curve slope, which is assumed to be constant over the span of the aileron. Similarly, the rolling moment due to port aileron deflection may be written

$$L_{left} = \frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 \int_{y_1}^{y_2} C_{L_y}|_{left} c_y y \, dy = \frac{1}{2}\rho V^2 \int_{y_1}^{y_2} (a_0 + a_y \alpha - a_{2_A} \xi) c_y y \, dy \quad (13.185)$$

It follows that the total rolling moment may be written

$$\overset{\circ}{L}_\xi \xi = L_{right} + L_{left} = -\rho V^2 (a_{2_A} \xi) \int_{y_1}^{y_2} c_y y \, dy \quad (13.186)$$

Whence, the simple expression for the dimensional derivative

$$\dot{L}_\xi = -\rho V^2 a_{2A} \int_{y_1}^{y_2} c_{y,y} dy \quad (13.187)$$

Alternatively, with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless derivative may be written

$$L_\xi = \frac{\dot{L}_\xi}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S b} = -\frac{1}{S s} a_{2A} \int_{y_1}^{y_2} c_{y,y} dy \quad (13.188)$$

where  $b = 2s$  is the wing span.

$$\dot{N}_\xi = \frac{\partial N}{\partial \xi} \quad \text{Yawing moment due to aileron}$$

This derivative describes the adverse yaw property of the aeroplane in response to aileron roll commands. With reference to equations (13.183) and Fig. 13.15, the application of simple strip theory enables the yawing moment due to starboard aileron deflection to be written

$$N_{right} = \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 \int_{y_1}^{y_2} C_{D_y}|_{right} c_{y,y} dy = \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 \int_{y_1}^{y_2} \left( \frac{\partial C_{D_y}}{\partial \xi} \xi \right) c_{y,y} dy \quad (13.189)$$

and similarly, the yawing moment due to port aileron deflection may be written

$$N_{left} = -\frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 \int_{y_1}^{y_2} C_{D_y}|_{left} c_{y,y} dy = -\frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 \int_{y_1}^{y_2} \left( -\frac{\partial C_{D_y}}{\partial \xi} \xi \right) c_{y,y} dy \quad (13.190)$$

It follows that the total yawing moment may be written

$$\dot{N}_\xi \xi = N_{right} + N_{left} = \rho V^2 \int_{y_1}^{y_2} \left( \frac{\partial C_{D_y}}{\partial \xi} \xi \right) c_{y,y} dy \quad (13.191)$$

Whence, a simple expression for the dimensional derivative

$$\dot{N}_\xi = \rho V^2 \int_{y_1}^{y_2} \left( \frac{\partial C_{D_y}}{\partial \xi} \right) c_{y,y} dy \quad (13.192)$$

Alternatively, with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless derivative may be written

$$N_\xi = \frac{\dot{N}_\xi}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S b} = \frac{1}{S s} \int_{y_1}^{y_2} \left( \frac{\partial C_{D_y}}{\partial \xi} \right) c_{y,y} dy \quad (13.193)$$

### 13.4.3 Derivatives due to rudder

In normal trimmed flight the fin and rudder generate zero side force. Deflection of the rudder  $\zeta$ , and in the notation a positive rudder angle is trailing edge to the left,

generates a positive side force which gives rise to both rolling and yawing moments. With reference to Fig. 13.14, for example, it is assumed that the side force acts at the aerodynamic centre of the fin which is located a distance  $l_F$  aft of the  $cg$  and a distance  $h_F$  above the  $cg$ . Since the aerodynamics of the fin and rudder will inevitably be significantly influenced by the presence of the aft fuselage and the horizontal tailplane, the accuracy of the following models is likely to be poor

$$\overset{\circ}{Y}_\zeta = \frac{\partial Y}{\partial \zeta} \quad \text{Side force due to rudder}$$

The side force generated by the fin when the rudder angle is  $\zeta$  is given approximately by

$$Y = \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S_F a_{2R} \zeta \quad (13.194)$$

and by definition

$$\overset{\circ}{Y}_\zeta \zeta = Y = \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S_F a_{2R} \zeta \quad (13.195)$$

Where  $a_{2R}$  is the rudder lift curve slope, which is assumed to be constant over the span of the fin and rudder. Whence the very simple expression for the dimensional derivative

$$\overset{\circ}{Y}_\zeta = \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S_F a_{2R} \quad (13.196)$$

Alternatively, with reference to Appendix 2, the dimensionless derivative may be written

$$Y_\zeta = \frac{\overset{\circ}{Y}_\zeta}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 S} = \frac{S_F}{S} a_{2R} \quad (13.197)$$

$$\overset{\circ}{L}_\zeta = \frac{\partial L}{\partial \zeta} \quad \text{Rolling moment due to rudder}$$

This derivative describes the adverse roll property of the aeroplane in response to rudder yaw commands. Since the side force due to rudder acts above the roll axis, the rolling moment due to rudder follows directly

$$\overset{\circ}{L}_\zeta \zeta = Y h_F = \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S_F h_F a_{2R} \zeta \quad (13.198)$$

Thus a simple expression for the dimensional derivative is

$$\overset{\circ}{L}_\zeta = \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S_F h_F a_{2R} \quad (13.199)$$

and, with reference to Appendix 2, an expression for the dimensionless derivative may be written

$$L_\zeta = \frac{\dot{L}_\zeta}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 Sb} = \frac{S_F h_F}{Sb} a_{2_R} \equiv \bar{V}_F \frac{h_F}{l_F} a_{2_R} \quad (13.200)$$

where  $\bar{V}_F$  is the fin volume ratio.

$$\dot{N}_\zeta = \frac{\partial N}{\partial \zeta} \quad \text{Yawing moment due to rudder}$$

This derivative describes the yaw control property of the aeroplane and, again, an accurate estimate of its value is important to flight dynamics analysis. Since the side force due to rudder acts well behind the *cg* it generates a yawing moment described as follows:

$$\dot{N}_\zeta \zeta = -Y l_F = -\frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S_F l_F a_{2_R} \zeta \quad (13.201)$$

Thus, the simple expression for the dimensional derivative is

$$\dot{N}_\zeta = \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S_F l_F a_{2_R} \quad (13.202)$$

and, with reference to Appendix 2, an expression for the dimensionless derivative may be written

$$N_\zeta = \frac{\dot{N}_\zeta}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 Sb} = -\frac{S_F l_F}{Sb} a_{2_R} \equiv -\bar{V}_F a_{2_R} \quad (13.203)$$

### 13.5 NORTH AMERICAN DERIVATIVE COEFFICIENT NOTATION

An alternative notation for the dimensionless aerodynamic stability and control derivatives, based on the derivatives of aerodynamic force and moment coefficients, is the standard notation in North America and is commonly used in Europe and elsewhere. Interpretation of the derivatives as quasi-static representations of continuously varying aerodynamic properties of the aircraft remains the same as described in Section 12.2.

To illustrate the mathematical derivation of the coefficient notation, it is useful to remember that in a non-steady flight condition, with perturbed velocity  $V$ , the lift and drag force are described in terms of the dimensionless lift and drag coefficients respectively, namely

$$L = \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S C_L$$

$$D = \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S C_D$$



In a similar way, the aerodynamic forces and moments in the American normalised dimensional equations of motion (4.72) and (4.73) may be written in terms of dimensionless coefficients. With reference to expressions (4.75), the normalised longitudinal equations of motion (4.72) may thus be written

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{u} + qW_e &= \frac{X}{m} = \frac{1}{m} \left( \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S C_x \right) - g \theta \cos \theta_e \\ \dot{w} - qU_e &= \frac{Z}{m} = \frac{1}{m} \left( \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S C_z \right) - g \theta \sin \theta_e \\ \dot{q} &= \frac{M}{I_y} = \frac{1}{I_y} \left( \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S \bar{c} C_m \right)\end{aligned}\quad (13.204)$$

and with reference to expressions (4.78) the normalised lateral-directional equations of motion (4.73) may be written

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{v} - pW_e + rU_e &= \frac{Y}{m} = \frac{1}{m} \left( \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S C_y \right) + g \phi \cos \theta_e + g \psi \sin \theta_e \\ \dot{p} - \frac{I_{xz}}{I_x} \dot{r} &= \frac{L}{I_x} = \frac{1}{I_x} \left( \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S b C_l \right) \\ \dot{r} - \frac{I_{xz}}{I_z} \dot{p} &= \frac{N}{I_z} = \frac{1}{I_z} \left( \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S b C_n \right)\end{aligned}\quad (13.205)$$

Note that, as written, equations (13.204) and (13.205) are referenced to a general aircraft body axis system. However, as in the British notation, it is usual (and preferable) to refer the dimensionless aerodynamic derivative coefficients to aircraft wind axes.

### 13.5.1 The longitudinal aerodynamic derivative coefficients

Consider the longitudinal equations of motion and by comparing equations (4.77) with (13.204), in a perturbation the aerodynamic, thrust and control forces and moments may be written

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{m} \left( \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S C_x \right) &= X_u u + X_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} + X_w w + X_q q + X_{\delta_e} \delta_e + X_{\delta_{th}} \delta_{th} \\ \frac{1}{m} \left( \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S C_z \right) &= Z_u u + Z_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} + Z_w w + Z_q q + Z_{\delta_e} \delta_e + Z_{\delta_{th}} \delta_{th} \\ \frac{1}{I_y} \left( \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S \bar{c} C_m \right) &= M_u u + M_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} + M_w w + M_q q + M_{\delta_e} \delta_e + M_{\delta_{th}} \delta_{th}\end{aligned}\quad (13.206)$$

In order to identify the dimensionless derivative coefficients the left hand sides of equations (13.206) may be expanded in terms of partial derivative functions of the

perturbation variables. This mathematical procedure and its application to aerodynamic modelling of aircraft is described in Section 4.2.2. Thus, for example, the axial force equation in (13.204) may be written

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{m} \left( \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S C_x \right) &= \frac{\rho S}{2m} \left( \frac{\partial(V^2 C_x)}{\partial U} u + \frac{\partial(V^2 C_x)}{\partial \dot{W}} \dot{w} + \frac{\partial(V^2 C_x)}{\partial W} w \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \frac{\partial(V^2 C_x)}{\partial q} q + \frac{\partial(V^2 C_x)}{\partial \delta_e} \delta_e + \frac{\partial(V^2 C_x)}{\partial \delta_{th}} \delta_{th} \right) \\ &= X_u u + X_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} + X_w w + X_q q + X_{\delta_e} \delta_e + X_{\delta_{th}} \delta_{th} \end{aligned} \quad (13.207)$$

Equating equivalent terms in equation (13.207), expressions for the normalised derivatives, referred to aircraft wind axes, may thus be derived. Recall the following derivative relationships for small perturbations from equations (13.5) and (13.6)

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial U} = 1 \quad \frac{\partial V}{\partial W} = 0 \quad \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial U} = 0 \quad \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial W} = \frac{1}{V} \quad (13.208)$$

Expressions for the force coefficients follow directly from equations (13.8) and (13.9), retaining the aerodynamic terms only

$$C_x = C_L \sin \theta - C_D \cos \theta \quad (13.209)$$

$$C_z = -C_L \cos \theta - C_D \sin \theta \quad (13.210)$$

Referring to the expressions (13.208) and equation (13.209) it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} X_u &= \frac{\rho S}{2m} \frac{\partial(V^2 C_x)}{\partial U} = \frac{\rho V S}{2m} \left( V \frac{\partial C_x}{\partial U} + 2C_x \right) \\ &= \frac{\rho V S}{2m} \left( V \frac{\partial C_L}{\partial U} \sin \theta - V \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial U} \cos \theta + 2C_L \sin \theta - 2C_D \cos \theta \right) \end{aligned} \quad (13.211)$$

In the limit, let the perturbation become vanishingly small such that  $\theta \rightarrow 0$ ,  $V \rightarrow V_0$  and Mach number  $M_0 = V_0/a$  then

$$\begin{aligned} X_u &= -\frac{\rho V S}{2m} \left( V \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial V} + 2C_D \right) = -\frac{\rho V S}{2m} \left( M \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial M} + 2C_D \right) \\ &= -\frac{\rho V_0 S}{2m} (M_0 C_{D_M} + 2C_D) \end{aligned} \quad (13.212)$$

It should be noted that  $\partial C_D / \partial V$  is not dimensionless and in order to render the derivative dimensionless, velocity dependency is replaced by Mach number dependency. This also has the advantage that the model is not then limited to subsonic flight applications only. Note that equation (13.212) is the direct equivalent of that given in the British notation as equation (12.9) and by equation (13.17).

Similarly, referring to the expressions (13.208) and equation (13.209) it follows that

$$\begin{aligned}
 X_w &= \frac{\rho S}{2m} \frac{\partial(V^2 C_x)}{\partial W} = \frac{\rho VS}{2m} \left( V \frac{\partial C_x}{\partial W} \right) \\
 &= \frac{\rho VS}{2m} \left( V \frac{\partial C_L}{\partial W} \sin \theta - V \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial W} \cos \theta + C_L \cos \theta - C_D \sin \theta \right) \\
 &= \frac{\rho VS}{2m} \left( \frac{\partial C_L}{\partial \alpha} \sin \theta - \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial \alpha} \cos \theta + C_L \cos \theta - C_D \sin \theta \right) \quad (13.213)
 \end{aligned}$$

Since a wind axes reference is assumed  $W = W_e + w = w$  and  $w/V = \tan \alpha \cong \alpha$  for small perturbations. As before, let the perturbation become vanishingly small such that  $\theta \rightarrow 0$  and  $V \rightarrow V_0$  then

$$X_w = \frac{\rho V_0 S}{2m} \left( C_L - \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial \alpha} \right) = \frac{\rho V_0 S}{2m} (C_L - C_{D\alpha}) \quad (13.214)$$

Although the derivative  $X_{\dot{w}}$  is usually negligibly small, its derivation in terms of the dimensionless derivative coefficient is illustrated for completeness:

$$\begin{aligned}
 X_{\dot{w}} &= \frac{\rho S}{2m} \frac{\partial(V^2 C_x)}{\partial \dot{W}} = \frac{\rho VS}{2m} \left( V \frac{\partial C_x}{\partial \dot{w}} \right) \equiv \frac{\rho VS}{2m} \left( \frac{\partial C_x}{\partial \dot{\alpha}} \right) \\
 &= \frac{\rho VS}{2m} \left( \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{2V} \right) \left( \frac{\partial C_x}{\partial (\dot{\alpha} \bar{\bar{c}}/2V)} \right) \quad (13.215) \\
 X_{\dot{w}} &= \frac{\rho S \bar{\bar{c}}}{4m} C_{x\dot{\alpha}}
 \end{aligned}$$

Since a wind axes reference is assumed  $W = W_e + w = w$  and  $\dot{W} = \dot{w}$ . Also,  $w/V = \tan \alpha \cong \alpha$  for small perturbations and it follows that  $\dot{w}/V \cong \dot{\alpha}$ . Now the derivative  $\partial C_x / \partial \dot{\alpha}$  is not dimensionless as  $\dot{\alpha}$  has units rad/s, and in order to render  $\partial C_x / \partial \dot{\alpha}$  dimensionless it is necessary to multiply  $\dot{\alpha}$  by a *longitudinal reference time* value. The value used for this purpose is  $\bar{\bar{c}}/2V$ , the time taken for the aircraft to traverse one half chord length. It is not possible to take this reduction further without significant additional analysis to define the dependency of  $C_x$  on  $\dot{\alpha}$ . In the context of the derivation of the equivalent British notation, the analysis is set out in Section 13.2.6 where it is seen to describe tailplane aerodynamic response to downwash lag following a perturbation in normal acceleration  $\dot{w}$ .

The derivative  $X_q$  is derived in a similar manner, and since  $C_{x_q}$  is negligibly small for small perturbations it is usual to omit  $X_q$  from the linear longitudinal aircraft model:

$$\begin{aligned}
 X_q &= \frac{\rho S}{2m} \frac{\partial(V^2 C_x)}{\partial q} = \frac{\rho V^2 S}{2m} \frac{\partial C_x}{\partial q} = \frac{\rho V^2 S}{2m} \left( \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{2V} \right) \left( \frac{\partial C_x}{\partial (q \bar{\bar{c}}/2V)} \right) \\
 X_q &= \frac{\rho V_0 S \bar{\bar{c}}}{4m} C_{xq} \quad (13.216)
 \end{aligned}$$

Again, it is not practical to take this reduction further without significant additional analysis to define the dependency of  $C_x$  on pitch rate  $q$ . However, the analysis relating

to the equivalent British notation is set out in Section 13.2.5 where it is seen to describe tailplane aerodynamic response to a perturbation in pitch rate  $q$ .

The control derivatives may be dealt with generically as the independent variable is control angle  $\delta$ , with a subscript denoting the surface to which it relates and since it is measured in radians it is treated as dimensionless. When  $\delta$  is used to denote thrust control, it is also treated as dimensionless and may be considered as a fraction of maximum thrust or, equivalently, as a perturbation in throttle lever angle. Otherwise, the derivation of  $X_{\delta_e}$  and  $X_{\delta_{th}}$  follows the same procedure:

$$\begin{aligned} X_{\delta} &= \frac{\rho S}{2m} \frac{\delta(V^2 C_x)}{\partial \delta} = \frac{\rho V^2 S}{2m} \frac{\partial C_x}{\partial \delta} \\ X_{\delta} &= \frac{\rho V_0^2 S}{2m} C_{x_{\delta}} \end{aligned} \quad (13.217)$$

Again, it is not practical to take the derivation any further since it depends explicitly on the aerodynamic and thrust control layout of a given aeroplane.

The normalised axial force derivative expressions given by equations (13.212)–(13.217) are summarised in Appendix 7.

In a similar way, expressions for the normalised normal force derivatives in equation (13.206) may be derived in terms of dimensionless derivative coefficients, and noting that the normal force coefficient  $C_z$  is given by equation (13.210). The results of the derivations follow and are also summarised in Appendix 7.

$$\begin{aligned} Z_u &= -\frac{\rho V_0 S}{2m} (M_0 C_{L_M} + 2C_L) \\ Z_{\dot{w}} &= \frac{\rho S \bar{c}}{4m} C_{z_{\dot{\alpha}}} \\ Z_w &= -\frac{\rho V_0 S}{2m} (C_D + C_{L_{\alpha}}) \\ Z_q &= \frac{\rho V_0 S \bar{c}}{m} C_{z_q} \\ Z_{\delta} &= \frac{\rho V_0^2 S}{2m} C_{z_{\delta}} \end{aligned} \quad (13.218)$$

Since there are some small differences in the derivation of the moment derivatives, it is useful to review the normalised pitching moment derivative definitions. As before, the left hand side of the pitching moment equation from equations (13.206) may be expanded in terms of partial derivative functions of the perturbation variables to give

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{I_y} \left( \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S \bar{c} C_m \right) &= \frac{\rho S \bar{c}}{2I_y} \left( \frac{\partial(V^2 C_m)}{\partial U} u + \frac{\partial(V^2 C_m)}{\partial \dot{W}} \dot{w} + \frac{\partial(V^2 C_m)}{\partial W} w \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \frac{\partial(V^2 C_m)}{\partial q} q + \frac{\partial(V^2 C_m)}{\partial \delta_e} \delta_e + \frac{\partial(V^2 C_m)}{\partial \delta_{th}} \delta_{th} \right) \\ &= M_u u + M_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} + M_w w + M_q q + M_{\delta_e} \delta_e + M_{\delta_{th}} \delta_{th} \end{aligned} \quad (13.219)$$

Equating equivalent terms in equation (13.219), expressions for the normalised pitching moment derivatives, referred to aircraft wind axes, may be derived as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} M_u &= \frac{\rho S \bar{c}}{2I_y} \frac{\partial(V^2 C_m)}{\partial U} = \frac{\rho V S \bar{c}}{2I_y} \left( V \frac{\partial C_m}{\partial V} + 2C_m \right) \\ &\equiv \frac{\rho V S \bar{c}}{2I_y} \left( M \frac{\partial C_m}{\partial M} + 2C_m \right) = \frac{\rho V S \bar{c}}{2I_y} (M C_{m_M} + 2C_m) \end{aligned} \quad (13.220)$$

Again, remembering that for a wind axes reference  $U = U_e + u \equiv V$  and Mach number  $M = V/a$ . To define the derivative  $M_u$  at the flight condition of interest, let the perturbation become vanishingly small such that  $u \rightarrow 0$ , hence  $V \rightarrow V_0$  and  $M \rightarrow M_0$ . Further, since the perturbation is a disturbance about trim and when the aircraft is in trim the pitching moment is zero so, as the perturbation becomes vanishingly small  $C_m \rightarrow 0$ . Whence

$$M_u = \frac{\rho V_0 S \bar{c}}{2I_y} (M_0 C_{m_M}) \quad (13.221)$$

The remaining normalised pitching moment derivative expressions may be derived in a similar manner, for example,

$$\begin{aligned} M_{\dot{w}} &= \frac{\rho S \bar{c}}{2I_y} \frac{\partial(V^2 C_m)}{\partial \dot{W}} = \frac{\rho V^2 S \bar{c}}{2I_y} \frac{\partial C_m}{\partial \dot{w}} = \frac{\rho V S \bar{c}}{2I_y} \frac{\partial C_m}{\partial \dot{\alpha}} \\ &= \frac{\rho V S \bar{c}}{2I_y} \left( \frac{\bar{c}}{2V} \right) \frac{\partial C_m}{\partial (\dot{\alpha} \bar{c}/2V)} \end{aligned} \quad (13.222)$$

$$M_{\dot{w}} = \frac{\rho S \bar{c}^2}{4I_y} C_{m_{\dot{\alpha}}}$$

and so on. Whence

$$\begin{aligned} M_w &= \frac{\rho V_0 S \bar{c}}{2I_y} C_{m_\alpha} \\ M_q &= \frac{\rho V_0 S \bar{c}^2}{4I_y} C_{m_q} \\ M_{\delta} &= \frac{\rho V_0^2 S \bar{c}}{2I_y} C_{m_\delta} \end{aligned} \quad (13.223)$$

### 13.5.2 The lateral-directional aerodynamic derivative coefficients

Similarly, now consider the lateral-directional equations of motion and by comparing equations (4.78), (4.79) and (4.80) with (13.183), in a perturbation the aerodynamic

and control forces and moments may be written

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{1}{m} \left( \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S C_y \right) &= Y_v v + Y_p p + Y_r r + Y_{\delta_\xi} \delta_\xi + Y_{\delta_\zeta} \delta_\zeta \\
 \frac{1}{I_x} \left( \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S b C_l \right) &= L_v v + L_p p + L_r r + L_{\delta_\xi} \delta_\xi + L_{\delta_\zeta} \delta_\zeta \\
 \frac{1}{I_z} \left( \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S b C_n \right) &= N_v v + N_p p + N_r r + N_{\delta_\xi} \delta_\xi + N_{\delta_\zeta} \delta_\zeta
 \end{aligned} \tag{13.224}$$

As before, the left hand sides of equations (13.224) may be expanded in terms of partial derivative functions of the perturbation variables. Thus, for example, the lateral side force equations in (13.224) may be written

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{1}{m} \left( \frac{1}{2} \rho V^2 S C_y \right) &= \frac{\rho V^2 S}{2m} \left( \frac{\partial C_y}{\partial v} v + \frac{\partial C_y}{\partial p} p + \frac{\partial C_y}{\partial r} r + \frac{\partial C_y}{\partial \delta_\xi} \delta_\xi + \frac{\partial C_y}{\partial \delta_\zeta} \delta_\zeta \right) \\
 &= Y_v v + Y_p p + Y_r r + Y_{\delta_\xi} \delta_\xi + Y_{\delta_\zeta} \delta_\zeta
 \end{aligned} \tag{13.225}$$

and it is assumed that in a small lateral-directional perturbation, the motion is decoupled from longitudinal motion such that velocity  $V$  is independent of the perturbation variables. As before, equating terms in equation (13.225), expressions for the normalised derivatives referred to aircraft wind axes may be derived. For a wind axes reference  $v/V = \tan \beta \cong \beta$ , the small perturbation in sideslip angle. Whence

$$\begin{aligned}
 Y_v &= \frac{\rho V^2 S}{2m} \frac{\partial C_y}{\partial v} \equiv \frac{\rho V S}{2m} \frac{\partial C_y}{\partial \beta} \\
 Y_v &= \frac{\rho V_0 S}{2m} C_{y\beta}
 \end{aligned} \tag{13.226}$$

or equivalently

$$Y_\beta = \frac{\rho V_0^2 S}{2m} C_{y\beta} \tag{13.227}$$

Although the derivatives  $Y_p$  and  $Y_r$  are usually insignificantly small, it is instructive to review their derivation in terms of dimensionless coefficients.

$$\begin{aligned}
 Y_p &= \frac{\rho V^2 S}{2m} \frac{\partial C_y}{\partial p} = \frac{\rho V^2 S}{2m} \left( \frac{b}{2V} \right) \frac{\partial C_y}{\partial (pb/2V)} = \frac{\rho V S b}{4m} C_{yp} \\
 Y_r &= \frac{\rho V^2 S}{2m} \frac{\partial C_y}{\partial r} = \frac{\rho V^2 S}{2m} \left( \frac{b}{2V} \right) \frac{\partial C_y}{\partial (rb/2V)} = \frac{\rho V S b}{4m} C_{yr}
 \end{aligned}$$

Since the derivatives  $\partial C_p / \partial p$  and  $\partial C_r / \partial r$  are not dimensionless, it is necessary to introduce the *lateral reference time* value  $b/2V$  as shown. Again, let the perturbation become vanishingly small such that  $V \rightarrow V_0$ , then

$$Y_p = \frac{\rho V_0 S b}{4m} C_{yp} \tag{13.228}$$

$$Y_r = \frac{\rho V_0 S b}{4m} C_{y_r} \quad (13.229)$$

Similarly, the control derivatives may be derived

$$Y_\delta = \frac{\rho V_0^2 S}{2m} C_{y_\delta} \quad (13.230)$$

By repeating this process, the roll and yawing moment normalised derivative expressions may also be derived. For the rolling moment equation in equations (13.224)

$$\begin{aligned} L_v &= \frac{\rho V_0 S b}{2I_x} C_{l_\beta} \quad \text{or equivalently} \quad L_\beta = \frac{\rho V_0^2 S b}{2I_x} C_{l_\beta} \\ L_p &= \frac{\rho V_0 S b^2}{4I_x} C_{l_p} \\ L_r &= \frac{\rho V_0 S b^2}{4I_x} C_{l_r} \\ L_\delta &= \frac{\rho V_0^2 S b}{2I_x} C_{l_\delta} \end{aligned} \quad (13.231)$$

and for the yawing moment equation in equations (13.224)

$$\begin{aligned} N_v &= \frac{\rho V_0 S b}{2I_z} C_{n_\beta} \quad \text{or equivalently} \quad N_\beta = \frac{\rho V_0^2 S b}{2I_z} C_{n_\beta} \\ N_p &= \frac{\rho V_0 S b^2}{4I_z} C_{n_p} \\ N_r &= \frac{\rho V_0 S b^2}{4I_z} C_{n_r} \\ N_\delta &= \frac{\rho V_0^2 S b}{2I_z} C_{n_\delta} \end{aligned} \quad (13.232)$$

The lateral-directional derivative expressions given by equations (13.226)–(13.232) are also summarised in Appendix 7.

### 13.5.3 Comments

Today it is common for the equations of motion to be presented either in the British notation or in the American notation, and further, the units in either notational style can be Imperial or SI. In general, the notational style will depend on the source of the aerodynamic model of the aircraft. It is therefore important that the modern flight dynamicist becomes sufficiently dextrous to deal with the equations of motion and aerodynamic model in whatever form they are presented. It is evident from the foregoing that the differences between, for example, British dimensionless aerodynamic derivatives and American aerodynamic derivative coefficients can be subtle,

and care must be exercised in their interpretation. It can be tempting to convert from one notational style to another for various reasons, however, it cannot be emphasised enough that this process can be fraught with pitfalls unless extreme care is exercised. Experience shows that it is very easy to confuse the differences between the various dimensionless derivative forms and even to make errors in the translation from one style of units to another. It is therefore most advisable to conduct any flight dynamics analysis of an aeroplane using the equations of motion and aerodynamic model in the notational style presented by the source of that information. After all, irrespective of notational style, all equations of motion appear in a similar format once reduced to the state space form and their solution only differs by the applicable units.

## REFERENCES

- Babister, A.W. 1961: *Aircraft Stability and Control*. Pergamon Press, Oxford.  
 Babister, A.W. 1980: *Aircraft Dynamic Stability and Response*. Pergamon Press, Oxford.  
*ESDU Aerodynamics Series*. 2006. Engineering Sciences Data, ESDU International Ltd., 27 Corsham Street, London. [www.esdu.com](http://www.esdu.com).  
 Hancock, G.J. 1995: *An Introduction to the Flight Dynamics of Rigid Aeroplanes*. Ellis Horwood Ltd, Hemel Hempstead.

## PROBLEMS

1. The centre of gravity of an aircraft is moved aft through a distance  $\delta h$ , derive expressions relating the dimensionless longitudinal aerodynamic stability derivatives before and after the *cg* shift.

For an aircraft in steady level flight, using the relevant reduced order solution of the equations of motion, calculate the aft *cg* limit at which the phugoid mode becomes unstable. The aircraft aerodynamic data, referred to wind axes, is given as follows:

Air density	$\rho = 1.225 \text{ kg/m}^3$
Velocity	$V_0 = 560 \text{ kts}$
Aircraft mass	$m = 7930 \text{ kg}$
<i>cg</i> location	$h = 0.25$
Wing area	$S = 24.15 \text{ m}^2$
Mean chord	$\bar{c} = 3.35 \text{ m}$
Tail moment arm	$l_T = 4.57 \text{ m}$
Pitch inertia	$I_y = 35,251 \text{ kgm}^2$

Dimensionless stability derivatives:

$X_u = 0.03$	$Z_q = 0$
$X_w = 0.02$	$M_u = 0.01$
$X_q = 0$	$M_w = -0.15$
$Z_u = 0.09$	$M_{\dot{w}} = 0$
$Z_w = -2.07$	$M_q = -0.58$

Assume that the moment of inertia in pitch remains constant. (CU 1979)

2. Show that, to a good approximation, the following expressions hold for the dimensionless derivatives of a rigid aircraft in a glide with the engine off,  $X_u \cong -2C_D$  and  $Z_u \cong -2C_L$ .



With power on in level flight, the lift coefficient at the minimum power speed is given by

$$C_{L_{mp}} = \sqrt{3\pi AeC_{D0}}$$

and the minimum power speed is given by

$$V_{mp} = \sqrt{\frac{mg}{\rho SC_{L_{mp}}}}$$

Show that at the minimum power speed the thrust  $\tau_{mp}$  and velocity  $V_{mp}$  satisfy the relation

$$\tau_{mp} V_{mp}^n = k$$

and find corresponding values for the constants  $k$  and  $n$ . Hence show that

$$X_u = -(n+2)C_D \quad (\text{CU1982})$$

3. (i) Explain the physical significance of the aerodynamic stability derivative.
- (ii) Discuss the dependence of  $L_v$  and  $N_v$  on the general layout of an aircraft.
- (iii) Show that for an unswept wing with dihedral angle  $\Gamma$ , the effect of sideslip angle  $\beta$  is to increase the incidence of the starboard wing by  $\beta\Gamma$ , where both  $\beta$  and  $\Gamma$  are small angles.
- (iv) Show that fin contribution to  $N_v$  is given by

$$N_v = a_{1F} \bar{V}_F \quad (\text{CU1982})$$

4. The Navion light aircraft is a cantilevered low wing monoplane. The unswept wing has a span of 10.59 m, a planform area of 17.12 m<sup>2</sup> and dihedral angle 7.5°. The fin has a planform area of 0.64 m<sup>2</sup>, aspect ratio of 3.0 and its aerodynamic centre is 5.5 m aft of the cg.

Derive an expression for the dimensionless derivative  $N_v$ . Find its value for the Navion aircraft given that the lift curve slope  $a_1$  of a lifting panel may be approximated by  $a_0 A / (A + 2)$ , where  $a_0$  is its two dimensional lift curve slope and  $A$  its aspect ratio. (CU 1983)

5. (i) What is roll damping and what are its main sources on an aeroplane?
- (ii) Assuming roll damping to be produced entirely by the wing of an aeroplane show that the dimensionless roll damping stability derivative  $L_p$  is given by

$$L_p = -\frac{1}{2Ss^2} \int_0^s (a_y + C_{Dy}) c_y y^2 dy$$

- (iii) The Navion light aeroplane has a straight tapered wing of span 33.4 ft, area 184 ft<sup>2</sup> and root chord length 8 ft. At the given flight condition the wing drag coefficient is 0.02 and the lift curve slope is 4.44 1/rad. Estimate a

value for the dimensionless roll damping stability derivative  $L_p$ . Show all working and state any assumptions made. (CU 1984)

6. Explain the physical significance of the aerodynamic stability derivatives  $M_u$  and  $M_w$ .

The pitching moment coefficient for a wing is given by

$$C_m = \frac{k}{\gamma} \sin \alpha$$

and

$$\gamma = \sqrt{\left(1 - \frac{V^2}{a^2}\right)}$$

where  $k$  and  $a$  are constants. Obtain expressions for the wing contributions to  $M_u$  and  $M_w$ . (CU 1985)

7. What is roll damping? Explain why the aerodynamic stability derivative  $L_p$  must always be negative.

An aircraft of mass 5100 kg, aspect ratio 10 and wing span 16 m is in level flight at an equivalent airspeed of 150 kts when an aileron deflection of  $5^\circ$  results in a steady roll rate of  $15^\circ/\text{s}$ . The aileron aerodynamic characteristics are such that a  $10^\circ$  deflection produces a lift increment of 0.8, the aileron centres of pressure being at 6.5 m from the aircraft longitudinal axis. What is the value of  $L_p$  for this aircraft. Take  $\rho = 1.225 \text{ kg/m}^3$  and  $1 \text{ kt} = 0.515 \text{ m/s}$ . (CU 1985)

8. What is dihedral effect? Explain the effect of the dihedral angle of a wing on the dimensionless rolling moment due to sideslip derivative  $L_v$ .

Show that for a straight tapered wing of semi-span  $s$ , dihedral angle  $\Gamma$ , root chord  $c_r$  and tip chord  $c_t$ :

$$L_v = -\frac{\Gamma}{6} \frac{dC_L}{d\alpha} \left( \frac{c_r + 2c_t}{c_r + c_t} \right)$$

assuming the lift curve slope to be constant with span.

Calculate the aileron angle required to maintain a steady forced wings level sideslip angle of  $5^\circ$  given that the dimensionless rolling moment due to aileron control derivative has the value  $-0.197 \text{ 1/rad}$ . It may be assumed that the rolling moment due to sideslip is entirely due to dihedral effect. The straight tapered wing of the aircraft has a mean chord of 2.4 m, a taper ratio of 1.8 and a dihedral angle of  $4^\circ$ . The lift curve slope of the wing may be assumed to have the constant value of  $5.0/\text{rad}$ . (CU 1987)

9. What is the significance of roll damping to the flying and handling qualities of an aircraft?

Derive from first principles an expression for the stability derivative  $L_p$ , and hence show that for an aircraft with a high aspect ratio rectangular wing the derivative is given approximately by

$$L_p = -\frac{1}{12} \left( C_D + \frac{dC_L}{d\alpha} \right)$$

State clearly the assumptions made in arriving at this result.

The Lockheed NT-33A aircraft has a straight tapered wing of span 11.5 m and is fitted with wing tip fuel tanks each of which has a capacity of 1045 l. With one tank empty and the other full it is found that the minimum speed at which wings level flight can be maintained is 168 kts with the maximum aileron deflection of 15°. When both wing tip tanks contain equal quantities of fuel an aileron deflection of 5° results in a steady rate of roll of 17°/s at a velocity of 150 kts. What is the value of the derivative  $L_p$ ?

Assume an air density of 1.225 kg/m<sup>3</sup>, a fuel density of 0.8 kg/l, a wing area of 22.23 m<sup>2</sup> and that 1 kt is equivalent to 0.52 m/s. (CU 1990)

10. Show that for a wing with sweepback  $\Lambda$  and dihedral  $\Gamma$ :

$$L_v = -\frac{2}{Sb} (\alpha \sin \Lambda + \Gamma \cos \Lambda) \int_0^{s \sec \Lambda} \left( \frac{dC_L}{d\alpha} \right)_h c_h h dh$$

where  $h$  is the spanwise coordinate along the quarter chord line. Assume the following for a chordwise element of the wing

Chordwise velocity  $V_c = V(\cos \Lambda + \beta \sin \Lambda)$

Velocity normal to wing  $V_a = V(\alpha + \beta \Gamma)$

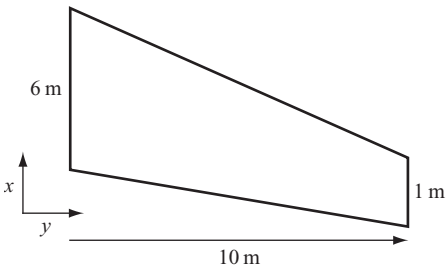
An aircraft has a wing with the following planform:

Sweep angle at  $\frac{1}{4}$  chord = 55°

Dihedral angle = 3°

Lift curve slope 5.8 1/rad at  $y = 0$

Lift curve slope 0 1/rad at  $y = 10$  m



Calculate the value of  $L_v$  when the aircraft is flying at an incidence of 2°.

(LU 2001)

11. A three surface aeroplane has the following characteristics:

*Foreplane*

Span = 4.0 m

Area = 2 m<sup>2</sup>

Lift curve slope = 3.2 1/rad

Moment arm about  $cg$  = 5 m

*Wing*

Span = 12.5 m

Area = 25 m<sup>2</sup>

Lift curve slope = 5.4 1/rad

Aerodynamic centre =  $0.2\bar{c}$

*Tailplane*

Span = 5.0 m

Area = 6.0 m

*Complete aircraft*

$cg = 0.4\bar{c}$

Lift curve slope = 3.5 1/rad  
 Moment arm about  $cg = 6.0$  m  
 Tailplane efficiency  $(1 - d\varepsilon/d\alpha) = 0.95$

When flying at a true airspeed of 100 m/s and an altitude where  $\sigma = 0.7$ , determine for the complete aircraft (i.e. all three surfaces) values for  $\dot{M}_w$  and  $\dot{M}_q$ .  
 (LU 2002)

12. A tailless aircraft has the following characteristics:

Aerodynamic mean chord	$\bar{c} = 3.0$ m
cg position	$h = 0.15\bar{c}$
Aerodynamic centre	$h_0 = 0.30\bar{c}$
Wing area	$S = 24$ m <sup>2</sup>
Lift curve slope	$a = 5.4$ 1/rad

When the aircraft is flying at 200 m/s at sea level calculate  $\dot{M}_w$  and  $\dot{M}_q$ . Where appropriate assume,  $\partial V/\partial U = 0$ ,  $\partial \alpha/\partial U = 0$ ,  $\partial V/\partial W = 0$  and  $\partial \alpha/\partial W = 1/V$ .

When the aircraft is in cruising flight with  $C_L = 0.3$  and  $C_{m_0} = 0.045$  determine a value for  $M_u$ . Assume that  $C_m$  is invariant with forward speed.  
 (LU 2004)

---

## Chapter 14

# Coursework Studies

### 14.1 INTRODUCTION

A number of coursework studies, or assignments, have been prepared for assessing the understanding and ability of graduate students to apply the material to protracted exercises which are intended to reflect real-world practice. The four exercises included in this chapter are typical of the basic evaluations that are undertaken routinely in a professional flight dynamics environment and require the application of much of the material in this book. Further, since the aircraft models are of real aircraft the interested reader may easily expand the scope of the exercises by obtaining additional information and data from the source references. The exercises provide an opportunity for students to develop competence in the essential enabling skills relevant to the areas of flight control, flight dynamics and flight test.

The notational style, theoretical background and other information has been edited such that it is generally consistent with the material in this book, as far as that is possible. However, care should be taken with units as both SI and American Imperial units are used – again reflecting a relatively common situation in industry.

### 14.2 WORKING THE ASSIGNMENTS

Each assignment requires a mix of hand calculation, computational analysis and graph plotting. Any convenient computational tools may be used, but they should be identified in the report. The use of *MATLAB*, or *Program CC*, is essential for these assignments, *MS Excel* may also be found useful for some data manipulation. Each assignment is structured as a set of tasks which should be undertaken sequentially to achieve satisfactory completion of the exercise. To provide experience of the solution process, the tasks are set out in the order in which they must be completed since, in most cases, each task builds on the output of the previous task. Clearly therefore, it is most important that the solution process is undertaken in an orderly way, and that the results of each task are assessed for correctness and validity before moving on to the next task.

### 14.3 REPORTING

Plan and write a short report to summarise and present the results of each assignment and note that accurate presentation of results is important. For example, strip chart plots provide the most convenient illustration format for time history responses. Care should be exercised to show and explain the steps in the working since the overall

objective is to assess understanding, and not the ability to simply process sequential calculations using tools like *MATLAB*, or similar software. Supporting material and calculations may be included in appendices, but note that undocumented computer printout is generally unacceptable.

## ASSIGNMENT 1. STABILITY AUGMENTATION OF THE NORTH AMERICAN X-15 HYPERSONIC RESEARCH AEROPLANE

### INTRODUCTION

The North American X-15 (Heffley and Jewell, 1972), was a hypersonic research aeroplane which first flew in 1960. This rocket powered aeroplane was capable of speeds as high as Mach 6 at up to 300,000 ft altitude. The aeroplane was carried under a B-52 to an altitude of about 45,000 ft from which it was launched at a speed of about Mach 0.8. Following the powered phase of flight, recovery entailed gliding flight to a normal landing – much in the same way as the space shuttle recovery.

The first objective of the assignment is to review the stability and control properties of the aircraft for one typical flight condition. Since the aircraft was fitted with damping augmentation in each axis, the second objective is to design a simple damping augmentation control law for each control axis and to show the improvement in response thereby achieved.

### THE AIRCRAFT MODEL

The aircraft equations of motion are given in the form of the decoupled state equations as follows. The flight condition assumed corresponds with Mach 2.0 at an altitude of 60,000 ft.

The longitudinal state equation,

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -0.00871 & -0.019 & -135 & -32.12 \\ -0.0117 & -0.311 & 1931 & -2.246 \\ 0.000471 & -0.00673 & -0.182 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \\ \theta \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 6.24 \\ -89.2 \\ -9.80 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \delta_e$$

The lateral-directional state equation,

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{\beta} \\ \dot{p} \\ \dot{r} \\ \dot{\phi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -0.127 & 0.0698 & -0.998 & 0.01659 \\ -2.36 & -1.02 & 0.103 & 0 \\ 11.1 & -0.00735 & -0.196 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \beta \\ p \\ r \\ \phi \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -0.00498 & 0.0426 \\ 28.7 & 5.38 \\ 0.993 & -6.90 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \delta_a \\ \delta_r \end{bmatrix}$$

Velocities are given in ft/s, angular velocities in rad/s and angles in rad. ( $g = 32.2 \text{ ft/s}^2$ )

## THE SOLUTION TASKS

- (i) Set up the longitudinal output equation to include the additional variables angle of attack  $\alpha$  and flight path angle  $\gamma$ . Solve the longitudinal equations of motion and obtain a full set of properly annotated transfer functions.
- (ii) Review the longitudinal stability properties of the aeroplane and produce response time histories to best illustrate the longitudinal stability modes. Comment on the likely requirement for stability augmentation.
- (iii) Set up the lateral-directional output equation, solve the lateral-directional equations of motion and obtain a full set of properly annotated transfer functions.
- (iv) Review the lateral-directional stability properties of the aeroplane and produce response time histories to best illustrate the lateral-directional stability modes. Comment on the likely requirement for stability augmentation.
- (v) With the aid of an appropriate root locus plot for each control axis, design three simple damping augmentation control laws. State the design decisions and the expected change to the stability modes clearly. The root locus plots should be annotated appropriately for this purpose.
- (vi) Augment the open loop longitudinal state equation to include the control law, thereby creating the closed loop state equation. Solve the closed loop equations of motion and obtain a full set of properly annotated transfer functions.
- (vii) Augment the open loop lateral-directional state equation to include the control laws, thereby creating the closed loop state equation. Solve the closed loop equations of motion and obtain a full set of properly annotated transfer functions.
- (viii) Compare the longitudinal closed loop stability modes with those of the basic airframe and produce time histories to best illustrate the improvements to the response properties of the aeroplane.
- (ix) Compare the lateral-directional closed loop stability modes with those of the basic airframe and produce time histories to best illustrate the improvements to the response properties of the aeroplane.
- (x) Summarise the flight control system design and state the main changes seen in the augmented aeroplane. Draw simple block diagrams to illustrate the structure of the stability augmentation system.

## REFERENCES

Heffley, R.K. and Jewell, W.F. 1972 *Aircraft Handling Qualities Data*. NASA Contractor Report, NASA CR-2144, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington D.C. 20546.

(CU 2001)

## ASSIGNMENT 2. THE STABILITY AND CONTROL CHARACTERISTICS OF A CIVIL TRANSPORT AEROPLANE WITH RELAXED LONGITUDINAL STATIC STABILITY

### INTRODUCTION

The increasing use of fly-by-wire flight control systems in advanced civil transport aeroplanes has encouraged designers to consider seriously the advantages of relaxing





Aircraft geometric, weight and *cg* information are given as follows:

Weight	$W$	155,000	Lb
Mass	$m$	4814	slug
Moment of inertia in pitch	$I_y$	2,510,000	slug ft <sup>2</sup>
Mean geometric chord ( <i>mgc</i> )	$\bar{c}$	18.94	ft
Wing area	$S_w$	2000	ft <sup>2</sup>
Wing span	$b$	120	ft
Tailplane area	$S_T$	400	ft <sup>2</sup>
Tail moment arm	$l_T$	57	ft
Tailplane trim angle	$\eta_T$	−3.0	degree
<i>cg</i> position (referenced to <i>mgc</i> )	$h$	0.25	
Wing–body aerodynamic center position (referenced to <i>mgc</i> )	$h_0$	0.09	
Thrust line inclination wrt HFD	$i$	3	degree
Thrust moment arm about <i>cg</i>	$l_{tr}$	2	ft

Note that the reference chord given is the mean geometric chord (*mgc*) rather than the more usual mean aerodynamic chord (*mac*), and it may be used in the same way in the calculations. The aircraft is fitted with an all moving tailplane for trim and its trim angle is equivalent to the tailplane setting angle of a fixed tailplane. The longitudinal geometric reference is the horizontal fuselage datum (HFD).

Relevant aerodynamic characteristics at the operating flight condition are:

Total drag coefficient	$C_D$	0.024	
Wing–body aerodynamic pitching moment coefficient	$C_{m_0}$	−0.1	
Wing lift curve slope	$a$	4.8	1/rad
Tailplane lift curve slope	$a_1$	3.75	1/rad
Elevator lift curve slope	$a_2$	0.95	1/rad
Wing downwash at tail	$d\varepsilon/d\alpha$	0.37	

The dimensionless longitudinal aerodynamic stability and control derivatives referred to aircraft wind axes for the flight condition of interest are given as follows:

$X_u$	−0.0485	$Z_q$	−3.7091
$Z_u$	−0.6978	$M_{\dot{w}}$	−2.2387
$M_u$	−0.0055	$M_q$	−5.9983
$X_w$	0.1920		
$Z_w$	−4.8210	$X_\eta$	−0.0001
$M_w$	−0.6492	$Z_\eta$	−0.1456
$Z_{\dot{w}}$	−1.3543	$M_\eta$	−0.4408

## THE GOVERNING TRIM EQUATIONS

Lift forces,

$$L_{total} = L_w + L_T + T \sin(i + \alpha_e) = W$$

Drag forces,

$$D = T \cos(i + \alpha_e)$$

Pitching moment about  $cg$ ,  $M = M_0 + L_w(h - h_0)\bar{c} \cos \alpha_e + D(h - h_0)\bar{c} \sin \alpha_e + Tl_{tr} - L_T l_T$

Tailplane lift coefficient, assuming a symmetric aerofoil section,

$$C_{L_T} = a_1(\alpha_T + \eta_T) + a_2\eta$$

and tailplane angle of attack is given by,

$$\alpha_T = \frac{C_{L_w}}{a} \left( 1 - \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \right)$$

## BASIC AIRCRAFT STABILITY AND CONTROL ANALYSIS

Working with the equations in coefficient form obtain values for the following:

Trim wing-body lift coefficient	$C_{L_w}$
Trim tailplane lift coefficient	$C_{L_T}$
Trim elevator angle	$\eta$
Controls fixed neutral point	$h_n$
Controls fixed static margin	$K_n$

What tailplane trim angle  $\eta_T$  would be required to enable the elevator trim angle to be set at zero?

Set up and solve the equations of motion referred to wind axes and obtain values for the stability modes characteristics. By applying the final value theorem to each of the control transfer functions, assuming a unit step input, obtain estimates for the steady state control sensitivity of the aircraft.

## RELAXING THE STABILITY OF THE AIRCRAFT

The longitudinal static stability of the aircraft is now relaxed by shifting the  $cg$  aft by 12% of the  $mgc$ . In practice this would also be accompanied by design changes to the aerodynamic configuration of the aircraft, especially of the tail geometry. However, for the purpose of this exercise the aerodynamic properties of the aeroplane are assumed to remain unchanged.

Clearly, this change will modify the trim state and it will also modify those aerodynamic stability and control derivatives which have a dependency on tail volume ratio and tail moment arm. Calculate a new value for tail volume ratio and tail moment arm and calculate new values for those derivatives affected by the aft shift in  $cg$  position.

## RELAXED STABILITY AIRCRAFT STABILITY AND CONTROL ANALYSIS

Repeat the computational stability and control exercise for the relaxed stability aircraft to obtain new values for all of the variables defining the stability and control characteristics at the same flight condition.

## EVALUATION OF RESULTS

Tabulate the results of the analyses to facilitate comparison of the unmodified aircraft stability and control characteristics with those of the relaxed stability aircraft. Summarise the observations with particular reference to the advantages and disadvantages of relaxing the stability of a civil transport aircraft. Comment also on the obvious limitations of this exercise and the validity of the estimated variable changes.

## POSTSCRIPT

Do not expect to see dramatic changes in the stability and control characteristics of the aircraft following relaxation of stability by shifting the *cg* aft.

## REFERENCES

Heffley, R.K. and Jewell, W.F. 1972: *Aircraft Handling Qualities Data*. NASA Contractor Report, NASA CR-2144, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington D.C. 20546.

(CU 2001)

## ASSIGNMENT 3. LATERAL-DIRECTIONAL HANDLING QUALITIES DESIGN FOR THE LOCKHEED F-104 STARFIGHTER AIRCRAFT

### INTRODUCTION

The lateral-directional flying qualities of the Lockheed F-104 aircraft are typical of many high performance aircraft. The airframe is not very stable and its stability and control characteristics vary considerably with flight condition. Consequently it is necessary to augment the stability and control characteristics by means of a flight control system. Since the airframe properties vary with flight condition, it is necessary to vary, or schedule, the control system gains with flight condition in order to achieve reasonably even handling qualities over the flight envelope.

The objective of the assignment is to evaluate the lateral-directional stability and control characteristics of the F-104 at three representative Mach numbers at sea level only. With an understanding of the basic unaugmented airframe, the task is then to design a simple command and stability augmentation system to give the aircraft acceptable roll handling characteristics over the Mach number range. This will require proposing suitably simple schedules for the flight control system gains.

## THE AIRCRAFT MODEL

The Lockheed F-104 Starfighter aircraft is a small single engined combat aircraft which first flew in the mid 1950s. The aircraft was supplied to many airforces around the world and remained in service well into the 1970s, and during its service life many variants were developed. The aircraft configuration is typical of the time; a long slender fuselage, low aspect ratio unswept wing and a T tail mounted on a relatively small fin. The airframe is nominally stable at all flight conditions, although the degree of stability is generally unacceptably low. The flying controls are entirely mechanical with a simple three axis stability augmentation system. The aircraft is capable of a little over Mach 1.0 at sea level and as much as Mach 2.0 at high altitude. Data for this exercise was obtained from Heffley and Jewell (1972) and is reasonably accurate, as far as is known.

Note that American imperial units are implied throughout and should be retained in this work. The American sign convention for aileron and rudder control is the reverse of that defined in this book.

The Laplace transform of the lateral-directional equations of motion, referred to a body axis system is given in the following format:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 - y_v & -\frac{W_e s + g \cos \theta_e}{V_e} & \frac{U_e s - g \sin \theta_e}{V_e s} \\ -l_\beta & s(s - l_p) & -l_r \\ -n_\beta & -n_{ps} & s - n_r \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \beta(s) \\ p(s)/s \\ r(s) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} y_\xi & y_\zeta \\ l_\xi & l_\zeta \\ n_\xi & n_\zeta \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \xi(s) \\ \zeta(s) \end{bmatrix}$$

with auxiliary equations

$$\begin{aligned} v(s) &= V_e \beta(s) \\ \phi(s) &= \frac{p(s)}{s} + \frac{r(s)}{s} \tan \theta_e \\ \psi(s) &= \frac{1}{\cos \theta_e} \frac{r(s)}{s} \end{aligned}$$

Note that the derivatives are concise derivatives; they have dimensions and are equivalent to the usual dimensional derivatives divided by mass or inertia terms as appropriate.

Numerical data for the three sea level flight conditions are given in the following table:

*Aerodynamic data for the Lockheed F-104A Starfighter aircraft*

### Trim data

Flight condition			1	2	2
Altitude	$h$	ft	0	0	0
Air density	$\rho_0$	slug/ft <sup>3</sup>	0.00238	0.00238	0.00238
Speed of sound	$a_0$	ft/s	1116.44	1116.44	1116.44
Gravitational constant	$g$	ft/s <sup>2</sup>	32.2	32.2	32.2
Trim Mach number	$M_0$		0.257	0.800	1.100
Trim attitude	$\theta_\varepsilon$	degree	2.30	2.00	1.00

(Continued)

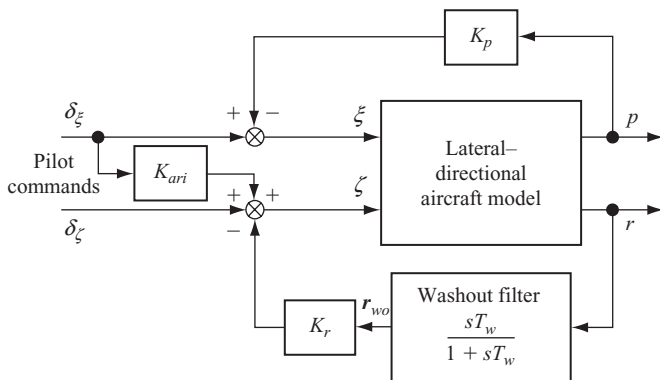
*Aerodynamic data for the Lockheed F-104A Starfighter aircraft (Continued)*

### Concise derivative data

$y_V$	1/s	-0.178	-0.452	-0.791
$l_\beta$	1/s <sup>2</sup>	-20.9	-146.0	-363.0
$n_\beta$	1/s <sup>2</sup>	2.68	13.60	42.70
$l_p$	1/s	-1.38	-4.64	-7.12
$n_p$	1/s	-0.0993	-0.188	-0.341
$l_r$	1/s	1.16	3.67	7.17
$n_r$	1/s	-0.157	-0.498	-1.06
$y_\xi$	1/s	0	0	0
$l_\xi$	1/s <sup>2</sup>	4.76	49.6	81.5
$n_\xi$	1/s <sup>2</sup>	0.266	3.510	6.500
$y_\zeta$	1/s	0.0317	0.0719	0.0621
$l_\zeta$	1/s <sup>2</sup>	5.35	41.50	57.60
$n_\zeta$	1/s <sup>2</sup>	-0.923	-7.070	-8.720

## LATERAL-DIRECTIONAL AUTOSTABILISER STRUCTURE

A typical lateral-directional autostabiliser structure is shown in Fig. 14.2 and is quite representative of the system fitted to the F-104. Note that it is simplified by removing sensor dynamics, artificial feel system dynamics, surface actuator dynamics and various feedback signal filtering. The feedback gains  $K_p$  and  $K_r$  are chosen to augment the lateral-directional stability modes to acceptable levels of stability. The washout filter time constant  $T_w$  is chosen to give the aircraft acceptable steady turning performance. The *aileron-rudder interlink* gain  $K_{ari}$  is chosen to minimise adverse sideslip during the turn entry.



**Figure 14.2** *A simplified lateral–directional autostabiliser.*

## BASIC AIRCRAFT STABILITY AND CONTROL ANALYSIS

- (i) Derive the open loop aircraft state equation which should have the following form:

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(t)$$

where the state vector  $\mathbf{x}(t)^T = [\beta(t) \ p(t) \ r(t) \ \phi(t)]$  and the input vector  $\mathbf{u}(t)^T = [\xi(t) \ \zeta(t)]$ . State clearly any assumptions made.

- (ii) Obtain the response transfer functions from the solution of the state equation for the three flight conditions for which data is provided. Show the transfer functions in factorised form.
- (iii) Obtain time history plots showing the response to a short pulse of aileron and a short pulse of rudder. The plots should be presented in strip chart form showing all four variables for a period of 10 s. The pulse lengths should be chosen to emphasise the dynamics of turn entry.
- (iv) Comment on the stability modes characteristics and their variation over the flight envelope of interest, and identify any deficiencies needing improvement. Comment also on the turn performance of the aircraft and suggest how these might be improved. Remember that the pilot commands a turn using the aileron and only uses the rudder to “tidy” the turn entry.

## AUGMENTING THE STABILITY OF THE AIRCRAFT

- (v) With the aid of the appropriate root locus plots investigate the feedback gains,  $K_p$  and  $K_r$ , required to improve the stability modes characteristics for all three flight conditions. Ignore the washout filter at this stage. Aim to achieve the following closed loop mode characteristics, roll mode time constant of less than 1 s, a stable spiral mode and dutch roll damping  $0.5 > \zeta_d > 0.3$ . Explain why a roll rate feedback gain  $K_p = 0$  is a good solution for the lateral axis at all three flight conditions.
- (vi) It is typical to schedule feedback gains with dynamic pressure ( $Q = \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2$ ) as shown in Fig. 14.3. Plot out the upper and lower limits of the values of  $K_r$  that meet the stability requirements for each flight condition as a function of  $Q$ . Hence design a gain schedule like that shown in Fig. 14.3. State the value of  $K_r$  for each flight condition according to your schedule and confirm that the values

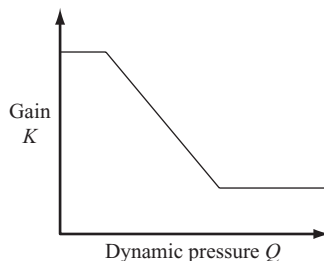


Figure 14.3 A typical gain schedule.

are consistent with your analysis of (iii) and (iv). These are the values that you should use in your subsequent work.

- (vii) With reference to Fig. 14.2, the autostabiliser control law may be written,

$$\mathbf{u}(t) = \mathbf{L}\mathbf{u}_1(t) - \mathbf{K}\mathbf{x}(t)$$

Where  $\mathbf{u}_1(t)^T = [\delta_\xi \ \delta_\zeta]$  is the vector of pilot commands,  $\mathbf{L} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ K_{ari} & 1 \end{bmatrix}$  is the input mixing matrix and  $\mathbf{K}$  is the matrix of feedback gains. Omitting the aileron–rudder interlink for the moment,  $K_{ari} = 0$ , write down the matrices  $\mathbf{K}$  and  $\mathbf{L}$  and calculate the closed loop state equation for all three flight conditions,

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}_1(t)$$

where now, of course, the matrices  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$  are the closed loop versions.

- (viii) Obtain the response transfer functions from the solution of the closed loop state equation developed in (vii) for the three flight conditions for which data is provided. Show the transfer functions in factorised form.
- (ix) Obtain time history plots showing the response to a short pulse of aileron and a short pulse of rudder. Again, the plots should be presented in strip chart form showing all four variables for a period of 10 s. The object here is to show and confirm the improvement in the basic airframe dynamics, the time histories also provide a “baseline” with which to compare the responses developed in the following sections.

## INCLUSION OF THE WASHOUT FILTER IN THE MODEL

- (x) Modify the open loop aircraft state equation derived in (i) to include the additional state variable  $r_{wo}$  introduced by the filter, so that the state vector becomes  $\mathbf{x}(t)^T = [\beta(t) \ p(t) \ r(t) \ \phi(t) \ r_{wo}(t)]$ . Set the washout filter time constant to the typical value of 1 s,  $T_w = 1.0$  s. Obtain the open loop state equation for each of the three flight conditions.
- (xi) Modify the control law derived in (vii) to include the additional washout filter state variable and calculate the closed loop state equation for the three flight conditions. Take care to redefine the feedback matrix  $\mathbf{K}$  correctly and set the aileron–rudder interlink gain to zero as before.
- (xii) Obtain the revised closed loop response transfer functions for the three flight conditions and show the transfer functions in factorised form. What does the addition of the washout filter do to the closed loop stability modes of the aircraft?
- (xiii) Obtain time history plots showing the response to a short pulse of aileron and a short pulse of rudder. Compare the responses with those obtained in (ix) by plotting both sets of time histories on the same axes and, once again, the plots should be presented in strip chart form showing the four aircraft motion variables only.
- (xiv) Identify the differences in the plots and hence explain the purpose of the washout filter. Remember that the object is to review turning performance in response to aileron command. Comment also on the initial transient in sideslip angle.

## DESIGNING THE AILERON–RUDDER INTERLINK GAIN

- (xv) The objective here is to design a suitable value for the interlink gain  $K_{ari}$  for each of the three flight conditions. This may only be done by choosing a test value and including it in the input mixing matrix  $\mathbf{L}$  in the closed loop model developed in (xi), obtaining the transfer functions and observing the response to an aileron command. The correct value of  $K_{ari}$  is the minimum value that will cancel the adverse sideslip response seen in the transient immediately following application of the aileron command. Suitable values of gain lie in the range  $0 < K_{ari} < 0.5$ . Define a simple gain schedule as a function of dynamic pressure  $Q$ .
- (xvi) Write down the fully developed closed loop state equations for all three flight conditions, including now the aileron–rudder interlink gain according to the schedule designed in (xv).
- (xvii) Obtain and show in factorised form the response transfer functions for all three flight conditions. Note any changes due to the inclusion of the aileron–rudder interlink gain.
- (xviii) Demonstrate the turning performance of the F-104 with the fully developed control law by showing the response to an aileron pulse. As before, the response of all four motion variables should be shown in strip chart format.
- (xix) Identify the key attributes of the turning performance as refined by the control law design. In particular explain the response changes due to the aileron–rudder interlink. This will be easier to do if a comparison is made with the responses obtained in (viii).

## REFERENCES

Heffley, R.K. and Jewell, W.F. 1972: *Aircraft Handling Qualities Data*. NASA Contractor Report, NASA CR-2144, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington D.C. 20546.

(CU2002)

## ASSIGNMENT 4. ANALYSIS OF THE EFFECTS OF MACH NUMBER ON THE LONGITUDINAL STABILITY AND CONTROL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE LTV A7-A CORSAIR AIRCRAFT

### INTRODUCTION

The object of the assignment is to analyse, illustrate and explain the effects of compressibility on the longitudinal aerodynamics, stability and control of a typical 1960s combat aeroplane.

### THE AIRCRAFT MODEL

The aircraft chosen for this exercise is the Ling-Temco-Vought (LTV) A7-A Corsair, a carrier based aircraft which first flew in the mid 1960s. The aircraft is typical for its time – a single pilot, single engine aircraft built to withstand the rigours of operating



**Table 14.1** *LTV A-7A Corsair aerodynamic, geometric and flight condition data*

Flight case		1	2	3	4
Altitude	$h$ (ft)	15,000	15,000	15,000	15,000
Mach number	$M_0$	0.3	0.6	0.9	1.1
Air density	$\rho$ (kg/m <sup>3</sup> )	0.7708	0.7708	0.7708	0.7708
Velocity	$V_0$ (m/s)	96.6	193.6	290.2	354.8
Trim body incidence	$\alpha_e$ (deg)	13.3	4.0	2.5	2.9
Trim elevator angle	$\eta_e$ (deg)	−8.80	−3.80	−3.85	−4.95
Trim lift coefficient	$C_L$	0.420	0.200	0.095	0.030
Trim drag coefficient	$C_D$	0.036	0.018	0.020	0.054
	$\partial C_L / \partial \alpha$ (1/rad)	3.90	4.35	5.35	4.80
	$\partial C_D / \partial \alpha$ (1/rad)	1.20	0.30	0.23	0.22
	$\partial C_m / \partial \alpha$ (1/rad)	−0.48	−0.44	−0.59	−1.08
	$\partial C_m / \partial q$	−0.0664	−0.0337	−0.0231	−0.0188
	$\partial C_L / \partial M$	0.030	0.012	0.058	0.047
	$\partial C_D / \partial M$	0.054	0	0.090	−0.013
	$\partial C_m / \partial M$	0	0.0010	−0.0360	−0.0055
	$\partial C_L / \partial \eta$ (1/rad)	0.585	0.600	0.550	0.400
	$\partial C_m / \partial \eta$ (1/rad)	−0.89	−0.91	−0.89	−0.63
	$d\varepsilon / \alpha$	0.179	0.202	0.246	−0.247
Mass	$m$ (kg)	9924	9924	9924	9924
Pitch inertia	$I_y$ (kg m <sup>2</sup> )	79946	79946	79946	79946
cg position	$h$	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3
Wing area	$S$ (m <sup>2</sup> )	34.84	34.84	34.84	34.84
Mean chord	$\bar{c}$ (m)	3.29	3.29	3.29	3.29
Tail moment arm	$l_T$ (m)	5.5	5.5	5.5	5.5

The aerodynamic data is referenced to an aircraft wind axis system.

from a carrier deck. The airframe is nominally stable at all flight conditions, although the degree of stability is generally unacceptably low. Consequently the aircraft is fitted with a simple three axis stability augmentation system. The aircraft is capable of speeds up to approximately Mach 1.2, and four data sets covering the full Mach number range at an altitude of 15,000 ft are given in Teper (1969). The data for this exercise was obtained directly, or derived, from that given in Teper (1969), it is listed in Table 14.1 and has been adjusted to a consistent set of units, with the exception of altitude which is retained in ft units. Be aware that some variables are given for information only and are not required in the calculations.

THE ASSIGNMENT TASKS

*All assumptions made should be very clearly stated*

ASSEMBLING THE DERIVATIVES

Using simple mathematical approximations for the longitudinal stability and control derivatives together with the data given in Table 14.1, calculate values for

**Table 14.2** *LTV A-7A Corsair aerodynamic stability and control summary*

Flight case		1	2	3	4
Altitude	$h$ (ft)	15,000	15,000	15,000	15,000
Mach number	$M_0$	0.3	0.6	0.9	1.1
Air density	$\rho$ (kg/m <sup>3</sup> )	0.7708	0.7708	0.7708	0.7708
Velocity	$V_0$ (m/s)	96.6	193.6	290.2	354.8
Trim body incidence	$\alpha_e$ (deg)	13.3	4.0	2.5	2.9
Trim elevator angle	$\eta_e$ (deg)	−8.80	−3.80	−3.85	−4.95
Trim lift coefficient	$C_L$	0.420	0.200	0.095	0.030
Trim drag coefficient	$C_D$	0.036	0.018	0.020	0.054

*Dimensionless aerodynamic stability and control derivatives referred to wind axes*

$X_u$					
$X_w$					
$X_q$	0	0	0	0	
$X_{\dot{w}}$	0	0	0	0	
$Z_u$					
$Z_w$					
$Z_q$					
$Z_{\dot{w}}$					
$M_u$					
$M_w$					
$M_q$					
$M_{\dot{w}}$					
$X_\eta$	0	0	0	0	
$Z_\eta$					
$M_\eta$					

*Aircraft geometric, mass and inertia data*

Mass	$m$ (kg)	9924	9924	9924	9924
Pitch inertia	$I_y$ (kg/m <sup>2</sup> )	79946	79946	79946	79946
Wing area	$S$ (m <sup>2</sup> )	34.84	34.84	34.84	34.84
Mean chord	$\bar{c}$ (m)	3.29	3.29	3.29	3.29
Tail moment arm	$l_T$ (m)	5.5	5.5	5.5	5.5

*Aircraft stability and control parameters*

cg position	$h$	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3
Static margin – controls fixed	$K_n$				
Neutral point – controls fixed	$h_n$				
Longitudinal relative density factor	$\mu_1$				
Manoeuvre margin – controls fixed	$H_m$				
Manoeuvre point – controls fixed	$h_m$				

the dimensionless derivatives, static and manoeuvre stability parameters and hence complete Table 14.2 for all four flight conditions. Note that the usual tailplane approximation for the derivatives  $M_q$ ,  $M_\eta$  and  $Z_\eta$  is not assumed. These derivatives should be calculated from first principles, for example, in the same way as  $M_u$  and  $Z_w$ .

## SOLVING THE EQUATIONS OF MOTION

Writing the longitudinal state equation thus  $\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}'\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{B}'\mathbf{u}$ , write down the matrices  $\mathbf{M}$ ,  $\mathbf{A}'$  and  $\mathbf{B}'$  in algebraic form stating the elements in terms of dimensionless derivatives. In the interests of simplicity, the equations of motion should be referred to aircraft wind axes. Hence, obtain the aircraft response transfer functions for each of the four flight conditions.

## ASSESSING THE DYNAMIC STABILITY CHARACTERISTICS

Tabulate the closed loop longitudinal stability modes characteristics for each of the four flight conditions. Produce response time histories which best show the stability modes dynamics for the unaugmented aircraft for all flight conditions. Assess the stability modes against the requirements for Level 1 flying qualities.

## STABILITY AUGMENTATION

Assuming a simple pitch damping stability augmentation system and with the aid of root locus plots, design values for pitch rate feedback gain  $K_q$  in order to achieve a short period mode damping ratio of about  $0.5 \sim 0.7$  for each of the four flight conditions. Calculate the closed loop state equations and hence obtain the response transfer functions for the augmented aircraft. Tabulate the closed loop longitudinal stability modes characteristics for each of the four flight conditions. Produce response time histories which best show the stability modes dynamics for the augmented aircraft. It is most helpful if the response time histories for the previous tasks are plotted on the same axes for comparison purposes.

## ASSESSING THE EFFECTS OF MACH NUMBER

Plot the following parameters against Mach number:  $C_L$ ,  $C_D$ ,  $\alpha_e$ ,  $\eta_e$ ,  $K_n$ ,  $H_m$ ,  $Z_\eta$ ,  $M_\eta$  and  $K_q$ . Plot also the stability modes change with Mach number for both the unaugmented and augmented aircraft on the  $s$ -plane. Discuss and explain briefly the effect of Mach number on the following:

- Static stability and trim
- Dynamic stability and response
- Elevator control characteristics
- Feedback gain schedule.

## REFERENCES

Teper, G.L. 1969: *Aircraft Stability and Control Data*. Systems Technology, Inc., STI Technical Report 176-1, NASA Contractor Report, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington D.C. 20546.

(CU 2003)

---

# Appendix 1

## AeroTrim - A Symmetric Trim Calculator for Subsonic Flight Conditions

*A Mathcad programme written by M.V. Cook, version date August 15, 2006.*  
*Given the operating condition and some basic geometric and aerodynamic data for a conventional aircraft this programme will calculate an estimate of the symmetric trim state of the aircraft for a chosen airspeed range . The programme is limited to subsonic flight in the troposphere only. However, the programme may be developed easily for application to a wider range of operating conditions and aircraft configurations. Data given are best estimates for the Cranfield Jetstream laboratory aircraft.*

### 1. Aircraft flight condition

*(Insert values to define aircraft operating condition)*

Altitude (ft)	$ht := 6562$	Convert to m	$ht := 0.3048 \cdot ht$
Aircraft mass (kg)	$m := 6300$		
cg position (%)	$h := 0.29$		
Flight path angle (deg)	$\gamma_e := 0$	Convert to rad	$\gamma_e := \frac{\gamma_e}{57.3}$
Gravity constant (m/s <sup>2</sup> )	$g := 9.81$		

### 2. Air density calculation

*Valid for troposphere only - up to 36,000 ft*

Gas constant (Nm/kgK)	$R := 287.05$		
Lapse rate (K/m)	$lr := -0.0065$		
Temperature (K)	$Temp := 288.16 + lr \cdot ht$	Check results	
Air density (kg/m <sup>3</sup> )	$\rho := 1.225 \left( \frac{Temp}{288.16} \right)^{-[(\frac{g}{lr \cdot R}) + 1]}$	Temp = 275.15	
		$\rho = 1.006$	
Density ratio	$\sigma := \frac{\rho}{1.225}$	$\sigma = 0.822$	

### 3. Set up velocity range for computations

*Note that true airspeed is assumed unless otherwise stated*

Counter	$i := 0..10$
(Set counter to number of velocity test points required)	
True airspeed range (knots)	$V_{knots_i} := 100 + 15 \cdot i$
(Set initial velocity and velocity increment as required)	
True airspeed (m/s)	$V_i := V_{knots_i} \cdot 0.515$
Equivalent airspeed (knots)	$V_{eas_i} := V_{knots_i} \cdot \sqrt{\sigma}$

4. Aircraft geometry - constant

*(Insert values defined by aircraft geometry)*

**Wing geometry**

Wing area ( $m^2$ )	$S := 25.08$
Wing span (m)	$b := 15.85$
Wing mean chord (m)	$c_w := 1.716$
Sweep $1/4c_w$ (deg)	$\Lambda := 0$
$z$ coordinate of $1/4c_w$ point above(−ve) or below(+ve) ox body axis (m)	$z_w := 0.45$

Wing rigging angle (deg)	$\alpha_{wr} := 1.0$	<b>Convert to rad</b>	$\alpha_{wr} := \frac{\alpha_{wr}}{57.3}$
--------------------------	----------------------	-----------------------	---

**Tailplane geometry**

Tailplane area ( $m^2$ )	$S_T := 7.79$
Tailplane span (m)	$b_T := 6.6$
Tail arm, $1/4c_w$ to $1/4c_t$ (m)	$l_t := 6.184$
$z$ coordinate of $1/4c_w$ point above(−ve) or below(+ve) ox body axis (m)	$z_T := -1.435$

Tail setting angle (deg)	$\eta_T := 1.5$	<b>Convert to rad</b>	$\eta_T := \frac{\eta_T}{57.3}$
--------------------------	-----------------	-----------------------	---------------------------------

Fuselage diameter or width (m)	$F_d := 1.981$
--------------------------------	----------------

**Engine installation**

Thrust line $z$ coordinate above(−ve) or below(+ve) ox body axis (m)	$z_\tau := 0.312$
---	-------------------

Engine thrust line angle (deg) relative to ox body axis (+nose up)	$\kappa := 0$	<b>Convert to rad</b>	$\kappa := \frac{\kappa}{57.3}$
---	---------------	-----------------------	---------------------------------

5. Wing-body aerodynamics

*(Insert values defined by the installed wing aerodynamic design)*

Wing-body $C_L$ - $\alpha$ (per rad)	$a := 5.19$
Maximum lift coefficient	$C_{Lmax} := 1.37$
Zero lift pitching moment	$C_{m0} := -0.0711$
Zero lift drag coefficient	$C_{D0} := 0.03$
Zero lift angle of attack (deg)	$\alpha_{w0} := -2$
Wing-body aero centre	$h_0 := -0.08$

<b>Convert to rad</b>	$\alpha_{w0} := \frac{\alpha_{w0}}{57.3}$
-----------------------	---

## 6. Tailplane aerodynamics

(Insert values defined by the tailplane aerodynamic design)

Tailplane  $C_L$ - $\alpha$  (per rad)  $a_1 := 3.2$

Elevator  $C_L$ - $\eta$  (per rad)  $a_2 := 2.414$

Zero lift downwash angle (deg)  $\varepsilon_0 := 2.0$  **Convert to rads**  $\varepsilon_0 := \frac{\varepsilon_0}{57.3}$

## 7. Wing and tailplane calculations

Aspect ratio  $Ar := \frac{b^2}{S}$

Wing semi-span (m)  $s := \frac{b}{2}$

Tail arm, cg to  $1/4c_t$  (m)  $l_T := l_t - c_w \cdot (h - 0.25)$

Tail volume  $V_T := \frac{S_T \cdot l_T}{S c_w}$

**Check results**

$Ar = 10.017$

$s = 7.925$

$l_T = 6.115$

$V_T = 1.107$

## 8. Downwash at tail

Ref:-Stribling, C.B. 1984: "Basic Aerodynamics", Butterworth Ltd, 1984.

Tail position relative to wing  $x := \frac{l_t}{b}$   $z := \frac{z_w - z_T}{b}$   
(% of span)

$$d_{\varepsilon\alpha} = \frac{a}{\pi^2 \cdot Ar} \sum_{f_i=5}^{85} \frac{0.5 \cos\left(\frac{f_i \cdot \pi}{180}\right)^2}{\sqrt{x^2 + \left(0.5 \cos\left(\frac{f_i \cdot \pi}{180}\right)\right)^2 + z^2}} \cdot \left[ \frac{x + \sqrt{x^2 + \left(0.5 \cos\left(\frac{f_i \cdot \pi}{180}\right)\right)^2 + z^2}}{\left(0.5 \cos\left(\frac{f_i \cdot \pi}{180}\right)\right)^2 + z^2} + \frac{x}{(x^2 + z^2)} \right] \frac{\pi}{180}$$

**Check result**  $d_{\varepsilon\alpha} = 0.279$

## 9. Induced drag factor

Ref:-Shevell, R.S. 1983: "Fundamentals of Flight", 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Prentice Hall Inc., 1983.

Drag polar is defined,  $C_D = C_{D0} + KC_L^2$ , where  $K$  is the induced drag factor.

Fuselage drag factor  $s_d := 0.9998 + 0.0421 \cdot \left(\frac{F_d}{b}\right) - 2.6286 \cdot \left(\frac{F_d}{b}\right)^2 + 2.000 \cdot \left(\frac{F_d}{b}\right)^3$

Empirical constant  $k_D := -3.333 \cdot 10^{-4} \cdot \Lambda^2 + 6.667 \cdot 10^{-5} \cdot \Lambda + 0.38$  **Check results**

Oswald efficiency factor  $e := \frac{1}{\pi \cdot Ar \cdot k_D \cdot C_{D0} + \frac{1}{(0.99 \cdot s_d)}}$   $s_d = 0.968$   
 $k_D = 0.38$

Induced drag factor  $K := \frac{1}{\pi \cdot Ar \cdot e}$   $e = 0.713$   
 $K = 0.045$

**10. Basic performance parameters**

$$\text{Minimum drag speed (knots)} \quad V_{\text{md}} := \left[ \left( \sqrt{\frac{2 \cdot m \cdot g}{\rho \cdot S}} \right) \left( \frac{K}{C_{D0}} \right)^{0.25} \right] \cdot \frac{1}{0.515}$$

$$\text{Equivalent minimum drag speed (knots)} \quad V_{\text{mdeas}} := V_{\text{md}} \cdot \sqrt{\sigma}$$

$$\text{Stall speed (knots)} \quad V_{\text{stall}} := \sqrt{\frac{2 \cdot m \cdot g}{\rho \cdot S \cdot C_{L\text{max}}}} \cdot \frac{1}{0.515}$$

$$\text{Equivalent stall speed (knots)} \quad V_{\text{stalleas}} := V_{\text{stall}} \cdot \sqrt{\sigma}$$

$$\text{Neutral point} \quad h_n := h_0 + V_T \cdot \frac{a_1}{a} \cdot (1 - d_{\epsilon\alpha})$$

- controls fixed

$$\text{Static margin} \quad K_n := h_n - h$$

- controls fixed

**11. Trim calculation**

The trim computation finds the trim condition for each speed defined in the speed range table and for the flight condition defined in paragraph 1.

Initial seed values for solve block

$$C_L := 0.7 \quad C_{LW} := 0.5 \quad C_D := 0.02 \quad C_\tau := 0.4 \quad \alpha_e := 0.1 \quad C_{LT} := 0.1$$

Trim solve block

Given

$$\text{Total axial force} \quad 2 \frac{m \cdot g}{\rho \cdot (V)^2 \cdot S} \cdot \sin(\alpha_e + \gamma_e) = C_\tau \cdot \cos(\kappa) - C_D \cdot \cos(\alpha_e) + C_L \cdot \sin(\alpha_e)$$

(ox body axis)

$$\text{Total normal force} \quad 2 \frac{m \cdot g}{\rho \cdot (V)^2 \cdot S} \cdot \cos(\alpha_e + \gamma_e) = C_L \cdot \cos(\alpha_e) + C_D \cdot \sin(\alpha_e) + C_\tau \cdot \sin(\kappa)$$

oz body axis)

$$\text{Pitching moment} \quad 0 = [C_{m0} + (h - h_0) \cdot C_{LW}] - V_T \cdot C_{LT} + C_\tau \cdot \frac{z_\tau}{c_w}$$

(about cg)

$$\text{Total lift coefficient} \quad C_L = C_{LW} + C_{LT} \cdot \frac{S_T}{S}$$

$$\text{Total drag coefficient} \quad C_D = C_{D0} + K \cdot C_L^2$$

$$\text{Wing/body lift} \quad C_{LW} = a \cdot (\alpha_e + \alpha_{wT} - \alpha_{w0})$$

coefficient

$$\text{Trim}(V) := \text{Find}(\alpha_e, C_\tau, C_D, C_{LT}, C_{LW}, C_L)$$

End of trim solve block

### 12. Trim variables calculation

$$\alpha_{e_i} := \text{Trim}(V_i)_0 \quad C_{\tau_i} := \text{Trim}(V_i)_1 \quad C_{D_i} := \text{Trim}(V_i)_2$$

$$C_{LT_i} := \text{Trim}(V_i)_3 \quad C_{LW_i} := \text{Trim}(V_i)_4 \quad C_{L_i} := \text{Trim}(V_i)_5$$

**Wing incidence**  $\alpha_{w_i} := \alpha_{e_i} + \alpha_{wr}$

**Trim elevator angle**  $\eta_{e_i} := \frac{C_{LT_i}}{a_2} - \frac{a_1}{a_2} \cdot [\alpha_{w_i} \cdot (1 - d_{\epsilon\alpha}) + \eta_T - \alpha_{wr} - \epsilon_0]$

**Pitch attitude**  $\theta_{e_i} := \gamma_e + \alpha_{w_i} - \alpha_{wr}$

**Tail angle of attack**  $\alpha_{T_i} := \alpha_{w_i}(1 - d_{\epsilon\alpha}) + \eta_T - \epsilon_0 - \alpha_{wr}$

**Lift to drag ratio**  $LD_i := \frac{C_{LW_i}}{C_{D_i}}$

### 13. Conversions of angles to degrees

$$\alpha_{w_i} := \alpha_{w_i} \cdot 57.3 \quad \alpha_{e_i} := \alpha_{e_i} \cdot 57.3 \quad \theta_{e_i} := \theta_{e_i} \cdot 57.3$$

$$\alpha_{T_i} := \alpha_{T_i} \cdot 57.3 \quad \eta_{e_i} := \eta_{e_i} \cdot 57.3 \quad \gamma_e := \gamma_e \cdot 57.3$$

### 14. Total trim forces acting on aircraft

**Total lift force (N)**  $L_i := 0.5 \cdot \rho \cdot (V_i)^2 \cdot S \cdot C_{L_i}$

**Total drag force (N)**  $D_i := 0.5 \cdot \rho \cdot (V_i)^2 \cdot S \cdot C_{D_i}$

**Total thrust (N)**  $T_i := 0.5 \cdot \rho \cdot (V_i)^2 \cdot S \cdot C_{\tau_i}$



SUMMARY RESULTS OF TRIM CALCULATION

15. Definition of flight condition

Aircraft weight (N)	$m \cdot g = 6.18 \cdot 10^4$	Minimum drag speed (knots)	$V_{md} = 150.012$
Altitude (ft)	$ht \cdot 3.281 = 6.562 \cdot 10^3$	Equivalent minimum drag speed (knots)	$V_{mdeas} = 135.97$
Flight path angle (deg)	$\gamma_e = 0$	Stall speed (knots)	$V_{stall} = 116.092$
cg position (% $c_w$ )	$h = 0.29$	Equivalent stall speed (knots)	$V_{stalleas} = 105.225$
Neutral point - controls fixed	$h_n = 0.412$	Static margin - controls fixed	$K_n = 0.122$

16. Trim conditions as a function of aircraft velocity

Angles in degrees, velocity in m/s, forces in N except where indicated otherwise

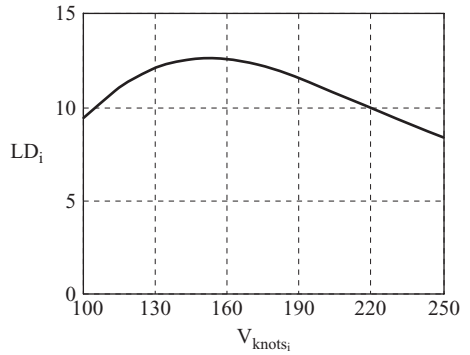
$V_{knotsi}$	$V_i$	$C_{Li}$	$C_{Di}$	$C_{Lw_i}$	$C_{LT_i}$	$LD_i$	$C_{\tau_i}$	$\alpha_{w_i}$	$\alpha_{c_i}$	$\theta_{c_i}$	$\alpha_{T_i}$	$\eta_{c_i}$
100	51.5	1.799	0.174	1.64	0.514	9.409	0.181	16.105	15.105	15.105	10.107	-1.208
115	59.225	1.374	0.114	1.258	0.375	11.017	0.116	11.885	10.885	10.885	7.066	-0.46
130	66.95	1.081	0.082	0.994	0.282	12.106	0.083	8.97	7.97	7.97	4.965	0.1
145	74.675	0.872	0.064	0.805	0.215	12.603	0.064	6.885	5.885	5.885	3.462	0.521
160	82.4	0.717	0.053	0.665	0.167	12.573	0.053	5.346	4.346	4.346	2.353	0.842
175	90.125	0.6	0.046	0.56	0.13	12.154	0.046	4.181	3.181	3.181	1.513	1.091
190	97.85	0.51	0.042	0.478	0.102	11.496	0.042	3.277	2.277	2.277	0.862	1.287
205	105.575	0.438	0.039	0.413	0.08	10.72	0.039	2.564	1.564	1.564	0.348	1.444
220	113.3	0.381	0.036	0.361	0.063	9.912	0.036	1.99	0.99	0.99	-0.066	1.572
235	121.025	0.334	0.035	0.319	0.048	9.123	0.035	1.523	0.523	0.523	-0.403	1.677
250	128.75	0.295	0.034	0.284	0.036	8.383	0.034	1.136	0.136	0.136	-0.681	1.764

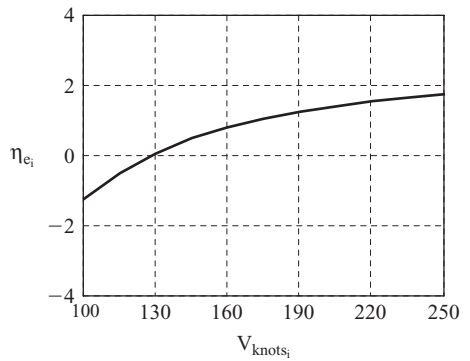
$V_{knotsi}$	$V_i$	$L_i$	$D_i$	$T_i$
100	51.5	$6.023 \cdot 10^4$	$5.834 \cdot 10^3$	$6.042 \cdot 10^3$
115	59.225	$6.083 \cdot 10^4$	$5.053 \cdot 10^3$	$5.146 \cdot 10^3$
130	66.95	$6.115 \cdot 10^4$	$4.643 \cdot 10^3$	$4.688 \cdot 10^3$
145	74.675	$6.134 \cdot 10^4$	$4.494 \cdot 10^3$	$4.518 \cdot 10^3$
160	82.4	$6.146 \cdot 10^4$	$4.535 \cdot 10^3$	$4.548 \cdot 10^3$
175	90.125	$6.154 \cdot 10^4$	$4.722 \cdot 10^3$	$4.729 \cdot 10^3$
190	97.85	$6.16 \cdot 10^4$	$5.025 \cdot 10^3$	$5.029 \cdot 10^3$
205	105.575	$6.165 \cdot 10^4$	$5.424 \cdot 10^3$	$5.426 \cdot 10^3$
220	113.3	$6.17 \cdot 10^4$	$5.907 \cdot 10^3$	$5.908 \cdot 10^3$
235	121.025	$6.174 \cdot 10^4$	$5.465 \cdot 10^3$	$6.465 \cdot 10^3$
250	128.75	$6.179 \cdot 10^4$	$5.089 \cdot 10^3$	$7.089 \cdot 10^3$

# 17. Some useful trim plots

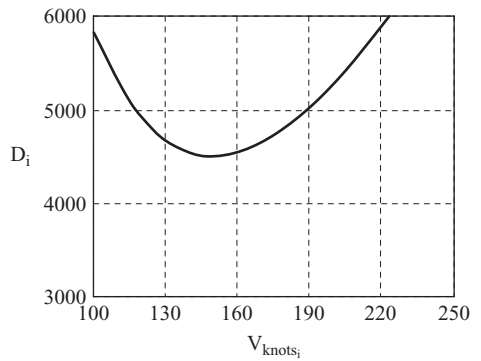
life to drag ratio variation with true airspeed



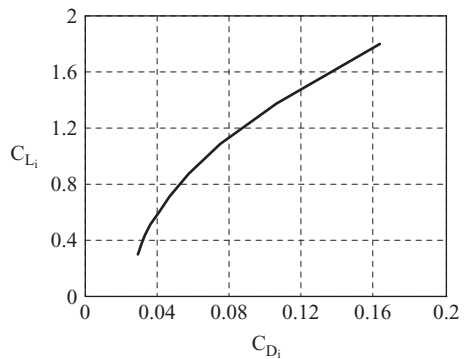
Elevator angle (deg) to trim with true airspeed



Total drag (N) variation with true airspeed



Drag polar



- End of programme -

---

## Appendix 2

# Definitions of Aerodynamic Stability and Control Derivatives

### Notes

- (i) The derivatives given in Tables A2.5–A2.8 are all referred to *generalised body axes* and,  $U_e = V_0 \cos \theta_e$  and  $W_e = V_0 \sin \theta_e$ . In the particular case when the derivatives are referred to wind axes  $\theta_e = 0$  and the following simplifications can be made,  $U_e = V_0$ ,  $W_e = 0$ ,  $\sin \theta_e = 0$  and  $\cos \theta_e = 1$ .
- (ii) The equivalent algebraic expressions in Tables A2.5–A2.8 were derived with the aid of the computer program *Mathcad* which includes a facility for symbolic calculation.
- (iii) In Tables A2.5–A2.8 normalised mass and inertias are used which are defined as follows:

$$m' = \frac{m}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S}$$

$$I'_x = \frac{I_x}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S b}$$

$$I'_y = \frac{I_y}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S \bar{c}}$$

$$I'_z = \frac{I_z}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S b}$$

$$I'_{xz} = \frac{I_{xz}}{\frac{1}{2} \rho V_0 S b}$$

**Table A2.1** Longitudinal aerodynamic stability derivatives

<i>Dimensionless</i>	<i>Multiplier</i>	<i>Dimensional</i>
$X_u$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S$	$\overset{\circ}{X}_u$
$X_w$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S$	$\overset{\circ}{X}_w$
$X_{\dot{w}}$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho S \bar{c}$	$\overset{\circ}{X}_{\dot{w}}$
$X_q$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S \bar{c}$	$\overset{\circ}{X}_q$
$Z_u$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S$	$\overset{\circ}{Z}_u$
$Z_w$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S$	$\overset{\circ}{Z}_w$
$Z_{\dot{w}}$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho S \bar{c}$	$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{\dot{w}}$
$Z_q$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S \bar{c}$	$\overset{\circ}{Z}_q$
$M_u$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S \bar{c}$	$\overset{\circ}{M}_u$
$M_w$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S \bar{c}$	$\overset{\circ}{M}_w$
$M_{\dot{w}}$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho S \bar{c}^2$	$\overset{\circ}{M}_{\dot{w}}$
$M_q$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S \bar{c}^2$	$\overset{\circ}{M}_q$

**Table A2.2** Longitudinal control derivatives

<i>Dimensionless</i>	<i>Multiplier</i>	<i>Dimensional</i>
$X_\eta$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S$	$\overset{\circ}{X}_\eta$
$Z_\eta$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S$	$\overset{\circ}{Z}_\eta$
$M_\eta$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S \bar{c}$	$\overset{\circ}{M}_\eta$
$X_\tau$	1	$\overset{\circ}{X}_\tau$
$Z_\tau$	1	$\overset{\circ}{Z}_\tau$
$M_\tau$	$\bar{c}$	$\overset{\circ}{M}_\tau$

**Table A2.3** Lateral aerodynamic stability derivatives

Dimensionless	Multiplier	Dimensional
$Y_v$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S$	$\overset{\circ}{Y}_v$
$Y_p$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S b$	$\overset{\circ}{Y}_p$
$Y_r$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S b$	$\overset{\circ}{Y}_r$
$L_v$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S b$	$\overset{\circ}{L}_v$
$L_p$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S b^2$	$\overset{\circ}{L}_p$
$L_r$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S b^2$	$\overset{\circ}{L}_r$
$N_v$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S b$	$\overset{\circ}{N}_v$
$N_p$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S b^2$	$\overset{\circ}{N}_p$
$N_r$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S b^2$	$\overset{\circ}{N}_r$

**Table A2.4** Lateral aerodynamic control derivatives

Dimensionless	Multiplier	Dimensional
$Y_\xi$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S$	$\overset{\circ}{Y}_\xi$
$L_\xi$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S b$	$\overset{\circ}{L}_\xi$
$N_\xi$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S b$	$\overset{\circ}{N}_\xi$
$Y_\zeta$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S$	$\overset{\circ}{Y}_\zeta$
$L_\zeta$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S b$	$\overset{\circ}{L}_\zeta$
$N_\zeta$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0^2 S b$	$\overset{\circ}{N}_\zeta$

**Table A2.5** Concise longitudinal aerodynamic stability derivatives

Concise derivative	Equivalent expressions in terms of dimensional derivatives	Equivalent expressions in terms of dimensionless derivatives
$x_u$	$\frac{\dot{X}_u}{m} + \frac{\dot{X}_{\dot{w}}\dot{Z}_u}{m(m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}})}$	$\frac{X_u}{m'} + \frac{\frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}X_{\dot{w}}Z_u}{m'(m' - \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}Z_{\dot{w}})}$
$z_u$	$\frac{\dot{Z}_u}{m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}}}$	$\frac{Z_u}{m' - \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}Z_{\dot{w}}}$
$m_u$	$\frac{\dot{M}_u}{I_y} + \frac{\dot{Z}_u\dot{M}_{\dot{w}}}{I_y(m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}})}$	$\frac{M_u}{I_y'} + \frac{\frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}M_{\dot{w}}Z_u}{I_y'(m' - \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}Z_{\dot{w}})}$
$x_w$	$\frac{\dot{X}_w}{m} + \frac{\dot{X}_{\dot{w}}\dot{Z}_w}{m(m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}})}$	$\frac{X_w}{m'} + \frac{\frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}X_{\dot{w}}Z_w}{m'(m' - \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}Z_{\dot{w}})}$
$z_w$	$\frac{\dot{Z}_w}{m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}}}$	$\frac{Z_w}{m' - \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}Z_{\dot{w}}}$
$m_w$	$\frac{\dot{M}_w}{I_y} + \frac{\dot{Z}_w\dot{M}_{\dot{w}}}{I_y(m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}})}$	$\frac{M_w}{I_y'} + \frac{\frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}M_{\dot{w}}Z_w}{I_y'(m' - \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}Z_{\dot{w}})}$
$x_q$	$\frac{(\dot{X}_q - mW_e)}{m} + \frac{(\dot{Z}_q + mU_e)\dot{X}_{\dot{w}}}{m(m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}})}$	$\frac{\bar{c}X_q - m'W_e}{m'} + \frac{(\bar{c}Z_q + m'U_e)\frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}X_{\dot{w}}}{m'(m' - \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}Z_{\dot{w}})}$
$z_q$	$\frac{(\dot{Z}_q + mU_e)}{m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}}}$	$\frac{\bar{c}Z_q + m'U_e}{m' - \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}Z_{\dot{w}}}$
$m_q$	$\frac{\dot{M}_q}{I_y} + \frac{(\dot{Z}_q + mU_e)\dot{M}_{\dot{w}}}{I_y(m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}})}$	$\frac{\bar{c}M_q}{I_y'} + \frac{(\bar{c}Z_q + m'U_e)\frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}M_{\dot{w}}}{I_y'(m' - \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}Z_{\dot{w}})}$
$x_\theta$	$-g \cos \theta_e - \frac{\dot{X}_{\dot{w}}g \sin \theta_e}{m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}}}$	$-g \cos \theta_e - \frac{\frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}X_{\dot{w}}g \sin \theta_e}{m' - \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}Z_{\dot{w}}}$
$z_\theta$	$-\frac{mg \sin \theta_e}{m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}}}$	$-\frac{m'g \sin \theta_e}{m' - \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}Z_{\dot{w}}}$
$m_\theta$	$-\frac{\dot{M}_{\dot{w}}mg \sin \theta_e}{I_y(m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}})}$	$-\frac{\frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}M_{\dot{w}}m'g \sin \theta_e}{I_y'(m' - \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0}Z_{\dot{w}})}$

**Table A2.6** Concise longitudinal control derivatives

Concise derivative	Equivalent expressions in terms of dimensional derivatives	Equivalent expressions in terms of dimensionless derivatives
$x_\eta$	$\frac{\dot{X}_\eta}{m} + \frac{\dot{X}_{\dot{w}}\dot{Z}_\eta}{m\left(m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}}\right)}$	$\frac{V_0 X_\eta}{m'} + \frac{\frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0} X_{\dot{w}} Z_\eta}{m' \left(m' - \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0} Z_{\dot{w}}\right)}$
$z_\eta$	$\frac{\dot{Z}_\eta}{m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}}}$	$\frac{V_0 Z_\eta}{m' - \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0} Z_{\dot{w}}}$
$m_\eta$	$\frac{\dot{M}_\eta}{I_y} + \frac{\dot{M}_{\dot{w}}\dot{Z}_\eta}{I_y\left(m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}}\right)}$	$\frac{V_0 M_\eta}{I'_y} + \frac{\bar{\bar{c}} M_{\dot{w}} Z_\eta}{I'_y \left(m' - \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0} Z_{\dot{w}}\right)}$
$x_\tau$	$\frac{\dot{X}_\tau}{m} + \frac{\dot{X}_{\dot{w}}\dot{Z}_\tau}{m\left(m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}}\right)}$	$\frac{V_0 X_\tau}{m'} + \frac{\frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0} X_{\dot{w}} Z_\tau}{m' \left(m' - \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0} Z_{\dot{w}}\right)}$
$z_\tau$	$\frac{\dot{Z}_\tau}{m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}}}$	$\frac{V_0 Z_\tau}{m' - \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0} Z_{\dot{w}}}$
$m_\tau$	$\frac{\dot{M}_\tau}{I_y} + \frac{\dot{M}_{\dot{w}}\dot{Z}_\tau}{I_y\left(m - \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}}\right)}$	$\frac{V_0 M_\tau}{I'_y} + \frac{\bar{\bar{c}} M_{\dot{w}} Z_\tau}{I'_y \left(m' - \frac{\bar{\bar{c}}}{V_0} Z_{\dot{w}}\right)}$

**Table A2.7** Concise lateral aerodynamic stability derivatives

Concise derivative	Equivalent expressions in terms of dimensional derivatives	Equivalent expressions in terms of dimensionless derivatives
$y_v$	$\frac{\dot{Y}_v}{m}$	$\frac{Y_v}{m'}$
$y_p$	$\frac{\dot{Y}_p + mW_e}{m}$	$\frac{(bY_p + m'W_e)}{m'}$
$y_r$	$\frac{(\dot{Y}_r - mU_e)}{m}$	$\frac{(bY_r - m'U_e)}{m'}$
$y_\phi$	$g \cos \theta_e$	$g \cos \theta_e$
$y_\psi$	$g \sin \theta_e$	$g \sin \theta_e$
$l_v$	$\frac{(I_z \dot{L}_v + I_{xz} \dot{N}_v)}{(I_x I_z - I_{xz}^2)}$	$\frac{(I'_z L_v + I'_{xz} N_v)}{(I'_x I'_z - I_{xz}^2)}$
$l_p$	$\frac{(I_z \dot{L}_p + I_{xz} \dot{N}_p)}{(I_x I_z - I_{xz}^2)}$	$\frac{(I'_z L_p + I'_{xz} N_p)}{(I'_x I'_z - I_{xz}^2)}$
$l_r$	$\frac{(I_z \dot{L}_r + I_{xz} \dot{N}_r)}{(I_x I_z - I_{xz}^2)}$	$\frac{(I'_z L_r + I'_{xz} N_r)}{(I'_x I'_z - I_{xz}^2)}$
$l_\phi$	0	0
$l_\psi$	0	0
$n_v$	$\frac{(I_x \dot{N}_v + I_{xz} \dot{L}_v)}{(I_x I_z - I_{xz}^2)}$	$\frac{(I'_x N_v + I'_{xz} L_v)}{(I'_x I'_z - I_{xz}^2)}$
$n_p$	$\frac{(I_x \dot{N}_p + I_{xz} \dot{L}_p)}{(I_x I_z - I_{xz}^2)}$	$\frac{(I'_x N_p + I'_{xz} L_p)}{(I'_x I'_z - I_{xz}^2)}$
$n_r$	$\frac{(I_x \dot{N}_r + I_{xz} \dot{L}_r)}{(I_x I_z - I_{xz}^2)}$	$\frac{(I'_x N_r + I'_{xz} L_r)}{(I'_x I'_z - I_{xz}^2)}$
$n_\phi$	0	0
$n_\psi$	0	0



**Table A2.8** Concise lateral control derivatives

Concise derivative	Equivalent expressions in terms of dimensional derivatives	Equivalent expressions in terms of dimensionless derivatives
$y_\xi$	$\frac{\overset{\circ}{Y}_\xi}{m}$	$\frac{V_0 Y_\xi}{m'}$
$l_\xi$	$\frac{\left(I_z \overset{\circ}{L}_\xi + I_{xz} \overset{\circ}{N}_\xi\right)}{\left(I_x I_z - I_{xz}^2\right)}$	$\frac{V_0\left(I_z' L_\xi + I_{xz}' N_\xi\right)}{\left(I_x' I_z' - I_{xz}'^2\right)}$
$n_\xi$	$\frac{\left(I_x \overset{\circ}{N}_\xi + I_{xz} \overset{\circ}{L}_\xi\right)}{\left(I_x I_z - I_{xz}^2\right)}$	$\frac{V_0\left(I_x' N_\xi + I_{xz}' L_\xi\right)}{\left(I_x' I_z' - I_{xz}'^2\right)}$
$y_\zeta$	$\frac{\overset{\circ}{Y}_\zeta}{m}$	$\frac{V_0 Y_\zeta}{m'}$
$l_\zeta$	$\frac{\left(I_z \overset{\circ}{L}_\zeta + I_{xz} \overset{\circ}{N}_\zeta\right)}{\left(I_x I_z - I_{xz}^2\right)}$	$\frac{V_0\left(I_z' L_\zeta + I_{xz}' N_\zeta\right)}{\left(I_x' I_z' - I_{xz}'^2\right)}$
$n_\zeta$	$\frac{\left(I_x \overset{\circ}{N}_\zeta + I_{xz} \overset{\circ}{L}_\zeta\right)}{\left(I_x I_z - I_{xz}^2\right)}$	$\frac{V_0\left(I_x' N_\zeta + I_{xz}' L_\zeta\right)}{\left(I_x' I_z' - I_{xz}'^2\right)}$

---

## Appendix 3

# Aircraft Response Transfer Functions Referred to Aircraft Body Axes

### 1 LONGITUDINAL RESPONSE TRANSFER FUNCTIONS IN TERMS OF DIMENSIONAL DERIVATIVES

The following longitudinal numerator polynomials describe the motion of the aircraft in response to elevator  $\eta$  input. To obtain the numerators describing the response to engine thrust input it is simply necessary to replace the subscript  $\eta$  with  $\tau$ .

---

Common denominator polynomial  $\Delta(s) = as^4 + bs^3 + cs^2 + ds + e$

---

$$a \quad mI_y \left( m - \ddot{Z}_w \right)$$

$$b \quad I_y \left( \ddot{X}_u \ddot{Z}_w - \ddot{X}_w \ddot{Z}_u \right) - mI_y \left( \ddot{X}_u + \ddot{Z}_w \right) - m\dot{M}_w \left( \ddot{Z}_q + mU_e \right) - m\dot{M}_q \left( m - \ddot{Z}_w \right)$$

$$c \quad + I_y \left( \ddot{X}_u \ddot{Z}_w - \ddot{X}_w \ddot{Z}_u \right) + \left( \ddot{X}_u \dot{M}_w - \ddot{X}_w \dot{M}_u \right) \left( \ddot{Z}_q + mU_e \right) + \ddot{Z}_u \left( \ddot{X}_w \dot{M}_q - \ddot{X}_q \dot{M}_w \right) + \left( \ddot{X}_u \dot{M}_q - \ddot{X}_q \dot{M}_u \right) \left( m - \ddot{Z}_w \right) + m \left( \dot{M}_q \ddot{Z}_w - \dot{M}_w \ddot{Z}_q \right) + mW_e \left( \dot{M}_w \ddot{Z}_u - \dot{M}_u \ddot{Z}_w \right) + m^2 \left( \dot{M}_w g \sin \theta_e + W_e \dot{M}_u - U_e \dot{M}_w \right)$$

$$d \quad \left( \ddot{X}_u \dot{M}_w - \ddot{X}_w \dot{M}_u \right) \left( \ddot{Z}_q + mU_e \right) + \left( \dot{M}_u \ddot{Z}_w - \dot{M}_w \ddot{Z}_u \right) \left( \ddot{X}_q - mW_e \right) + \dot{M}_q \left( \ddot{X}_w \ddot{Z}_u - \ddot{X}_u \ddot{Z}_w \right) + mg \cos \theta_e \left( \dot{M}_w \ddot{Z}_u + \dot{M}_u \left( m - \ddot{Z}_w \right) \right) + mg \sin \theta_e \left( \ddot{X}_w \dot{M}_u - \ddot{X}_u \dot{M}_w + m\dot{M}_w \right)$$

$$e \quad mg \sin \theta_e \left( \ddot{X}_w \dot{M}_u - \ddot{X}_u \dot{M}_w \right) + mg \cos \theta_e \left( \dot{M}_w \ddot{Z}_u - \dot{M}_u \ddot{Z}_w \right)$$

---

---

Numerator polynomial  $N_\eta^u(s) = as^3 + bs^2 + cs + d$

---

$$\begin{aligned}
 a \quad & I_y \left( \dot{X}_w \dot{Z}_\eta + \dot{X}_\eta (m - \dot{Z}_w) \right) \\
 b \quad & \dot{X}_\eta \left( -I_y \dot{Z}_w - \dot{M}_w (\dot{Z}_q + m U_e) - \dot{M}_q (m - \dot{Z}_w) \right) + \dot{Z}_\eta \left( I_y \dot{X}_w - \dot{X}_w \dot{M}_q \right. \\
 & \quad \left. + \dot{M}_w (\dot{X}_q - m W_e) \right) + \dot{M}_\eta \left( (\dot{X}_q - m W_e) (m - \dot{Z}_w) + \dot{X}_w (\dot{Z}_q + m U_e) \right) \\
 c \quad & \dot{X}_\eta \left( \dot{Z}_w \dot{M}_q - \dot{M}_w (\dot{Z}_q + m U_e) + mg \sin \theta_e \dot{M}_w \right) \\
 & \quad + \dot{Z}_\eta \left( \dot{M}_w (\dot{X}_q - m W_e) - \dot{X}_w \dot{M}_q - mg \cos \theta_e \dot{M}_w \right) + \dot{M}_\eta \left( \dot{X}_w (\dot{Z}_q + m U_e) \right. \\
 & \quad \left. - \dot{Z}_w (\dot{X}_q - m W_e) - mg \cos \theta_e (m - \dot{Z}_w) - mg \sin \theta_e \dot{X}_w \right) \\
 d \quad & \dot{X}_\eta \dot{M}_w mg \sin \theta_e - \dot{Z}_\eta \dot{M}_w mg \cos \theta_e + \dot{M}_\eta \left( \dot{Z}_w mg \cos \theta_e - \dot{X}_w mg \sin \theta_e \right)
 \end{aligned}$$


---

Numerator polynomial  $N_\eta^w(s) = as^3 + bs^2 + cs + d$

---

$$\begin{aligned}
 a \quad & m I_y \dot{Z}_\eta \\
 b \quad & I_y \dot{X}_\eta \dot{Z}_u - \dot{Z}_\eta \left( I_y \dot{X}_u + m \dot{M}_q \right) + m \dot{M}_\eta \left( \dot{Z}_q + m U_e \right) \\
 c \quad & \dot{X}_\eta \left( \dot{M}_u (\dot{Z}_q + m U_e) - \dot{Z}_u \dot{M}_q \right) + \dot{Z}_\eta \left( \dot{X}_u \dot{M}_q - \dot{M}_u (\dot{X}_q - m W_e) \right) \\
 & \quad + \dot{M}_\eta \left( \dot{Z}_u (\dot{X}_q - m W_e) - \dot{X}_u (\dot{Z}_q + m U_e) - m^2 g \sin \theta_e \right) \\
 d \quad & - \dot{X}_\eta \dot{M}_u mg \sin \theta_e + \dot{Z}_\eta \dot{M}_u mg \cos \theta_e + \dot{M}_\eta \left( \dot{X}_u mg \sin \theta_e - \dot{Z}_u mg \cos \theta_e \right)
 \end{aligned}$$


---

Numerator polynomials  $N_\eta^q(s) = s(as^2 + bs + c)$  and  $N_\eta^\theta(s) = as^2 + bs + c$

---

$$\begin{aligned}
 a \quad & m \dot{Z}_\eta \dot{M}_w + m \dot{M}_\eta (m - \dot{Z}_w) \\
 b \quad & \dot{X}_\eta \left( \dot{Z}_u \dot{M}_w + \dot{M}_u (m - \dot{Z}_w) \right) + \dot{Z}_\eta \left( m \dot{M}_w - \dot{X}_u \dot{M}_w + \dot{M}_u \dot{X}_w \right) \\
 & \quad + \dot{M}_\eta \left( -\dot{X}_u (m - \dot{Z}_w) - \dot{Z}_u \dot{X}_w - m \dot{Z}_w \right) \\
 c \quad & \dot{X}_\eta \left( \dot{Z}_u \dot{M}_w - \dot{M}_u \dot{Z}_w \right) + \dot{Z}_\eta \left( \dot{X}_w \dot{M}_u - \dot{M}_w \dot{X}_u \right) \\
 & \quad + \dot{M}_\eta \left( \dot{X}_u \dot{Z}_w - \dot{Z}_u \dot{X}_w \right)
 \end{aligned}$$


---

## 2 LATERAL-DIRECTIONAL RESPONSE TRANSFER FUNCTIONS IN TERMS OF DIMENSIONAL DERIVATIVES

The following lateral-directional numerator polynomials describe the motion of the aircraft in response to aileron  $\xi$  input. To obtain the numerators describing the response to rudder input it is simply necessary to replace the subscript  $\xi$  with  $\zeta$ .

---

Denominator polynomial  $\Delta(s) = s(as^4 + bs^3 + cs^2 + ds + e)$

---

$$\begin{aligned}
 a & \quad m(I_x I_z - I_{xz}^2) \\
 b & \quad -\dot{Y}_v (I_x I_z - I_{xz}^2) - m \left( I_x \dot{N}_r + I_{xz} \dot{L}_r \right) - m \left( I_z \dot{L}_p + I_{xz} \dot{N}_p \right) \\
 c & \quad \dot{Y}_v \left( I_x \dot{N}_r + I_{xz} \dot{L}_r \right) + \dot{Y}_v \left( I_z \dot{L}_p + I_{xz} \dot{N}_p \right) - \left( \dot{Y}_p + m W_e \right) \left( I_z \dot{L}_v + I_{xz} \dot{N}_v \right) \\
 & \quad - \left( \dot{Y}_r - m U_e \right) \left( I_x \dot{N}_v + I_{xz} \dot{L}_v \right) + m \left( \dot{L}_p \dot{N}_r - \dot{L}_r \dot{N}_p \right) \\
 d & \quad \dot{Y}_v \left( \dot{L}_r \dot{N}_p - \dot{L}_p \dot{N}_r \right) + \left( \dot{Y}_p + m W_e \right) \left( \dot{L}_v \dot{N}_r - \dot{L}_r \dot{N}_v \right) \\
 & \quad + \left( \dot{Y}_r - m U_e \right) \left( \dot{L}_p \dot{N}_v - \dot{L}_v \dot{N}_p \right) - mg \cos \theta_e \left( I_z \dot{L}_v + I_{xz} \dot{N}_v \right) \\
 & \quad - mg \sin \theta_e \left( I_x \dot{N}_v + I_{xz} \dot{L}_v \right) \\
 e & \quad mg \cos \theta_e \left( \dot{L}_v \dot{N}_r - \dot{L}_r \dot{N}_v \right) + mg \sin \theta_e \left( \dot{L}_p \dot{N}_v - \dot{L}_v \dot{N}_p \right)
 \end{aligned}$$


---

---

Numerator polynomial  $N_\xi^v(s) = s(as^3 + bs^2 + cs + d)$

---

$$\begin{aligned}
 a & \quad \dot{Y}_\xi (I_x I_z - I_{xz}^2) \\
 b & \quad \dot{Y}_\xi \left( -I_x \dot{N}_r - I_z \dot{L}_p - I_{xz} (\dot{L}_r + \dot{N}_p) \right) + \dot{L}_\xi \left( I_z \left( \dot{Y}_p + m W_e \right) + I_{xz} \left( \dot{Y}_r - m U_e \right) \right) \\
 & \quad + \dot{N}_\xi \left( I_x \left( \dot{Y}_r - m U_e \right) + I_{xz} \left( \dot{Y}_p + m W_e \right) \right) \\
 c & \quad \dot{Y}_\xi \left( \dot{L}_p \dot{N}_r - \dot{L}_r \dot{N}_p \right) + \dot{L}_\xi \left( \dot{N}_p \left( \dot{Y}_r - m U_e \right) - \dot{N}_r \left( \dot{Y}_p + m W_e \right) \right) \\
 & \quad + mg (I_z \cos \theta_e + I_{xz} \sin \theta_e) + \dot{N}_\xi \left( \dot{L}_r \left( \dot{Y}_p + m W_e \right) - \dot{L}_p \left( \dot{Y}_r - m U_e \right) \right) \\
 & \quad + mg (I_x \sin \theta_e + I_{xz} \cos \theta_e) \\
 d & \quad \dot{L}_\xi \left( \dot{N}_p mg \sin \theta_e - \dot{N}_r mg \cos \theta_e \right) + \dot{N}_\xi \left( \dot{L}_r mg \cos \theta_e - \dot{L}_p mg \sin \theta_e \right)
 \end{aligned}$$


---

---

Numerator polynomials  $N_\xi^p(s) = s(as^3 + bs^2 + cs + d)$  and  
 $N_\xi^\phi(s) = as^3 + bs^2 + cs + d$

---

$$\begin{aligned}
 a \quad & m \left( I_z \ddot{L}_\xi + I_{xz} \ddot{N}_\xi \right) \\
 b \quad & \ddot{Y}_\xi \left( I_z \ddot{L}_v + I_{xz} \ddot{N}_v \right) + \ddot{L}_\xi \left( -I_z \ddot{Y}_v - m \ddot{N}_r \right) + \ddot{N}_\xi \left( m \ddot{L}_r - I_{xz} \ddot{Y}_v \right) \\
 c \quad & \ddot{Y}_\xi \left( \ddot{L}_r \ddot{N}_v - \ddot{L}_v \ddot{N}_r \right) + \ddot{L}_\xi \left( \ddot{N}_r \ddot{Y}_v - \ddot{N}_v \ddot{Y}_r + m U_e \ddot{N}_v \right) \\
 & + \ddot{N}_\xi \left( \ddot{L}_v \ddot{Y}_r - \ddot{L}_r \ddot{Y}_v - m U_e \ddot{L}_v \right) \\
 d \quad & mg \sin \theta_e \left( \ddot{L}_v \ddot{N}_\xi - \ddot{L}_\xi \ddot{N}_v \right)
 \end{aligned}$$


---

---

Numerator polynomials  $N_\xi^r(s) = s(as^3 + bs^2 + cs + d)$  and  
 $N_\xi^\psi(s) = as^3 + bs^2 + cs + d$

---

$$\begin{aligned}
 a \quad & m \left( I_x \ddot{N}_\xi + I_{xz} \ddot{L}_\xi \right) \\
 b \quad & \ddot{Y}_\xi \left( I_x \ddot{N}_v + I_{xz} \ddot{L}_v \right) + \ddot{L}_\xi \left( m \ddot{N}_p - I_{xz} \ddot{Y}_v \right) - \ddot{N}_\xi \left( I_x \ddot{Y}_v + m \ddot{L}_p \right) \\
 c \quad & \ddot{Y}_\xi \left( \ddot{L}_v \ddot{N}_p - \ddot{L}_p \ddot{N}_v \right) + \ddot{L}_\xi \left( \ddot{N}_v \ddot{Y}_p - \ddot{N}_p \ddot{Y}_v + m W_e \ddot{N}_v \right) \\
 & + \ddot{N}_\xi \left( \ddot{L}_p \ddot{Y}_v - \ddot{L}_v \ddot{Y}_p - m W_e \ddot{L}_v \right) \\
 d \quad & mg \cos \theta_e \left( \ddot{L}_\xi \ddot{N}_v - \ddot{L}_v \ddot{N}_\xi \right)
 \end{aligned}$$


---

### 3 LONGITUDINAL RESPONSE TRANSFER FUNCTIONS IN TERMS OF CONCISE DERIVATIVES

Again the longitudinal numerator polynomials describe the motion of the aircraft in response to elevator  $\eta$  input. To obtain the numerators describing the response to engine thrust input it is simply necessary to replace the subscript  $\eta$  with  $\tau$ .

---

Common denominator polynomial  $\Delta(s) = as^4 + bs^3 + cs^2 + ds + e$

---

$$a \quad 1$$

$$b \quad -(m_q + x_u + z_w)$$

$$c \quad (m_q z_w - m_w z_q) + (m_q x_u - m_u x_q) + (x_u z_w - x_w z_u) - m_\theta$$

$$d \quad (m_\theta x_u - m_u x_\theta) + (m_\theta z_w - m_w z_\theta) + m_q(x_w z_u - x_u z_w) \\ + x_q(m_u z_w - m_w z_u) + z_q(m_w x_u - m_u x_w)$$

$$e \quad m_\theta(x_w z_u - x_u z_w) + x_\theta(m_u z_w - m_w z_u) + z_\theta(m_w x_u - m_u x_w)$$


---

---

Numerator polynomial  $N_\eta^u(s) = as^3 + bs^2 + cs + d$

---

$$a \quad x_\eta$$

$$b \quad m_\eta x_q - x_\eta(m_q + z_w) + z_\eta x_w$$

$$c \quad m_\eta(x_w z_q - x_q z_w + x_\theta) + x_\eta(m_q z_w - m_w z_q - m_\theta) + z_\eta(m_w x_q - m_q x_w)$$

$$d \quad m_\eta(x_w z_\theta - x_\theta z_w) + x_\eta(m_\theta z_w - m_w z_\theta) + z_\eta(m_w x_\theta - m_\theta x_w)$$


---

---

Numerator polynomial  $N_\eta^w(s) = as^3 + bs^2 + cs + d$

---

$$a \quad z_\eta$$

$$b \quad m_\eta z_q + x_\eta z_u - z_\eta(m_q + x_u)$$

$$c \quad m_\eta(x_q z_u - x_u z_q + z_\theta) + x_\eta(m_u z_q - m_q z_u) + z_\eta(m_q x_u - m_u x_q - m_\theta)$$

$$d \quad m_\eta(x_\theta z_u - x_u z_\theta) + x_\eta(m_u z_\theta - m_\theta z_u) + z_\eta(m_\theta x_u - m_u x_\theta)$$


---

---

Numerator polynomials  $N_\eta^q(s) = s(as^2 + bs + c)$  and  $N_\eta^\theta(s) = as^2 + bs + c$

---

$$a \quad m_\eta$$

$$b \quad -m_\eta(x_u + z_w) + x_\eta m_u + z_\eta m_w$$

$$c \quad m_\eta(x_u z_w - x_w z_u) + x_\eta(m_w z_u - m_u z_w) + z_\eta(m_u x_w - m_w x_u)$$


---

#### 4 LATERAL-DIRECTIONAL RESPONSE TRANSFER FUNCTIONS IN TERMS OF CONCISE DERIVATIVES

As before, the lateral-directional numerator polynomials describe the motion of the aircraft in response to aileron  $\xi$  input. To obtain the numerators describing the response to rudder input it is simply necessary to replace the subscript  $\xi$  with  $\zeta$ .

---

Denominator polynomial  $\Delta(s) = as^5 + bs^4 + cs^3 + ds^2 + es + f$

---

$$a \quad 1$$

$$b \quad -(l_p + n_r + y_v)$$

$$c \quad (l_p n_r - l_r n_p) + (n_r y_v - n_v y_r) + (l_p y_v - l_v y_p) - (l_\phi + n_\psi)$$

$$d \quad (l_p n_\psi - l_\psi n_p) + (l_\phi n_r - l_r n_\phi) + l_v(n_r y_p - n_p y_r - y_\phi) \\ + n_v(l_p y_r - l_r y_p - y_\psi) + y_v(l_r n_p - l_p n_r + l_\phi + n_\psi)$$

$$e \quad (l_\phi n_\psi - l_\psi n_\phi) + l_v((n_r y_\phi - n_\phi y_r) + (n_\psi y_p - n_p y_\psi)) \\ + n_v((l_\phi y_r - l_r y_\phi) + (l_p y_\psi - l_\psi y_p)) + y_v((l_r n_\phi - l_\phi n_r) + (l_\psi n_p - l_p n_\psi))$$

$$f \quad l_v(n_\psi y_\phi - n_\phi y_\psi) + n_v(l_\phi y_\psi - l_\psi y_\phi) + y_v(l_\psi n_\phi - l_\phi n_\psi)$$


---

---

Numerator polynomial  $N_\xi^v(s) = as^4 + bs^4 + cs^2 + ds + e$

---

$$a \quad y_\xi$$

$$b \quad l_\xi y_p + n_\xi y_r - y_\xi(l_p + n_r)$$

$$c \quad l_\xi(n_p y_r - n_r y_p + y_\phi) + n_\xi(l_r y_p - l_p y_r + y_\psi) + y_\xi(l_p n_r - l_r n_p - l_\phi - n_\psi)$$

$$d \quad l_\xi(n_\phi y_r - n_r y_\phi + n_p y_\psi - n_\psi y_p) + n_\xi(l_r y_\phi - l_\phi y_r + l_\psi y_p - l_p y_\psi) \\ + y_\xi(l_\phi n_r - l_r n_\phi + l_p n_\psi - l_\psi n_p)$$

$$e \quad l_\xi(n_\phi y_\psi - n_\psi y_\phi) + n_\xi(l_\psi y_\phi - l_\phi y_\psi) + y_\xi(l_\phi n_\psi - l_\psi n_\phi)$$


---

---

Numerator polynomials  $N_\xi^p(s) = s(as^3 + bs^2 + cs + d)$  and

$$N_\xi^\phi(s) = as^3 + bs^2 + cs + d$$


---

$$a \quad l_\xi$$

$$b \quad -l_\xi(n_r + y_v) + n_\xi l_r + y_\xi l_v$$

$$c \quad l_\xi(n_r y_v - n_v y_r - n_\psi) + n_\xi(l_v y_r - l_r y_v + l_\psi) + y_\xi(l_r n_v - l_v n_r)$$

$$d \quad l_\xi(n_\psi y_v - n_v y_\psi) + n_\xi(l_v y_\psi - l_\psi y_r) + y_\xi(l_\psi n_v - l_v n_\psi)$$


---

---

Numerator polynomials  $N_\xi^r(s) = s(as^3 + bs^2 + cs + d)$  and

$$N_\xi^\psi(s) = as^3 + bs^2 + cs + d$$


---

$$a \quad n_\xi$$

$$b \quad l_\xi n_p - n_\xi(l_p + y_v) + y_\xi n_v$$

$$c \quad l_\xi(n_v y_p - n_p y_v + n_\phi) + n_\xi(l_p y_v - l_v y_p - l_\phi) + y_\xi(l_v n_p - l_p n_v)$$

$$d \quad l_\xi(n_v y_\phi - n_\phi y_v) + n_\xi(l_\phi y_v - l_v y_\phi) + y_\xi(l_v n_\phi - l_\phi n_v)$$


---

Appendix 4

Units, Conversions and Constants

**Table A4.1** *Factors for conversion from Imperial to SI units*

<i>Parameter</i>	<i>Symbol</i>	<i>Imperial unit</i>	<i>Equivalent SI unit</i>
Mass	<i>m</i>	1 slug	14.594 kg
Length	<i>l</i>	1 ft	0.3048 m
Velocity	<i>V</i>	1 ft/s	0.3048 m/s
Acceleration	<i>a</i>	1 ft/s <sup>2</sup>	0.3048 m/s <sup>2</sup>
Force	<i>F</i>	1 lb	4.448 N
Moment	<i>M</i>	1 lb ft	1.356 N m
Density	$\rho$	1 slug/ft <sup>3</sup>	515.383 kg/m <sup>3</sup>
Inertia	<i>I</i>	1 slug ft <sup>2</sup>	1.3558 kg m <sup>2</sup>

**Table A4.2** *Useful constants*

<i>Constant</i>	<i>Symbol</i>	<i>Imperial units</i>	<i>SI units</i>
1knot	kt	1.689 ft/s	0.515 m/s
Sea level air density	$\rho_0$	0.00238 slug/ft <sup>3</sup>	1.225 kg/m <sup>3</sup>
Speed of sound at sea level	<i>a</i> <sub>0</sub>	1116.44 ft/s	340.29 m/s
Radian	rad	57.3°	57.3°
Gravitational acceleration	<i>g</i>	32.17 ft/s <sup>2</sup>	9.81 m/s <sup>2</sup>



---

Appendix 5

**A Very Short Table of Laplace Transforms**

	$F(t)$	$f(s)$
1	1	$\frac{1}{s}$
2	$e^{at}$	$\frac{1}{s-a}$
3	$\sin kt$	$\frac{k}{s^2+k^2}$
4	$\cos kt$	$\frac{s}{s^2+k^2}$
5	$e^{-at} \sin kt$	$\frac{k}{(s+a)^2+k^2}$
6	$e^{-at} \cos kt$	$\frac{(s+a)}{(s+a)^2+k^2}$

---

## Appendix 6

# The Dynamics of a Linear Second Order System

The solution of the linearised small perturbation equations of motion of an aircraft contains recognisable classical second order system terms. A review of the dynamics of a second order system is therefore useful as an aid to the correct interpretation of the solution of the aircraft equations of motion.

Consider the classical mass–spring–damper system whose motion is described by the equation of motion

$$m\ddot{x}(t) + c\dot{x}(t) + kx(t) = f(t) \quad (\text{A6.1})$$

where  $x(t)$  is the displacement of the mass and  $f(t)$  is the forcing function. The constants of the system comprise the mass  $m$ , the viscous damping  $c$  and the spring stiffness  $k$ .

Classical unforced motion results when the forcing  $f(t)$  is made zero, the mass is displaced by  $A$ , say, and then released. Equation (A6.1) may then be written

$$m\ddot{x}(t) + c\dot{x}(t) + kx(t) = 0 \quad (\text{A6.2})$$

and the initial conditions are defined,  $\dot{x}(0) = 0$  and  $x(0) = A$ . The time response of the motion of the mass may be found by solving equation (A6.2) subject to the constraints imposed by the initial conditions. This is readily achieved with the aid of the Laplace transform.

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}\{m\ddot{x}(t) + c\dot{x}(t) + kx(t)\} &= m(s^2x(s) - sx(0) - \dot{x}(0)) + c(sx(s) - x(0)) + kx(s) \\ &= m(s^2x(s) - sA) + c(sx(s) - A) + kx(s) = 0 \end{aligned}$$

which after some rearrangement may be written

$$x(s) = \frac{A(ms + c)}{(ms^2 + cs + k)} \quad (\text{A6.3})$$

Or, alternatively

$$x(s) = \frac{A(s + 2\zeta\omega)}{(s^2 + 2\zeta\omega s + \omega^2)} \quad (\text{A6.4})$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} 2\zeta\omega &= \frac{c}{m} \\ \omega^2 &= \frac{k}{m} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A6.5})$$

where  $\zeta$  is the system damping ratio and  $\omega$  is the system undamped natural frequency

The time response  $x(t)$  may be obtained by determining the inverse Laplace transform of equation (A6.4) and the form of the solution obviously depends on the magnitudes of the physical constants of the system  $m$ ,  $c$  and  $k$ . The characteristic equation of the system is given by equating the denominator of equation (A6.3) or (A6.4) to zero

$$ms^2 + cs + k = 0 \quad (\text{A6.6})$$

or, equivalently

$$s^2 + 2\zeta\omega s + \omega^2 = 0 \quad (\text{A6.7})$$

To facilitate the determination of the inverse Laplace transform of equation (A6.4), the denominator is first factorised and the expression on the right hand side is split into partial fractions. Whence

$$\begin{aligned} x(s) &= \frac{A(s + 2\zeta\omega)}{(s + \omega(\zeta + \sqrt{\zeta^2 - 1}))(s + \omega(\zeta - \sqrt{\zeta^2 - 1}))} \\ &= \frac{A}{2} \left( \frac{\left(1 + \frac{\zeta}{\sqrt{\zeta^2 - 1}}\right)}{(s + \omega(\zeta + \sqrt{\zeta^2 - 1}))} + \frac{\left(1 - \frac{\zeta}{\sqrt{\zeta^2 - 1}}\right)}{(s + \omega(\zeta - \sqrt{\zeta^2 - 1}))} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A6.8})$$

With reference to the table of transform pairs, Appendix 5, transform pair 2, the inverse Laplace transform of equation (A6.8) is readily obtained

$$x(t) = \frac{Ae^{-\omega\zeta t}}{2} \left( \left(1 + \frac{\zeta}{\sqrt{\zeta^2 - 1}}\right) e^{-\omega t \sqrt{\zeta^2 - 1}} + \left(1 - \frac{\zeta}{\sqrt{\zeta^2 - 1}}\right) e^{\omega t \sqrt{\zeta^2 - 1}} \right) \quad (\text{A6.9})$$

Equation (A6.9) is the general solution describing the unforced motion of the mass and the type of response depends on the value of the damping ratio.

(i) When  $\zeta = 0$  equation (A6.9) reduces to

$$x(t) = \frac{A}{2} (e^{-j\omega t} + e^{j\omega t}) = A \cos \omega t \quad (\text{A6.10})$$

which describes *undamped harmonic motion* or, alternatively, a *neutrally stable system*.

- (ii) When  $0 < \zeta < 1$  equation (A6.9) may be modified by writing

$$\omega_n = \omega \sqrt{1 - \zeta^2}$$

where  $\omega_n$  is the damped natural frequency. Thus the solution is given by

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= \frac{Ae^{-\omega\zeta t}}{2} \left( \left( 1 + \frac{j\zeta}{\sqrt{1-\zeta^2}} \right) e^{-j\omega_n t} + \left( 1 - \frac{j\zeta}{\sqrt{1-\zeta^2}} \right) e^{j\omega_n t} \right) \\ &= Ae^{-\omega\zeta t} \left( \cos \omega_n t - \frac{\omega\zeta}{\omega_n} \sin \omega_n t \right) \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A6.11})$$

which describes *damped harmonic motion*.

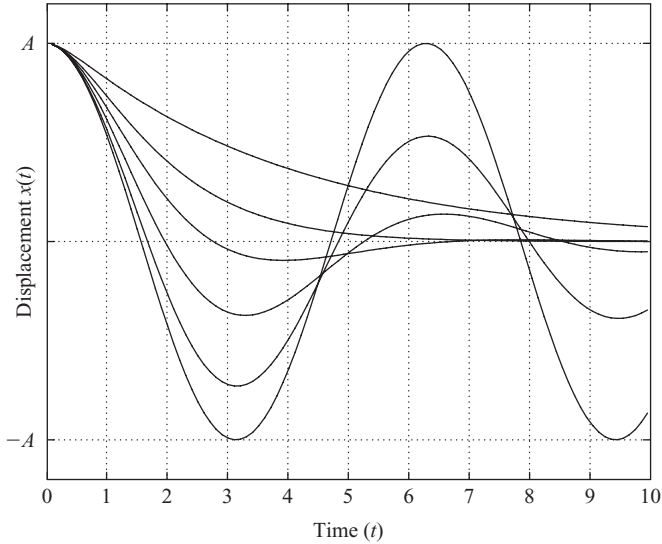
- (iii) When  $\zeta = 1$  the coefficients of the exponential terms in equation (A6.9) become infinite. However, by expressing the exponentials as series and by letting  $\zeta \rightarrow 1$ , it may be shown that the damped natural frequency  $\omega_n$  tends to zero and the solution is given by

$$x(t) = Ae^{-\omega t} (1 - \omega t) \quad (\text{A6.12})$$

- (iv) When  $\zeta > 1$  the solution is given by equation (A6.9) directly and is thus a function of a number of exponential terms. The motion thus described is non-oscillatory and is exponentially convergent.

Typical response time histories for a range of values of damping ratio are shown in Fig. A6.1.

It is important to note that the type of response is governed entirely by the damping ratio and undamped natural frequency which, in turn, determine the roots of the



**Figure A6.1** Typical second order system responses.

characteristic equation (A6.6) or (A6.7). Thus dynamic properties of the system may be directly attributed to the physical properties of the system. Consequently the type of unforced response may be ascertained simply by inspection of the characteristic equation. A summary of these observations for a stable system is given in the following table.

Summary of a stable system		
Damping ratio	Roots of characteristic equation	Type of response
$\zeta = 0$	$(s + j\omega)(s - j\omega) = 0$ Complex with zero real part	Undamped sinusoidal oscillation with frequency $\omega$
$0 < \zeta < 1$	$(s + \omega\zeta + j\omega_n)(s + \omega\zeta - j\omega_n) = 0$ Complex with non-zero real part	Damped sinusoidal oscillation with frequency $\omega_n = \omega\sqrt{1 - \zeta^2}$
$\zeta = 1$	$(s + \omega)^2 = 0$ Repeated real roots	Exponential convergence of form $e^{-\omega t}(1 - \omega t)$
$\zeta > 1$	$(s + r_1)(s + r_2) = 0$ Real roots where $r_1 = \omega(\zeta + \sqrt{\zeta^2 - 1})$ $r_2 = \omega(\zeta - \sqrt{\zeta^2 - 1})$	Exponential convergence of general form, $k_1e^{-r_1t} + k_2e^{-r_2t}$

The classical mass–spring–damper system is always stable but, rather more general systems which demonstrate similar properties may not necessarily be stable. For a more general interpretation including unstable systems in which  $\zeta < 0$  it is sufficient only to note that the types of solution are similar except that the motion they describe is divergent rather than convergent. Aeroplanes typically demonstrate both stable and unstable characteristics which are conveniently described by this simple linear second order model.

## Appendix 7

# North American Aerodynamic Derivative Notation

**Table A7.1** Longitudinal normalised derivatives

<i>Dimensionless coefficient</i>	<i>Multiplier</i>	<i>Dimensional</i>
$C_{x_u} = -(M_0 C_{D_M} + 2C_D)$	$\rho V_0 S / 2m$	$X_u$
$C_{x_u}^* = -(M_0 C_{D_M} + 2C_D) + M_0 C_{\tau_M} \cos \kappa$	$\rho V_0 S / 2m$	$X_u^*$
$C_{x_{\dot{w}}} = C_{x_{\dot{\alpha}}}$	$\rho S \bar{c} / 4m$	$X_{\dot{w}}$
$C_{x_w} = C_L - C_{D_\alpha}$	$\rho V_0 S / 2m$	$X_w$
$C_{x_q}$	$\rho V_0 S \bar{c} / 4m$	$X_q$
$C_{x_\delta}$	$\rho V_0^2 S / 2m$	$X_\delta$
$C_{z_u} = -(M_0 C_{L_M} + 2C_L)$	$\rho V_0 S / 2m$	$Z_u$
$C_{z_u}^* = -(M_0 C_{L_M} + 2C_L) - M_0 C_{\tau_M} \sin \kappa$	$\rho V_0 S / 2m$	$Z_u^*$
$C_{z_{\dot{w}}} = C_{z_{\dot{\alpha}}}$	$\rho S \bar{c} / 4m$	$Z_{\dot{w}}$
$C_{z_w} = -(C_D + C_{L_\alpha})$	$\rho V_0 S / 2m$	$Z_w$
$C_{z_q}$	$\rho V_0 S \bar{c} / 4m$	$Z_q$
$C_{z_\delta}$	$\rho V_0^2 S / 2m$	$Z_\delta$
$C_{m_u} = M_0 C_{m_M}$	$\rho V_0 S \bar{c} / 2I_y$	$M_u$
$C_{m_u}^* = M_0 C_{m_M} + M_0 \frac{z_\tau}{\bar{c}} C_{\tau_M} \cos \kappa$	$\rho V_0 S \bar{c} / 2I_y$	$M_u^*$
$C_{m_{\dot{w}}} = C_{m_{\dot{\alpha}}}$	$\rho V_0 S \bar{c}^2 / 4I_y$	$M_{\dot{w}}$
$C_{m_w} = C_{m_\alpha}$	$\rho V_0 S \bar{c} / 2I_y$	$M_w$
$C_{m_q}$	$\rho V_0 S \bar{c}^2 / 4I_y$	$M_q$
$C_{m_\delta}$	$\rho V_0^2 S \bar{c} / 2I_y$	$M_\delta$

*Note:*

- Thrust coefficient is defined  $C_\tau = \tau / \frac{1}{2} \rho V_0^2 S$ .
- In the notational style  $C_{\tau_M} = \partial C_\tau / \partial M$ .
- $\kappa$  is the (upward) inclination of the thrust line with respect to the  $x$  axis.
- $z_\tau$  is the normal offset of the thrust line from the  $cg$ . It is assumed that  $x_\tau$ , the axial offset of the thrust line from the  $cg$ , is negligibly small.

**Table A7.2** Longitudinal dimensionless derivative equivalents

Dimensionless derivative equivalents			
American	British	American	British
$C_{x_u}$		$C_{z_\alpha}$	$Z_w$
$C_{x_u}^*$	$X_u$	$C_{z_q}$	$2Z_q$
$C_{x_{\dot{\alpha}}}$	$2X_{\dot{w}}$	$C_{z_\delta}$	$Z_{\eta,\tau}$
$C_{x_\alpha}$	$X_w$	$C_{m_u}$	
$C_{x_q}$	$2X_q$	$C_{m_u}^*$	$M_u$
$C_{x_\delta}$	$X_{\eta,\tau}$	$C_{m_{\dot{\alpha}}}$	$2M_{\dot{w}}$
$C_{z_u}$		$C_{m_\alpha}$	$M_w$
$C_{z_u}^*$	$Z_u$	$C_{m_q}$	$2M_q$
$C_{z_{\dot{\alpha}}}$	$2Z_{\dot{w}}$	$C_{m_\delta}$	$M_{\eta,\tau}$

**Table A7.3** Lateral-directional normalised derivatives

Dimensionless coefficient	Multiplier	Dimensional
$C_{y_v}$	$\rho V_0 S/2m$	$Y_v$
$C_{y_\beta}$	$\rho V_0^2 S/2m$	$Y_\beta$
$C_{y_p}$	$\rho V_0 S b/4m$	$Y_p$
$C_{y_r}$	$\rho V_0 S b/4m$	$Y_r$
$C_{y_\delta}$	$\rho V_0^2 S/2m$	$Y_\delta$
$C_{l_v}$	$\rho V_0 S b/2I_x$	$L_v$
$C_{l_\beta}$	$\rho V_0^2 S b/2I_x$	$L_\beta$
$C_{l_p}$	$\rho V_0 S b^2/4I_x$	$L_p$
$C_{l_r}$	$\rho V_0 S b^2/4I_x$	$L_r$
$C_{l_\delta}$	$\rho V_0^2 S b/2I_x$	$L_\delta$
$C_{n_v}$	$\rho V_0 S b/2I_z$	$N_v$
$C_{n_\beta}$	$\rho V_0^2 S b/2I_z$	$N_\beta$
$C_{n_p}$	$\rho V_0 S b^2/4I_z$	$N_p$
$C_{n_r}$	$\rho V_0 S b^2/4I_z$	$N_r$
$C_{n_\delta}$	$\rho V_0^2 S b/2I_z$	$N_\delta$

**Table A7.4** *Lateral-directional dimensionless derivative equivalents*

<i>Dimensionless derivative equivalents</i>			
<i>American</i>	<i>British</i>	<i>American</i>	<i>British</i>
$C_{y_v}$	$Y_v$	$C_{l_r}$	$2L_r$
$C_{y_\beta}$		$C_{l_\delta}$	$L_{\xi, \zeta}$
$C_{y_p}$	$2Y_p$	$C_{n_v}$	$N_v$
$C_{y_r}$	$2Y_r$	$C_{n_\beta}$	
$C_{y_\delta}$	$Y_{\xi, \zeta}$	$C_{n_p}$	$2N_p$
$C_{l_v}$	$L_v$	$C_{n_r}$	$2N_r$
$C_{l_\beta}$		$C_{n_\delta}$	$N_{\xi, \zeta}$
$C_{l_p}$	$2L_p$		



## Appendix 8

# Approximate Expressions for the Dimensionless Aerodynamic Stability and Control Derivatives

**Table A8.1** Longitudinal aerodynamic stability derivatives

*Small perturbation derivatives referred to aircraft wind axes*

<i>Derivative</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Expression</i>	<i>Comments</i>
$X_u$ Equation (13.16)	Axial force due to velocity	$-2C_D - V_0 \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial V} + \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}\rho V_0 S} \frac{\partial \tau}{\partial V}$	Drag and thrust effects due to velocity perturbation
$X_w$ Equation (13.27)	Axial force due to “incidence”	$C_L - \frac{\partial C_D}{\partial \alpha}$	Lift and drag effects due to incidence perturbation
$X_q$ Equation (13.46)	Axial force due to pitch rate	$-\bar{V}_T \frac{\partial C_{DT}}{\partial \alpha_T}$	Tailplane drag effect, usually negligible
$X_{\dot{w}}$ Equation (13.68)	Axial force due to downwash lag	$-\bar{V}_T \frac{\partial C_{DT}}{\partial \alpha_T} \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \equiv X_q \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha}$	Tailplane drag due to downwash lag effect (added mass effect)
$Z_u$ Equation (13.21)	Normal force due to velocity	$-2C_L - V_0 \frac{\partial C_L}{\partial V}$	Lift effects due to velocity perturbation
$Z_w$ Equation (13.30)	Normal force due to “incidence”	$-C_D - \frac{\partial C_L}{\partial \alpha}$	Lift and drag effects due to incidence perturbation
$Z_q$ Equation (13.51)	Normal force due to pitch rate	$-\bar{V}_T a_1$	Tailplane lift effect
$Z_{\dot{w}}$ Equation (13.72)	Normal force due to downwash lag	$-\bar{V}_T a_1 \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} = Z_q \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha}$	Tailplane lift due to downwash lag effect (added mass effect)
$M_u$ Equation (13.34)	Pitching moment due to velocity	$V_0 \frac{\partial C_m}{\partial V}$	Mach dependent, small at low speed

**Table A8.1** (Continued)

*Small perturbation derivatives referred to aircraft wind axes*

<i>Derivative</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Expression</i>	<i>Comments</i>
$M_w$ Equation (13.39)	Pitching moment due to “incidence”	$\frac{dC_m}{d\alpha} = -aK_n$	Pitch stiffness, dependent on static margin
$M_q$ Equation (13.55)	Pitching moment due to pitch rate	$-\bar{V}_T a_1 \frac{l_T}{\bar{c}} \equiv Z_q \frac{l_T}{\bar{c}}$	Pitch damping, due mainly to tailplane
$M_{\dot{w}}$ Equation (13.76)	Pitching moment due to downwash lag	$-\bar{V}_T a_1 \frac{l_T}{\bar{c}} \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha} \equiv M_q \frac{d\varepsilon}{d\alpha}$	Pitch damping due to downwash lag effect at tailplane

**Table A8.2** *Lateral aerodynamic stability derivatives*

*Small perturbation derivatives referred to aircraft wind axes*

<i>Derivative</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Expression</i>	<i>Comments</i>
$Y_v$ Equation (13.82)	Side force due to sideslip	$\left( \frac{S_B}{S} y_B - \frac{S_F}{S} a_{1F} \right)$	Always negative and hence stabilising
$L_v$ Equation (13.92) Equation (13.105) Equation (13.108)	Rolling moment due to sideslip	(i) Wing with dihedral $-\frac{1}{Ss} \int_0^s c_y a_y \Gamma_y dy$ (ii) Wing with aft sweep $-\frac{2C_L \tan \Lambda_{1/4}}{Ss} \int_0^s c_y y dy$ (iii) Fin contribution $-a_{1F} \bar{V}_F \frac{h_F}{l_F}$	Lateral static stability, determined by total dihedral effect. Many contributions most of which are difficult to estimate reliably. Most accessible approximate contributions given.
$N_v$ Equation (13.112)	Yawing moment due to sideslip	(i) Fin contribution $a_{1F} \bar{V}_F$	Natural weathercock stability, dominated by fin effect.
$Y_p$ Equation (13.117)	Side force due to roll rate	(i) Fin contribution $-\frac{1}{Sb} \int_0^{H_F} a_h c_h h dh$	Fin effect dominates, often negligible.
$L_p$ Equation (13.128)	Rolling moment due to roll rate	(i) Wing contribution $-\frac{1}{2Ss^2} \int_0^s (a_y + C_{D_y}) c_y y^2 dy$	Roll damping, wing effects dominate but fin and tailplane contribute.

(Continued)

**Table A8.2** (Continued)

*Small perturbation derivatives referred to aircraft wind axes*

<i>Derivative</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Expression</i>	<i>Comments</i>
$N_p$ Equation (13.137)	Yawing moment due to roll rate	(i) Wing contribution $-\frac{1}{2Ss^2} \int_0^s \left( C_{Ly} - \frac{dC_D}{d\alpha_y} \right) c_y y^2 dy$	
$Y_r$ Equation (13.142)	Side force due to yaw rate	(i) Fin contribution $\bar{V}_F a_{1F}$	Many contributions, but often negligible.
$L_r$ Equation (13.150) Equation (13.155)	Rolling moment due to yaw rate	(i) Wing contribution $\frac{1}{Ss^2} \int_0^s C_{Ly} c_y y^2 dy$ (ii) Fin contribution $a_{1F} \bar{V}_F \frac{h_F}{b} \equiv -L_{v(fin)} \frac{l_F}{b}$	
$N_r$ Equation (13.162) Equation (13.167)	Yawing moment due to yaw rate	(i) Wing contribution $-\frac{1}{Ss^2} \int_0^s C_{Dy} c_y y^2 dy$ (ii) Fin contribution $-a_{1F} \bar{V}_F \frac{l_F}{b} = -\frac{l_F}{b} N_{v(fin)}$	Yaw damping, for large aspect ratio rectangular wing, wing contribution is approximately $C_D/6$ .

**Table A8.3** Longitudinal aerodynamic control derivatives

*Small perturbation derivatives referred to aircraft wind axes*

<i>Derivative</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Expression</i>	<i>Comments</i>
$X_\eta$ Equation (13.174)	Axial force due to elevator	$-2 \frac{S_T}{S} k_T C_{L_T} a_2$	Usually insignificantly small
$Z_\eta$ Equation (13.178)	Normal force due to elevator	$-\frac{S_T}{S} a_2$	
$M_\eta$ Equation (13.181)	Pitching moment due to elevator	$-\bar{V}_T a_2$	Principal measure of pitch control power

**Table A8.4** *Lateral-directional aerodynamic control derivatives*

*Small perturbation derivatives referred to aircraft wind axes*

<i>Derivative</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Expression</i>	<i>Comments</i>
$Y_{\xi}$	Side force due to aileron		Insignificant for conventional aeroplanes
$L_{\xi}$ Equation (13.188)	Rolling moment due to aileron	$-\frac{1}{Ss}a_{2A} \int_{y_1}^{y_2} c_{y\gamma} dy$	Principal measure of roll control power
$N_{\xi}$ Equation (13.193)	Yawing moment due to aileron	$\frac{1}{Ss} \int_{y_1}^{y_2} \left( \frac{\partial C_{Dy}}{\partial \xi} \right) c_{y\gamma} dy$	Adverse yaw due to aileron
$Y_{\zeta}$ Equation (13.197)	Side force due to rudder	$\frac{S_F}{S} a_{2R}$	
$L_{\zeta}$ Equation (13.200)	Rolling moment due to rudder	$\bar{V}_F \frac{h_F}{l_F} a_{2R}$	Principal measure of yaw control power
$N_{\zeta}$ Equation (13.203)	Yawing moment due to rudder	$-\bar{V}_F a_{2R}$	Adverse roll due to rudder

---

## Appendix 9

# The Transformation of Aerodynamic Stability Derivatives from a Body Axes Reference to a Wind Axes Reference

### INTRODUCTION

Aerodynamic stability derivatives are usually quoted with respect to a system of body axes or with respect to a system of wind axes. When the derivatives are quoted with respect to one system of axes and it is desired to work with the equations of motion referred to a different system of axes, then the derivatives must be transformed to the system of axes of interest. Fortunately, the transformation of aerodynamic derivatives from one axis system to another is a relatively straightforward procedure using the transformation relationships discussed in Chapter 2. The procedure for transforming derivatives from a body axes reference to a wind axes reference is illustrated below. However, the procedure can be applied for transforming derivatives between any two systems of reference axes provided their angular relationship is known.

In steady level symmetric flight a system of body axes differs from a system of wind axes by the body incidence  $\alpha_e$  only as shown in Fig. 2.2. In the following paragraphs small perturbation force and velocity components,  $X$ ,  $Y$ ,  $Z$  and  $u$ ,  $v$ ,  $w$  respectively, are indicated in the usual way where, here, the subscript denotes the reference axes. Small perturbation moment and angular velocity components,  $L$ ,  $M$ ,  $N$  and  $p$ ,  $q$ ,  $r$  respectively, are also most conveniently represented by vectors as described in Chapter 2. Again the subscript denotes the reference axes system.

### FORCE AND MOMENT TRANSFORMATION

The transformation of the aerodynamic force components from a *body to wind axes* reference may be obtained directly by the application of the inverse direction cosine matrix, as given by equation (2.13). Writing  $\theta = \alpha_e$  and  $\phi = \psi = 0$  since level symmetric flight is assumed then

$$\begin{bmatrix} X_w \\ Y_w \\ Z_w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha_e & 0 & \sin \alpha_e \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\sin \alpha_e & 0 & \cos \alpha_e \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} X_b \\ Y_b \\ Z_b \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{A9.1})$$

Similarly, the aerodynamic moments transformation may be written

$$\begin{bmatrix} L_w \\ M_w \\ N_w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha_e & 0 & \sin \alpha_e \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\sin \alpha_e & 0 & \cos \alpha_e \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} L_b \\ M_b \\ N_b \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{A9.2})$$

## AERODYNAMIC STABILITY DERIVATIVE TRANSFORMATIONS

### Force–velocity derivatives

Consider the situation when the aerodynamic force components comprise only those terms involving the force–velocity derivatives. Then, referred to wind axes

$$\begin{bmatrix} X_w \\ Y_w \\ Z_w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \dot{X}_{u_w} & 0 & \dot{X}_{w_w} \\ 0 & \dot{Y}_{v_w} & 0 \\ \dot{Z}_{u_w} & 0 & \dot{X}_{w_w} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u_w \\ v_w \\ w_w \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{A9.3})$$

and referred to body axes

$$\begin{bmatrix} X_b \\ Y_b \\ Z_b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \dot{X}_{u_b} & 0 & \dot{X}_{w_b} \\ 0 & \dot{Y}_{v_b} & 0 \\ \dot{Z}_{u_b} & 0 & \dot{X}_{w_b} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u_b \\ v_b \\ w_b \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{A9.4})$$

Substitute equations (A9.3) and (A9.4) into equation (A9.1)

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{X}_{u_w} & 0 & \dot{X}_{w_w} \\ 0 & \dot{Y}_{v_w} & 0 \\ \dot{Z}_{u_w} & 0 & \dot{X}_{w_w} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u_w \\ v_w \\ w_w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha_e & 0 & \sin \alpha_e \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\sin \alpha_e & 0 & \cos \alpha_e \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{X}_{u_b} & 0 & \dot{X}_{w_b} \\ 0 & \dot{Y}_{v_b} & 0 \\ \dot{Z}_{u_b} & 0 & \dot{X}_{w_b} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u_b \\ v_b \\ w_b \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{A9.5})$$

Now the transformation of linear velocity components from a *wind to body axes* reference may be obtained directly from the application of the direction cosine matrix, equation (2.12), with the same constraints as above

$$\begin{bmatrix} u_b \\ v_b \\ w_b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha_e & 0 & -\sin \alpha_e \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \sin \alpha_e & 0 & \cos \alpha_e \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u_w \\ v_w \\ w_w \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{A9.6})$$

Substitute the velocity vector referred to body axes, given by equation (A9.6), into equation (A9.5) and cancel the velocity vectors referred to wind axes to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{bmatrix} \dot{X}_{u_w} & 0 & \dot{X}_{w_w} \\ 0 & \dot{Y}_{v_w} & 0 \\ \dot{Z}_{u_w} & 0 & \dot{X}_{w_w} \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha_e & 0 & \sin \alpha_e \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\sin \alpha_e & 0 & \cos \alpha_e \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{X}_{u_b} & 0 & \dot{X}_{w_b} \\ 0 & \dot{Y}_{v_b} & 0 \\ \dot{Z}_{u_b} & 0 & \dot{X}_{w_b} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha_e & 0 & -\sin \alpha_e \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \sin \alpha_e & 0 & \cos \alpha_e \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

or, after multiplying the matrices on the right hand side the following transformations are obtained

$$\begin{aligned}
 \dot{X}_{u_w} &= \dot{X}_{u_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e + \dot{Z}_{w_b} \sin^2 \alpha_e + (\dot{X}_{w_b} + \dot{Z}_{u_b}) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e \\
 \dot{X}_{w_w} &= \dot{X}_{w_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e - \dot{Z}_{u_b} \sin^2 \alpha_e - (\dot{X}_{u_b} - \dot{Z}_{w_b}) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e \\
 \dot{Y}_{v_w} &= \dot{Y}_{v_b} \\
 \dot{Z}_{u_w} &= \dot{Z}_{u_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e - \dot{X}_{w_b} \sin^2 \alpha_e - (\dot{X}_{u_b} - \dot{Z}_{w_b}) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e \\
 \dot{Z}_{w_w} &= \dot{Z}_{w_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e + \dot{X}_{u_b} \sin^2 \alpha_e - (\dot{X}_{w_b} + \dot{Z}_{u_b}) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e
 \end{aligned} \tag{A9.7}$$

### Moment-velocity derivatives

Consider now the situation when the aerodynamic moment components comprise only those terms involving the moment-velocity derivatives. Then, referred to wind axes

$$\begin{bmatrix} L_w \\ M_w \\ N_w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \dot{L}_{v_w} & 0 \\ \dot{M}_{u_w} & 0 & \dot{M}_{w_w} \\ 0 & \dot{N}_{v_w} & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u_w \\ v_w \\ w_w \end{bmatrix} \tag{A9.8}$$

and referred to body axes

$$\begin{bmatrix} L_b \\ M_b \\ N_b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \dot{L}_{v_b} & 0 \\ \dot{M}_{u_b} & 0 & \dot{M}_{w_b} \\ 0 & \dot{N}_{v_b} & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u_b \\ v_b \\ w_b \end{bmatrix} \tag{A9.9}$$

Substitute equations (A9.8) and (A9.9) into equation (A9.2)

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & \dot{L}_{v_w} & 0 \\ \dot{M}_{u_w} & 0 & \dot{M}_{w_w} \\ 0 & \dot{N}_{v_w} & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u_w \\ v_w \\ w_w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha_e & 0 & \sin \alpha_e \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\sin \alpha_e & 0 & \cos \alpha_e \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \dot{L}_{v_b} & 0 \\ \dot{M}_{u_b} & 0 & \dot{M}_{w_b} \\ 0 & \dot{N}_{v_b} & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u_b \\ v_b \\ w_b \end{bmatrix} \tag{A9.10}$$

As before the transformation of linear velocity components from a *wind to body axes* reference is given by equation (A9.6). Substitute the velocity vector referred to body axes, given by equation (A9.6), into equation (A9.10). Again, the velocity vectors

referred to wind axes cancel and after multiplying the matrices on the right hand side the following transformations are obtained

$$\begin{aligned}
 \dot{L}_{v_w} &= \dot{L}_{v_b} \cos \alpha_e + \dot{N}_{v_b} \sin \alpha_e \\
 \dot{M}_{u_w} &= \dot{M}_{u_b} \cos \alpha_e + \dot{M}_{w_b} \sin \alpha_e \\
 \dot{M}_{w_w} &= \dot{M}_{w_b} \cos \alpha_e - \dot{M}_{u_b} \sin \alpha_e \\
 \dot{N}_{v_w} &= \dot{N}_{v_b} \cos \alpha_e - \dot{L}_{v_b} \sin \alpha_e
 \end{aligned} \tag{A9.11}$$

### Force–rotary derivatives

Consider now the situation when the aerodynamic force components comprise only those terms involving the force–angular velocity derivatives, more commonly referred to as the force–rotary derivatives. Then, referred to wind axes

$$\begin{bmatrix} X_w \\ Y_w \\ Z_w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \dot{X}_{q_w} & 0 \\ \dot{Y}_{p_w} & 0 & \dot{Y}_{r_w} \\ 0 & \dot{Z}_{q_w} & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} p_w \\ q_w \\ r_w \end{bmatrix} \tag{A9.12}$$

and referred to body axes

$$\begin{bmatrix} X_b \\ Y_b \\ Z_b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \dot{X}_{q_b} & 0 \\ \dot{Y}_{p_b} & 0 & \dot{Y}_{r_b} \\ 0 & \dot{Z}_{q_b} & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} p_b \\ q_b \\ r_b \end{bmatrix} \tag{A9.13}$$

Substitute equations (A9.12) and (A9.13) into equation (A9.1)

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & \dot{X}_{q_w} & 0 \\ \dot{Y}_{p_w} & 0 & \dot{Y}_{r_w} \\ 0 & \dot{Z}_{q_w} & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} p_w \\ q_w \\ r_w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha_e & 0 & \sin \alpha_e \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\sin \alpha_e & 0 & \cos \alpha_e \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \dot{X}_{q_b} & 0 \\ \dot{Y}_{p_b} & 0 & \dot{Y}_{r_b} \\ 0 & \dot{Z}_{q_b} & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} p_b \\ q_b \\ r_b \end{bmatrix} \tag{A9.14}$$

Now with reference to Chapter 2, the treatment of angular velocity components as vectors enables their transformation from a *wind to body axes* reference to be obtained as before by the direct application of the direction cosine matrix, equation (2.12). Thus with the same constraints as above

$$\begin{bmatrix} p_b \\ q_b \\ r_b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha_e & 0 & -\sin \alpha_e \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \sin \alpha_e & 0 & \cos \alpha_e \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} p_w \\ q_w \\ r_w \end{bmatrix} \tag{A9.15}$$

Substitute the angular velocity vector referred to body axes, given by equation (A9.15), into equation (A9.14) and cancel the velocity vectors referred to wind axes



to obtain

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & \dot{X}_{q_w} & 0 \\ \dot{Y}_{p_w} & 0 & \dot{Y}_{r_w} \\ 0 & \dot{Z}_{q_w} & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha_e & 0 & \sin \alpha_e \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\sin \alpha_e & 0 & \cos \alpha_e \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \dot{X}_{q_b} & 0 \\ \dot{Y}_{p_b} & 0 & \dot{Y}_{r_b} \\ 0 & \dot{Z}_{q_b} & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha_e & 0 & -\sin \alpha_e \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \sin \alpha_e & 0 & \cos \alpha_e \end{bmatrix}$$

or, after multiplying the matrices on the right hand side the following transformations are obtained

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{X}_{q_w} &= \dot{X}_{q_b} \cos \alpha_e + \dot{Z}_{q_b} \sin \alpha_e \\ \dot{Y}_{p_w} &= \dot{Y}_{p_b} \cos \alpha_e + \dot{Y}_{r_b} \sin \alpha_e \\ \dot{Y}_{r_w} &= \dot{Y}_{r_b} \cos \alpha_e - \dot{Y}_{p_b} \sin \alpha_e \\ \dot{Z}_{q_w} &= \dot{Z}_{q_b} \cos \alpha_e - \dot{X}_{q_b} \sin \alpha_e \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A9.16})$$

### Moment-rotary derivatives

Consider now the situation when the aerodynamic moment components comprise only those terms involving the moment-angular velocity derivatives or, moment-rotary derivatives. Then, referred to wind axes

$$\begin{bmatrix} L_w \\ M_w \\ N_w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \dot{L}_{p_w} & 0 & \dot{L}_{r_w} \\ 0 & \dot{M}_{q_w} & 0 \\ \dot{N}_{p_w} & 0 & \dot{N}_{r_w} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} p_w \\ q_w \\ r_w \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{A9.17})$$

and referred to body axes

$$\begin{bmatrix} L_b \\ M_b \\ N_b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \dot{L}_{p_b} & 0 & \dot{L}_{r_b} \\ 0 & \dot{M}_{q_b} & 0 \\ \dot{N}_{p_b} & 0 & \dot{N}_{r_b} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} p_b \\ q_b \\ r_b \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{A9.18})$$

Substitute equations (A9.17) and (A9.18) into equation (A9.2)

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{L}_{p_w} & 0 & \dot{L}_{r_w} \\ 0 & \dot{M}_{q_w} & 0 \\ \dot{N}_{p_w} & 0 & \dot{N}_{r_w} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} p_w \\ q_w \\ r_w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha_e & 0 & \sin \alpha_e \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\sin \alpha_e & 0 & \cos \alpha_e \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{L}_{p_b} & 0 & \dot{L}_{r_b} \\ 0 & \dot{M}_{q_b} & 0 \\ \dot{N}_{p_b} & 0 & \dot{N}_{r_b} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} p_b \\ q_b \\ r_b \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{A9.19})$$

As before the transformation of angular velocity components from a *wind* to *body* axes reference is given by equation (A9.15). Substitute the angular velocity vector referred

to body axes, given by equation (A9.15), into equation (A9.19). Again, the angular velocity vectors referred to wind axes cancel and after multiplying the matrices on the right hand side the following transformations are obtained

$$\begin{aligned}
 \dot{L}_{p_w} &= \dot{L}_{p_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e + \dot{N}_{r_b} \sin^2 \alpha_e + (\dot{L}_{r_b} + \dot{N}_{p_b}) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e \\
 \dot{L}_{r_w} &= \dot{L}_{r_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e - \dot{N}_{p_b} \sin^2 \alpha_e - (\dot{L}_{p_b} - \dot{N}_{r_b}) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e \\
 \dot{M}_{q_w} &= \dot{M}_{q_b} \\
 \dot{N}_{p_w} &= \dot{N}_{p_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e - \dot{L}_{r_b} \sin^2 \alpha_e - (\dot{L}_{p_b} - \dot{N}_{r_b}) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e \\
 \dot{N}_{r_w} &= \dot{N}_{r_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e + \dot{L}_{p_b} \sin^2 \alpha_e - (\dot{L}_{r_b} + \dot{N}_{p_b}) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e
 \end{aligned} \tag{A9.20}$$

### Force–acceleration derivatives

The force–acceleration derivatives are calculated in exactly the same way as the force–velocity derivatives. However, in this case the aerodynamic force components referred to wind axes are given by

$$\begin{bmatrix} X_w \\ Y_w \\ Z_w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & \dot{X}_{\dot{w}_w} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}_w} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{u}_w \\ \dot{v}_w \\ \dot{w}_w \end{bmatrix} \tag{A9.21}$$

and referred to body axes

$$\begin{bmatrix} X_b \\ Y_b \\ Z_b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & \dot{X}_{\dot{w}_b} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}_b} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{u}_b \\ \dot{v}_b \\ \dot{w}_b \end{bmatrix} \tag{A9.22}$$

Equations (A9.21) and (A9.22) are substituted into equation (A9.1), the velocity vectors become acceleration vectors and after some algebraic manipulation the following transformations are obtained

$$\begin{aligned}
 \dot{X}_{\dot{w}_w} &= \dot{X}_{\dot{w}_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e + \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}_b} \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e \\
 \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}_w} &= \dot{Z}_{\dot{w}_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e - \dot{X}_{\dot{w}_b} \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e
 \end{aligned} \tag{A9.23}$$

### Moment–acceleration derivatives

The moment–acceleration derivatives are calculated in exactly the same way as the moment–velocity derivatives. However, in this case the aerodynamic moment components referred to wind axes are given by

$$\begin{bmatrix} L_w \\ M_w \\ N_w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \dot{M}_{\dot{w}_w} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{u}_w \\ \dot{v}_w \\ \dot{w}_w \end{bmatrix} \tag{A9.24}$$

and referred to body axes

$$\begin{bmatrix} L_b \\ M_b \\ N_b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \dot{M}_{\dot{w}_b} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{u}_b \\ \dot{v}_b \\ \dot{w}_b \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{A9.25})$$

Equations (A9.24) and (A9.25) are substituted into equation (A9.2), the velocity vectors become acceleration vectors and after some algebraic manipulation the following transformation is obtained

$$\dot{M}_{\dot{w}_w} = \dot{M}_{\dot{w}_b} \cos \alpha_e \quad (\text{A9.26})$$

### Aerodynamic control derivatives

The aerodynamic control derivatives are most easily dealt with by denoting a general control input  $\delta$ . The transformation of the control force derivatives from a *body to wind axes* reference then follows directly from equation (A9.1) by writing

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{X}_{\delta_w} \\ \dot{Y}_{\delta_w} \\ \dot{Z}_{\delta_w} \end{bmatrix} \delta = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha_e & 0 & \sin \alpha_e \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\sin \alpha_e & 0 & \cos \alpha_e \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{X}_{\delta_b} \\ \dot{Y}_{\delta_b} \\ \dot{Z}_{\delta_b} \end{bmatrix} \delta \quad (\text{A9.27})$$

The corresponding transformation of the control moment derivatives follows directly from equation (A9.2) by writing

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{L}_{\delta_w} \\ \dot{M}_{\delta_w} \\ \dot{N}_{\delta_w} \end{bmatrix} \delta = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha_e & 0 & \sin \alpha_e \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\sin \alpha_e & 0 & \cos \alpha_e \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{L}_{\delta_b} \\ \dot{M}_{\delta_b} \\ \dot{N}_{\delta_b} \end{bmatrix} \delta \quad (\text{A9.28})$$

The specific control derivative transformations are then obtained by substituting elevator angle  $\eta$ , aileron angle  $\xi$ , rudder angle  $\zeta$ , thrust  $\tau$  and so on, in place of  $\delta$  in equations (A9.27) and (A9.28). Bearing in mind that the longitudinal and lateral equations of motion are decoupled then it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{X}_{\eta_w} &= \dot{X}_{\eta_b} \cos \alpha_e + \dot{Z}_{\eta_b} \sin \alpha_e \\ \dot{Z}_{\eta_w} &= \dot{Z}_{\eta_b} \cos \alpha_e - \dot{X}_{\eta_b} \sin \alpha_e \\ \dot{M}_{\eta_w} &= \dot{M}_{\eta_b} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A9.29})$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{Y}_{\xi_w} &= \dot{Y}_{\xi_b} \\ \dot{L}_{\xi_w} &= \dot{L}_{\xi_b} \cos \alpha_e + \dot{N}_{\xi_b} \sin \alpha_e \\ \dot{N}_{\xi_w} &= \dot{N}_{\xi_b} \cos \alpha_e - \dot{L}_{\xi_b} \sin \alpha_e \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A9.30})$$

By writing  $\tau$  in place of  $\eta$  in equation (A9.29) the thrust control derivative transformations are obtained. Similarly, by writing  $\zeta$  in place of  $\xi$  in equation (A9.30) the rudder control derivative transformations are obtained.

## SUMMARY

The *body to wind axes* derivative transformations described above are summarised in Table A9.1. The transformations from *wind to body axes* are easily obtained by the

**Table A9.1** *Body axes to wind axes derivative transformations*

<i>Wind axes</i>	<i>Body axes</i>
$\overset{\circ}{X}_{u_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{X}_{u_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{Z}_{w_b} \sin^2 \alpha_e + \left( \overset{\circ}{X}_{w_b} + \overset{\circ}{Z}_{u_b} \right) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{X}_{w_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{X}_{w_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{Z}_{u_b} \sin^2 \alpha_e - \left( \overset{\circ}{X}_{u_b} - \overset{\circ}{Z}_{w_b} \right) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{Y}_{v_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{Y}_{v_b}$
$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{u_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{u_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{X}_{w_b} \sin^2 \alpha_e - \left( \overset{\circ}{X}_{u_b} - \overset{\circ}{Z}_{w_b} \right) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{w_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{w_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{X}_{u_b} \sin^2 \alpha_e - \left( \overset{\circ}{X}_{w_b} + \overset{\circ}{Z}_{u_b} \right) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{L}_{v_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{L}_{v_b} \cos \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{N}_{v_b} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{M}_{u_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{M}_{u_b} \cos \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{M}_{w_b} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{M}_{w_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{M}_{w_b} \cos \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{M}_{u_b} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{N}_{v_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{N}_{v_b} \cos \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{L}_{v_b} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{X}_{q_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{X}_{q_b} \cos \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{Z}_{q_b} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{Y}_{p_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{Y}_{p_b} \cos \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{Y}_{r_b} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{Y}_{r_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{Y}_{r_b} \cos \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{Y}_{p_b} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{q_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{q_b} \cos \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{X}_{q_b} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{L}_{p_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{L}_{p_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{N}_{r_b} \sin^2 \alpha_e + \left( \overset{\circ}{L}_{r_b} + \overset{\circ}{N}_{p_b} \right) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{L}_{r_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{L}_{r_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{N}_{p_b} \sin^2 \alpha_e - \left( \overset{\circ}{L}_{p_b} - \overset{\circ}{N}_{r_b} \right) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{M}_{q_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{M}_{q_b}$
$\overset{\circ}{N}_{p_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{N}_{p_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{L}_{r_b} \sin^2 \alpha_e - \left( \overset{\circ}{L}_{p_b} - \overset{\circ}{N}_{r_b} \right) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{N}_{r_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{N}_{r_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{L}_{p_b} \sin^2 \alpha_e - \left( \overset{\circ}{L}_{r_b} + \overset{\circ}{N}_{p_b} \right) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{X}_{\dot{w}_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{X}_{\dot{w}_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{Z}_{\dot{w}_b} \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{\dot{w}_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{\dot{w}_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{X}_{\dot{w}_b} \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{M}_{\dot{w}_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{M}_{\dot{w}_b} \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{X}_{\eta_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{X}_{\eta_b} \cos \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{Z}_{\eta_b} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{\eta_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{\eta_b} \cos \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{X}_{\eta_b} \sin \alpha_e$

**Table A9.2** *Wind axes to body axes derivative transformations*

<i>Body axes</i>	<i>Wind axes</i>
$\overset{\circ}{X}_{ub}$	$\overset{\circ}{X}_{uw} \cos^2 \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{Z}_{wv} \sin^2 \alpha_e - \left( \overset{\circ}{X}_{wv} + \overset{\circ}{Z}_{uw} \right) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{X}_{wb}$	$\overset{\circ}{X}_{wv} \cos^2 \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{Z}_{uw} \sin^2 \alpha_e + \left( \overset{\circ}{X}_{uw} - \overset{\circ}{Z}_{wv} \right) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{Y}_{vb}$	$\overset{\circ}{Y}_{v_w}$
$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{ub}$	$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{uw} \cos^2 \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{X}_{wv} \sin^2 \alpha_e + \left( \overset{\circ}{X}_{uw} - \overset{\circ}{Z}_{wv} \right) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{wb}$	$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{wv} \cos^2 \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{X}_{uw} \sin^2 \alpha_e + \left( \overset{\circ}{X}_{wv} + \overset{\circ}{Z}_{uw} \right) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{L}_{vb}$	$\overset{\circ}{L}_{v_w} \cos \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{N}_{v_w} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{M}_{ub}$	$\overset{\circ}{M}_{uw} \cos \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{M}_{wv} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{M}_{wb}$	$\overset{\circ}{M}_{wv} \cos \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{M}_{uw} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{N}_{vb}$	$\overset{\circ}{N}_{v_w} \cos \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{L}_{v_w} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{X}_{qb}$	$\overset{\circ}{X}_{qw} \cos \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{Z}_{qw} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{Y}_{pb}$	$\overset{\circ}{Y}_{pw} \cos \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{Y}_{rw} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{Y}_{rb}$	$\overset{\circ}{Y}_{rw} \cos \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{Y}_{pw} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{qb}$	$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{qw} \cos \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{X}_{qw} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{L}_{pb}$	$\overset{\circ}{L}_{pw} \cos^2 \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{N}_{rw} \sin^2 \alpha_e - \left( \overset{\circ}{L}_{rw} + \overset{\circ}{N}_{pw} \right) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{L}_{rb}$	$\overset{\circ}{L}_{rw} \cos^2 \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{N}_{pw} \sin^2 \alpha_e + \left( \overset{\circ}{L}_{pw} + \overset{\circ}{N}_{rw} \right) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{M}_{qb}$	$\overset{\circ}{M}_{qw}$
$\overset{\circ}{N}_{pb}$	$\overset{\circ}{N}_{pw} \cos^2 \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{L}_{rw} \sin^2 \alpha_e + \left( \overset{\circ}{L}_{pw} - \overset{\circ}{N}_{rw} \right) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{N}_{rb}$	$\overset{\circ}{N}_{rw} \cos^2 \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{L}_{pw} \sin^2 \alpha_e + \left( \overset{\circ}{L}_{rw} + \overset{\circ}{N}_{pw} \right) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{X}_{\dot{w}b}$	$\overset{\circ}{X}_{\dot{w}_w} \cos^2 \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{Z}_{\dot{w}_w} \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{\dot{w}b}$	$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{\dot{w}_w} \cos^2 \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{X}_{\dot{w}_w} \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{M}_{\dot{w}b}$	$\overset{\circ}{M}_{\dot{w}_w} \cos \alpha_e$

inverse procedure and these are summarised in Table A9.2 for convenience. The corresponding control derivative transformations are summarised in Tables A9.3 and A9.4.

In the two following tables it is simply necessary to write  $\eta$ ,  $\tau$ ,  $\xi$  or  $\zeta$  in place of  $\delta$  as appropriate.

**Table A9.3** *Body axes to wind axes control derivative transformations*

<i>Wind axes</i>	<i>Body axes</i>
$\overset{\circ}{X}_{\delta_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{X}_{\delta_b} \cos \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{Z}_{\delta_b} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{Y}_{\delta_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{Y}_{\delta_b}$
$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{\delta_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{\delta_b} \cos \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{X}_{\delta_b} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{L}_{\delta_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{L}_{\delta_b} \cos \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{N}_{\delta_b} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{M}_{\delta_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{M}_{\delta_b}$
$\overset{\circ}{N}_{\delta_w}$	$\overset{\circ}{N}_{\delta_b} \cos \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{L}_{\delta_b} \sin \alpha_e$

**Table A9.4** *Wind axes to body axes control derivative transformations*

<i>Body axes</i>	<i>Wind axes</i>
$\overset{\circ}{X}_{\delta_b}$	$\overset{\circ}{X}_{\delta_w} \cos \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{Z}_{\delta_w} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{Y}_{\delta_b}$	$\overset{\circ}{Y}_{\delta_w}$
$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{\delta_b}$	$\overset{\circ}{Z}_{\delta_w} \cos \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{X}_{\delta_w} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{L}_{\delta_b}$	$\overset{\circ}{L}_{\delta_w} \cos \alpha_e - \overset{\circ}{N}_{\delta_w} \sin \alpha_e$
$\overset{\circ}{M}_{\delta_b}$	$\overset{\circ}{M}_{\delta_w}$
$\overset{\circ}{N}_{\delta_b}$	$\overset{\circ}{N}_{\delta_w} \cos \alpha_e + \overset{\circ}{L}_{\delta_w} \sin \alpha_e$

---

## Appendix 10

# The Transformation of the Moments and Products of Inertia from a Body Axes Reference to a Wind Axes Reference

### INTRODUCTION

In the same way that it is sometimes necessary to transform the aerodynamic stability and control derivatives from a body axes reference to a wind axes reference, and *vice versa*, it is also necessary to transform the corresponding moments and products of inertia. Again, the procedure is very straightforward and makes use of the transformation relationships discussed in Chapter 2. It is assumed that the body axes and wind axes in question have a common origin at the *cg* of the aeroplane and that it is in steady level symmetric flight. Thus the axes differ by the steady body incidence  $\alpha_e$  only as shown in Fig. 2.2.

### COORDINATE TRANSFORMATION

#### Body to wind axes

A set of coordinates in a body axes system  $x_b, y_b, z_b$  may be transformed into the equivalent set in a wind axes system  $x_w, y_w, z_w$  by application of the inverse direction cosine matrix given by equation (2.13). Writing  $\theta = \alpha_e$  and  $\phi = \psi = 0$  since level symmetric flight is assumed then

$$\begin{bmatrix} x_w \\ y_w \\ z_w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha_e & 0 & \sin \alpha_e \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\sin \alpha_e & 0 & \cos \alpha_e \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_b \\ y_b \\ z_b \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{A10.1})$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} x_w &= x_b \cos \alpha_e + z_b \sin \alpha_e \\ y_w &= y_b \\ z_w &= z_b \cos \alpha_e - x_b \sin \alpha_e \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A10.2})$$

#### Wind to body axes

A set of coordinates in a wind axes system  $x_w, y_w, z_w$  may be transformed into the equivalent set in a body axes system  $x_b, y_b, z_b$  by application of the direction cosine

matrix given by equation (2.12). Again, writing  $\theta = \alpha_e$  and  $\phi = \psi = 0$  since level symmetric flight is assumed then

$$\begin{bmatrix} x_b \\ y_b \\ z_b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha_e & 0 & -\sin \alpha_e \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \sin \alpha_e & 0 & \cos \alpha_e \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_w \\ y_w \\ z_w \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{A10.3})$$

which is simply the inverse of equation (A10.1). Alternatively

$$\begin{aligned} x_b &= x_w \cos \alpha_e - z_w \sin \alpha_e \\ y_b &= y_w \\ z_b &= z_w \cos \alpha_e + x_w \sin \alpha_e \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A10.4})$$

### THE TRANSFORMATION OF THE MOMENT OF INERTIA IN ROLL FROM A BODY AXES REFERENCE TO A WIND AXES REFERENCE

The moment of inertia in roll is defined in Table 4.1, and may be written when referenced to a system of wind axes

$$I_{x_w} = \sum \delta m (y_w^2 + z_w^2) \quad (\text{A10.5})$$

Substitute for  $y_w$  and  $z_w$  from equations (A10.2) to obtain

$$I_{x_w} = \sum \delta m (y_b^2 + z_b^2) + \sum \delta m (x_b^2 - z_b^2) \sin^2 \alpha_e - 2 \sum \delta m x_b z_b \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e \quad (\text{A10.6})$$

Add the following null expression to the right hand side of equation (A10.6)

$$\sum \delta m (y_b^2 + z_b^2) \sin^2 \alpha_e - \sum \delta m (y_b^2 + z_b^2) \sin^2 \alpha_e$$

and rearrange to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} I_{x_w} &= \sum \delta m (y_b^2 + z_b^2) \cos^2 \alpha_e + \sum \delta m (x_b^2 + y_b^2) \sin^2 \alpha_e \\ &\quad - 2 \sum \delta m x_b z_b \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A10.7})$$

Referring to the definitions of moments and products of inertia in Table 4.1, equation (A10.7) may be rewritten

$$I_{x_w} = I_{x_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e + I_{y_b} \sin^2 \alpha_e - 2I_{xz_b} \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e \quad (\text{A10.8})$$

Equation (A10.8) therefore describes the inertia transformation from a body axes reference to a wind axes reference.

This simple procedure may be repeated to obtain all of the moment and product of inertia transformations from a body axes reference to a wind axes reference.



The inverse procedure, using the coordinate transformations given by equations (A10.4), is equally straightforward to apply to obtain the corresponding transformations from a wind axes reference to a body axes reference.

SUMMARY

The *body to wind axes* moments and products of inertia transformations are summarised in Table A10.1. The corresponding transformations from *wind to body axes* obtained by the inverse procedure are summarised in Table A10.2.

**Table A10.1** *Moment and product of inertia transformations from a body to wind axes reference*

<i>Wind axes</i>	<i>Body axes</i>
$I_{x_w}$	$I_{x_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e + I_{z_b} \sin^2 \alpha_e - 2I_{xz_b} \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$I_{y_w}$	$I_{y_b}$
$I_{z_w}$	$I_{z_b} \cos^2 \alpha_e + I_{x_b} \sin^2 \alpha_e + 2I_{xz_b} \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$I_{xy_w}$	$I_{xy_b} \cos \alpha_e + I_{yz_b} \sin \alpha_e$
$I_{xz_w}$	$I_{xz_b} (\cos^2 \alpha_e - \sin^2 \alpha_e) + (I_{x_b} - I_{z_b}) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$I_{yz_w}$	$I_{yz_b} \cos \alpha_e - I_{xy_b} \sin \alpha_e$

**Table A10.2** *Moment and product of inertia transformations from a wind to body axes reference*

<i>Body axes</i>	<i>Wind axes</i>
$I_{x_b}$	$I_{x_w} \cos^2 \alpha_e + I_{z_w} \sin^2 \alpha_e + 2I_{xz_w} \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$I_{y_b}$	$I_{y_w}$
$I_{z_b}$	$I_{z_w} \cos^2 \alpha_e + I_{x_w} \sin^2 \alpha_e - 2I_{xz_w} \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$I_{xy_b}$	$I_{xy_w} \cos \alpha_e - I_{yz_w} \sin \alpha_e$
$I_{xz_b}$	$I_{xz_w} (\cos^2 \alpha_e - \sin^2 \alpha_e) + (I_{z_w} - I_{x_w}) \sin \alpha_e \cos \alpha_e$
$I_{yz_b}$	$I_{yz_w} \cos \alpha_e + I_{xy_w} \sin \alpha_e$

---

## Appendix 11

# The Root Locus Plot

### MATHEMATICAL BACKGROUND

Given the general closed loop system transfer function

$$\frac{r(s)}{c(s)} = \frac{G(s)}{1 + G(s)H(s)} \quad (\text{A11.1})$$

where  $r$  is the response to a command input  $c$ ,  $G(s)$  is the transfer function of the open loop system and  $H(s)$  is the transfer function of the feedback controller located in the feedback path. The closed loop characteristic equation is given by the denominator of equation (A11.1)

$$1 + G(s)H(s) = 0 \quad (\text{A11.2})$$

Now, in general, the transfer function product  $G(s)H(s)$  will itself be a transfer function and may be expressed as the ratio of two polynomials

$$G(s)H(s) = \frac{K_1(1 + sT_1)(1 + sT_3) \cdots}{s^n(1 + sT_2)(1 + sT_4) \cdots} \quad (\text{A11.3})$$

or, alternatively,

$$G(s)H(s) = \frac{K \left(s + \frac{1}{T_1}\right) \left(s + \frac{1}{T_3}\right) \cdots}{S^n \left(s + \frac{1}{T_2}\right) \left(s + \frac{1}{T_4}\right) \cdots} \quad (\text{A11.4})$$

where the gain constant is given by

$$K = \frac{K_1 T_1 T_3 \cdots}{T_2 T_4 \cdots} \quad (\text{A11.5})$$

Each factor in equation (A11.4) may be expressed alternatively in terms of magnitude and phase, assuming sinusoidal command and response such that  $s = j\omega$ , for example,

$$\left(s + \frac{1}{T_1}\right) = A_1 e^{j\phi_1} \quad (\text{A11.6})$$

whence, equation (A11.4) may be written

$$G(s)H(s) = \frac{KA_1A_3 \dots e^{j((\phi_1+\phi_3+\dots)-(n\phi_0+\phi_2+\phi_4+\dots))}}{A_0^n A_2 A_4 \dots} \equiv Ae^{j\phi} \quad (\text{A11.7})$$

where, the total magnitude  $A$  is given by

$$A = \frac{KA_1A_3 \dots}{A_0^n A_2 A_4 \dots} \quad (\text{A11.8})$$

and the total phase is given by

$$\phi = (\phi_1 + \phi_3 + \dots) - (n\phi_0 + \phi_2 + \phi_4 + \dots) \quad (\text{A11.9})$$

Thus, the characteristic equation (A11.2) may be written

$$1 + G(s)H(s) \equiv 1 + Ae^{j\phi} = 0 \quad (\text{A11.10})$$

which has solution

$$Ae^{j\phi} = -1 \quad (\text{A11.11})$$

For the solution of equation (A11.11) to exist two conditions must be satisfied:

(i) The *angle condition*

$$\phi = (\phi_1 + \phi_3 + \dots) - (n\phi_0 + \phi_2 + \phi_4 + \dots) = (2k + 1)180 \text{ deg} \quad (\text{A11.12})$$

where  $k = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 3, \dots$

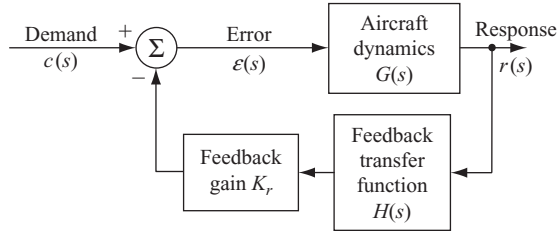
(ii) The *magnitude condition*

$$|G(s)H(s)| = A = \frac{KA_1A_3 \dots}{A_0^n A_2 A_4 \dots} = 1 \quad (\text{A11.13})$$

Thus any point in the  $s$ -plane where the conditions defined by both equations (A11.12) and (A11.13) are satisfied defines a root of the characteristic equation. By finding all such points in the  $s$ -plane a locus of the roots of the characteristic equation may be constructed. In fact the root loci may be identified merely by satisfying the angle condition only, the loci may then be *calibrated* by applying the magnitude condition to selected points of interest on the loci.

## THE RULES FOR CONSTRUCTING A ROOT LOCUS PLOT

The simple closed loop system of interest is defined by the structure shown in Fig. A11.1. The object is to establish how the roots of the closed loop transfer function



**Figure A11.1** A simple closed loop system.

are governed by the choice of feedback gain  $K_r$ . The *open loop* transfer function of the system is known at the outset and comprises the product of the transfer functions of all the system components in the loop

$$K_r G(s)H(s) \quad (\text{A11.14})$$

The corresponding *closed loop* transfer function is

$$\frac{r(s)}{c(s)} = \frac{G(s)}{1 + K_r G(s)H(s)} \quad (\text{A11.15})$$

The root locus plot is constructed from the open loop transfer function (A11.14) which should be in factorised form for convenience. The *zeros* are the numerator roots and the *poles* are the denominator roots of equation (A11.15). When plotting the root loci on the  $s$ -plane it is often convenient to choose the same numerical scales for both the real and imaginary axes.

### Rule 1

Continuous curves which comprise the branches of the locus start at the poles of  $G(s)H(s)$  where the gain  $K_r = 0$ . The branches of the locus terminate at the zeros of  $G(s)H(s)$ , or at infinity, where the gain  $K_r = \infty$ .

### Rule 2

The locus includes all points on the real axis to the left of an odd number of poles plus zeros.

### Rule 3

As  $K_r \rightarrow \infty$ , the branches of the locus become asymptotic to straight lines with angles,

$$\frac{(2k+1)180}{n_p - n_z} \text{ deg} \quad k = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 3, \dots$$

where

$n_p$  is the number of poles and  $n_z$  is the number of zeros.

**Rule 4**

The asymptotes radiate from a point on the real axis called the *centre of gravity* ( $cg$ ) of the plot and is determined by

$$cg = \frac{\sum poles - \sum zeros}{n_p - n_z}$$

**Rule 5**

The loci *break in* to or *break away* from points on the real axis located between pairs of zeros or pairs of poles respectively. Two methods may be used to estimate the locations of the break-in or break-away points on the real axis. The first method is approximate and gives results of acceptable accuracy for the majority of cases. The second method is exact and may be used when the first method gives unsatisfactory results:

(i) *Method 1*

- Select a test point on the real axis in the vicinity of a known break-in or break-away point.
- Measure the distances from the test point to each real axis pole and zero. Assign a negative sign to the pole distances, a positive sign to the zero distances and calculate the reciprocals of the distances.
- Calculate the sum of the reciprocals for all poles and zeros to the left of the test point and calculate the sum of the reciprocals for all poles and zeros to the right of the test point.
- The test point is a break-in or break-away point when the left and right reciprocal sums are equal.
- Choose a new test point and iterate until the break-in or break-away point is obtained with acceptable accuracy.
- Note that this method may give inaccurate results when complex poles and zeros lie close to the real axis.

(ii) *Method 2*

- Denote the open loop transfer function

$$G(s)H(s) = \frac{A(s)}{B(s)} \quad (\text{A11.16})$$

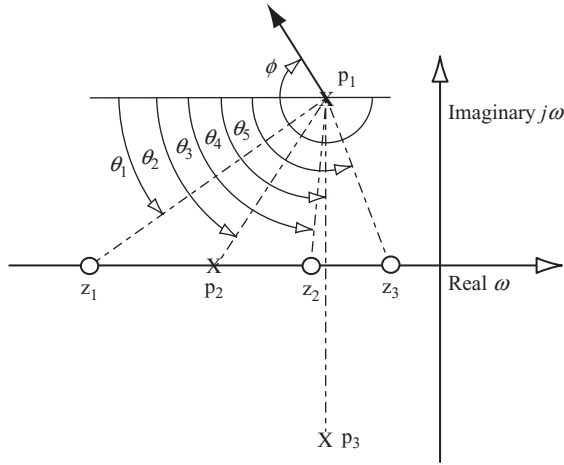
- Define a function  $F(s)$

$$F(s) = B(s) \frac{dA(s)}{ds} - A(s) \frac{dB(s)}{ds} \quad (\text{A11.17})$$

- The roots of  $F(s)$  include all the break-in or break-away points.

**Rule 6**

Loci branching in to, or away from the real axis do so at  $90^\circ$  to the real axis.



**Figure A11.2** Example of the locus departure angle from a complex pole.

#### Rule 7

The angle of departure of a locus from a complex pole, or the angle of arrival at a complex zero, is given by

$$\phi - \sum (\text{angles to all other zeros}) - \sum (\text{angles to all other poles}) - 180 \text{ deg} \quad (\text{A11.18})$$

An example is illustrated in Fig. A11.2.

Thus with reference to Fig. A11.2 the angle of departure of the locus from complex pole  $p_1$  is given by

$$\phi = (\theta_1 + \theta_3 + \theta_5) - (\theta_2 + \theta_4) - 180 \text{ deg} \quad (\text{A11.19})$$

#### Rule 8

The total loop gain at any point on a locus is given by

$$\text{Gain} = \frac{\Pi(\text{distances from test point to poles})}{\Pi(\text{distances from test point to zeros})} \quad (\text{A11.20})$$

Note that if the system under investigation has no zeros then the denominator of expression (A11.20) is taken to be unity.

*This page intentionally left blank*

---

# Index

*Note:* Page numbers representing figures are in **bold**; tables are in *italics*.

- A-7A Corsair II, 139, 155, 163, 402, 403
  - velocity frequency response, 163, 164
- Accelerated flight, 210
- Acceleration:
  - inertial, 66
  - initial pitch, 262
  - normal, 262
  - perturbations, derivatives, 346–350
  - and rotary motion, 68
  - tangential, 68
- Ackeret theory, 330
- Adjustment:
  - elevator tab, 49
  - trim tab, 49
- Adverse roll, 179
- Adverse yaw, 181
- Aerobatic aircraft, 69–70
- Aerodynamic:
  - centre, aerofoil, 28
  - coefficients, dimensionless, 82
  - control derivatives, 371–377
  - control terms, 76
  - drag, 322
  - force, and moment components, 339
  - modelling, 320–336
    - limitations of, 335
  - operating conditions, 57
  - spring, 186
  - stability derivatives, 76
    - longitudinal, 337–350
  - terms, 75–76
- Aerofoil:
  - aerodynamic centre, 29
  - cambered, 28
  - centre of pressure, 28
- Aerotrim, 61–64
- Agility, 212
- Aileron, displacements, 27
- Aircraft:
  - classification, 252
  - dynamics, and manoeuvring, 222–223
- Aircraft behaviour:
  - like amplifier, 162
  - like attenuator, 162
- Aircraft body fixed axes, 13–18
- Aircraft geometry, 5
- Aircraft trim condition, 57–59
  - calculation
    - Aerotrim, 61–64
    - controls fixed static stability, 60–61
    - elevator to trim, 59–60
- Airframes:
  - configuration, trimmed equilibrium, 32
  - flexibility, 39
- Algorithms:
  - Fadeeva, 118
  - Generalised Eigenvalue Problem, 118
- American Military Specification
  - MIL-F-8785C, 250–251
- American Military Standard
  - MIL-STD-1797A, 251
- Angle of attack, 28–29
- Angular:
  - perturbation, 75
  - relationships, symmetric flight,
    - 16–17, **16**
  - velocities, 22–24
- Apparent inertia, 347
- Apparent mass, 347
- Approximations:
  - dutch roll mode, 192–193
  - roll mode, 189–190
  - short period mode, 147–150
  - spiral mode, 190–192
- Aspect ratio, 25
- Atmospheric disturbances, 4, 5
- Attitude, 13, 18
  - angles, 18
  - constant steady state pitch, 110
  - perturbation, 74
  - rate, 22
- Augmentation system, design, 280–283, **281**
- Augmented state equation, 132–133
- Automatic flight control system (AFCS) 2
- Autopilot, stability augmentation system, 275



- Axes:
  - aerodynamic, 14
  - body, 13
  - choice of, 17–18
  - generalised body, 13
  - moving, 13, **14**
  - principal inertia, 72
  - stability, 14
  - transformations, 18–24
  - wind, 14, 17
- Axial force:
  - due to elevator, 372
  - due to normal velocity, 341
  - due to pitch rate, 344
  - due to rate of change of normal velocity, 348
  - due to velocity, 322
- Axial velocity:
  - normal force due to, 340
  - and pitching moment, 342
- Balance, 75, 212
- Bandwidth, 159
  - frequency, 162
  - speed of response, 163
- Banked turn, **23**
- Bode diagram, 159–165, **161**, 195
  - break frequency, 160
  - gain plot, 160
  - interpretation, 161–165
- Body axis system, 13–14
- Body rates, angular, **22**
- Boeing B-747, 200–201, **238**, 236
- British Civil Airworthiness Requirements, 249
- British Defence Standard
  - DEF-STAN 00-970, 213–214, 250, 251
- Busemann theory, 330
- Centre of gravity:
  - location, 26, **24**
  - trimmed equilibrium, 32
- Centre of pressure, 28
  - wings, 28
- Characteristic equation, 102, 144, 182–183, 227
  - augmented, 282, 284
  - Douglas DC-8, 193
  - lateral–directional, 191, 231
  - order of, 189
  - reduced order, 149, 188
  - solution of, 182–183, 227
- Chord:
  - geometric, 25
  - mean aerodynamic, 25
  - standard mean, 25
- Civil Aviation Authority, 249
- Civil transport aeroplane:
  - stability and control characteristics, 392–396
- Closed loop, 166
  - control law, 284
  - equations of motion, 284
  - system analysis, 283–287, **283**
- Cockpit design, 4
- Coefficient *E*, 233–234
- Command and stability augmentation system (CSAS), 279
- Command path control, 281
- Compressibility, 327–335
- Computers, 8–10
  - analytical, 8
  - flight control, 8–9
  - software, 9–10
- Concise lateral state equation, 91
- Control:
  - augmentation, 6
  - derivatives, 7
    - Lockheed F-104 Starfighter, 106
  - error signal, **281**, 282
  - force, to trim, 32, 49
  - gains, 275
  - law, 275
    - closed loop, 274
    - stability augmentation system (SAS), 275, 277, 314
  - and response, 5
  - and stability, 6
  - system, closed loop, 274
  - terms, aerodynamic, 76
- Control Anticipation Parameter (CAP), 258, 260–263
  - definition, 261
- Controllability, 226, 240
- Controlled motion, 241–242
- Controlled system:
  - multi-input, 312
  - single input, 312
- Controls, 27–28
  - aerodynamic, 27
  - engine, 27–28
  - fixed
    - dynamic stability, 170
    - manoeuvre margin, 150, 217

- manoeuvre point, 150, 217
- neutral point, 29, 44, **46**, 150
- stability, 44–47, 216–218
- stability margin, 52, 150
- free
  - dynamic stability, 170
  - neutral point, 48, 51, **52**
  - stability, 47–51, 218–221
- notation, 27–28
- in pitch, 27
- in roll, 27
- in yaw, 27
- Convair CV-880, 393
- Conversions, 425
- Convolution integral, 120
- Cooper–Harper rating, 255–256, **257** (table)
- Coordinate transformation, 448–449
  - body to wind axes, 448
  - wind to body axes, 448–449
- Coupling:
  - aerodynamic, 81, 186, 192
  - dynamic, 167, 178, 202
  - mode, 167
- Coursework studies, 390–404
- Cramer's rule, 99–101, 103, 105
- Critical damping, 236
- Damped harmonic motion, 429
- Damped natural frequency, 429
- Damping, 33, 139, 144
  - angle, 235
  - ratio, 107, 110–111, 266
  - requirements, dutch roll mode, 268
- Datum-path, earth axes, 13
- Decoupled equations of motion, 79–82
- Definitions:
  - Control Anticipation Parameter (CAP), 261
  - Mach cone, 328
  - Mach number, 328
  - pitch, 15
  - roll, 15
  - shock stall, 328
  - shock wave, 328
  - stability, 224
  - subsonic flight, 328
  - supersonic flight, 328
  - yaw, 15
- Degrees of freedom, 66, 72, 85, 186
- Demonstration of compliance, 250
  - test flights, 250
- Department of Defense, 249
- Derivatives:
  - acceleration perturbations, 346–350
  - aerodynamic, 7, 76, 321
    - control, 371–377
      - lateral-directional stability, 350–371
      - longitudinal stability, 337–350
  - aero-normalised, 83
  - axial force due to velocity, 322–323
  - calculation, 324
  - concise, 187, 397–398
  - control
    - lateral, 414, 418
    - longitudinal, 413, 446
  - dimensional, 419–420, 420–421
  - dimensionless, 83, 84, 88, 90, 233, 234
  - due to elevator, 371–373
  - estimation, 323–327
  - force, 339–342
  - force–acceleration, 443
  - force–rotary, 441–442
  - force–velocity, 439–440
  - high-performance aeroplanes, 347
  - lateral, McDonnell F-4C Phantom, 90
  - magnitudes, 126
  - measurement
    - flight test, 325–327
    - wind tunnel, 324–325
  - moment–acceleration, 443–444
  - moment–rotary, 442–443
  - moment–velocity, 440–441
  - pitch velocity perturbation, 343–346
  - quasi-static, 321–323
  - rate of roll, 360–365, **361**, **362**
  - semi-empirical, 324
  - due to sideslip, 351–360
  - stability
    - lateral, 414, 417
    - longitudinal, 413, 415
  - yaw rate, 365–371
- Design modification, 6
- Dihedral effect, **53**, 185, 264, 352
- Dimensionless:
  - equations of motion, 82–85
  - inertias, 85
- Direct lift control (DLC), 212
- Direction cosine matrix, 19, 20
- Directional:
  - static stability, 54–57
  - weathercock effect, 234
- Disturbance forces, and moments, 72–73

- Douglas DC-8, 176–182, 195
  - characteristic equation, 227
  - frequency response, 195–200
  - sideslip angle frequency, **198**
  - source data, 147–153
- Downwash, 347–348
  - field, 42, **348**
- Drag:
  - coefficient, 330
  - lateral, 351
  - due to lift, 331
  - and pitching moment
    - subsonic lift, 329–330
    - supersonic lift, 330–332
    - variation with Mach number, **334**
  - properties, and Mach number, 333
  - skin friction, 331
  - wave, 331
- Drag–velocity plot, **322**
- Dutch roll mode, 186–188, 198–199, 201, 202, 204, 232, 264–265, 310
  - approximations, 192–193
  - damping ratio, 195
  - damping requirements, 268
  - flight recording, **205**
  - frequency, 197
  - limiting frequency, 268
  - McDonnell F-4 Phantom, 269
  - oscillatory, 178, **187**
- Dynamic coupling, 167
- Dynamic models, short term, 241–249
- Dynamics:
  - lateral–directional, 174
  - longitudinal, 138
  - short term, 201, 241
- Early aviation, 1
- Earth axes, 12–13, **13**
  - datum-path, 13
- Effective aspect ratio, 331
- Eigenvalues:
  - and eigenvectors, 120–121
  - matrix, 121
- Eigenvectors:
  - and eigenvalues, 120–121
  - magnitude, 126
  - matrix, 181
- Elevator:
  - angle
    - to trim, 43
  - trimmed equilibrium, 32
  - and axial force, 72
  - deflection, 82
  - displacements, 27, 218
  - hinge moment, 47, 218
  - longitudinal response to, 138
  - and normal force, 372
  - and pitching moment, 373
  - pulse duration, 167
  - tab
    - adjustment, 49
    - angle to trim, 43, 49
  - transfer function, Lockheed F-104 Starfighter, 285–287
- Engine:
  - control, 27–28
  - dynamics, 131–132
- Equations:
  - aero-normalised, 83
  - characteristic, 102, 144, 182–183, 227
  - error method, 326
  - generalised force, 70–71
  - generalised moment, 71–72
  - height, 128–129
  - lateral–directional state, 189
  - longitudinal characteristic, 144, 147
  - longitudinal state, 129, 132
  - modal, 121, 122
  - of motion, 5, 7
    - in American normalised form, 91–95
    - closed loop, 284
    - decoupled, 79–82
    - dimensional decoupled, 82
    - dimensionless, 82–85
    - lateral asymmetric, 82
    - lateral–directional, 81–82, 174–175
    - linearised, 73–79
    - longitudinal, 79–81, 83
    - McDonnell Douglas DC-8 *see* Douglas DC-8
    - McDonnell Douglas F-4C Phantom, 88–90, 90–91, 312
    - open loop, 284
    - small perturbations, 77–79
    - solving, 98
      - Laplace transform, 98–99
      - state space form, 85–91
    - pitching moment, 40–43, 214–216
    - reduced order, 148
    - steady state, 78
- Equilibrium, trimmed, 15, 32–40
- Euler angles, 18, 18
- Experiments, dynamic, 325

- Failure transient, 276
- Federal Aviation Administration, 249, 250
- Feed forward path, 281
- Feedback path, 280–281
- Fin:
  - disturbance, 55
  - effect, 185
  - effectiveness, 56
  - moment arm, 26, **27**
  - volume ratio, 26, **27**, 359
- Final value theorem, 111, 181, 243, 262
- Fixed axes, aircraft body, 13–18
- Fixed neutral point:
  - locating, 334–335
  - and Mach number, 334–335
- Flat earth, 12, 13
- Flexibility, airframes, 39
- Flight control system (FCS), 274–276, 275
  - design, 279
  - electronic (EFCS), 274
  - mechanical elements, 278
- Flight critical stability augmentation *see* Flight control system
- Flight envelopes, 6, 7, 253–255, 254, **255**, **256**
  - extended, 240
  - large, 37
  - McDonnell-Douglas A-4D Skyhawk, 254–255, **255**, **256**
  - normal load factor, 255
  - operational, 253, 254
  - permissible, 253
  - service, 253
- Flight path angle, 13
- Flight phase, 252
  - categories, 252
- Flight test measurement, 325–337, **326**
- Flow effects, **38**
- Fly-by-wire:
  - aeroplane, 251
  - civil transport aeroplanes, 9
  - controls, 4, **4**
  - system, 278–280, **279**
    - reliability, 279
  - unstable airframes, 295
- Flying, and handling, 3–4, 165–167, 200–202, 240
- Flying qualities:
  - lateral-directional, 263–266
  - Level of, 252–253
  - longitudinal, 256–260
  - McDonnell F-4C Phantom, 269–271
  - requirements, 249–251
    - on *s*-plane, 266–269, **267**
    - specification, 247
- Force balance, 32, 34
- Frequency:
  - phugoid, 107, 146, 162, 259, 260
  - response, 158–165, 195–200
- Full state feedback, 312, **314**
- Functional visibility, 5, 241, 280
- Functions:
  - Dirac delta, 123
  - unit impulse, 123
- Gain:
  - logarithmic, 160
  - margin, 162
  - and phase, calculation, 160
  - plot, Bode diagram, 160
- Generalised:
  - force equations, 70–71
  - moment equations, 71–72
- Gradients, stable, 257–258, **258**
- Gravitational:
  - force components, 74–75
  - terms, 74–75
- Gyration, longitudinal radius of, 263
- Handley Page Jetstream, 167, **168**, 202, 203
  - elevator angle to trim, **46**
  - flight test, 45, 50–51, 167
  - phugoid response, 169
  - roll subsidence mode, 202, **203**
  - with tailplane, 40
  - wind tunnel experiments, 39, **40**
  - without tailplane, 40
- Handling, 200–202
  - and flying, 165–167, 240
  - long term, 241
  - pilot's perception, 241
  - qualities, 3–4, **3**, **4**
    - criteria, 247
  - short term, 241
- Harmonisation, of control power, 240
- Height response, 128
- High pass filter, 276
- Hinge moment to trim, 50, **51**
- Horizontal fuselage datum, 14, 59
- Incidence angle feedback to elevator, 298–299, **298**
- Incidence lag, 243, 247–249, **249**
  - on pitch response, **249**, 248

- Inertia:
  - dimensionless, 84, 85
  - moments and products, 71
  - transformation
    - body to wind, 445
    - wind to body, 446
- Inertial acceleration, 68
  - components, 66–70
- Initial value theorem, 111, 112
- Inner control loop, 278
- Instability, conditional, 232–233
- Integrated actuation, 278
- Jet engine, exhaust, 38, **38**
- Joint Aviation Requirements, 249
- Kalman filtering, 326
- Lanchester phugoid model, 151–152, 157
- Laplace transforms, 397
- Lateral:
  - dihedral effect, 234
  - directional equations of motion, 81–82
  - perturbation, sideslip angle, 130
  - relative density, 84
  - response transfer functions, 105–108
- Lateral-directional:
  - augmentation, 300–311
  - control, steady, 263
  - derivative coefficients, 382–384
  - equations of motion, 81–82
  - modes, 267–269, **268**
  - stability, 33, 263–265, 350–371
- Level:
  - of flying qualities, 252–253
- Lift coefficient, **39**, 50, 83
- Lift to drag ratio, 155
- Lifting properties, and Mach number, 333, **334**
- Limiting frequency, dutch roll mode, 268, 265
- Linear second order system, 427–430
- Linear system modelling, 197
- Linear time invariant (LTI) system, 85
- Ling-Temco-Vought A-7A Corsair II, 139–143
- Lockheed F-104 Starfighter, 106–108, 132–134, 291–293
  - control derivatives, 106
  - elevator transfer function, 285–287
  - lateral-directional handling qualities, 396–401
  - longitudinal equations of motion, 125–128
  - phugoid stability, 287
  - pitch attitude response, 106
  - pitch response, 106–108
  - root locus plot, 287–291
  - stability, dimensional, 106
- Locus departure angle, **455**
- Logarithmic gain, 160
- Longitudinal:
  - characteristic equation, 144
  - derivative coefficients, 378–382
  - equations of motion, 79–81
  - manoeuvrability, 216, 222–223, 260, **261**
  - modes, 266–267
    - damping ratios, 266, 267
  - motion, 232
  - reduced order, 242–244
  - reference geometry, **24**
  - relative density, 83, 214
  - response to elevator, 138
  - short period, thumb print criterion, 247, **248**
  - stability, 165
  - state equation, 87, 129, 132, 155
    - decoupled, 129
  - static stability, test for, 43
- Low pass system, 159
- LTV A7-A Corsair aircraft, 401–404
- McDonnell-Douglas A-4D Skyhawk, 294–300
  - flight envelopes, 254, **255**
  - stability mode characteristics, 295
- McDonnell F-4C Phantom, 80–81, 88–90, 312–316
  - aerodynamic variables, 90
  - control characteristics, 269–271
  - dutch roll mode characteristics, 271
  - equations of motion, 312
  - flying qualities, 269–271
  - lateral derivatives, 90–91
  - longitudinal equations of motion, 90
  - longitudinal stability modes, 313, 315
  - stability, 269–271
- Mach cone, definition, 328
- Mach number, 82
  - critical, definition, 328
  - definition, 328
  - and drag properties, 333, **334**
  - and fixed neutral point, 291–292
  - flow, 329
  - and lifting properties, 333, **334**
  - and pitching moment, 334, **334**

- Manoeuvrability:
  - controls free, 260
  - lateral-directional, 265–266
  - sideslip excursions, 227
  - longitudinal, 260, **261**
- Manoeuvre stability, 211, 211–212
  - analysis, 212
  - longitudinal
    - controls fixed, 216–218
    - controls free, 218–221
- Manoeuvring:
  - and aircraft dynamics, 222–223
  - classical theory, 211
  - controls fixed, 216–218
  - controls free, 218–221
  - longitudinal stability, 216–221
  - normal, 210
  - steady pull-up, 212–214
  - steady symmetric, 212
  - symmetric pull-up, **213**
  - tailplane incidence, 215
  - transient upset, 211
- Mathcad*, software, 10, 61–62
- Mathematical models, 5–6
  - approximate, 6
  - high fidelity, 5
- MATLAB*, 109
  - software, 9
- Matrix, 85
  - direct, 86
  - eigenvalue, 120
  - eigenvector, 121
  - exponential, 119, 122
  - identity, 86
  - input, 85
  - mass, 87
  - modal, 121
  - output, 86
  - polynomial, 115
  - state, 85
  - state transition, 119
  - transfer function, 114–118
    - longitudinal, 115–116
    - lateral-directional, 116–118
  - zero, 86
- Maximum likelihood method, 326
- Measurement:
  - flight test, 325–327, **326**
  - wind tunnel, 324–325
- Minimum drag speed, 34, 143
- Minimum phase, 162
- Ministry of Defence, 249
- Modal:
  - equations, 122
  - matrix, 121
- Modelling, pitching behaviour, 41
- Modes:
  - coupling, 167, 183
  - dynamic stability, 144–147
  - excitation, 167–170, 202–206
  - faster, 237
  - slow, 237
- Moment components, and aerodynamic force, 339
- Moments, and disturbance forces, 72–73
- Morane Saulnier MS-760 Paris, 255, **256**
- Motion:
  - cues, 241–242
  - variables, **15**
- Multi-input, controlled system, 312
- Natural frequency, 110, 145, 146, 155, 222
- Navigation, trans-globe, 12
- Navion Aircraft Corporation, Navion/H, 244–247, **245**
- Negative feedback, 274, 302
- Newton:
  - second law, 66, 70
  - rotational form, 71
- Nichols chart, 159
- Non-linear system, 225
- Non-minimum phase, 113, 162, 164, 179
- Normal:
  - acceleration
    - equations, 112
    - feedback to elevator, 299–300, **299**
    - response at cg, **114**
  - force
    - axial velocity, 340
    - due to elevator, 372
    - due to normal velocity, 342
    - due to pitch rate, 345
    - due to rate of change of normal velocity, 349
  - load factor, 69–70, 213, 243
  - flight envelopes, 253–254
  - velocity
    - and axial force, 341, 348
    - and normal force, 342, 349
    - and pitching moment, 343, 350
- North American derivative coefficient notation, 377–385

- North American X-15 hypersonic research  
aeroplane:
  - stability augmentation, 391–392
- Northrop T-38 Talon, transfer function data, 301
- Nyquist diagram, 159
- Open loop, equations of motion, 284
- Optical signal transmission, 280
- Oscillations:
  - phugoid, 146–147, **151**, 168, 151–158
  - pilot induced, 162
  - short period pitching, 107, 110, 126, 127, 141, 144–145, **145**, 148, 167, **168**, 258–259, **259**
- Outer control loop, 274, 275
- Output response variable, 158
- Parameter identification, 325–327, **326**
  - disadvantages, 327
  - equation error method, 326
  - maximum likelihood method, 326
  - statistical regression method, 326
- PC MATLAB*, 125, 127, 141, 160, 181, 272, 390
  - root locus plot, 272, 288
  - software, 9
- Peak roll, to peak yaw ratio, 187–188
- Perturbations:
  - angular, 75
  - attitude, 74
  - height, 21
  - small, 7–8
  - about trim, 37, 73, 201
  - variables, 14–16, **15**, *15*, *16*
  - velocity, 339
- Phase margin, 162
- Phugoid, 107, 146–147
  - damping, 290, 296
  - frequency, 162, 296
  - Lanchester model, 151–152
  - mode, 167, 168
  - oscillation, 127, **151**
  - reduced order model, 152–155
  - stability, 140
    - Lockheed F-104 Starfighter, 285
- Pilot opinion, 240
- rating, 255–256
- Pilot workload, 226, 253
- Pitch, 19
  - attitude, and elevator, 106, 110, 161, 295
  - damper, 292
  - definition, 15
  - motion cue, 249
  - rate, 22
    - and axial force, 344–345
    - feedback, **291**
      - to elevator, 295–297, **296**
    - and normal force, 345
    - and pitching moment, 346
  - response, Lockheed F-104 Starfighter, 106–108
  - stiffness, 300, 343
  - velocity perturbation, 343–346
- Pitching:
  - Behaviour, modelling, 41
  - moment, 29, 34, **35**, **37**, 38, **38**
    - due to axial velocity, 342–343
    - due to elevator, 373
    - equation, 40–43, **41**, 214–216
      - simple development, 41–43
    - due to normal velocity, 343
    - due to pitch rate, 346
    - due to rate of change of normal velocity, 350
- Pole placement method, 311–316
  - application, 311
- Power effects:
  - indirect, 37
  - stability, 37–39
- Power terms, 77
- Prandtl–Glauert rule, 329–330, 333
- Pressure drag, 331
- Program CC*, 89, 109, 163
  - root locus plot, 272
  - software, 10
- Q-feel system, 278
- Rapid incidence adjustment, 148
- Rate command, 246
- Rate of roll, derivatives, 360–365, **361**, **362**
- Reduced order:
  - longitudinal response, **157**
  - models, 147–158, 152–155, 188–195
    - lateral–directional, 189–190
    - longitudinal, 242–247
  - phugoid dynamics, 154, 156
- Redundancy, 277, 279
- Reference centres, 28–30, **29**
- Reference geometry, **23**, **25** 24–27, **24**, **27**
- Resolvent, 119
- Resonant frequencies, 159
- Response, 98–106 119–128
  - to aileron, 175, 177, **179**
  - and control, 5

- to controls, 108–112, 138–144, 174–183
- to elevator, 138, 139, 141, **142**
- homogeneous, 120
- impulse, 120, 123
- pitch rate, 156, **245**, 246, **293**
- to rudder, 179, **180**
- second-order-like, 244–247, **245**
- shapes, 124
- shaping, 281, 282
- steady state, 143
- step, 102–103 120, 123–124
- transfer functions, 99, 101–108, 138–139, 159, 188
  - acceleration, 112–114
  - elevator, 102, 159, 269
  - flight path angle, 131
  - height, 128–129
  - improper, 101, 113
  - incidence, 129–130
  - lateral, 105–106
  - lateral-directional, 105–106, 421–422, 423
  - Ling-Temco-Vought A-7A Corsair II, 139–143
  - longitudinal, 102–105, 175, 419–420, 422–423
  - pitch rate, 104
  - sideslip, 129–130
  - thrust, 105
  - unforced, 122–123
- Restoring moment, 36, 145, 184
- Retrimming, 45, 48
- Reynolds number, 82
- Ride quality, 166
- Roll, 19
  - attitude
    - feedback to aileron, 304–305, **305**
    - feedback to rudder, 309–310, **310**
  - definition, 15
  - mode, approximation, 183–184
  - rate, 22
    - and aileron, 102, 105, 108
    - feedback to aileron, 302, **303**
    - feedback to rudder, 307–308, **308**
    - and rolling moment, 317–319, 362–365
    - and side force, 360, 361
    - and yawing moment, 364–365
  - response
    - to aileron, 189, **194**
  - subsidence mode, 118, 178, 182, 183–184, 201, 202, 206, 263–264, **264**
  - flight recording, 202, **203**
  - Handley Page Jetstream, 172, **172**, 202, **203**
  - maximum value, 264
- Rolling moment:
  - coefficient, 54
  - equation, 189
  - negative, 54
  - due to roll rate, 362–365
  - due to sideslip, 352–359
  - due to yaw rate, 367–368, **368**
- Root locus plot, 287–291, **289**, 451–455
  - angle condition, 452
  - applications, 288
  - background, 451–452
  - constructing, 452–455
  - incidence angle feedback to elevator, 298–299, **298**
  - interpretation, 288
  - magnitude condition, 452
  - normal acceleration feedback to elevator, 299–300, **299**
  - pitch attitude feedback to elevator, 295, **296**
  - pitch rate feedback to elevator, 295–297, **296**
  - roll attitude feedback to aileron, 304–305, **305**
  - roll attitude feedback to rudder, 309–310, **310**
  - roll rate feedback to aileron, 302, **303**
  - roll rate feedback to rudder, 307–308, **308**
  - sideslip angle feedback to aileron, 301–302, **302**
  - sideslip angle feedback to rudder, 306–307, **307**
  - single variable feedback, 293
  - velocity feedback to elevator, 297–298, **297**
  - yaw attitude feedback to aileron, 305–306, **306**
  - yaw attitude feedback to rudder, 310, **311**
  - yaw rate feedback to aileron, 303–304, **304**
  - yaw rate feedback to rudder, 308–309, **309**
- Rotary motion:
  - and acceleration, **68**
  - and velocity, **67**
- Routh array, 228
- Routh–Hurwitz criterion:
  - application, 227–229
  - stability, 227–228



- Routh's discriminant, 232
- Rudder surface, displacements, 27
- s-plane:
  - complex roots on, **235**
  - flying qualities on, 266–269
  - lateral-directional modes on, 267–269, **268**
  - longitudinal modes on, 266–267, **267**
  - root mapping on, 234–236
- Safety, 276–277
- Setting angle, tailplane, 40
- Shock expansion, 330
- Shock stall, definition, 328
- Shock wave, definition, 328
- Short period mode approximation, 147–150
- Short term, dynamic models:
  - controlled motion and motion cues, 241–242
  - longitudinal reduced order model, 242–247
  - thumb print criterion, 247
  - incidence log, 247–249
- Sidesforce:
  - due to roll rate, 360
  - due to sideslip, 351
  - due to yaw rate, 365
- Side-stick controller, 279
- Sideslip, 62
  - angle, 20
  - angle feedback to aileron, 301–302, **302**
  - angle feedback to rudder, 306–307, **307**
  - disturbance, 54, **55**, 351
  - fin lift, **358**
  - lateral cross flow, 358
  - and rolling moment, 352–359
  - and sidesforce, 351
  - swept wing in, 355
  - and yawing moment, 359–360
- Similarity transform, 121
- Single input, controlled system, 312
- Single variable feedback, root locus plot, 293
- Small perturbations, 7–8
  - equations of motion, 77–79
- Software:
  - 20-Sim*, 10
  - Mathcad*, 10
  - MATLAB*, 9
  - Program CC*, 10
  - Simulink*, 9–10
- Specification, flying qualities, 250
- Spherical coordinates, 12
- Spiral mode, 118, 178, 184–186, **185**, 201, 203, **204**, 264, **264**, **265**
  - approximations, 190–192
  - boundary, 268
  - stable, 188, 191
  - time constant, 191
  - unstable, 186, 203, 301
- Stability, 178, 240–241
  - aerodynamic, 7
  - augmentation, 6, 251, 290–291
    - control law, 292
    - longitudinal, 293–300, **294**
    - system, 240, 275, 277–280, **277**, **279**
    - autopilot, 275
    - control law, 276
    - role of, 278
  - conditions for, 33–35, **34**
  - and control, 6
  - controls, 225–226
    - fixed, 43, 44–47, 216–218
      - margin, 44
      - static, 218–221
    - fixed dynamic, 170, 205
    - free, 41, 43, 47–50, 218–221
      - meaning, 47
    - free dynamic, 170, 205
    - free margin, 48
  - definition, 224
  - degree of, 35–36, **36**
  - directional static, 54–57, 185
  - dynamic modes, 144–147, 183–188
  - estimating, 321
  - graphical interpretation, 234–236, **235**
  - lateral static, 53–54, 185, 352
  - lateral-directional, 33, 202, 350–371
    - augmentation, 300–311, **301**
    - dynamic, 263–265
    - short period, 201
  - longitudinal, 266–267
    - dynamic, 258–260
    - manoeuvring, 216–221
    - margins, **52**
    - modes, 167, 168
    - static, 44–53, 256–258
  - manoeuvre, 211
  - margin, 36, 44
  - modes, 178, 237, **238**
  - non-linear systems, 225
  - phugoid, 146–147, 259, 287, 295
  - power effects, 37–39, **38**

- quartic, 231–234
  - definition, 231
- relative sensitivity, 290
- reversal, **39**
- Routh–Hurwitz criterion, 227–228
- short period mode, 259
- static
  - and dynamic, 225
  - longitudinal, 43, 44–53
  - margins, 258
  - subsonic, 36–37
  - supersonic, 37
  - variable, 247
  - variation in, 36–40
- Stable system, *430*
- State space method, 114–128
  - Laplace transform, 119
- State space model augmentation, 128–134
- State transition matrix, 119
- Static stability, longitudinal, 43, 44–53
- Statistical regression, 326
- Stick displacement, 218
- Stick force per g, 221
  - measuring, 221
- Subsonic flight, definition, 328
- Subsonic lift, drag and pitching moment, 329–330
- Supersonic flight, definition, 328
- Supersonic lift, drag and pitching moment, 330–332
- Symmetric flight, angular relationships, 16–17, **16**
- Symmetry, of airframe, 32
- System analysis, closed loop, 283–287, **283**
- System realization, 132
- Tailplane:
  - lift coefficient, 42, 215, 371
  - moment arm, 26
  - setting angle, 42
  - volume ratio, 26, 345
  - weathercock tendency, 145
- Test flights:
  - demonstration of compliance, 250
  - variable stability, 247
- Throttle lever angle, 77, 132
- Thrust, 77
  - line, **37**
  - trimmed equilibrium, 33
  - variation, 82
- Thumb print criterion, 247
  - longitudinal short period, 247, **248**
- Time response, 98, 110, **111**
- Transfer function, 197, 282
  - angular pitch acceleration, 262
  - matrix, 94–95, 114–115
    - lateral–directional, 116
    - Lockheed C-5A, 116–118
    - longitudinal, 115–116
  - open loop, 295
- Transformation:
  - angular rates, 230
  - angular velocities, 22–24
  - coordinate, 448–449
    - body to wind axes, 438, 444, 448
    - wind to body axes, 448–449
  - force and moment, 438
  - inertia, 449
  - linear, 19–21
- Transonic flight, 258, 328
- Trim:
  - change of, 257
  - function, electrical, 279
  - hands-off, 47, 48, 49
  - state, 5, 32
  - tabs, 32
    - adjustment, 49
    - elevator, 32
- Trimmability, 32
- Trimmed aircraft, 57, 167, 202
- Trimmed equilibrium, 15, 32–40
  - airframe configuration, 32
  - centre of gravity, 32
  - elevator angle, 33
  - flight path angle, 32, 33
  - lateral–directional, 33
  - longitudinal, 33
  - stable, 34
  - thrust, 33
  - weight, 32
- Units, 425
- Variable stability, 36–39
  - test flights, 247
- Velocity:
  - eigenfunctions, 124, 126
  - feedback to elevator, 291–293, **292**
  - linear disturbance, 73
  - perturbations, moment derivatives, 342–343
  - resolution, **20**
  - and rotary motion, **67**
  - tangential, 67

- Virtual inertia, 347
- Virtual mass, 347
  
- Wake, 38
- Washout filter, 276, 400
- Weathercock, 54, **56**, 145
- Weight, trimmed equilibrium, 32
- Wind axes, perturbed, **338**
- Wind tunnel:
  - experiments, Handley Page Jetstream, **40**
  - measurement, 324–325
    - accuracy, 325
- Wing:
  - area, 24
  - aspect ratio, 25
  - centre of pressure, 28
  - mean aerodynamic chord (mac), 25
  - standard mean chord (smc), 25
  - sweep back, 39
- Yaw, 19
  - adverse, 181
  - angle, 18, 22
  - attitude
    - feedback to aileron, 305–306, **306**
    - feedback to rudder, 310, **311**
  - definition, 15
  - rate, 22
    - derivatives, 365–371
    - feedback to aileron, 303–304, **304**
    - feedback to rudder, 303–309, **309**
    - fin incidence, **366**
    - and rolling moment, 366–369, **367, 368**
    - and sideforce, 365
    - and yawing moment, 369–371
- Yawing moment:
  - due to aileron, 375
  - about cg, 369
  - coefficient, 52, **53**, 54
  - due to roll rate, 364–365
  - due to rudder, 377
  - due to sideslip, 359–360
  - due to yaw rate, 369–371